

## **Historic, Archive Document**

Do not assume content reflects current scientific knowledge, policies, or practices.





2SD11  
B23  
C3



United States  
Department of  
Agriculture

Forest Service

Tongass  
National Forest

R10-MB-365a

May 1998



# Chasina Timber Sale

## Final Environmental Impact Statement

### Volume I

USDA  
NATL AGRIC LIBRARY

1998 AUG -11

PERMIT SERIAL RECORD  
FBI/ST. LOUIS CR. 1000



# Acronymns And Symbols

ADF&G	Alaska Department of Fish and Game
AHMU	Aquatic Habitat Management Unit
ANCSA	Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act
ANILCA	Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act
ASQ	Allowable Sale Quantity
BBF	One Billion Board Feet
BMP	Best Management Practice
CEQ	Council on Environmental Quality
CFL	Commercial Forest Land
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CZMA	Coastal Zone Management Act of 1976
DBH	Diameter at Breast Height
DEIS	Draft Environmental Impact Statement
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
EVC	Existing/Expected Visual Condition
FEIS	Final Environmental Impact Statement
FSH	Forest Service Handbook
FSM	Forest Service Manual
GIS	Geographic Information System
IDT	Interdisciplinary Team
KPC	Ketchikan Pulp Company
KV	Knutsen-Vandenberg Act
LTF	Log Transfer Facility
LUD	Land Use Designation
LWD	Large Woody Debris (same as LOD)
MBF	One Thousand Board Feet
MELP	Multi-Entry Layout Process
MIS	Management Indicator Species
MM	Maximum Modification
MMBF	One Million Board Feet
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NFMA	National Forest Management Act
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NOI	Notice of Intent
P	Primitive
PR	Partial Retention
R	Retention
RM	Roaded Modified
RN	Roaded Natural
ROD	Record of Decision
ROS	Recreation Opportunity Spectrum
SHPO	State Historic Preservation Officer
SPM	Semi-Primitive Motorized
SPNM	Semi-Primitive Nonmotorized
TLMP	Tongass Land Management Plan
TRUCS	Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey
TTRA	Tongass Timber Reform Act
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
USDI	United States Department of the Interior
USFWS	United States Fish and Wildlife Service
VCU	Value Comparison Unit
VQO	Visual Quality Objective
WAA	Wildlife Analysis Area

## Acknowledgments

*Front cover* By Cindy Ross Barber, 1992 The design illustrates the range of interconnected issues addressed in the EIS

## Final Environmental Impact Statement

# Chasina Timber Sale

United States Department of Agriculture  
Forest Service—Alaska Region

---

Lead Agency: U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Tongass National Forest  
Ketchikan Administrative Area

Responsible Official Forest Supervisor  
Ketchikan Administrative Area  
Tongass National Forest  
Federal Building  
Ketchikan, Alaska 99901

For Further  
Information Contact: Norm Matson, Planning Forester  
Ketchikan Administrative Area  
Tongass National Forest  
Federal Building  
Ketchikan, Alaska 99901  
(907) 228-6273

### Abstract

---

The USDA Forest Service proposes to harvest up to approximately 50 million board feet (MMBF) of timber in the Chasina Project Area, Craig Ranger District, Ketchikan Administrative Area, Tongass National Forest. Timber volume would be offered through the Ketchikan Area timber sale program. The actions analyzed in this EIS are designed to implement direction contained in the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP 1997) and the Tongass Timber Reform Act. The EIS describes six alternatives which provide different combinations of resource outputs and spatial locations of harvest units. The alternatives include: 1) No Action, proposing no new harvest from the Project Area at this time; 2) configure harvest units to emphasize wildlife habitat and maintain the integrity of large unfragmented blocks of old-growth forest; 3) configure harvest units to emphasize a positive net economic return, while seeking to strike a balance between competing resource uses; 4) optimize the amount of timber offered while keeping the amount of new road construction to a minimum; 5) configure harvest units to emphasize timber sale economics and conventional cable yarding methods; and 6) configure harvest units to provide the maximum amount of timber within Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines.

---



# Table of Contents

---

## Volume 1

<b>Chapter 1 Purpose and Need</b>	<b>1-1</b>
Introduction	1-2
Decision to be Made	1-2
Document Organization	1-2
Project Area	1-3
Proposed Action	1-6
Purpose and Need	1-6
Reasons for Scheduling the Environmental Analysis of the Chasina Project Area	1-7
Existing and Desired Future Condition	1-7
The Decision Making Process	1-8
National Level	1-8
Regional Level	1-9
Forest Level	1-9
Project Level	1-9
Other Projects	1-9
Current Project	1-9
TLMP 1997	1-9
Minerals (MM)	1-9
Old-Growth Habitat (OG)	1-10
Modified Landscape (ML)	1-10
Timber Production (TM)	1-10
Semi Remote Recreation (SM)	1-10
Public Involvement	1-12
Scoping	1-12
Draft EIS	1-12
Final EIS	1-13
Issues	1-13
Issues Associated with the Proposed Action	1-13
Issue 1: Timber Economics and Supply	1-13
Issue 2: Fish Habitat and Water Quality	1-13
Issue 3: Recreation and Scenic Quality	1-13
Issue 4: Wildlife	1-13
Issue 5: Subsistence	1-14
Issue 6: Caves and Karst	1-14
Issue 7: Social and Economic Effects	1-14
Issue 8: Marine Environment	1-14
Issues Outside the Scope of This Analysis	1-14
Issue A: Land Use Designations/Forest Plan Revision	1-14
Issue B: Development Outside the Project Area	1-14
Issue C: Below Cost Timber Sales	1-15
Issue D: Timber Supply and Demand	1-15
Issue E: Manage Chasina for Sustained Yield	1-15
Federal and State Permits, Licenses, and Certifications	1-15
Legislation and Executive Orders Related to This EIS	1-16
Availability of the Planning Record	1-17
<b>Chapter 2 Alternatives</b>	<b>2-1</b>
Introduction	2-2
Changes Between DEIS and FEIS	2-2
Alternative Development	2-4
Ecosystem Management	2-4
Process Used to Formulate Alternatives	2-11



# Contents

Alternatives Eliminated from Detailed Study .....	2-12
Alternative A Single Resource or Issue .....	2-12
Alternative B Avoid Previously Mapped Old-growth Retention Areas .....	2-12
Alternative C Manage the Chasina Project Area for Sustained Yield/Even Flow of Forest Products .....	2-12
Alternative D .....	2-12
Alternatives Considered for Detailed Study .....	2-13
Alternative 1 (No Action) .....	2-13
Alternative 2 .....	2-13
Alternative 3 .....	2-14
Alternative 4 .....	2-14
Alternative 5 .....	2-14
Alternative 6 .....	2-15
Forest Service Preferred Alternative .....	2-16
Comparison of Alternatives .....	2-16
Summary Comparison .....	2-16
Comparison of Alternatives by Proposed Activity .....	2-19
Comparison of Alternatives by Significant Issue .....	2-22
Issue 1. Timber Harvest Economics .....	2-22
Issue 2. Fish Habitat and Water Quality .....	2-23
Issue 3. Recreation and Scenic Quality .....	2-29
Issue 4. Wildlife Habitat .....	2-32
Issue 5. Subsistence Use .....	2-33
Issue 6. Caves and Karst .....	2-35
Issue 7. Social and Economic Effects .....	2-35
Issue 8: Marine Environment .....	2-36
Mitigation Measures .....	2-38
TLMP Mitigation .....	2-38
Water Quality and Fish Production .....	2-38
Wildlife .....	2-40
Cave/Karst Resources .....	2-43
Subsistence .....	2-43
Recreation .....	2-43
Cultural Resources .....	2-43
ES Plants .....	2-43
Monitoring .....	2-44
Forest Plan Monitoring .....	2-44
Mitigation/Monitoring Feedback Loop .....	2-46
Routine Implementation Monitoring .....	2-46
Effectiveness Monitoring .....	2-46
Validation Monitoring .....	2-47
Maps of Alternatives .....	
<b>Chapter 3 Affected Environment and Effects of the Alternatives .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
Introduction .....	3-1
Available Information .....	3-1
Analyzing Effects .....	3-2
Land Divisions .....	3-3
Geographic Information System .....	3-3
Description of the Ecosystem .....	3-3
AIR QUALITY .....	3-7
Affected Environment .....	3-7
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-8
Direct, Indirect and Cumulative Effects .....	3-8
AQUATIC RESOURCES .....	3-10
Affected Environment .....	3-10
Introduction .....	3-10
Fish Habitat .....	3-13
Watershed Analysis .....	3-17

Legal Requirements and Riparian Habitat Protection .....	3-54
Estuary and Beach Fringe .....	3-57
Consumptive Water Uses .....	3-57
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-58
Fish Habitat Capability and Water Quality .....	3-58
Sedimentation .....	3-58
Water Temperature Sensitivity .....	3-59
Cumulative Watershed Impacts .....	3-59
Mitigation .....	3-62
FLOODPLAINS .....	3-64
Affected Environment .....	3-64
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-67
Direct and Indirect Effects .....	3-67
Cumulative Effects .....	3-67
Mitigation Measures .....	3-69
Monitoring .....	3-69
Riparian Management Areas .....	3-70
Affected Environment .....	3-70
Riparian Management Areas .....	3-70
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-73
Direct and Indirect Effects .....	3-73
Cumulative Effects .....	3-73
Mitigation Measures .....	3-74
Monitoring .....	3-75
WETLANDS .....	3-76
Affected Environment .....	3-77
Introduction .....	3-77
Wetland Systems and Classes .....	3-78
Values and Functions .....	3-81
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-81
Direct and Indirect Effects .....	3-81
Cumulative Effects .....	3-90
Mitigation Measures .....	3-93
Monitoring .....	3-94
SOILS .....	3-95
Affected Environment .....	3-96
Introduction .....	3-96
Soil Productivity .....	3-96
Soil Types .....	3-97
Surface Erosion and Mass Movement .....	3-99
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-102
Direct and Indirect Effects .....	3-102
Cumulative Effects .....	3-111
Mitigation Measures .....	3-119
Monitoring .....	3-120
GEOLOGY, MINERALS, AND KARST RESOURCES .....	3-121
Affected Environment .....	3-122
Introduction .....	3-122
Geologic Setting .....	3-122
Mineral Setting .....	3-122
Karst Resources .....	3-128
Karst Management Goals .....	3-129
Karst Management Strategy .....	3-130
Chasina Project Area Karst Resources .....	3-131

# Contents

Effects of the Alternatives	3-133
Minerals	3-133
Karst Resources	3-135
Mitigation	3-137
Monitoring	3-138
WILDLIFE	3-139
Affected Environment	3-139
Management Indicator Species (MIS)	3-139
Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs)	3-140
Major Habitat Categories	3-142
Wildlife Habitat Capability Models	3-144
Effects of the Alternatives	3-151
Direct and Indirect Effects on Wildlife Habitat	3-151
Direct and Indirect Effects on Habitat Capability	3-152
Comparison of Alternatives: Summary	3-160
Cumulative Effects: Reasonably Foreseeable	3-160
OLD GROWTH AND BIODIVERSITY	3-165
Affected Environment	3-165
Old-growth Forest	3-165
Biological Diversity and Viable Populations	3-168
Effects of the Alternatives	3-177
Fragmentation and Patch-size Effectiveness	3-177
Effect of Proposed Alternatives on Old-Growth Habitat in Chasina	3-179
Effects of the Alternatives on Connectivity and Corridors	3-187
Effects of the Alternatives on Viable Populations of Wildlife	3-187
Comparison of Alternatives	3-187
THREATENED AND ENDANGERED SPECIES	3-188
Affected Environment	3-188
Threatened or Endangered Species	3-188
Species of Concern and Sensitive Species	3-190
Effects of the Alternatives	3-200
Threatened or Endangered Wildlife Species	3-200
Species of Concern	3-201
Sensitive Species	3-202
FOREST HEALTH	3-205
Affected Environment	3-205
Insects	3-205
Diseases	3-206
Other	3-206
Effects of the Alternatives	3-207
SILVICULTURE AND TIMBER	3-208
Silviculture: Affected Environment	3-210
Introduction	3-210
Forested Plant Communities	3-210
Non-Forested Plant Communities	3-213
Site Class	3-214
Silvicultural Systems	3-216
Alternatives To Clearcutting	3-221
Ecosystem Management	3-224
Criteria for the Selection of Harvest Cutting Method	3-224
Introduction	3-224
Rationale for Selection of Harvest Cutting Methods	3-225
Factors Influencing the Choice of Silvicultural Systems	3-228
Operational Environment Climate	3-231
Silviculture: Effects of the Alternatives	3-233
Size of Harvest Units	3-233
Indirect and Cumulative Effects	3-234



Timber: Affected Environment .....	3-245
Forest Classification .....	3-245
Tentatively Suitable Forest Lands .....	3-246
Suitable Forest Lands .....	3-246
Volume Strata .....	3-248
Timber: Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-250
Cumulative Effects .....	3-250
Falldown .....	3-251
Estimated Effects on Ketchikan Area Timber Supply .....	3-253
Logging Systems .....	3-254
Timber Economics Economic Efficiency Analysis .....	3-259
SOCIOECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT .....	3-263
Affected Environment .....	3-263
Introduction .....	3-263
Southeast Alaska Regional Economy .....	3-264
Region of Influence (ROI) .....	3-264
Demographic and Income Characteristics .....	3-265
Community Profile (Primary ROI) .....	3-267
Extended Primary ROI .....	3-271
Economic Use of the Forest .....	3-272
Timber Industry .....	3-273
Commercial Fishing Industry .....	3-277
Recreation and Tourism .....	3-278
Sport Fishing .....	3-279
Sport Hunting .....	3-279
Non-market/Non-priced Values .....	3-279
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-281
Timber Industry .....	3-281
Commercial Fishing Industry .....	3-288
Recreation and Tourism .....	3-288
Southeast Alaska Social Environment .....	3-289
Cumulative Effects .....	3-289
Mitigation .....	3-291
Monitoring .....	3-291
SUBSISTENCE .....	3-292
Affected Environment .....	3-292
Introduction .....	3-292
Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS) .....	3-295
Recent Project Area Research .....	3-295
Resource Management Statistical Units Within the Project Area .....	3-295
Documented Subsistence Harvest Activity of Affected Resources Within the Project Area .....	3-296
Affected Communities .....	3-305
Project Area Camps .....	3-311
810 Evaluation - Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-313
Introduction .....	3-313
Evaluation Criteria .....	3-313
Direct, Indirect, and Cumulative Impacts on Subsistence Use of Deer .....	3-314
Direct, Indirect, and Cumulative Subsistence Use of Other Resources .....	3-317
EIS Conclusions .....	3-323
CULTURAL RESOURCES .....	3-325
Affected Environment .....	3-325
Introduction .....	3-325
Prehistory .....	3-325
Ethnohistory .....	3-328
History .....	3-328
Historic Land Use in the Chasina Project Area .....	3-328
Previous Cultural Resource Surveys in the Chasina Project Area .....	3-330
Chasina Cultural Resource Inventory .....	3-331

# Contents

Project Area Cultural Resources .....	3-331
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-333
Introduction .....	3-333
Direct and Indirect Effects .....	3-333
Cumulative Effects .....	3-334
RECREATION, WILDERNESS, WILD AND SCENIC RIVERS, AND ROADLESS AREAS .....	3-335
Affected Environment – Recreation .....	3-336
Introduction .....	3-336
Recreation Demand .....	3-336
Recreation Places and Recreation Sites .....	3-337
Description of Recreation Sites .....	3-337
Recreation Opportunity Spectrum .....	3-342
Effects of Alternatives - Recreation .....	3-344
Introduction .....	3-344
Effects Common to All Action Alternatives .....	3-344
Effects to Recreation by Alternative .....	3-345
Affected Environment – Wilderness .....	3-354
Effects of Alternatives – Wilderness .....	3-355
Affected Environment – Wild and Scenic Rivers .....	3-355
Effects of Alternatives – Wild and Scenic Rivers .....	3-355
Affected Environment – Roadless Areas .....	3-355
Effects of Alternatives – Roadless Areas .....	3-356
SCENIC RESOURCES .....	3-357
Affected Environment .....	3-358
Introduction .....	3-358
Scenic Quality .....	3-358
Sensitivity Level Inventory .....	3-359
Project Area Viewsheds .....	3-359
Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs) .....	3-361
Existing Visual Condition .....	3-362
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-366
Eastern End of West Arm Cholmondeley Sound .....	3-366
Mouth of Sunny Cove .....	3-369
Lancaster Cove/Babe Islands .....	3-371
Kitkun Bay .....	3-376
Port Johnson .....	3-379
Moirra Sound Between Port Johnson and the Entrance to North Arm of Moira Sound .....	3-381
North Arm - Moira Sound .....	3-384
Summary of Impacts of Alternatives .....	3-386
LAND ADJUSTMENTS, USES, AND PERMITS .....	3-387
Affected Environment .....	3-387
Land Status .....	3-387
Special Use Permits .....	3-388
Mining Claims .....	3-388
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-388
Permits and Easements .....	3-388
ROADS AND FACILITIES .....	3-389
Affected Environment .....	3-389
Forest Transportation System .....	3-389
Log Transfer Facilities (LTFs) .....	3-391
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-392
Road Development .....	3-393
Construction Coordination with Fish and Wildlife .....	3-394
Access Management .....	3-396
Road Disposition .....	3-396

MARINE ENVIRONMENT, LOG TRANSFER SITES, AND RELATED FACILITIES. ....	3-398
Affected Environment .....	3-398
Marine Environment .....	3-398
Log Transfer Facilities (LTFs) .....	3-398
Logging Camps .....	3-402
Effects of the Alternatives .....	3-403
Log Transfer Facilities .....	3-403
Fisheries .....	3-407
Wildlife .....	3-408
Visual Resources .....	3-408
Long-term Productivity .....	3-408
OTHER ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS .....	3-410
Probable Adverse Environmental Effects that Cannot be Avoided. ....	3-410
Relationship Between Short-term Uses and Long-term Productivity .....	3-411
Irreversible Commitments of Resources .....	3-412
Irretrievable Commitments .....	3-412
Possible Conflicts with Plans and Policies of Other Jurisdictions. ....	3-412
Energy Requirements and Conservation Potential of Alternatives .....	3-414
Natural or Depletable Resource Requirements and Conservation Potential .....	3-415
Urban Quality, Historic and Cultural Resources .....	3-415
Consumers, Civil Rights, Minorities and Women. ....	3-415
Prime Farmland, Rangeland, and Forest Land .....	3-415
Threatened and Endangered Species, and Critical Habitat .....	3-415
<b>Chapter 4 Lists. ....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
List of Preparers .....	4-1
Glossary .....	4-5
Literature Cited. ....	4-34
Distribution List .....	4-62
Index .....	4-70

## Volume II

### Appendices A-K



## Tables and Figures

### List of Tables

---

Table 1-1	Land Use Designations as Defined in TLMP (1997) . . . . .	1-10
Table 2-1	Chasina Landscape Management Zones . . . . .	2-6
Table 2-2	Summary Comparison of Alternatives . . . . .	2-17
Table 2-3	Total Acres Proposed for Harvest by Silvicultural System . . . . .	2-19
Table 2-4	Proposed New Road Construction & Reconstruction (in Miles) . . . . .	2-20
Table 2-5	Proposed Harvest, by Existing & New Log Transfer Facility, in MMBF . . . . .	2-21
Table 2-6	Estimated Mid-market and Current-market Stumpage Value . . . . .	2-23
Table 2-7	Timber Harvest on Slopes Greater Than 72 Percent by Harvest Unit and Alternative . . . . .	2-24
Table 2-8	Cumulative Watershed Effects, Percentage of Watershed Harvested in Third-Order or Larger Watersheds and Important Second-Order Watersheds* . . . . .	2-26
Table 2-9	Stream Crossings to be Constructed . . . . .	2-27
Table 2-10	Acres of High Hazard Soils Harvested by Alternative . . . . .	2-27
Table 2-11	Summary of Impacts of Alternatives on Scenic Resources . . . . .	2-29
Table 2-12	Potential Changes in Habitat Capability Numbers Within the Project Area for MIS in 1998 . . . . .	2-32
Table 2-13	Effect of Timber Harvest on Forest Fragmentation in Acres . . . . .	2-33
Table 2-14	Deer Harvest and Habitat Capability for WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 . . . . .	2-34
Table 2-15	Acres of Harvest on High and Medium Karst Vulnerability Areas . . . . .	2-35
Table 2-16	Estimated Returns to State of Alaska from Sale of Timber . . . . .	2-35
Table 2-17	Timber Industry Employment and Income by Alternative . . . . .	2-36
Table 2-18	Log Transfer Facilities Required, by Alternative and System . . . . .	2-37
Table 2-19	Marine Benthic Habitat Affected by Alternative . . . . .	2-37
Table 2-20	Units Having Buffers for Temperature Sensitivity . . . . .	2-39
Table INT-1	Number of Days, by Month, With Winds Over 30 Miles per Hour, National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Meteorological Station at Annette Island, Alaska, 11953-78 . . . . .	3-5
Table INT-2	Mean Yearly Summer and Winter Temperatures, Precipitation, and Snow Accumulation for 2 Communities on Prince of Wales Island . . . . .	3-6
Table AQU-1	Fish Species Use of Chasina Project Area Streams, Lakes, and Estuary Ecotones by Life Stage . . . . .	3-12
Table AQU-2	Aquatic Habitats by VCU . . . . .	3-14
Table AQU-3	Major Salmon Producing Streams Within the Project Area and Salmon Species Present . . . . .	3-15

## Tables

Table AQU-4	Watershed E92A Analysis - 1,905 acres . . . . .	3-19
Table AQU-5	Watershed E94A Analysis - 1,320 acres . . . . .	3-22
Table AQU-6	Watershed EX7A Analysis - 140 acres . . . . .	3-24
Table AQU-7	Watershed EX8A Analysis - 319 acres . . . . .	3-27
Table AQU-8	Watershed H21A Analysis, Cannery Creek - 1, 813 acres . . . . .	3-29
Table AQU-9	Watershed H54A Analysis - 2,451 acres . . . . .	3-32
Table AQU-10	Watershed H59A Analysis, Horseshoe Canyon - 983 acres . . . . .	3-34
Table AQU-11	Watershed H60A Analysis - 404 acres . . . . .	3-37
Table AQU-12	Watershed H61A Analysis - 907 acres . . . . .	3-39
Table AQU-13	Watershed H62A Analysis - 1,395 acres . . . . .	3-42
Table AQU-14	Watershed H63A Analysis - 791 acres . . . . .	3-45
Table AQU-15	Watershed OOOZ Analysis - 1,333 acres . . . . .	3-47
Table AQU-16	Habitat Capability Effects and Percent Change from 1954 to 1994 for Coho and Pink Salmon, and Dolly Varden Char . . . . .	3-54
Table AQU-17	Process Group Buffers . . . . .	3-56
Table AQU-18	Units Having a Potential to Increase Temperature Sensitivity of Nearby Streams . . . . .	3-59
Table AQU-19	Percent Cumulative Harvest in 3rd Order Watersheds and Important 2nd Order Watersheds by Alternative . . . . .	3-60
Table FP-1	Acres of Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-65
Table FP-2	Acres Harvested and Projected Harvest on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-66
Table FP-3	Acres Roaded and Projected Roading on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-66
Table FP-4	Number of Stream Crossings and Projected Crossings on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-67
Table FP-5	Projected Cumulative Acres Harvested on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-68
Table FP-6	Projected Cumulative Acres Roaded on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-69
Table RMA-1	Acres Within RMA Components, by Vegetation Type on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area 3-72	
Table RMA-2	Acres of RMA Components Affected by Timber Harvest on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-72
Table RMA-3	Acres of RMA Components Affected by Road Construction* on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-73
Table RMA-4	Cumulative Acres of Timber Harvest and Road Construction in RMA Components on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-74
Table WETL-1	Acres of Wetlands* on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . .	3-78



Table WETL-2	Acres of Wetland Classes by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-80
Table WETL-3	Acres of Vegetated Wetlands and Nonwetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-80
Table WETL-4	Acres of Timber Currently Harvested on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-83
Table WETL-5	Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 2 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-83
Table WETL-6	Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 3 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-84
Table WETL-7	Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 4 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-84
Table WETL-8	Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 5 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-85
Table WETL-9	Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 6 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-85
Table WETL-10	Acres of Existing Roads on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-86
Table WETL-11	Acres of Roads Under Alternative 2 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-87
Table WETL-12	Acres of Roads Under Alternative 3 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-87
Table WETL-13	Acres of Roads Under Alternative 4 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-88
Table WETL-14	Acres of Roads Under Alternative 5 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-88
Table WETL-15	Acres of Roads Under Alternative 6 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-89
Table WETL-16	Projected Cumulative Acres of Timber Harvested on Vegetated Wetlands and Percent of these Wetlands Affected, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-90
Table WETL-17	Projected Cumulative Acres of Roads on Vegetated Wetlands and Percent of these Wetlands Affected, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-91
Table WETL-18	Projected Cumulative Acres of Timber Harvest and Roads on Vegetated Wetlands and Percent of these Wetlands Affected, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-92
Table WETL-19	Projected Acres of Timber Harvested to 2040 on Vegetated Wetlands, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-93
Table SOILS-1	Acres of Mineral Soil Types by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-98
Table SOILS-2	Acres of Organic Soil Types by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-98

## Tables

Table SOILS-3	Acres and Percent of Soil by Mass Movement Rating by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-100
Table SOILS-4	Timber Harvest on Slopes Greater than 72% by Harvest Unit and Alternavtive. . . . .	3-101
Table SOILS-5	Potential Acres of Soil Disturbance from Timber Harvest and Roads* by Alternatives on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-104
Table SOILS-6	Potential Acres of Soil Disturbance Resulting from Timber Harvest (TH) and Construction of Roads (RD) by VCU and by Alternative on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-104
Table SOILS-7	Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on Low MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-107
Table SOILS-8	Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on Moderate MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-107
Table SOILS-9	Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on High MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-108
Table SOILS-10	Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on Very High MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area. . . . .	3-108
Table SOILS-11	Estimated Occurrence and Acreage of Landslides* by Alternative for 20-year Period Following Harvest on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-109
Table SOILS-12	Miles of Existing and New Road by VCU and Alternative on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-110
Table SOILS-13	Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Timber Harvest on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040 . . . . .	3-112
Table SOILS-14	Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Roads* on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040 . . . . .	3-113
Table SOILS-15	Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads* on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040. . . . .	3-114
Table SOILS-16	Cumulative Percent of VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads* on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040 . . . . .	3-114
Table SOILS-17	Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads* on All Lands: Currently**, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040 . . . . .	3-116
Table SOILS-18	Cumulative Percent of VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads* on All Lands: Currently**, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040 . . . . .	3-117
Table SOILS-19	Cumulative Percent Harvest in Selected Watersheds Currently and Following Implementation of Alternatives* . . . . .	3-118
Table GEO-1	Acres of Karst Land by Vulnerability Class . . . . .	3-132
Table GEO-2	Acres of Proposed Harvest on Karstlands by Alternative . . . . .	3-136
Table GEO-3	Effects of the Alternatives on Karst Lands . . . . .	3-137



Table WIL-1	VCUs Within Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs) and Percent of the WAA that Includes the Project Area . . . . .	3-140
Table WIL-2	Major Habitat Categories in the Project Area, 1996 (by Wildlife Analysis Area), in Acres* . . . . .	3-142
Table WIL-3	Wildlife Habitat Capability Within the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-144
Table WIL-4	ADF&G Population Objectives and Deer Habitat Capability by WAA for 1954 and 1996 in the Chasina Project Area and for the Entire WAA . . . . .	3-146
Table WIL-5	Number of Eagle Nests by WAA . . . . .	3-148
Table WIL-6	Proposed Acres for Harvest and Percent Change from 1954 in Wildlife Habitats by Alternative. . . . .	3-151
Table WIL-7	Changes in Habitat Capability for Deer to Year 1998 . . . . .	3-153
Table WIL-8	Harvest of Deer Winter Habitat, by Habitat Suitability Index in Acres. . . . .	3-153
Table WIL-9	Changes in Habitat Capability for Black Bear to Year 1998 . . . . .	3-154
Table WIL-10	Changes in Habitat Capability for Marten to Year 1998* . . . . .	3-155
Table WIL-11	Changes in Habitat Capability for River Otter to Year 1998 . . . . .	3-155
Table WIL-12	Changes in Habitat Capability for Hairy Woodpecker to Year 1998 by Alternative . . . . .	3-156
Table WIL-13	Changes in Habitat Capability for Brown Creeper to Year 1998. . . . .	3-157
Table WIL-14	Changes in Habitat Capability for Vancouver Canada Goose to Year 1998 . . . . .	3-158
Table WIL-15	Changes in Nesting Habitat Capability for Bald Eagle to Year 1998 . . . . .	3-158
Table WIL-16	Changes in Habitat Capability for Alexander Archipelago Wolf to Year 1998. . . . .	3-159
Table WIL-17	Summary of Habitat Capability in the Year 1998 and Percent Change from 1954 . . . . .	3-160
Table WIL-18	Reasonably Foreseeable Direct Changes in Habitat Capability for MIS, 1954-2004. . . . .	3-161
Table WIL-19	Total Cumulative Direct and Indirect Effects of Habitat Capability for MIS for the Proposed Alternatives of this EIS by 2040 (assuming no further timber harvest). . . . .	3-162
Table WIL-20	Total Cumulative Changes Caused by This and Future Timber Sales, in Habitat Capability for MIS to the Year 2140 . . . . .	3-164
Table OG-1	Existing Old-growth Blocks in the Chasina Project. . . . .	3-167
Table OG-2	Patch-Size Relationships . . . . .	3-173
Table OG-3	Patch-size Effectiveness Values by Patch-size Class and by Species . . . . .	3-174
Table OG-4	Adjusted Habitat Capabilities Based on Patch-size Effectiveness . . . . .	3-176
Table OG-5	Patch-size Acreage by Alternative and Acres of Interior Habitat . . . . .	3-178
Table OG-6	Adjusted Habitat Capabilities Based on Patch Size and the Percent Effective by Alternative . . . . .	3-178
Table OG-7	Old-growth Blocks Impacted by Timber Harvest, Road Construction, and LTF Construction by Alternative . . . . .	3-179
Table OG-8	Corridors Impacted by Timber Harvest, Road Construction, and LTF Construction . . . . .	3-187
Table ST-1	Acres of Forested Plant Communities (by VCU). . . . .	3-212
Table ST-2	Distribution of Non-Forest Plant Communities (by VCU) . . . . .	3-214
Table ST-3	Site Class Descriptions . . . . .	3-215

## Tables

Table ST-4	Acres in Each Site Class (Productivity Group by VCU) . . . . .	3-215
Table ST-5	Selected Units and Random Treatment Descriptions. . . . .	3-222
Table ST-6	Preliminary Acreage of Partial or Seed Tree Cut Opportunities Identified for the Project by VCU and Alternative . . . . .	3-228
Table ST-7	Traits of Windfirm Stands and Traits of Stands Susceptible to Windthrow . . . . .	3-232
Table ST-8	Acres of Proposed Harvest by Site Class (Productivity) . . . . .	3-233
Table ST-9	Anticipated Essential Reforestation Treatments (by Alternative) in Acres . . . . .	3-235
Table ST-10	Average Structural Characteristics of Managed Stands (by Site Classification) . . . . .	3-237
Table ST-11	Precommercial Thinning and Release (Acres by Alternative) . . . . .	3-239
Table ST-12	Direct and Indirect Effects in Acres on the Seedling/Sapling Stage (by VCU and Alternative)* . . .	3-241
Table ST-13	Direct and Indirect Effects in Acres on the Pole/Young Sawtimber Stage by VCU and Alternative	3-242
Table ST-14	Projected Acres of Remaining Commercial Old-Growth Sawtimber by VCU and Alternative . . .	3-244
Table ST-15	Adjustments to the CFL, Leading to Suitable Available Acreage . . . . .	3-247
Table ST-16	Ketchikan Area Strata Characteristics—Available Timberlands . . . . .	3-248
Table ST-17	Proposed Harvest Volume by VCU and Alternative . . . . .	3-250
Table ST-18	Distribution Percent and Acres, for Proposed Harvest Units by Volume Strata and Alternative . .	3-251
Table ST-19	Distribution Percent of Proposed Yarding System by Acres per Alternative . . . . .	3-258
Table ST-20	Summary of Mid-market Logging Costs and Volume Class Strata . . . . .	3-259
Table ST-21	Summary of Total Transportation and Construction Costs, in Dollars . . . . .	3-260
Table ST-22	Summary of Harvest Unit Estimated Stumpage Values by Alternative, per MBF (based on Mid-market Analysis) . . . . .	3-261
Table SE-1	Selected 1995 Population and Housing Data . . . . .	3-269
Table SE-2	Ketchikan Gateway Borough Employment and Wages by Industry for 1994 . . . . .	3-272
Table SE-3	Employment and Earnings, Resource Dependent Industries and Southeast Alaska Total. . . . .	3-273
Table SE-4	Timber Harvest in Southeast Alaska by Source (MMBF Log Scale) . . . . .	3-275
Table SE-5	Employment in the Wood Products Industry of Southeast Alaska, Fiscal Years 1981-1991 . . . . .	3-276
Table SE-6	Summary of Estimated Costs and Profits by Alternative—Mid-market Analysis. . . . .	3-283
Table SE-7	Summary of Estimated Costs and Profits by Alternative—Current-market Analysis. . . . .	3-284
Table SE-8	Projected Timber-Related Employment and Yearly Incomes by Alternative* . . . . .	3-286
Table SE-9	Estimated Break Even Pond Log Values for Mid-market Analysis. . . . .	3-287
Table SE-10	Estimated Returns to State of Alaska . . . . .	3-288
Table SE-11	Acreage Remaining After Chasina Project Harvest by Yarding Method for Each Alternative . . . .	3-290
Table SUB-1	Wildlife Analysis Areas and VCUs Within the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-296

Table SUB-2	Community Deer Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, 1213: 1987 through 1994, Compared to All Areas . . . . .	3-297
Table SUB-3	Community Total Deer Harvest: 1987 through 1994. . . . .	3-298
Table SUB-4	GMU 2 Deer Harvest: 1987 through 1994. . . . .	3-299
Table SUB-5	Percent of GMU 2 Deer Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 . . . . .	3-299
Table SUB-6	Black Bear Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1993. . . . .	3-300
Table SUB-7	Marten Trapped in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1993 . . . . .	3-301
Table SUB-8	River Otter Trapped in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1994 . . . . .	3-302
Table SUB-9	Beaver Trapped in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1992 . . . . .	3-303
Table SUB-10	Wolf Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1994 . . . . .	3-304
Table SUB-11	Per Capita Subsistence Harvest (Edible Pounds for Rural Communities, 1987) . . . . .	3-306
Table SUB-12	Deer Populations Needed to Support Projected Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 Combined . . . . .	3-315
Table SUB-13	Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Deer for each Alternative . . . . .	3-316
Table SUB-14	Project Area Black Bear Populations Needed to Support Documented Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 Combined. . . . .	3-317
Table SUB-15	Project Area Marten Populations Needed to Support Documented Year Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability . . . . .	3-318
Table SUB-16	Project Area River Otter Populations Needed to Support Documented Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability . . . . .	3-319
Table SUB-17	Project Area Wolf Populations Needed to Support Documented Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability . . . . .	3-320
Table SUB-18	Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Black Bear for Each Alternative and Community . . . . .	3-322
Table SUB-19	Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Marten, River Otter, and Wolf for Each Alternative and Community . . . . .	3-322
Table SUB-20	Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Salmon for Each Alternative and Community. . . . .	3-323
Table SUB-21	Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Other Resources for Each Alternative and Community . . . . .	3-323
Table CUL-1	Cultural Chronology . . . . .	3-327
Table CUL-2	Known Cultural Resource Properties Within the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-332
Table REC-1	ROS Classes by Alternative. . . . .	3-346
Table REC-2	Recreation Sites with ROS Classes Affected by Alternatives. . . . .	3-353
Table SCE-1	Summary of Impacts of Alternatives on Scenic Resources . . . . .	3-386
Table LAN-1	Summary of Special Use Permit Sites . . . . .	3-388
Table RF-1	Miles of Road By Traffic Service Level . . . . .	3-390

## Figures

Table RF-2	Transportation Development Costs (in MM\$) by Alternative . . . . .	3-392
Table RF-3	Total Transportation Systems (Miles) . . . . .	3-393
Table RF-4	Number of Proposed Stream Crossings . . . . .	3-395
Table RF-5	Stream Crossings by Number of Crossings, Miles, and Acres Affected* . . . . .	3-395
Table RF-6	Number of Crossings with Fish Timing and/or Passage Restrictions* . . . . .	3-395
Table MAR-1	Existing and Potential LTF Locations . . . . .	3-400
Table MAR-2	LTFs Required for the Alternatives . . . . .	3-403
Table MAR-3	LTF Construction/Reconstruction Costs . . . . .	3-404
Table MAR-4	Marine Benthic Impacts by Alternatives . . . . .	3-405
Table MAR-5	Comparison of Short-term Uses to Long-term Productivity for the Estuarine System . . . . .	3-409
Table OTH-1	Estimated Fuel Consumption by Alternative . . . . .	3-414

## List of Figures

---

Figure 1-1	How This Document is Organized . . . . .	1-3
Figure 1-2	Project Area Vicinity Map . . . . .	1-4
Figure 1-3	Project Area VCU Boundaries . . . . .	1-5
Figure 1-4	Chasina Project Area Land Allocations as Proposed in TLMP (1997) . . . . .	1-11
Figure 2-1	Landscape Zones (Front Side) . . . . .	2-9
Figure 2-2	Total Volume Proposed for Harvest, Excluding ROW Volume, in MMBF . . . . .	2-19
Figure 2-3	Proposed Volume by Strata . . . . .	2-20
Figure 2-4	Timber Harvest by Logging System . . . . .	2-22
Figure 2-5	Changes in ROS Class by Alternative . . . . .	2-30
Figure 2-6	Roadless Area Acres Remaining by Alternative . . . . .	2-31
Figure 2-7	Mitigation/Monitoring Feedback Loop . . . . .	2-45
Figure AQU-1	Chasina Project Area Watersheds (Study Watersheds Shaded) . . . . .	3-16
Figure AQU-2	Watershed E92A Map . . . . .	3-21
Figure AQU-3	Watershed E94A Analysis . . . . .	3-23
Figure AQU-4	Watershed EX7A Map . . . . .	3-26
Figure AQU-5	Watershed EX8A Map . . . . .	3-28
Figure AQU-6	Watershed H21A Map . . . . .	3-31
Figure AQU-7	Watershed H54A Map . . . . .	3-33
Figure AQU-8	Watershed H59A Map . . . . .	3-36
Figure AQU-9	Watershed H60A Map . . . . .	3-38
Figure AQU-10	Watershed H61A Map . . . . .	3-41



Figure AQU-11	Watershed H62A Map . . . . .	3-44
Figure AQU-12	Watershed H63A Map . . . . .	3-46
Figure AQU-13	Watershed 000Z Map. . . . .	3-49
Figure GEO-1	Locations of Mines, Prospects, and Occurrences Within the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-127
Figure GEO-2	Location of Karst Lands in the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-131
Figure GEO-3	Timber Volume Class by Percent Rock Type . . . . .	3-133
Figure GEO-4	Sealaska Corporation Potential Subsurface Mineral Rights in the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	3-134
Figure WIL-1	Wildlife Analysis Areas. . . . .	3-141
Figure OG-1	South Prince of Wales Ecological Province, No. 18 . . . . .	3-171
Figure OG-2	Patch-size Effectiveness, 1954. . . . .	3-180
Figure OG-3	Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 1 . . . . .	3-181
Figure OG-4	Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 2 . . . . .	3-182
Figure OG-5	Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 3 . . . . .	3-183
Figure OG-6	Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 4 . . . . .	3-184
Figure OG-7	Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 5 . . . . .	3-185
Figure OG-8	Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 6 . . . . .	3-186
Figure ST-1	Schematic Diagram of Clearcut Types With Reserve Trees . . . . .	3-218
Figure ST-2	Illustration of Experimental Study Design. . . . .	3-223
Figure ST-3	Forest Land Classifications . . . . .	3-246
Figure ST-4	Cable Yarding Systems . . . . .	3-255
Figure SE-1	1994 Nonresident Share of Direct Employment, Southeast Alaska Total and Resource Dependent Industries . . . . .	3-266
Figure SUB-1	Tongass / Kasaan Village Aboriginal Use Area . . . . .	3-294
Figure SUB-2	Subsistence Harvest as Percent of Meat and Fish Consumed . . . . .	3-306
Figure REC-1	Existing and Potential Recreation Sites . . . . .	3-341
Figure REC-2	Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 1 . . . . .	3-347
Figure REC-3	Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 2 . . . . .	3-348
Figure REC-4	Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 3 . . . . .	3-349
Figure REC-5	Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 4 . . . . .	3-350
Figure REC-6	Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 5 . . . . .	3-351
Figure REC-7	Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 6 . . . . .	3-352
Figure SCE-1	Map Showing Location of Viewpoints Used in Analysis and Viewsheds Defined . . . . .	3-360
Figure SCE-2	Map Displaying Existing Visual Condition of Project Area . . . . .	3-364
Figure SCE-3	Map Displaying the Proposed or Adopted VQO of Identified Viewsheds . . . . .	3-365
Figure SCE-4	West Arm Cholmondeley Toward Cannery Creek-Viewpoint A-Alternative 4 . . . . .	3-367

## Figures

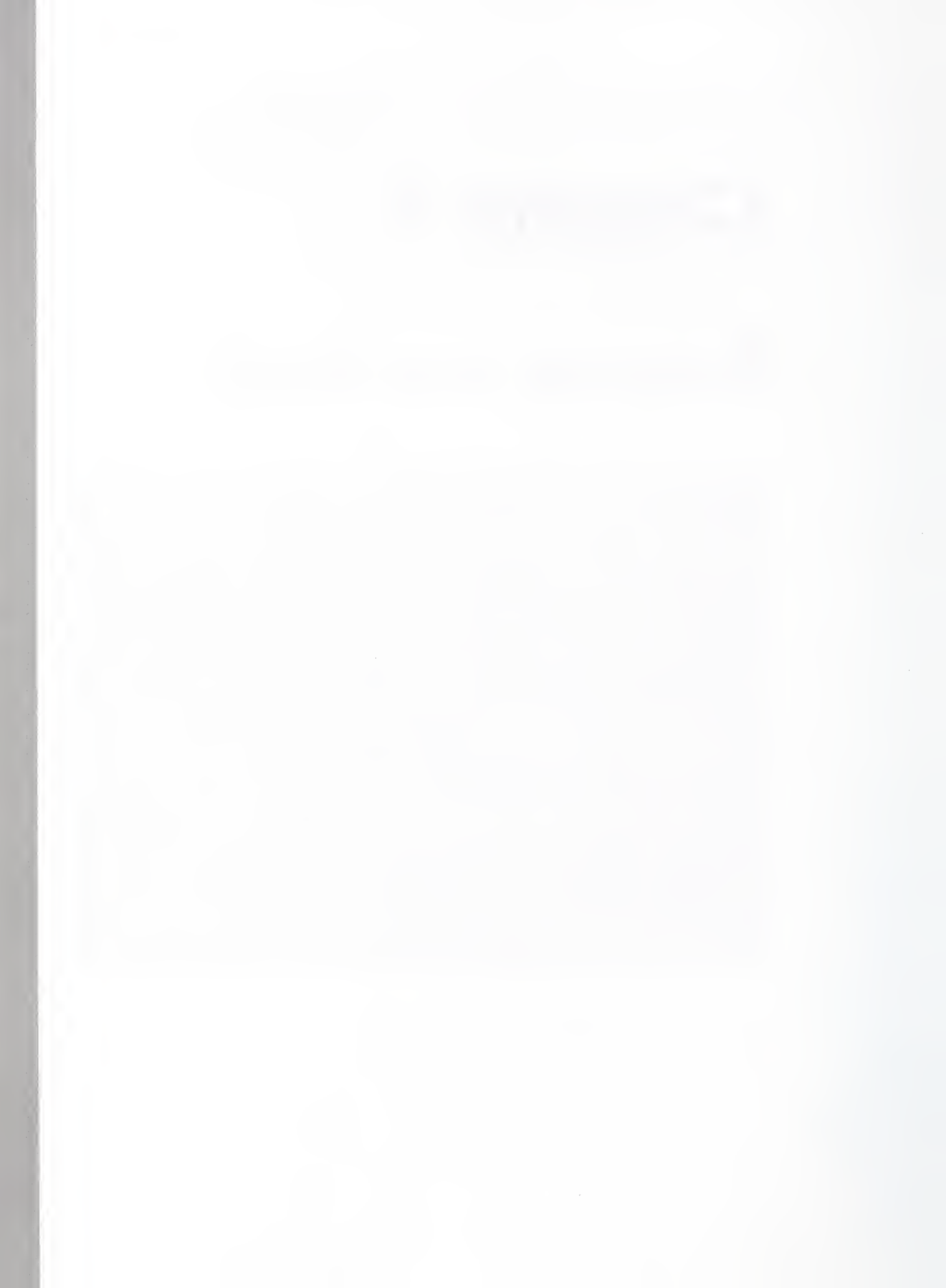
Figure SCE-5	West Arm Cholmondeley Toward Cannery Creek-Viewpoint A-Alternatives 3, 5, and 6 . . . . .	3-367
Figure SCE-6	West Arm Cholmondeley Toward Cannery Creek-Alternatives 3, 5 and 6 Mitigated . . . . .	3-368
Figure SCE-7	Mouth of Sunny Cove Toward S.W.-Viewpoint B-Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6 . . . . .	3-370
Figure SCE-8	Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove-Viewpoint C-Alternative 2 . . . . .	3-372
Figure SCE-9	Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove-Viewpoint C-Alternative 6 . . . . .	3-372
Figure SCE-10	Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove-Viewpoint C-Alternatives 4 and 6 . . . . .	3-373
Figure SCE-11	Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove-Viewpoint C-Alternative 5 . . . . .	3-373
Figure SCE-12	Lancaster Cove/Hump Island Toward North of Lancaster Cove-Viewpoint D- Alternatives 3, 5, and 6 . . . . .	3-374
Figure SCE-13	Lancaster Cove/Hump Island Toward North of Lancaster Cove-Viewpoint D-Alternative 4 . . . . .	3-374
Figure SCE-14	Entrance to Chomondeley Sound Toward S.E.-Viewpoint E-Alternatives 3, 5, and 6 . . . . .	3-375
Figure SCE-15	Outlet Kitkun Bay Looking East-Viewpoint F-Alternative 2 . . . . .	3-377
Figure SCE-16	Outlet Kitkun Bay Looking East-Viewpoint F-Alternatives 3 and 6 . . . . .	3-377
Figure SCE-17	Outlet Kitkun Bay Looking East-Viewpoint F-Alternatives 4 and 5 . . . . .	3-378
Figure SCE-18	Port Johnson-Viewpoint G-Alternatives 2, 3, and 6 . . . . .	3-380
Figure SCE-19	Port Johnson-Viewpoint G-Alternatives 4 . . . . .	3-380
Figure SCE-20	Moira Sound-North-Viewpoint H-Alternative 3 . . . . .	3-382
Figure SCE-21	Moira Sound-North-Viewpoint H-Alternatives 4 and 6 . . . . .	3-382
Figure SCE-22	Moira Sound-South-Viewpoint I-Alternative 3 . . . . .	3-383
Figure SCE-23	Moira Sound-South-Viewpoint I-Alternatives 4 and 6 . . . . .	3-383
Figure SCE-24	North Arm-Center of Bay Looking East-Viewpoint J-Alternatives 3, 4 and 6 . . . . .	3-385
Figure SCE-25	North Arm-Center of Bay Looking East-Viewpoint J-Alternatives 3, 4 and 6 (Mitigated). . . . .	3-385
Figure RF-11	Roads Open and Scheduled for Closure . . . . .	3-397
Figure MAR-1	Existing and Proposed LTFs for Each Alternative . . . . .	3-399
Figure MAR-2	Sites Considered in Detail . . . . .	3-401

# Chapter 1

## Purpose and Need

### Outline

Introduction . . . . .	1-2
Decision to be Made . . . . .	1-2
Document Organization . . . . .	1-2
Project Area . . . . .	1-3
Proposed Action . . . . .	1-6
Purpose and Need . . . . .	1-6
Reasons for Scheduling the Environmental Analysis of the Chasina Project Area . . . . .	1-7
The Decision Making Process . . . . .	1-8
Public Involvement . . . . .	1-12
Issues . . . . .	1-13
Federal and State Permits, Licenses, and Certifications . . . . .	1-15
Legislation and Executive Orders Related to This EIS . . . . .	1-16
Availability of the Planning Record . . . . .	1-17





# Chapter 1

## Purpose and Need

### Key Terms

**Allowable Sale Quantity (ASQ)**—the maximum quantity of timber that may be sold each decade from a National Forest.

**Land Use Designation (LUD)**—method of classifying land uses, allocated by the Forest Plan.

**MMBF**—million board feet.

**Management area**—an area for which management direction was written in the Forest Plan (TLMP 1997). Management areas encompass one or more Value Comparison Units (VCUs).

**Offering**—Forest Service specification of timber harvest units, subdivisions, roads, and other facilities and operations to meet the requirements of a contract.

**Old-growth forest**—an ecosystem distinguished by old trees and related structural attributes. Old-growth forests encompass the latter stages of stand development. They typically differ from earlier stages of stand development in a variety of characteristics which may include tree size, accumulation of large dead woody material, number of canopy layers, tree species composition, and ecosystem function.

**Scoping process**—activities used to determine the scope and significance of a proposed action, what level of analysis is required, what data is needed, and what level of public participation is appropriate.

**Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP)**—the 10-year land allocation plan for the Tongass National Forest, also known as the Forest Plan. The original TLMP was completed in 1979 and was amended in 1986 and again in 1991. The TLMP has been revised. The Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS) for the Proposed Revised Forest Plan was issued in 1990; a supplement to the TLMP Revision DEIS was issued in 1991 (TLMP Revision Supplement DEIS 1991a); a Revised Supplement to the TLMP Revision Supplement DEIS was issued in 1996 (Revised Supplement Draft TLMP EIS 1996a) and the TLMP Revision Final EIS was issued in 1997 (TLMP 1997).

**Value Comparison Unit (VCU)**—areas which generally encompass a drainage basin to provide a common set of areas where resource inventories can be conducted and resource interpretations made.

## Introduction

In compliance with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and other relevant State and Federal laws and regulations, the Forest Service has prepared this Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) on the effects of timber harvest in the Chasina Project Area (Figure 1-2) on Prince of Wales Island of the Ketchikan Administrative Area, Tongass National Forest. The proposed action would make approximately 50 million board feet (MMBF) of timber available to the Ketchikan Area Timber Sale Program. This EIS discloses the direct, indirect, and cumulative environmental impacts and any irreversible or irretrievable commitment of resources that would result from each proposed alternative.

## Decision to be Made

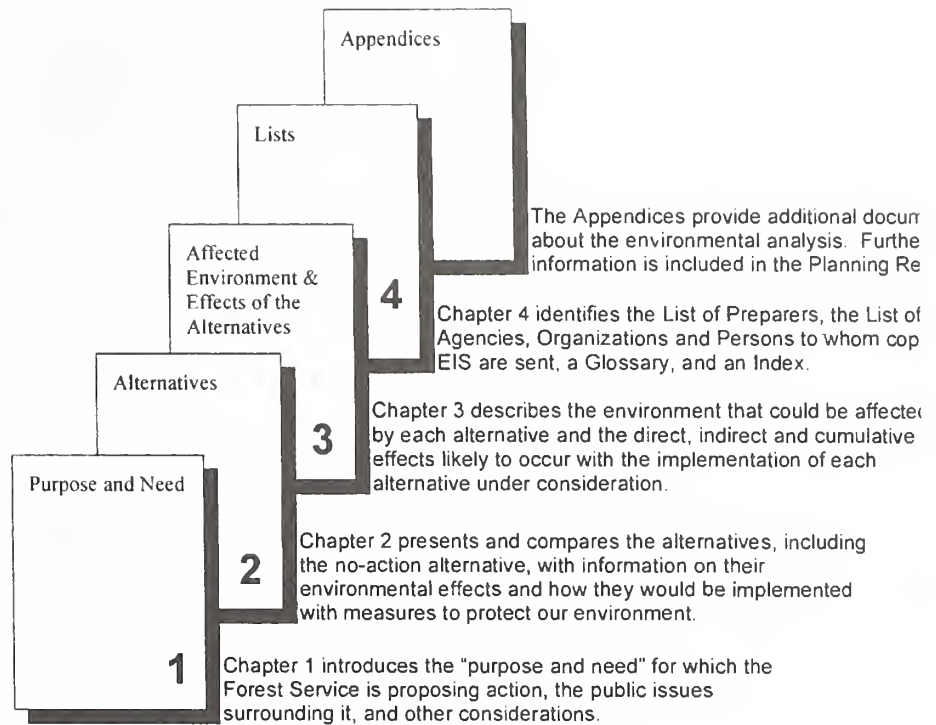
Based on the environmental analysis, the Ketchikan Area Forest Supervisor must decide whether or not and, if so, how to make timber available from the Chasina Project Area in accordance with the implementation of the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP). The decisions will include:

- the volume to make available in this project area, in multiple timber offerings;
- the location and design of timber harvest units;
- the location and design of road systems;
- the location and design of the log transfer facility;
- necessary mitigation measures, and enhancement opportunities for resources other than timber;
- whether there may be a significant restriction on subsistence use, and if so, related findings and measures to minimize impacts on subsistence users;
- road management objectives to include closures for resource protection;
- Forest Plan Amendment

## Document Organization

This EIS is prepared according to the format (Figure 1-1) established by Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations (40 CFR 1500-1508) implementing NEPA. Chapter 1, in addition to explaining the purpose and need for the proposed action, discusses how the Chasina Project relates to the Forest Plan and to other related NEPA actions, the key issues driving the EIS analysis, and the authorities guiding the EIS process. Chapter 2 describes and compares the alternatives for accomplishing the proposed action and no-action alternatives. Chapter 3 describes the potentially affected environment and the anticipated effects of the alternatives on the natural and human environment in the project area and those areas directly affected by the proposed action. Chapter 4 contains the list of preparers, distribution list, glossary, index, and cited literature. Finally, a series of appendices provides helpful references to understanding the EIS. Additional documentation may be found in the project Planning Record located at the District Ranger's office in Craig.

Figure 1-1  
How This Document is Organized



## Project Area

The 68,927 acre Chasina Project Area is located approximately 25 air miles southwest of Ketchikan, Alaska (Figure 1-2). It encompasses an area south of Cholmondeley Sound on Prince of Wales Island extending from South Arm east all the way out to Chasina Point. There are no communities within or adjacent to the project area. Access to the project area is by small plane or boat generally originating in Ketchikan.

The project area includes the value comparison units (VCUs) 674, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, and 682 (Figure 1-3). VCU boundaries generally follow major watershed divides with a few minor exceptions.

Figure 1-2  
Project Area Vicinity Map

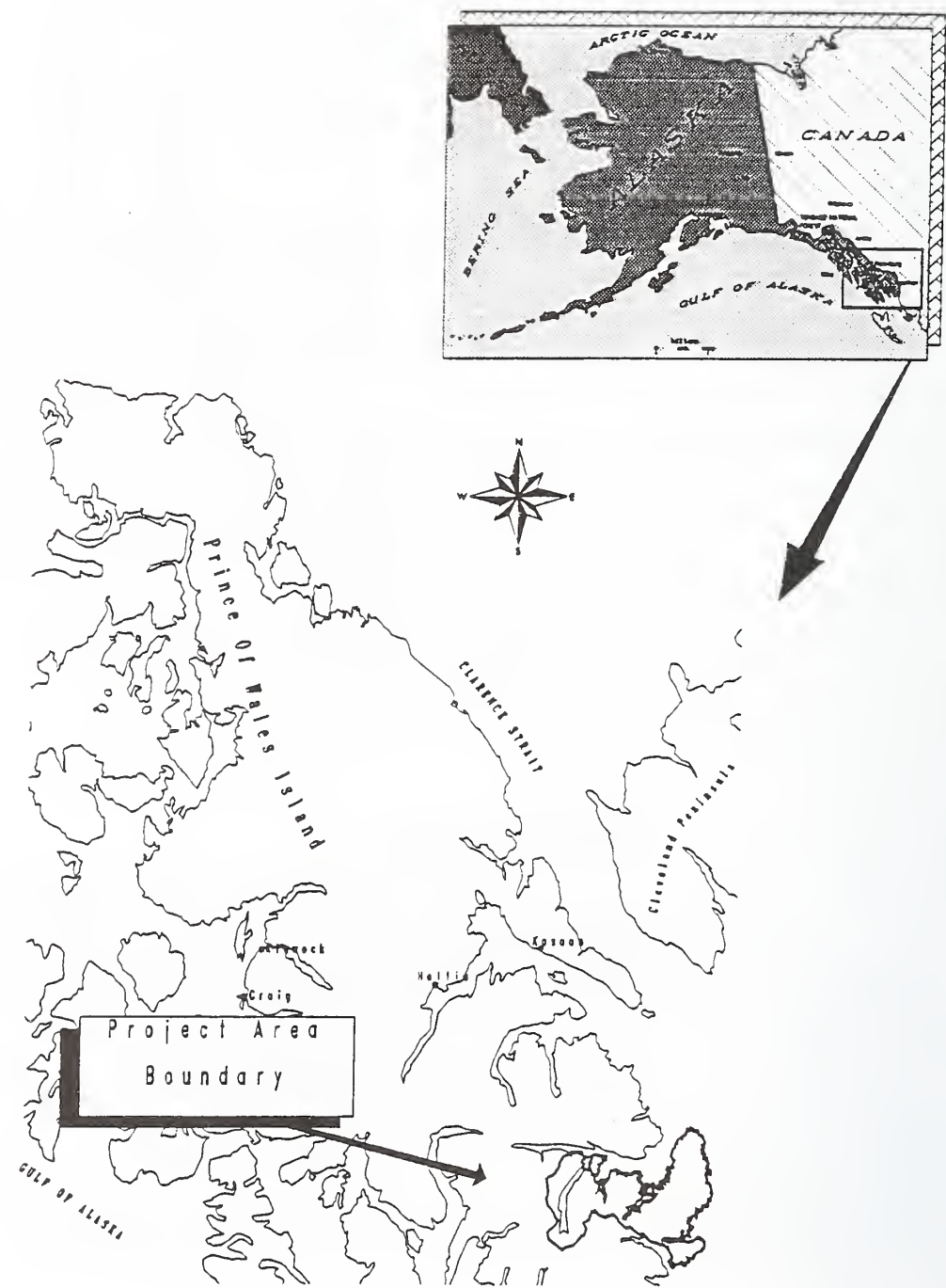
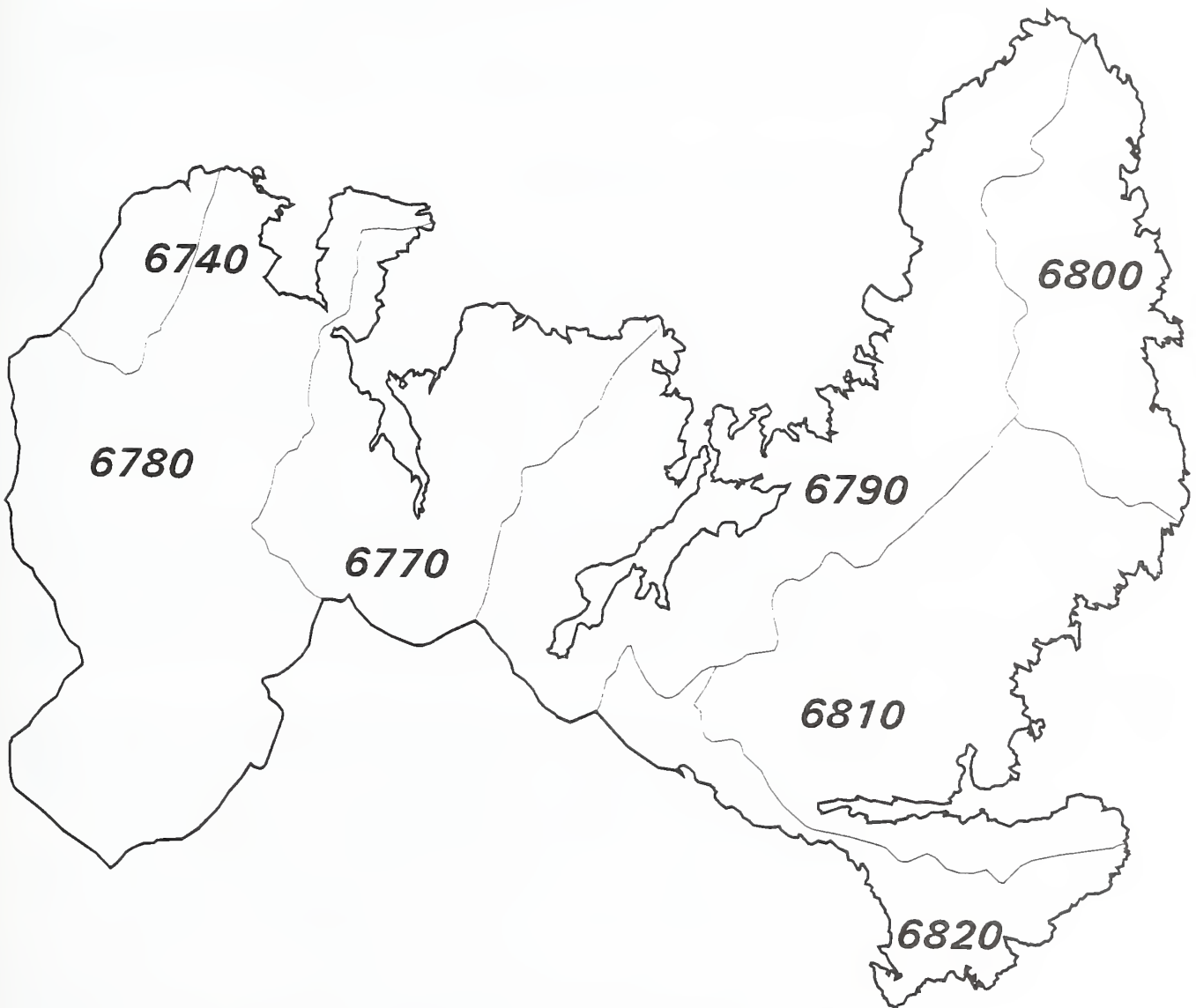


Figure 1-3  
Project Area VCU Boundaries





## Proposed Action

The proposed action would harvest approximately 50 MMBF of timber from an estimated 1,700 acres through a series of offerings beginning in 1998. Timber sale offerings from this harvest will be made available to the Ketchikan Area Timber Sale Program. Approximately 8 miles of existing road would be reconstructed and 17 miles of new road would be built to facilitate timber removal. One existing log transfer facility (LTF) and one newly constructed facility could be utilized to implement the action alternatives.

The proposed action is consistent with implementation of the Forest Plan known as the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP 1997), thereby moving from the existing forest condition toward the desired future condition.

## Purpose and Need

The purpose and need for this project is to implement direction contained in the TLMP (1997), to help provide a sustained level of timber supply to meet annual and TLMP planning cycle market demand, and to provide local employment in the woods products industry, consistent with providing for the multiple use and sustained yield of all renewable forest resources. The alternatives and actions considered are possible approaches to meeting this purpose and need. The EIS study process was designed to help insure that, in meeting this purpose and need, the Forest Service makes the most informed decision possible for this project area specifically, and for the Tongass National Forest generally. The Chasina Project is expected to provide up to approximately 50 MMBF of timber, given the guidance of the Forest Plan.

### TLMP 1997

Alternatives developed for the Chasina Project took into account the LUDs and standards and guidelines that were for the TLMP (1997). This includes 1,000-foot beach buffers, blocks of Old-growth Habitat Reserves in the vicinity of South Arm Cholmondeley Sound and the area between Kitkun Bay and North Arm Moira Sound, areas managed for Modified Landscape (VCUs 674 and 682), and the current land status (some land has been recently conveyed to Kootznoowoo Native Corporation). The rest of the project area is to be managed for timber production.

### Timber Demand

Section 101 of the Tongass Timber Reform Act of 1990 (TTRA), directs the USDA Forest Service "... to the extent consistent with providing for the multiple use and sustained yield of all renewable forest resources, seek to provide a supply of timber from the Tongass National Forest which (1) meets the annual market demand for timber from such forest and (2) meets the market demand from such forest for each planning cycle." Section 101 of the TTRA specifies that Forest Service efforts to seek to meet market demand are subject to appropriations, National Forest Management Act (NFMA) requirements, and other applicable laws. Providing a timber supply from the Tongass for sustained local wood products industry employment and related economic and social benefits is an objective of the TLMP and the Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA), as amended by the TTRA.

There is demonstrated mill capacity in the region to process logs, if a supply of timber is available. There is also a projected need for the timber volume being considered from this project area for the Forest Service to come closer to meeting an objective of providing a

three-year supply of timber under contract to the existing dependent industry (see Appendix A), as a means of providing for stability in relation to fluctuating market demand (Morse, 1995). There is a substantial component of the economy of Southeast Alaska that is dependent on a viable timber industry. Based on these factors, the need for the project is clearly indicated.

## Reasons for Scheduling the Environmental Analysis of the Chasina Project Area

Reasons for scheduling the Chasina Project Area at this time, for detailed consideration of timber harvest under the Ketchikan Area Timber Sale Program, may be summarized as follows:

- The Chasina Project Area contains a sufficient amount of harvestable timber volume designated as Timber Production, and is therefore appropriate for harvest under the Tongass National Forest Land Management Plan (TLMP). Available information indicates harvest of the amount of timber being considered for this project can occur consistent with the TLMP (1997) standards and guidelines and other requirements for resource protection.
- Areas with available timber will be necessary to consider for harvest in order to seek to provide a supply of timber from the Tongass National Forest which (1) meets the annual market demand for timber from such forest and (2) meets the market demand from such forest for each planning cycle, pursuant to Section 101 of the Tongass Timber Reform Act (TTRA).
- Effects on subsistence resources are projected to differ little according to which sequence these areas are subjected to harvest. Harvesting other areas on the Tongass National Forest with available timber is expected to have similar potential effects on resources, including those used for subsistence because of widespread distribution of subsistence use and other factors. Harvest of these other areas is foreseeable, in any case, over the forest planning horizon under the TLMP.
- Providing substantially less timber volume than required to meet the TLMP and TTRA Section 101 timber supply and employment objectives in order to avoid harvest in the Chasina Project Area or other project areas is not necessary or reasonable.
- It is reasonable to schedule harvest in the Chasina Project Area at the present time rather than other areas in terms of previous harvest entry and access, level of controversy over subsistence and other effects, and the ability to complete the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) process and make timber available. Other areas that are reasonable to consider for harvest in the near future are the subject of other project EISs that are currently ongoing or scheduled to begin soon.

Additional information about why the Chasina area was selected is provided in Appendix A.

The existing condition of the project area is described in Chapter 3 of this EIS, in the “Affected Environment” portion of each resource section. A moderate amount of timber harvest occurred inside the project area around Lancaster Cove/Kitkun Bay in 1989-90. The project area contains 26,141 acres of commercial forest land, of which 24,178 acres of old growth remain. Recreation use within the project area focuses on water related activities. Known land-based subsistence use has been low.

### Existing and Desired Future Condition

The desired future condition was established through the Forest planning process and is presented in the TLMP (1997). This management direction contained goals for timber, recreation, visuals, fish, wildlife, and other resources. It is anticipated that more than half of the Forest will remain in a basically unmodified state over time, if current land use designations remained the same.

The management emphasis and direction was further refined as the desired future condition in the TLMP (1997). This desired future condition consists of a mosaic of timber stands of varying sizes and ages, interspersed with areas of old growth and nonforest vegetation, furnishing a sustained yield of timber in balance with other resources and uses.

Achievement of the desired future condition as described in the TLMP (1997) will require many decades. It will be reached by applying integrated resource management practices that are responsive to site specific, on-the-ground conditions. Roaded access would be provided for suitable timber lands. Harvested old-growth timber sites will be converted to successive stands of younger trees which will produce higher average volumes per acre than existing stands. Timber, including saw logs and utility volume, will have contributed to the Forest allowable sale quantity (ASQ).

Riparian areas will be managed to benefit riparian dependent resources. Water quality will continue to meet or exceeds State standards. Fish habitat conditions will be maintained or improved. Sensitive visual resources, particularly as viewed from saltwater, will be consistent with the proposed visual quality objectives (VQOs).

Recreation opportunities will continue to be associated with float plane and boat access from saltwater. Primitive recreation opportunities will be reduced, but dispersed and developed recreation opportunities associated with roads will be maintained or improved.

Old-growth stands will be reduced in the project area but unsuitable lands, beach fringe, estuary, and stream protection zones, in addition to adjacent large blocks of old-growth habitat reserves (Nutmaw LUD II area and the South Prince of Wales wilderness area), will be retained. Old-growth associated species such as hairy woodpecker, marten, Vancouver Canada goose, river otter, and Sitka black-tailed deer will continue to be adequately represented. Management may be adjusted to accommodate any verified use of the area by threatened, endangered, and sensitive species in accordance with recovery habitat maintenance and objectives.

## The Decision Making Process

National Forest planning involves several levels of decision. Decision making begins with long-range planning at the national level, continuing down through the regional and forest levels to the project level. The Chasina Project is part of this process. This EIS is a project-level analysis; as such, it does not attempt to address decisions made at higher levels. It does, however, implement direction provided at those higher levels. Specifically, the Chasina Project would implement direction in the Forest Plan (TLMP, 1997).

### National Level

The 1990 Program and Assessment, as directed by the Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act of 1974 (Resources Planning Act) as amended, provides national direction for resource allocations and targets. An assessment of the forest and rangeland renewable resources is required every ten years, and development of a program for managing those resources is required every five years. The Resources Planning Act program provides Congress with a basis to link annual budgets with long-term resource needs.



## Regional Level

The Alaska Regional Guide EIS (1983), addressed regional issues specific to Alaska, established management standards and guidelines, and displayed resource outputs for the Tongass National Forest. The Forest Plan takes into account this regional direction.

## Forest Level

The National Forest Management Act of 1976 (NFMA) directs each National Forest to prepare an overall plan of activities. The Forest Plan provides land and resource management direction for the Forest. It establishes LUDs to guide management of the land for certain uses. The LUDs describe the activities that may be authorized within the Value Comparison Units (VCUs), the boundaries of which usually follow easily recognizable (major) watershed divides.

For the Tongass National Forest, the original Forest Plan was the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP) of 1979, as amended in 1986, and again in February 1991, as a result of the Tongass Timber Reform Act (TTRA). The Forest Plan has undergone revision, as required by the NFMA. A supplement to the TLMP Draft EIS was issued in 1991 (USDA Forest Service 1991a). A Revised Supplement to the 1991 SDEIS was issued in 1996 (USDA Forest Service 1996a). The current Forest Plan was issued in 1997.

## Project Level

### Other Projects

The Polk Inlet EIS was the most recent EIS within portions of the project area. It provided 113 MMBF of timber which is being prepared for offer. None of the selected Polk Inlet ROD harvest units were located within the Chasina Project boundary.

### Current Project

The Chasina EIS presents a broad range of alternatives and displays site-specific descriptions and impacts of the proposed activities of six alternatives.

This EIS is "tiered" to the TLMP EIS 1997 as permitted by 40 CFR 1502.20.

Relevant discussion from the following documents has been incorporated by reference rather than repeated (40 CFR 1502.21).

This EIS proposes management consistent with the TLMP (1997). Documented forest-wide analyses in the TLMP (1997) are referenced rather than repeated in this EIS.

The old-growth Habitat Reserve strategy was reviewed by USF&WS and ADF&G which resulted in the Chasina Point small old-growth Habitat Reserve being expanded to the west.

This EIS also tiers to the Alaska Regional Guide EIS, 1983.

The Interdisciplinary Team (IDT) used a systematic approach to analyze the proposed project, estimate the environmental effects, and prepare this EIS. The planning process complies with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA). Planning was coordinated with affected Federal, State, local agencies, and local Federally recognized tribes.

## TLMP 1997

The TLMP supplements management direction through detailed management prescriptions and standards and guidelines. There are 16 LUDs identified in the TLMP (1997), five of which apply to the Chasina Project Area. The TLMP LUDs and other land ownerships allocated in the project area are described below.

### Minerals (MM)

The emphasis of this LUD is to encourage mineral exploration and development of areas with high mineral potential.

### Old-Growth Habitat (OG)

The emphasis of this LUD is to maintain old-growth forests in a natural or near-natural condition for wildlife and fish habitat.

## Modified Landscape (ML)

The emphasis of this LUD is to provide for natural-appearing landscapes while allowing timber harvest.

## Timber Production (TM)

The emphasis of this LUD is to manage the area for industrial wood production. It promotes conditions favorable for the timber resource and for maximum long-term timber production.

## Semi Remote Recreation (SM)

The emphasis of this LUD is to provide for recreation and tourism in natural-appearing settings where opportunities for solitude and self-reliance are moderate to high.

Table 1-1 displays the project area VCUs, and the corresponding acres associated with each Land-Use Allocation. Figure 1-4 displays the location of the TLMP (1997) land allocations within the Chasina Project Area.

Table 1-1  
Land Use Designations as Defined in TLMP (1997)

VCU	SM	ML	TM	OG	MM	Total Acres
674		1,866	65			1,931
677			1,721	1,590		3,311
678	75	59	9,108	1,874		11,116
679			8,672	4,454	(4,988)	13,126
680			2,397	1,525		3,922
681			4,272	2,118	(3,137)	6,390
682			2,678	1,735	(1,027)	4,413
		1,925	28,913	13,296	(9,152)	44,209

SM—Semi Remote Recreation

ML—Modified Landscape

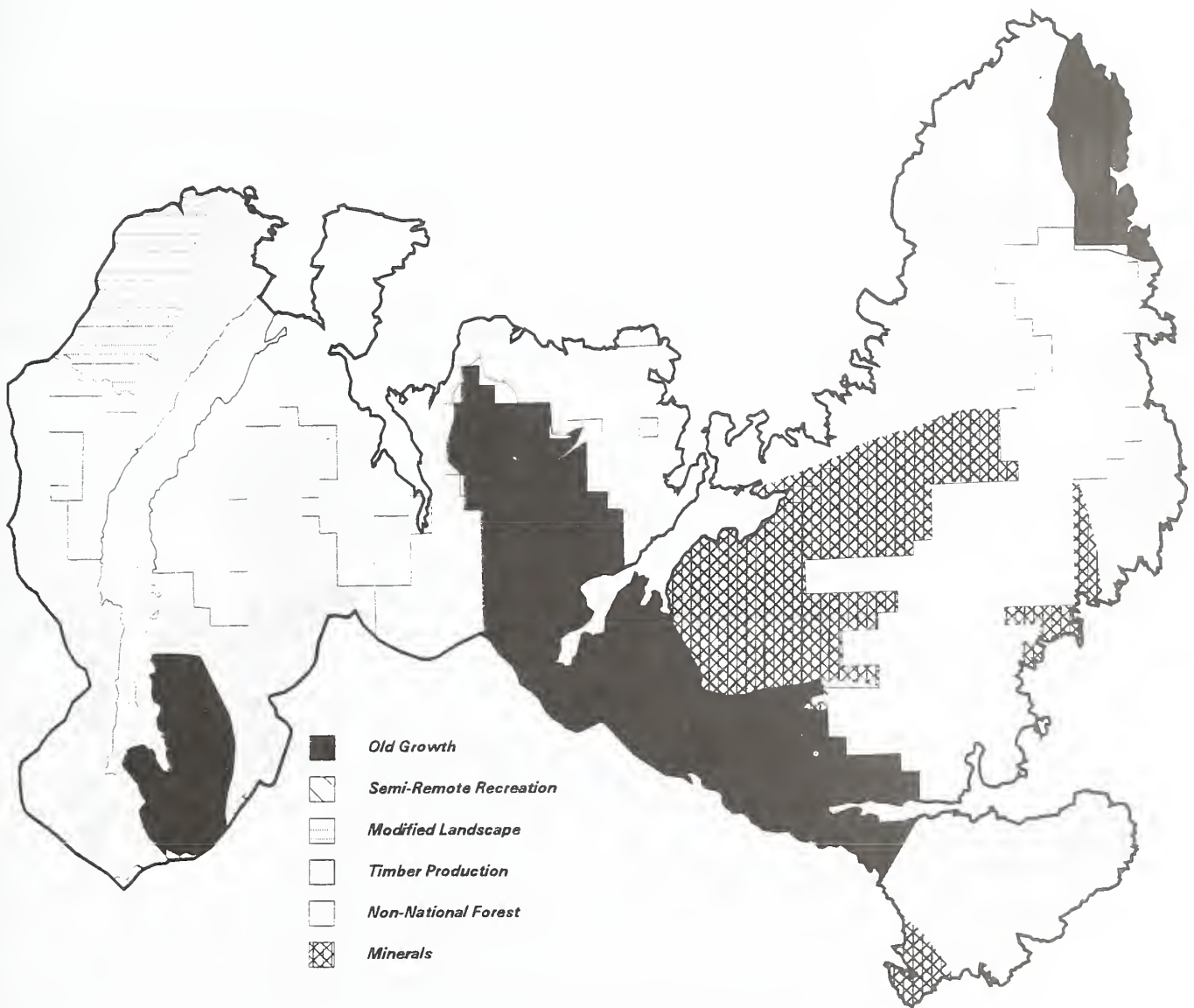
TM—Timber Production

OG—Old-growth Habitat

MM—Minerals (Minerals LUDs will overlap other LUDs)

Note: Discrepancies may be found between tables due to rounding.

Figure 1-4  
Chasina Project Area Land Allocations as Proposed in TLMP (1997)



## Public Involvement

### Scoping

The NEPA process (40 CFR 1501.7) was used to determine the scope of the issues to be addressed and identify major concerns related to the proposed action. The scoping process was used to invite public participation and collect initial comments. The public was invited to comment on the project through the following process.

#### Notice of Intent (NOI)

A Notice of Intent was published in the Federal Register on November 2, 1995, when it was decided that an EIS was to be completed for the project.

#### Public Mailing

On October 30, 1995, a letter providing information and seeking public comment (scoping document) was mailed to approximately 300 individuals and groups that had previously shown interest in Forest Service projects in Southeast Alaska. The mailing included Federal agencies, State agencies and divisions, Native and municipal offices, and businesses and other organizations and groups, in addition to individual citizens. Approximately 104 responses to this initial mailing were received.

#### Local News Media

Announcements about the project were printed in the Ketchikan Daily News, Island News, Wrangell Sentinel, Sitka Sentinel, Petersburg Pilot, and Juneau Empire. A scoping document describing the project was placed in the October 27, 1995, edition of the Ketchikan Daily News.

#### Briefings

Additional briefings were held to provide information and clarification on issues and alternatives from April of 1995 through December of 1997 with individuals and organizations. Consultation with local, State, Federal, and local tribal government agencies also occurred during this time.

### Draft EIS

#### Availability of Draft EIS for Public Comment

Availability of the Draft EIS was announced in the Federal register on March 7, 1997, with a comment deadline for public comment listed as April 25, 1997. Documents were mailed to the Distribution List in late February.

A news release was issued on February 27, 1997, in the Ketchikan Daily News and March 10, 1997, in the Island News. The news release described the project location, features of the Preferred Alternative, and listed the dates, times, and locations of Open House/ANILCA 810 Subsistence Hearings. The Meetings and Brevities section of the Ketchikan Daily News announced the hearing dates and locations on March 15-16, and March 18, 1997.

#### Subsistence Hearings

Subsistence hearings on the Draft EIS were held in the communities of Hydaburg, March 18, 1997 at the ANB Hall and Saxman, Alaska, March 20, 1997, at the Saxman Clan House. Comments were recorded. Open houses were held in conjunction with the subsistence hearings to describe the analysis process and answer public questions on the Draft EIS. Dates, times, and locations were included in the cover letter accompanying every document and was announced by local media as described above.



## Final EIS

### Response

Approximately 13 individuals, agencies, and organizations submitted written comments on the Chasina Draft EIS. In addition, verbal testimonies were received at the two subsistence hearings. The 45 day comment period officially closed April 25, 1997; however, all letters were accepted, the comments analyzed, and incorporated into the Final EIS as appropriate.

The Final EIS has been filed with the Environmental Protection Agency and is available to the public.

For a complete analysis of public comment and Forest Service response to public comment, see the Final EIS, Appendix K.

Copies of the legal notices and newspaper articles, as well as comments received, are included in the project Planning Record.

## Issues

### Issues Associated with the Proposed Action

The significant public issues, management concerns, and resource opportunities identified through the public and internal scoping process were used to formulate issues statements. Some of these issues were raised by the public, and some reflect Forest Service concerns. Similar issues and concerns were grouped when appropriate.

Issues 1 through 8 were determined to be significant and within the scope of the project. All these issues will be addressed in all alternatives. Issues A-E were considered but eliminated from detailed study because their resolution falls outside the scope of the Chasina project.

#### Issue 1: Timber Economics and Supply

The issue encompasses public concern with the amount of timber available and proposed for harvest, methods of timber harvest, whether timber harvest should be continued, and balancing timber production with other Forest uses. It includes the issue of how the project area contributes to the long-term timber supply. It also includes concern for ensuring cost-effective timber harvest.

#### Issue 2: Fish Habitat and Water Quality

This issue addresses public concern for maintaining water quality in streams which provide suitable habitat for anadromous and resident fish. Fish and shellfish within the Chasina Project Area are important to sport, commercial, and subsistence users throughout Southeast Alaska.

#### Issue 3: Recreation and Scenic Quality

Forest management activities could affect existing recreational pursuits for users of the Chasina Project Area. More specifically, increased human access, timber harvest, and other developments could affect recreation values and opportunities including: hunting, fishing, scenic quality, and existing recreation facilities. Comments mentioned the importance of protecting the scenic quality along inlets and bays. Other aspects of this issue were related to conflicting uses in North Arm Moira.

#### Issue 4: Wildlife

This issue includes concerns over several wildlife species and the habitats critical to the maintenance of those wildlife populations; Alaskan wildlife is valuable for aesthetic, economic, recreational, ecological, and subsistence purposes. Of primary concern are the effects of timber harvest and associated road construction upon wildlife species dependent on old-growth habitat. The long-term disposition of previously mapped old-growth areas (commonly referred to as retention areas) in the project area was identified as part of this



issue. Related to the overall concern is the question of whether timber harvest operations would further fragment existing large blocks of old-growth habitat and result in declines in biological diversity. The need for a project specific old-growth habitat strategy that ties into a larger scale habitat strategy was also identified.

## **Issue 5: Subsistence**

Primary concern is the potential effect, as well as the cumulative effects, of timber harvest and road construction upon the abundance and distribution of subsistence resources. For many, subsistence consists of hunting, fishing, trapping, and gathering to supplement their food sources, income, and other needs. For Southeast Alaska's Natives, it is a way of life directly related to preserving their culture and traditions. The Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA) specifically requires the Forest Service to determine if the proposed activities may significantly restrict subsistence use. Other aspects to be evaluated are competition from non-rural subsistence users and access to the resources.

## **Issue 6: Caves and Karst**

This issue reflects concerns about how the cave and karst resources in the project area will be managed and protected.

## **Issue 7: Social and Economic Effects**

This issue reflects concerns about effects on community employment and income, population, community stability, and lifestyles. The economies of most communities in Southeast Alaska depend almost exclusively on the Tongass National Forest to provide natural resources for uses such as fishing, tourism, recreation, timber harvesting, mining, and subsistence. Many Southeast Alaskans want to maintain the natural environment which makes their lifestyle unique. At the same time, they want to continue maintaining their economic livelihood.

## **Issue 8: Marine Environment**

The marine waters and their associated mud flats and estuaries found in protected coves and bays within the project area provide habitat for species such as Dungeness crab and juvenile salmon. Since coves and bays are the points of concentrated activity associated with marine transport of logs, logging camps, and sort yards, some marine species are subject to effects from log transfer and storage facilities. One potential and one existing LTF site are under consideration in the alternatives.

The following public issues were considered but eliminated from detailed study because their resolution is beyond the scope of this document.

## **Issue A: Land Use Designations/Forest Plan Revision**

This issue focuses on the stated desire of some commenters to change TLMP Land Use Designations to eliminate, reduce, or increase the level of harvest and/or maximize specific resources.

Land use allocation is a Forest planning issue. The current Forest Plan has just been revised and provided a forum for people who wish to see the area managed in a manner that differs from the current direction.

## **Issue B: Development Outside the Project Area**

Comments regarding the general level of development outside the project area are not considered issues ripe for decision under the Chasina EIS. These areas include other National Forest land on Prince of Wales Island, and Native lands. However, timber harvest that has occurred on Native lands will be included in the Cumulative Effects Analysis for the various resources.

## **Issues Outside the Scope of This Analysis**

## **Issue D: Timber Supply and Demand**

Timber supply and demand is a regional issue and exceeds the scope of this analysis. A site-specific environmental analysis documents the effects of the proposed activities; it does not constitute the selling or conveyance of property rights. The volume of timber cleared in any NEPA document may be offered (sold) in part, in whole, or not at all.

The timber offered for sale (timber offerings) may occur in one year or be spread over a three- to five-year period. Therefore, trying to predict the effects of the proposed activities upon the regional timber supply or demand is beyond the capability and scope of this document beyond concluding that timber offerings that implement the project will contribute volume to the timber supply and help meet demand.

The issue of how the project area contributes to the long-term timber supply is addressed as part of Issue 1: Timber Economics and Supply.

## **Issue E: Manage Chasina for Sustained Yield**

The National Forest Management Act (NFMA) directs that a sustainable level of harvest be identified for each National Forest. A sustainable level of harvest is one in which the level of harvest is equal to or less than the rate of growth over a period of time (ten years in the case of NFMA). There is no direction or intent to establish a sustainable level of harvest for individual project areas or small geographic subdivisions of the Forest.

# **Federal and State Permits, Licenses, and Certifications**

To proceed with the timber harvest as addressed in this EIS, various permits must be obtained from Federal and State agencies. Administrative actions on these permits would be initiated after the EIS is filed with the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The agencies and their responsibilities are listed below.

## **U.S. Army Corps of Engineers**

- Approval of discharge of dredged or fill material into waters of the United States (Section 404 of the Clean Water Act of 1977, as amended).
- Approval of construction of structures or work in navigable waters of the United States (Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899).

## **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**

- Storm water discharge permit.
- National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System review (Section 402 of the Clean Water Act).

## **State of Alaska, Department of Natural Resources**

- Authorization for occupancy and use of tidelands and submerged lands.

## **State of Alaska, Department of Environmental Conservation**

- Certification of compliance with Alaska Water Quality Standards (Section 401 Certification).
- Solid Waste Disposal Permit (Section 402 of the Clean Water Act).

## **U.S. Coast Guard**

- Coast Guard Bridge Permit (in accordance with the General Bridge Act of 1946) required for all structures constructed across navigable waters of the U.S.

## **Legislation and Executive Orders Related to This EIS**

- Shown below is a brief list of laws pertaining to preparation of EISs on Federal lands. Some of these laws are specific to Alaska, while others pertain to all Federal lands.
- National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (as amended)
- Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968, amended 1986
- National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1969 (as amended)
- Clean Air Act of 1970 (as amended)
- Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (ANCSA) of 1971
- Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972
- Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973 (as amended)
- Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act (RPA) of 1974 (as amended)
- National Forest Management Act (NFMA) of 1976 (as amended)
- Clean Water Act of 1977 (as amended)
- American Indian Religious Freedom Act of 1978
- Alaska Native Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA) of 1980
- Archeological Resource Protection Act of 1980
- Cave Resource Protection Act of 1988
- Tongass Timber Reform Act (TTRA) of 1990
- Executive Order 11988 (floodplains)
- Executive Order 11990 (wetlands)
- Executive Order 11593 (cultural)
- Executive Order 12962 (aquatic systems and recreational fisheries)
- Executive Order 12898 (environmental justice)

In addition, the Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA) of 1976, as amended, pertains to the preparation of an EIS. Federal lands are not included in the definition of the coastal zone as prescribed in the CZMA. However, the act requires that when Federal agencies conduct activities or development that affect the coastal zone, that agency's activities or development be consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the approved State Coastal Management Program. This determination is made by the U.S. Forest Service.

The Alaska Coastal Management Plan incorporated the Alaska Forest Resources and Practices Act of 1979 as applied standards and guidelines for timber harvesting and

## Availability of the Planning Record

An important consideration in preparation of this EIS has been reduction of paperwork as specified in 40 CFR 1500.4. In general, the objective is to furnish enough site-specific information to demonstrate a reasoned consideration of the environmental impacts of the alternatives and how these impacts can be mitigated.

The Planning Record is available upon issuance of the EIS at the Craig Ranger District office, Craig, Alaska. Other reference documents, such as the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP 1997), the Tongass Timber Reform Act, the Resources Planning Act, and the Alaska Regional Guide EIS, are available at public libraries around the region as well as at the Supervisor's Office in Ketchikan.



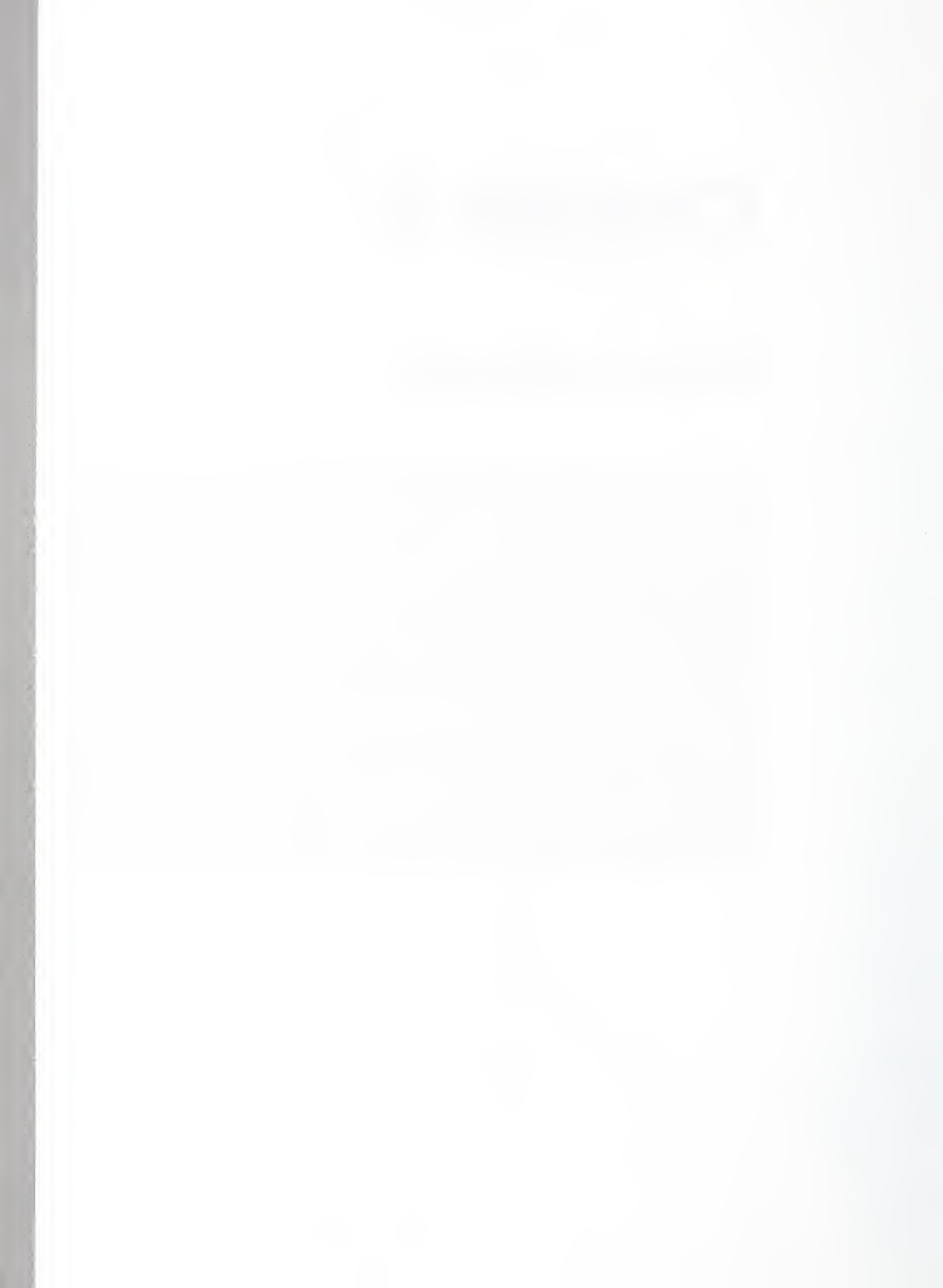


# Chapter 2

## Alternatives

### Outline

Introduction . . . . .	2-2
Changes Between DEIS and FEIS . . . . .	2-2
Alternative Development . . . . .	2-4
Alternatives Eliminated from Detailed Study . . . . .	2-12
Alternatives Considered for Detailed Study . . . . .	2-13
Forest Service Preferred Alternative . . . . .	2-16
Comparison of Alternatives . . . . .	2-16
Comparison of Alternatives by Significant Issue . . . . .	2-22
Mitigation Measures . . . . .	2-38
Monitoring . . . . .	2-44



# Chapter 2

## Alternatives

### Key Terms

**Alternative**—one of several policies, plans, or projects proposed for decision making.

**Best Management Practices (BMPs)**—practices used for the protection of water quality.

**Desired Future Condition**—concise statement that describes a desired condition to be achieved sometime in the future. It is normally expressed in broad, general terms and is timeless in that it has no specific date by which it is to be completed.

**FTE**—Full Time Equivalent; One FTE is equal to one full time employee for a period of one year.

**Large Old-growth Blocks**—contiguous blocks of wildlife habitat to be managed and conserved for breeding pairs, connectivity, and distribution of species of concern.

**Implementation monitoring**—collecting information to evaluate whether mitigation measures were carried out in the manner called for.

**Logging System Transportation Analysis (LSTA)**—interdisciplinary design and mapping of all potential timber harvest units, including associated logging and transportation systems.

**Mitigation**—measures designed to counteract or lessen environmental impacts.

**MMBF**—a million board feet.

**Partial cut**—a method of harvesting trees where any number of live trees are left standing in any of various spatial patterns; not clearcutting.

**Roadless Area**—an area of undeveloped public land identified by the TLMP (1997) within which there are no improved roads maintained for travel by means of motorized vehicles intended for highway use.

**Subsistence**—the customary and traditional uses by rural Alaskan residents of wild renewable resources for direct personal or family consumption.

**Windfirm**—individual trees that are able to resist windthrow or the configuration of harvest units so as not to create an opening which exposes the adjacent stand of timber to the direction of the major prevailing storm wind (southeast).

## Introduction

Chapter 2 summarizes the development of alternative actions for making timber available to the local forest products industry, while implementing the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP 1997) in the Chasina Project Area. It also discusses the alternatives considered but eliminated from detailed study. Finally this chapter explains and compares the six alternative actions selected for detailed study. Chapter 2 is intended to present the alternatives in comparative form, thus sharply defining the issues and providing a clear basis for choice among options by the decision maker and the public (40 CFR 1502.14).

Much of the information in Chapter 2 is summarized from Chapter 3, Environment and Effects. Chapter 3 contains the detailed scientific basis for establishing a baseline and measuring the environmental consequences for each of the alternatives. For the best understanding of the six alternatives, readers should consult Chapter 3.

## Changes Between DEIS and FEIS

There has been a refinement in the site-specific information for analysis in the Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS), compared to what was available at the time the Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS) was published. Refined information has been incorporated into the FEIS in order to make the proposed harvest units more site specific, as well as to make the units selected for each alternative more closely align with the alternative theme. The unit cards in Appendix J display the unit configuration, layout direction, and mitigation measures that apply to each unit.

### New Information

There are six general sources of improved information:

- Incorporated new LUDs and standards and guidelines into alternatives. This resulted in 1,000-foot beach buffers being applied to all alternatives and harvest units that occurred in old-growth habitat reserves were dropped from consideration;
- Additional Forest Service field reconnaissance;
- Public response to the DEIS (approximately 13 responses: see Appendix L) and Subsistence Hearings in Hydaburg and Saxman;
- Project area was selected for “Alternatives to Clearcutting” study by the Forestry Sciences Laboratory. Nine harvest units were modified to accommodate this study. All units will be yarded by helicopter in all alternatives except for one unit which is a no-cut control (Unit 679-477).
- Geographic Information System (GIS) information used in the analysis was updated to reflect new information or increased accuracy;
- Classification of previously unclassified streams. This information was incorporated into the unit configuration, mitigation, and analysis (Watershed Report-Aquatics Section). The updated streams are depicted on the unit cards, which now include Class IV streams.

## Improved Analysis

In addition to incorporating this refined information, the FEIS strengthened and expanded many of the discussions contained within the analysis based on public and internal comment. The resource analysis within the FEIS represents an improvement over what was presented in the DEIS. The following summarizes some of the more notable revisions by resource:

### Timber

- Updated and improved unit cards;
- Unit and road configurations updated to reflect revised stream buffers prescribed through the watershed analysis;
- The Forest Plan Record of Decision (ROD) identified four soil types that are not available for commercial timber production until more scientific information related to the effects of timber harvest is collected and analyzed. Those soil types are Kaikli, Karheen, Kitkun and Maybeso. This requirement meant the dropping of Unit 682-303 from all alternatives and field checking Unit 680-330 (only a few slivers of these soil types were in this unit).
- Alternatives were modified to accommodate the “Alternatives to Clearcutting” Study;
- Appendix A revised to reflect new information contained in the final TLMP EIS (TLMP 1997);
- Updated mid-market economic analysis to include revised helicopter yarding rates;
- The range of silvicultural treatments was expanded;
- Discussion and display of volume class strata by alternative was included.

### Wildlife

- Updated Appendix D, Biological Assessment and Biological Evaluation;
- Old-growth habitat reserves incorporated into TLMP have been implemented.

### Soil, Water, and Air

- Watershed analysis has been expanded beyond just the Sediment Delivery Potential Risk Analysis;
- Wetland habitat mapping has been updated and provided to Army COE;
- The discussion of air and water quality outside the project area has been expanded;
- All Class III streams will be buffered;
- Stream layers were updated to include Class IV streams.

### Social and Economic

- Economic analysis was updated with revised harvest volume information and updated cost information;
- Utilized IMPLAN economic model.

### Marine Environment

- Improved log transfer facility (LTF) discussion and analysis. Expanded trade-off analysis and LTF selection rationale. The proposed LTF in North Moira Sound has been dropped from further consideration.

### Subsistence

- The proposed road access management plan was revised to include new road closures;
- No-cut buffers of 300-foot widths were placed on Cannery Creek, Horse Canyon Creek, and a majority of Triangle Creek.



## Recreation and Visuals

- Harvest Units 679-213 and 679-265 will have leave islands and residuals left standing to meet VSQs for VCU 674.

## Alternative Development

Each action alternative presented in this EIS is a different response to the significant issues discussed in Chapter 1. For this EIS, five action alternatives were developed to meet the stated purpose and need of the project, while minimizing or avoiding environmental impacts. Each action alternative represents a site-specific proposal developed through intensive interdisciplinary unit and road design using high resolution topographic maps, GIS mapping capabilities, and aerial photos coupled with resource inventories and site inspections.

The alternative formulation process has been guided by several concepts and principals of sound resource management. Each alternative follows the standards, guidelines, and direction contained in the TLMP, the Alaska Regional Guide, and applicable Forest Service manuals and handbooks.

## Ecosystem Management

Ecosystem management is a concept incorporated into forest management in recent years. The philosophy is to emphasize ecological, physical, and social sciences to guide resource management to sustain the health, productivity, and intangible values of the land. These concepts were considered in the selection and design of individual harvest units and roads included in the alternatives.

Ecosystem management looks at forest management on two levels: (1) the landscape level, which may be a geological province (geoprovince) or a large watershed; and (2) the stand level, which deals with individual harvest units. The forest plan incorporates ecosystem management at the **landscape level** through land use allocation and the development of standards and guidelines. This separates incompatible uses and spreads impacts out over time and space. Many issues—such as maintaining large unfragmented blocks of old growth over time and maintaining the connectivity between those blocks—can only be resolved over the entire rotation through the land use allocation or forest planning process. A site-specific project level plan evaluates the assumptions made in a higher level plan. It then implements that direction and responds to public comments through the development of alternatives which determine which stands are treated and how they are managed.

Some tools employed at the **stand level** may include:

- a deferred entry;
- reducing harsh edges through unit placement and looking for opportunities to retain small patches of uncut timber in harvest units (where feasible and practical);
- maintaining existing travel corridors;
- leaving snags in harvest units (where safety regulations allow);
- and trying nonstandard harvest practices where resource issues and physical limitations permit.

The Chasina interdisciplinary team (IDT) utilized a combination of public scoping issues and resource knowledge to subdivide the Chasina Project Area into a variety of important landscape zones. Definition of these landscape zones considered such aspects as the amount, distribution, and fragmentation of old-growth forests; the level and distribution of previous timber harvest and roading; travel and dispersal corridors between zones that can be used by animals; the existing and potential road network for accessing timber; subsistence uses;

visually sensitive areas; and important recreation areas. The landscape zones also used the Forest Plan aspects of small, medium, and large old-growth Habitat Reserves (OGHRs). The landscape level considerations included the characteristics of the Chasina Project Area itself as well as its relationship to adjacent areas such as the harvest activities on Kootznoowoo Native Corporation lands, the Polk Inlet Project Area, and wildlife habitat outside the project area. Consideration was given to social factors (including subsistence use, visual concerns, timber harvest economics, and proposed land use designations) in the development of landscape zones. Table 2-1 displays the Landscape Management Zones identified by the interdisciplinary team for the Chasina Project Area.

## 2 Alternatives

Table 2-1  
Chasina Landscape Management Zones

Landscape Zones	Description
1. Large, medium, and small sized old-growth habitat blocks	Large, medium, and small old-growth habitat reserves as defined in the TLMP (1997). The shape and configuration displayed represents one potential way of providing core areas of unfragmented old-growth habitat where significant populations of old-growth dependent species can be maintained.
1(A) Nutkwa Block	This large old-growth habitat block is comprised of the Nutkwa LUD II Area (timber harvest is not allowed). This block is approximately 38,300 acres in size.
1(B) Kitkun Bay Block	This medium sized old-growth habitat block is located around Kitkun Bay or Salt Chuck. This block is approximately 10,400 acres in size. This block extends down to Port Johnson and North Arm Moira. This area contains the largest of unfragmented, high volume old-growth forest in the project area. When combined with the fact that it surrounds a salt chuck, this block is very important for wildlife habitat.
2. Late-successional corridors	Corridors approximately 1,000 feet wide that provide connectivity between core areas of unfragmented old-growth habitat. These corridors generally follow riparian zones or other areas of gentle topographic relief commonly utilized for migration between areas.
3. Low and very low economic zones	<p>These zones represent areas which are only economical to harvest during market cycles with very high stumpage when lumped together with more profitable offerings which could help average out costs, or if augmentation (contributed funds) helps to offset costs.</p> <p>Dora Bay Area VCU 677 - National Forest System lands in this area have become isolated and scattered as a result of land conveyances to Kootznoowoo, Inc. Estimated road costs to connect this area to existing roads on Kootznoowoo lands or to the Lancaster LTF are cost-prohibitive. Virtually all of the timber within this zone has been classified as unsuitable for timber harvest due to very high mass movement potential (MMI 4) soils, and what is not has small, isolated units with low volume per acre. Therefore, there is insufficient timber value to recover the road construction costs.</p> <p>Chasina Point Area VCU 679/680 - This area is characterized by relatively flat terrain with extensive areas of noncommercial forest. Much of the commercial forest land consists of narrow strips of low-volume old growth that is frequently located in stream buffers, making them unavailable for timber harvest. Due to the small amount of timber available, a large portion of the timber which is available would be harvested the first entry. The timber economics of the area are poor due to the low volume available per mile of road constructed. Most of the timber in this area is Volume Class 4 and 5. Several dispersed recreation sites are located in the area. Field crews did observe high wildlife use of the area.</p> <p>East Dolomi Area VCU 680/681 - This area is along Clarence Strait and is surrounded by lands owned and managed by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation. Most of the lands surrounding this area have been harvested within the last 10 years. This harvest decreased the effectiveness of the beach fringe as a travel corridor for wildlife. The commercial lands in this area are mostly low volume, but are economically more feasible than the Chasina Point area. The Forest Service has retained an easement across Kootznoowoo Native Corporation land to access this from the Lancaster area.</p>

Table 2-1  
Chasina Landscape Management Zones

Landscape Zones	Description
4. Lancaster VCU 679	This area includes the existing LTF and developed road system. Timber harvest in this zone is very profitable due to the concentration of high-volume, old-growth forest and the limited amount of road construction needed to access the timber. Part of the reason for the concentration of high volume old growth is that part of the area is underlaid with limestone which results in the development of well-drained, productive forests. Cave and karst features exist and current mitigation measures have been applied. The portion of this area adjacent to saltwater has been identified as an important wildlife corridor. Several dispersed recreation sites exist in the area, with hunting and trapping activities apparent. Field crews did observe high wildlife use in this area, especially by bear and wolf.
5. Port Johnson VCUs 681/682	This entire peninsula is currently in an undeveloped condition. Much of the coastal areas are steep with cliffs. The North Arm Moira shoreline has several good anchorages. The area contains a variety of dispersed, undeveloped recreation sites. It is also heavily used by the commercial fisheries fleet. A large percentage of the peninsula is noncommercial forest land, and most of the commercial forest land is low volume. The area between Port Johnson and Kitkun Bay is designated as a medium-sized OTHR. A road constructed through the old-growth habitat reserve to Port Johnson will have poor economics due to the low amount of timber accessed per mile of road construction. The land just north of the peninsula has been harvested and has an existing LTF on Kootznoowoo Native Corporation land. It may be possible to conduct some helicopter logging on the north side of the peninsula while maintaining the visual, recreational, and wildlife values that exist on the south side along North Arm Moira. The LTF proposed in North Arm Moira, has been dropped due to economics. Another option is to helicopter yard all the harvest units in the area.
6. Cannery Creek VCUs 674/678	<p>The Cannery Creek zone is another block of unfragmented, high volume, old-growth forest. This old-growth block is adjacent to a small OTHR that was part of "Old-growth Retention Strategy A" for the Polk Inlet FEIS and is included in the small OTHR as part of the "Old-growth Retention Strategy B". This is an important location for wildlife habitat due to the impacts that are occurring on other lands immediately adjacent to this area. To the east and south, old-growth forests on private lands are being or have been harvested. To the west, additional native harvesting is occurring in the Big Creek and Sulzer Portage areas. In order to harvest wood from the Cannery Creek zone, a new LTF and approximately 7 miles of road would need to be constructed, or all the timber would need to be helicoptered to a barge or "boom bags". The timber economics of this area are lower than roaded areas like Lancaster.</p> <p>Bands of karst features have been found between Cannery Creek and South Arm Cholmondeley Sound.</p>

Chapter 3 and the Appendices contain additional maps that present some of the features described above in greater detail. The landscape zones described in the previous table (Table 2-1) are displayed by location in Figure 2-1

## 2 Alternatives

This page left blank intentionally.



**Landscape Zones - Chasina Project**



Private & State Lands	Contours
Lands outside Large Medium or Small Old Growth blocks	Unit Pool
Large and Medium Old growth Reserves	VCU Lines
Travel Corridors	Project Boundary
Saltwater	Economic Zones
Previous Harvest	

0 1.87 Miles  
Map scale 1:89274



## Process Used to Formulate Alternatives

An interdisciplinary approach was used in developing alternatives for making timber available. The scoping process for the Chasina Project Area began in October 1995, and concluded in December 1995. Alternative formulation began after completion of the scoping process and was designed to address public issues, Forest Service concerns, and opportunities identified in scoping. The following general guidelines were used to formulate alternatives.

### **Address the Issues Identified During the Scoping and Public Comment Periods**

This ensures that the interests of the various citizens, groups, and organizations that could be affected by this project are reflected in the array of alternatives.

### **Integrated Resource Analysis Focused on the Proposed Action**

Forest Plan implementation begins with a comparison of the existing condition with the management emphasis for the area, and is followed by a determination of what, if any, changes are necessary. The purposes of integrated resource analysis are to determine possible combinations of management practices that are responsive to identified changes and to ensure that these combinations are consistent with Forest Plan direction.

Adherence to Forest Plan objectives and standards is an essential component of Forest Plan implementation [36 CFR 219.10(e); 36 CFR 219.11(c)]. The Forest Plan standards establish limits on adverse environmental impacts and require that unless specified levels of mitigation can be achieved, a project or activity won't be proposed. Thus the list of possible management practices which would work toward the desired future condition for timber must be consistent with the need to meet Forest Plan standards and objectives for other resources.

### **Evaluate a Reasonable Range of Alternatives**

The issues, the ways of addressing the issues, and possible levels of resource use on Prince of Wales Island vary widely. The IDT concentrated on providing a range of alternatives by varying the location and mixes of resources committed under each alternative and by varying the number and kinds of activities to be conducted.

Section 102(2)(e) of NEPA states that all Federal agencies shall “*study, develop, and describe appropriate alternatives to recommended courses of action in any proposal which involves unresolved conflicts concerning alternative uses of available resources.*” These unresolved conflicts, identified by the Forest Service and the public, are the NEPA issues related to the proposed action.

In addition to responding to unresolved conflicts, an EIS must “*rigorously explore and objectively evaluate all reasonable alternatives*” [40 CFR 1502.14(a)]. The courts have established that this direction does not mean that every conceivable alternative must be considered, but that selection and discussion of alternatives must permit a reasoned choice and foster informed decision making and informed public participation.

Taken together, these requirements determine the NEPA range of alternatives.

Upper limits on timber outputs and associated road mileages considered in this EIS are imposed by Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP 1997) Standards and Guidelines for other resources as well as legal obligations on timber harvest set out in 36 CFR 219.27 and Section 6(g)(3)(e) of the National Forest Management Act.

Lower limits on timber outputs and associated road mileages are directly related to the issues and concerns, as well as the purpose and need for action described in Chapter 1.



## 2 Alternatives

### **Consistency with TLMP (1997)**

This FEIS was developed consistent with the Standards and Guidelines in the TLMP (1997). The documented analysis and relevant discussion from this set of documents has been incorporated by reference rather than repeated (40 CFR 1502.21).

### **Follow an Interdisciplinary Process**

This systematic, interdisciplinary approach ensures the integrated use of the natural and social sciences and the environmental design arts in planning and in decision making which may have an impact on the environment.

## **Alternatives Eliminated from Detailed Study**

A number of alternatives were examined, but not considered, for detailed study in this FEIS. This section presents those alternatives and the rationale for not considering them further.

### **Alternative A**

#### **Single Resource or Issue**

Alternatives that focused upon one resource or issue were eliminated from consideration as implementable alternatives. While alternatives constructed around a single resource may not be implementable, the issue itself may still be significant. Each alternative will be evaluated against all the significant issues.

### **Alternative B**

#### **Avoid Previously Mapped Old-growth Retention Areas**

Several commenters asked the Forest Service to analyze an alternative that would keep intact all previously mapped old-growth retention during this entry. Under the TLMP (1997) Standards and Guidelines, old-growth habitat will remain unaltered in beach, estuary, and TTRA buffers, research natural areas, non-development LUD areas, as well as in unsuitable commercial forest land. Previously mapped old-growth retention areas are consequently considered as part of the tentatively suitable and available timber base, unless otherwise excluded. Approximately 801 acres of retention were established as part of previous project level EISs, but no documents could be found which map these areas.

Current conservation biology theory places greater emphasis on larger blocks of old growth which have logical connections for wildlife movement. This alternative was, therefore, not considered in detail.

### **Alternative C**

#### **Manage the Chasina Project Area for Sustained Yield/Even Flow of Forest Products**

Several commenters asked the Forest Service to display an alternative that displayed the real sustainable harvest level when taking into consideration such things as “falldown” and rotation lengths based on site index, not a 100-year rotation age. Although this alternative has not been displayed, the components of this issue are analyzed in the Silviculture and Timber and Socioeconomic sections of Chapter 3 as cumulative impacts.

### **Alternative D**

Several public and agency comments requested the Forest Service analyze a reduced harvest within the Chasina Project Area, or select the no-action alternative because of the extensive timber harvest that has occurred on other ownership within the project area. There was no pre-established harvest volume for the project. A wide range of harvest volumes were considered based on issues (including a no-action alternative).

## Alternatives Considered for Detailed Study

Six alternatives for making timber available to local timber purchasers from the Chasina Project Area were considered in detail. Each alternative is consistent with the TLMP (1997). For each alternative this section provides a discussion of: (1) the emphasis or intent of the alternative, (2) various resource outputs associated with implementation, and (3) environmental consequences. Alternatives are compared in detail later in this chapter and summarized in Table 2-2.

### Alternative 1 (No Action)

#### Emphasis

The emphasis of this alternative is to propose no new timber harvest from the Chasina Project Area at this time. It does not preclude timber harvest from other areas at this time, or from the Chasina Project Area at some time in the future. The Council of Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations 40 CFR 1502.14d requires a “No-Action” alternative be analyzed in every EIS. This alternative serves as a benchmark by which effects of the other action alternatives are to be measured. The Existing Condition map shows the distribution of vegetation associated with no new timber harvest.

#### Outputs

There are no new timber harvest outputs associated with this alternative. Visual quality, wildlife habitat quality, recreation opportunities, as well as other resource values would remain at their current condition.

### Alternative 2

#### Emphasis

The emphasis of this alternative is to meet the stated purpose and need while avoiding timber harvest in VCUs 674, 677, 678, and the Kitkun Bay area. These areas contain the largest blocks of high value wildlife habitat in the project area and deferral would avoid any fragmentation of them this entry. Individual unit selection attempted to avoid wildlife travel corridors. This alternative differs from Alternative 3 in that less volume is harvested and units were selected for harvest as to avoid areas identified during scoping as being important or special.

#### Outputs

Alternative 2 schedules the harvest of 26 individual harvest units, totaling 25.6 MMBF of sawlog plus utility volume from 986 acres, indicating an average unit size of 37.9 acres. Of this harvest, 370 acres are planned for partial cut treatments; the remainder are planned for clearcut harvest. This alternative requires the construction of 5.7 miles of new specified roads plus 8.7 miles of reconstruction. Road construction clearing will yield an additional 0.2 MMBF of right-of-way (ROW) volume. This indicates an average of 4.5 MMBF per mile of new road construction. It schedules 711 acres or 19.7 MMBF of volume for helicopter yarding. Preliminary analysis indicates a net mid-market stumpage value of \$-57.85 per MBF.

No new log transfer facilities (LTFs) would be required to implement this alternative. Floating or land based logging camps are anticipated with the Lancaster Cove LTF.



## 2 Alternatives

### Alternative 3

#### Emphasis

The emphasis of this alternative is to meet the stated purpose while striking a balance between timber sale economics and other resource values. A road from Port Johnson Peninsula to the proposed LTF in North Arm Moira proposed under this alternative in the DEIS has been dropped. All units on the Port Johnson Peninsula will be yarded by helicopter to a barge or bag boom. Timber harvest would not occur in large, medium, and small old-growth habitat reserves designated in TLMP (1997).

#### Outputs

Alternative 3 schedules the harvest of 51 individual harvest units, totaling 42.5 MMBF of sawlog plus utility volume from 1,710 acres, indicating an average unit size of 33.5 acres. Of this harvest, 666 acres are planned for partial cut treatments; the remainder are planned for clearcut harvest. This alternative requires the construction of 16.7 miles of new specified roads plus 8.4 miles of reconstruction. Road construction clearing will yield an additional 0.5 MMBF of ROW volume. This indicates an average of 2.5 MMBF per mile of new road construction. It schedules 991 acres or 27.1 MMBF of volume for helicopter yarding. Preliminary analysis indicates a net mid-market stumpage value of \$-43.06 per MBF.

The development of one new LTF and the use of one existing LTF will be required to implement this alternative. Floating or land based logging camps are anticipated with the proposed West Arm Cholmondeley LTF, and the existing Lancaster Cove LTF. The Alternative 3 map provides the spatial relationship among roads, units, and other geographic features of the Chasina Project Area.

### Alternative 4

#### Emphasis

The emphasis of this alternative is to harvest the maximum amount of timber while keeping the amount of road construction to a minimum. This alternative looks at helicopter logging several portions of the project area and utilizing barge or small water drop areas (Cannery Creek and Port Johnson Peninsula) instead of constructing logging roads and LTFs. This alternative will display the trade-offs in economics and resource concerns between helicopter logging and conventional cable logging/road building.

#### Outputs

Implementation of this alternative would schedule the harvest of 1,619 acres in 41 harvest units for approximately 45.4 MMBF of sawlog and utility volume, indicating an average unit size of 36.4 acres. Of this harvest, 751 acres are planned for partial cut treatments; the remainder are planned for clearcut harvest. To implement this level of harvest, 3.2 miles of new road would be constructed, and 8.7 miles of existing road would require reconstruction. Road construction clearing will yield an additional 0.1 MMBF of ROW volume. This indicates an average of 13.9 MMBF per mile of new road construction. It schedules 1,240 acres or 34 MMBF of volume for helicopter yarding. Preliminary analysis indicates a net mid-market stumpage value of \$-64.98 per MBF.

No new LTFs would be required to implement this alternative. Floating or land-based logging camps are anticipated with the Lancaster Cove LTF.

### Alternative 5

#### Emphasis

The objective of this alternative is to emphasize timber economics and conventional cable yarding methods. The location of harvest units, selection of silvicultural prescriptions, logging systems, and a transportation network is primarily based on maximizing the mid-market value. This entry proposes only limited helicopter timber harvest. This approach emphasizes a positive net economic return for the proposed harvest units, by avoiding the low and very low economic zones to the extent possible. Areas eliminated for potential timber harvest, as a result of the new revised Forest Plan, affected the amount of volume and economics of this alternative.

## Outputs

Alternative 5 schedules the harvest of 38 individual harvest units, totaling 37.6 MMBF of sawlog and utility volume from 1,498 acres, indicating an average unit size of 39.4 acres. Of this harvest, 795 acres are planned for partial cut; the remainder are planned for clearcut harvest. This alternative requires the construction of 13.5 miles of new specified roads plus 8.7 miles of reconstruction. Road construction clearing will yield an additional 0.4 MMBF of ROW volume. This indicates an average of 2.8 MMBF per mile of new road construction. It schedules 851 acres or 22.6 MMBF of volume for helicopter yarding. Preliminary analysis indicates a net mid-market stumpage value of \$-67.11 per MBF.

The development of one new LTF and the use of one existing LTF will be required to implement this alternative. Floating or land based logging camps are anticipated with the West Arm Cholmondeley and Lancaster Cove LTFs. The Alternative 5 map provides the spatial relationship among roads, units, and other geographic features of the Chasina Project Area.

## Alternative 6

### Emphasis

The emphasis of this alternative is to accelerate progress toward the desired future condition for timber management while meeting Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines for other resources. Timber volume made available to local timber purchasers is maximized this entry under this alternative. This alternative is designed to evaluate the effects of harvesting as much of the project area as possible in a combination that still meets standards and guidelines. This alternative serves as an upper level benchmark that can be used to project the cumulative affects of the reasonably foreseeable future activities (see Appendix A) within the project area. Another feature of this alternative is that it looks at the maximum amount of road that could be constructed.

### Outputs

Implementation of this alternative would schedule the harvest of 2,520 acres, in 75 harvest units for approximately 66.7 MMBF of sawlog and utility volume, indicating an average unit size of 33.6 acres. Of this harvest, 1,013 acres are planned for partial cut treatment; the remainder are planned for clearcut harvest. To implement this level of harvest, 31 miles of new road would be constructed, and 8.7 miles of existing road would require reconstruction. Road construction clearing will yield an additional 1.1 MMBF of ROW volume. This indicates an average of 2.2 MMBF per mile of new road construction. It schedules 1,322 acres or 35.5 MMBF of volume for helicopter yarding. Preliminary analysis indicates a net mid-market stumpage value of \$-42.96 per MBF.

The development of one new LTF and the use of one existing LTF will be required to implement this alternative. Floating or land based logging camps are anticipated with the West Arm Cholmondeley and Lancaster Cove LTFs. The Alternative 6 map provides the spatial relationship among roads, units, and other geographic features of the Chasina Project Area.

### Forest Service Preferred Alternative

Using an evaluative process that compares the benefits and adverse effects of each alternative against the issues, the USDA Forest Service has identified Alternative 3 as the Preferred Alternative for this EIS. A final determination will be made by the Ketchikan Area Forest Supervisor in the Record of Decision (ROD).

### Comparison of Alternatives

The comparison of alternatives draws together the conclusions from the analysis presented throughout the document and provides a summary of the results. Table 2-2 provides a summary of activities, outputs, and environmental consequences by which the alternatives may be compared. The following sections provide a comparison of alternatives by: (1) summary comparison of outputs and environmental consequences, (2) proposed activity, and (3) significant issues.

#### Summary Comparison

Table 2-2 provides a summary of activities, outputs, and environmental consequences by which the alternatives may be compared.

Table 2-2  
Summary Comparison of Alternatives

Activity/Resource	Units	Alternatives					
		1	2	3	4	5	6
Timber							
Units	Number	0	26	51	41	38	75
Estimated harvest unit volume	MMBF	0	25.6	42.5	45.4	37.6	66.7
Estimated right-of-way (ROW) volume	MMBF	0	0.2	0.5	0.1	0.4	1.1
Uneven-aged partial cuts (diameter limits, group selections)	Acres	0	370	666	751	795	1,013
Clearcut harvest	Acres	0	616	1,044	868	703	1,507
Total harvest	Acres	0	986	1,710	1,619	1,498	2,520
Units over 100 acres	Number	0	0	0	0	0	0
Shovel harvest	MMBF	0	0	0.5	0	0.5	0.5
Running Skyline	MMBF	0	6	13.6	12.1	12.5	24.8
Live skyline (Shotgun)	MMBF	0	0	1.9	0	1.9	3.5
Slackline harvest	MMBF	0	1.3	1.2	0.9	1.7	4.2
Helicopter harvest	MMBF	0	19.7	27.1	34.0	22.6	35.5
Estimated stumpage (mid-market rates)	\$ / MBF	0	-57.85	-43.06	-64.98	-67.11	-42.96
Estimated stumpage (current rates)	\$ / MBF	0	+138.93	+153.72	+131.80	+129.67	+153.82
Receipts to State of Alaska	\$M	0	903	1,653	1,483	1,232	2,615
Average annual jobs over 4 years	# of jobs	0	39	62	67	56	98
Roads and Transportation							
Specified road construction	Miles	0	5.7	16.7	3.2	13.5	31.0
Road reconstruction	Miles	0	8.7	8.4	8.7	8.7	8.7
Temporary road construction	Miles	0	1.2	2.7	1.7	1.9	3.3
New log transfer facilities (LTFs)	Each	0	0	1	0	1	1
Reconstruction/Use of existing LTFs	Each	0	1	1	1	1	1
Roads crossing Class I or II streams	Number	0	4	9	0	8	14
Biodiversity							
Unfragmented old-growth patches remaining							
1,000 acres and larger	Acres	14,215	13,828	13,833	10,951	10,991	10,809
500-1,000 acres	Acres	4,019	3,064	2,637	5,270	5,563	4,414
100-500 acres	Acres	3,548	3,630	3,241	3,608	3,255	3,567
Nutkwa old-growth habitat - large block	Acres Harvested	0	0	0	0	0	0
Kitkun Bay old-growth habitat - medium block	Acres Harvested	0	0	0	0	0	0
Corridors connecting old-growth blocks	Affected	N/A	No	No	No	No	No
Productive old-growth acres remaining in project area	Acres	24,178	23,192	22,468	22,559	22,680	21,658
Percent of existing old growth remaining	Percent	100	96	93	93	94	90
Wildlife - Project Area							
1998 MIS - deer	Habitat Capability	1,753	1,683	1,645	1,650	1,651	1,595
1998 MIS - bear	Habitat Capability	77	75	73	74	74	72
1998 MIS - marten	Habitat Capability	86	83	81	81	81	78
1998 MIS - river otter	Habitat Capability	52	52	52	52	52	52
1998 MIS - hairy woodpecker	Habitat Capability	890	860	846	840	842	814
1998 MIS - Vancouver Canada goose	Habitat Capability	222	217	211	210	213	207
1998 MIS - bald eagle	Habitat Capability	121	121	121	121	121	121
1998 MIS - brown creeper	Habitat Capability	1,947	1,887	1,864	1,839	1,836	1,784
1998 MIS - gray wolf	Habitat Capability	5.8	5.6	5.4	5.5	5.5	5.1

# 2 Alternatives

Table 2-2 (cont.)

Summary Comparison of Alternatives

Activity/Resource	Units	Alternatives					
		1	2	3	4	5	6
Subsistence - WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213							
High and moderate use subsistence (TRUCS)	Acres Harvested	0	0	0	0	0	0
Deer habitat capability	Habitat Capability	5,118	5,048	5,010	5,051	5,016	4,960
Deer population needed to support current harvest	Habitat Capability	800	800	800	800	800	800
Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction							
Deer	Response	No	No	No	No	No	No
Bear	Response	No	No	No	No	No	No
Furbearers	Response	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Salmon	Response	No	No	No	No	No	No
Other Finfish	Response	No	No	No	No	No	No
Waterfowl	Response	No	No	No	No	No	No
Marine Mammals	Response	No	No	No	No	No	No
Indirect and cumulative effects of implementing the Forest Plan over the entire rotation							
	Response	May	May	May	May	May	May
Cultural Resources							
Impacts to known cultural resources	Each	0	0	0	0	0	0
Floodplains and Wetlands							
Proposed harvest on floodplain soils	Acres	0	12	15	7	10	15
Proposed roading on floodplain soils	Acres	0	0	0	0	0	0
Proposed harvest on vegetated wetlands	Acres	0	236	856	556	707	939
Proposed roading on vegetated wetlands	Acres	0	70	177	44	70	312
Soils and Geology							
Proposed harvest on very high MMI soils	Acres	0	8	0	6	6	15
Proposed roading on very high MMI soils	Acres	0	0	0	0	0	0
Proposed harvest on high MMI soils	Acres	0	183	466	542	511	726
Proposed roading on high MMI soils	Acres	0	4	45	4	45	81
Proposed harvest on moderate MMI soils	Acres	0	338	783	771	622	1,125
Proposed roading on moderate MMI soils	Acres	0	16	74	32	48	138
Proposed harvest on low MMI soils	Acres	0	377	402	289	366	593
Proposed roading on low MMI soils	Acres	0	50	57	9	47	75
Proposed harvest on slopes >72 %	Acres	0	47	44	48	41	71
Projected soil disturbance by harvest	Acres	0	28	73	38	39	128
Projected soil disturbance by roads	Acres	0	70	177	44	140	312
Harvest on High Karst Vulnerability	Acres	0	0	0	0	0	0
Harvest on Medium Karst Vulnerability	Acres	0	92	169	307	197	338
Visual Quality							
Meets or Exceeds Proposed Visual Quality Objectives							
West Arm Cholmondeley Sound	Response	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Exceeds	Meets	Meets
Sunny Cove	Response	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Meets	Meets
Lancaster Cove	Response	Exceeds	Meets	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Meets
Kitkun Bay	Response	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds
Port Johnson	Response	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Meets	Exceeds	Meets
Moria Sound	Response	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Exceeds	Meets
North Arm	Response	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Exceeds	Meets
Recreation							
Change in ROS class from P & SPNM to RM	Percent	0	8	42	34	31	100
Roadless areas	Acres	25,600	23,500	12,100	11,300	15,200	3,600
Recreation sites with change in ROS	Number	0	1	7	3	6	7



## Comparison of Alternatives by Proposed Activity

The action alternatives propose the harvest of from 26 to 77 individual units. Alternative 6 proposes the highest level of harvest with approximately 2,520 acres of timber harvest. Of the action alternatives, Alternative 2 proposes the lowest level of harvest with 986 acres. Table 2-3 shows the number of acres proposed for harvest by each alternative by silvicultural system.

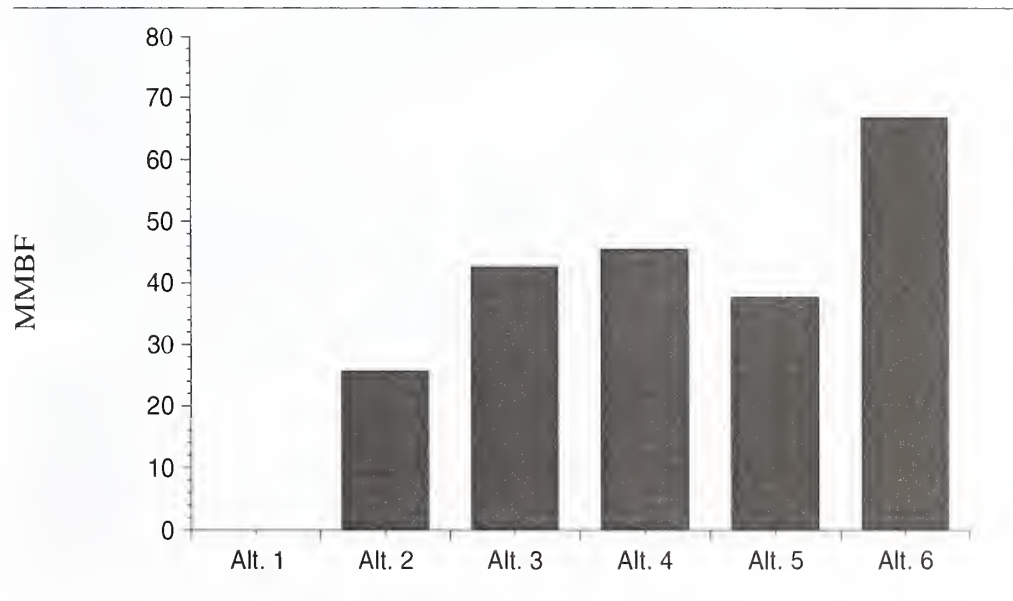
**Table 2-3**  
**Total Acres Proposed for Harvest by Silvicultural System**

Silvicultural System	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Partial Cut	0	370	666	751	795	1,013
Clearcut	0	616	1,044	868	703	1,507
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>986</b>	<b>1,710</b>	<b>1,619</b>	<b>1,498</b>	<b>2,520</b>

Uneven-aged management (partial cuts) planned in the alternatives ranges from 370 acres in Alternative 2 to 1,013 acres in Alternative 6.

Figure 2-2 shows the volume of timber proposed for harvest by each alternative, excluding right-of-way (ROW) volume.

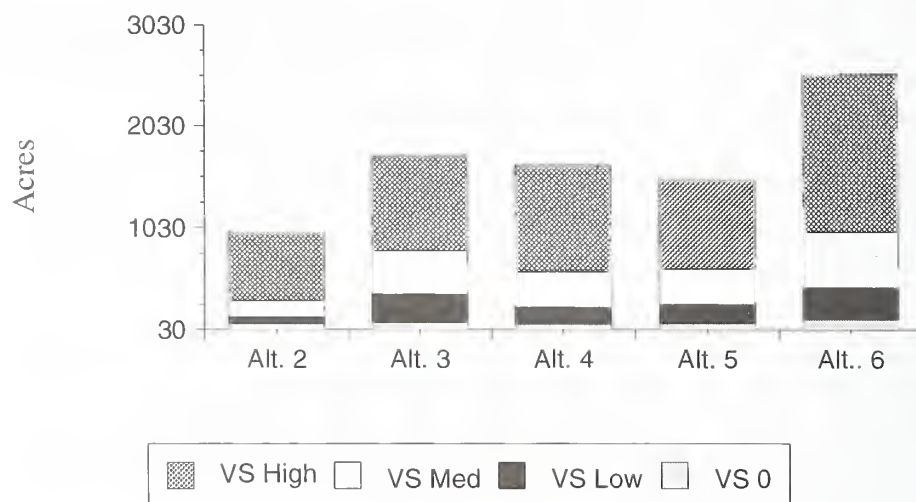
**Figure 2-2**  
**Total Volume Proposed for Harvest, Excluding ROW Volume, in MMBF**



## 2 Alternatives

Figure 2-3 shows volume strata as defined by the TLMP (1997), which modifies volume class by taking into account percent slope and hydric soils.

Figure 2-3  
Proposed Volume by Strata



Road development is divided into two main categories—construction and reconstruction. Table 2-4 shows the number of miles of new road construction and reconstruction proposed to access the harvest units for each alternative.

Table 2-4  
Proposed New Road Construction & Reconstruction (in Miles)

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
New Road Construction	0	5.7	16.7	3.2	13.5	31.0
Road Reconstruction	0	8.7	8.4	8.7	8.7	8.7

There is one existing LTF and one new LTF required to implement the various alternatives. Alternatives 3, 5, and 6 would utilize both LTFs (Lancaster Cove and West Arm Cholimondeley). This analysis has roughly estimated which units or groups of harvest units would most economically be hauled to a given LTF. Actual haul may be different. Table 2-5 shows the volume of harvest projected to be hauled to each LTF.

**Table 2-5**  
**Proposed Harvest, by Existing & New Log Transfer Facility, in MMBF**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Lancaster Cove	0	17.7	30.0	29.6	27.7	48.6
North Arm Moira*	0	0	0	0	0	0
West Arm Cholmondeley*	0	0	7.4	0	7.4	7.4
Helicopter to Water	0	7.9	5.1	15.8	3.1	10.7

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service

\* New Log Transfer Facilities



## Comparison of Alternatives by Significant Issue

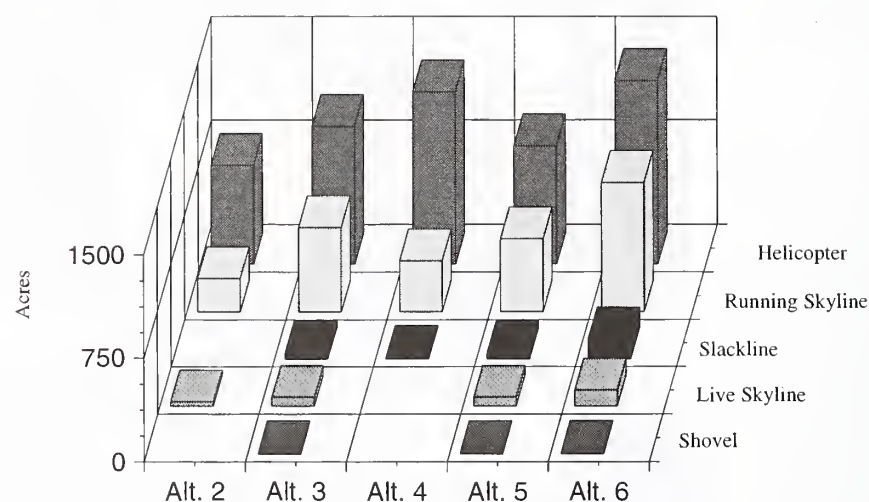
Chapter 1 presents in detail the significant issues that are the focus of this EIS and the key indicators for evaluating the impacts of timber harvest on each issue. This section compares the alternatives in terms of these issues. The baseline for comparing alternatives is Alternative 1, the no-action alternative. Chapter 3 contains the detailed evaluation of the potential effects of timber harvest and road construction activities under each alternative on forest resources.

### Issue 1. Timber Harvest Economics

#### Logging Systems

Estimated timber economics focuses on the residual value (stumpage) of the timber after all associated logging and transportation costs are subtracted. Generally, the most expensive logging method is helicopter, followed by slackline, highlead, live skyline (shotgun), running skyline, and shovel yarding. Average yarding distance, uphill versus downhill yarding, volume per acre, species composition and value, in combination with other factors, will influence the relative cost of each yarding method. Helicopter yarding is necessary in areas where it is impractical to build road or where aerial logging is necessary to meet specific standards and guidelines. Alternative 6 proposes the most helicopter volume (35.5 MMBF), while Alternative 2 proposes the least (19.7 MMBF). Figure 2-4 compares the acres of logging systems proposed for each alternative.

Figure 2-4  
Timber Harvest by Logging System





## Mid-market Value

The analysis of timber values in the Timber section of Chapter 3 looked at both the mid-market and current-market values for each alternative. The current-market values are considerably higher than the average or mid-market values which indicate that: (1) consumer demand is higher, (2) timber supplies are limited, or (3) some combination of the above is true.

All of the alternatives show a positive net stumpage at current-market values, while none of the alternatives are positive at mid-market value.

Table 2-6 compares the economics of timber harvest in dollars/thousand board feet (\$/MBF) for each alternative under mid-market conditions (generally representing the average market condition and product mix) and current-market conditions. The conversion rate expresses the net dollar value of the timber volume after subtracting the production costs from the log values.

Table 2-6  
Estimated Mid-market and Current-market Stumpage Value

Components	Alternatives					
	1	2	3	4	5	6
Mid-market Conversion Rate (\$/MBF)	0	\$-57.85	\$-43.06	\$-64.98	\$-67.11	\$-42.96
Current-market Conversion Rate (\$/MBF)	0	+\$138.93	+\$153.72	+\$131.80	+\$129.67	+\$153.82

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service

## Issue 2. Fish Habitat and Water Quality

### Best Management Practices

There is no measurable effect on water quality or fisheries production by any of the timber harvest or associated activities proposed by any of the action alternatives. All alternatives meet the requirements and intent of the Clean Water Act. Implementation of the Forest Plan Riparian Standards and Guidelines on all streams would effectively mitigate direct stream channel impacts from proposed timber harvest and road construction. Adherence to BMPs outlined in the Soil and Water Conservation Handbook (USDA FSH 2509.22) during the design of units and roads will minimize the potential direct effects to fish as well. Site-specific BMPs were developed and selected to minimize the potential for impact to fish habitat. These site-specific BMPs are noted on the individual Harvest Unit and Road Design cards in Appendix J.

### Habitat Capability

Fish habitat capability models are used to estimate the effects of timber harvest on the capability of streams to provide habitat for selected species of salmon and trout. Because there are many factors which influence fish populations—including commercial/sport harvest, oceanic conditions, and predation—these computer models provide only relative measures of habitat capability. These models indicate that there is no change in habitat capabilities for coho and pink salmon, or for Dolly Varden char and the species which they represent, among the alternatives including the no-action alternative.



**Table 2-7**  
**Timber Harvest on Slopes Greater Than 72 Percent by Harvest Unit and Alternative**

Unit	Alternative				
	2	3	4	5	6
677-302					0.3
677-305					2.2
678-325		1.9	1.9		1.9
678-339					1.2
678-344					0.3
679-467		17.8	17.8	17.8	17.8
679-473	1.7		1.7	1.7	1.7
679-475	21.6		21.6	21.6	21.6
681-363	5.6	5.6			5.6
681-367	1.3	1.3	1.3		1.3
681-368	4.2	4.2	4.2		4.2
681-372	12.8	12.8			12.8
<b>Total</b>	<b>47.2</b>	<b>43.6</b>	<b>48.5</b>	<b>41.1</b>	<b>70.9</b>
Total Project Area Wide					6116.3

Source: TLMP GIS coverage of slopes >72%

Table 2-7 displays the amount of timber harvest proposed on slopes greater than 72 percent by harvest unit and alternative. The project area contains more than 6,100 acres of which only 71 acres are still included in harvest unit boundaries. A majority of these units with slopes greater than 72 percent have been deleted, but small slivers show up in GIS as being in the unit which really are not. This includes Units 677-302, 677-305, 678-325, 678-339, 678-344, 679-473, 681-367 and 681-368. Unit 679-475 was not included in the preferred alternative because of concerns due to the amount of steep slopes. Partial suspension was recommended for Units 679-467 and 681-363 because of erosion potential. These units will be helicopter yarded so full suspension will be achieved. Approximately 13 acres of slopes greater than 72 percent are mapped in Unit 681-372 which has been recommended for partial suspension. This unit will be helicopter yarded so full suspension will be achieved, and in addition, there are not any streams within the harvest unit. The cliffs that made this area rate more than 72 percent are located outside of the unit boundary.

## TLMP 1997, Watershed Analysis

The majority of watersheds (VCUs) within the project area have experienced prior harvest and road construction. Reentering these drainages may generate a greater potential risk for impacts on water quality, with the risk expected to be greater in those watersheds with the higher cumulative percents of harvest. A sedimentation potential risk analysis was completed for the entire project and a watershed analysis was completed for watersheds of concern; see the Aquatic Resources Section in Chapter 3. Table 2-8 shows the existing direct and indirect effects of timber harvest on third-order watersheds and important second-order watersheds.



Table 2-8  
Cumulative Watershed Effects, Percentage of Watershed Harvested in  
Third-Order or Larger Watersheds and Important Second-Order Watersheds\*

Watershed Number	% Watershed Harvested					
	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
<b>Third-Order Watersheds</b>						
E92A	21	21	27	23	21	27
E94A	62	62	62	62	62	62
H06A	0	0	0	0	0	0
H21A	0	0	5	1	5	5
H27A*	61	61	61	61	61	63
H28A	8	8	8	8	8	9
H30A*	0	0	0	3	3	3
H38A*	48	48	48	48	48	48
H54A*	58	59	59	59	59	59
H60A	9	9	20	20	20	20
H61A	16	32	33	33	33	33
H62A	27	36	42	42	42	42
H63A	41	53	42	54	53	54
<b>Second-Order Watersheds</b>						
EX7A	0	0	18	18	18	18
EX8A	0	0	20	20	18	20
H05A	1	1	1	2	2	2
H49A	1	1	1	13	4	18
H50A	15	15	15	18	18	18
H59A	8	23	13	22	15	23

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1998

\* Includes Kootznoowoo Native Corporation lands that have been harvested since 1967.

## Stream Crossings

Another measure of potential risk to fish habitat from timber harvest is the associated new road construction and road reconstruction which crosses streamcourses (see Chapter 3-Aquatic Resources). During placement of culverts or bridges, sediment may be introduced into the streams which may have short- or long-term effects on water quality. Alternative 2 proposes the fewest stream crossings, while Alternative 6 proposes the most. This is shown in Table 2-9.

**Table 2-9**  
**Stream Crossings to be Constructed**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Class I	0	4	6	0	5	9
Class II	0	0	3	0	3	5
<b>Total Crossing</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>14</b>

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1998

## Mass Movement Index (MMI)

Following timber harvest, there is an increased risk of landslides until second growth and the brush layer become firmly established. One way of analyzing this risk is to determine the amount of timber harvest on slopes which have high mass movement index (MMI) soils. This rating does not imply that such a mass-wasting event will occur; rather, it ranks the alternatives on the basis of the potential for a mass-wasting event to occur, which may or may not result in an increase in stream sediment. This increased stream sedimentation may result in some loss or impairment of resident and anadromous fish spawning and rearing habitat. Table 2-10 displays the proposed harvest on high MMI (MMI = 3) and very high MMI (MMI = 4) soils by alternative. Virtually all very high MMI soils have been removed from the timber base. Only those sites that appear to be small inclusions or mistyped have been retained in the unit pool. These sites have been examined by a soil scientist as part of unit reconnaissance.

**Table 2-10**  
**Acres of High Hazard Soils Harvested by Alternative**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
High MMI Soils	0	183	466	542	511	726
Very High MMI Soils*	0	8	0	6	6	15

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service

\* See Chapter 3-Soils for details of MMI classifications.

### **Sediment Transfer and Deposition**

Three separate watersheds (H59A, H62A, and H63A) were evaluated for sediment delivery and depositional potential using a watershed-level analysis (Geier and Loggy, 1995). Sediment transport and deposition indices were developed based upon watershed morphology, discharge, and potential sediment sources. This sediment transfer index indicates where in a watershed sediment production and deposition is a potential problem for maintenance of aquatic habitat. The quantity of sediment transported and deposited depends upon a number of factors, including the nature of the sediment source, stream discharge, and channel morphology. These are factors that resource managers must consider when they undertake activities on areas that are linked to important aquatic habitat.

Results of this sediment transport and deposition risk assessment for roads and units indicate that alternatives that include Units 679-507, 679-425, and 679-422 have the highest potential for sediment delivery to streams. By avoiding harvest units and road construction near streamcourses in high risk sub-basins, Alternative 2 presents the lowest overall risk of sediment production and delivery to sensitive stream reaches. Alternative 6 presents a higher risk of producing sediment that may affect beneficial uses, mainly by proposing road construction and timber harvest in watersheds already heavily harvested. Alternative 6 poses the highest risk of sediment delivery.



## Issue 3. Recreation and Scenic Quality

### Scenic Quality

There are seven defined viewsheds within the project area. The visual quality objectives (VQOs) for this project establish the minimum visual quality management standards for these key viewsheds.

Table 2-11 displays the VQOs for each viewshed and whether each alternative meets or exceeds the adopted VQO for that viewshed. Alternative 1 represents the existing visual condition. In all viewsheds for all alternatives, the proposed harvest units achieve the visual quality objectives.

Table 2-11  
Summary of Impacts of Alternatives on Scenic Resources.

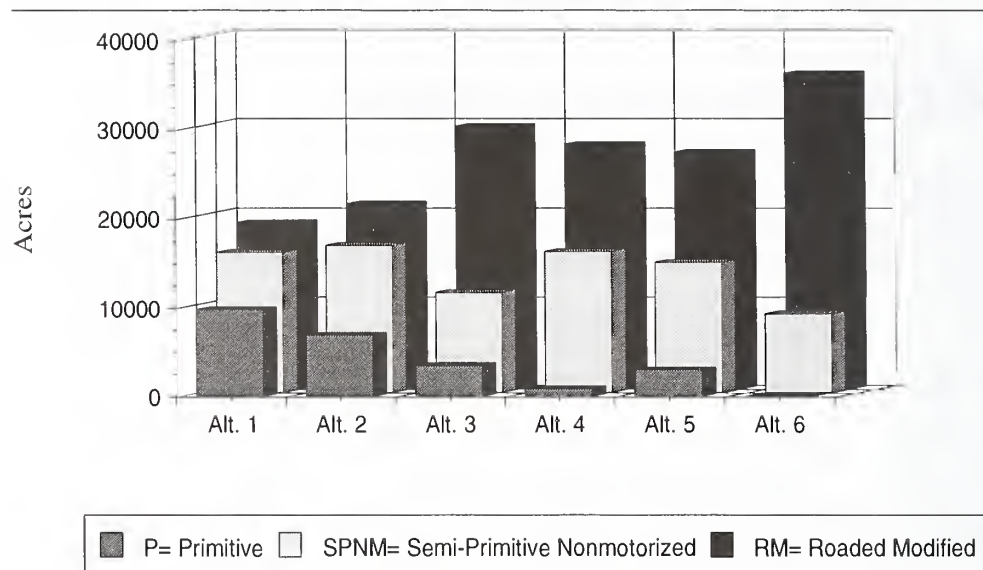
Viewshed	VQO	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
W. Arm Chol. Sound	Par. Ret./Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets*	Exceeds	Meets*	Meets*
Sunny Cove	Par. Ret./Mod./ Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Meets	Meets
Lancaster Cove	Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Meets	Exceeds*	Meets	Meets	Meets
Kitkun Bay	Ret./Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds*	Exceeds*	Exceeds*	Exceeds*
Port Johnson	Ret./Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Meets	Exceeds	Meets
Moira Sound	Mod./Max.Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Exceeds	Meets*
North Arm	Ret./Max.Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets*	Meets*	Exceeds*	Meets*
Exceeds	Proposed harvest results in a visual condition that exceeds the VQO for the viewshed, i.e. meets a higher VQO.						
Exceeds*	Though the proposed harvest will meet the VQO in a portion of the viewshed, in the vast majority of the viewshed, the harvest exceeds the VQO.						
Meets	Harvest planned in the viewshed is consistent with standards for the VQO.						
Meets*	Harvest meets VQO assuming mitigation measures are followed.						

## 2 Alternatives

### Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS)

Implementing any of the action alternatives will change the existing Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS) class within the project area. Figure 2-5 shows the change in ROS class by alternative.

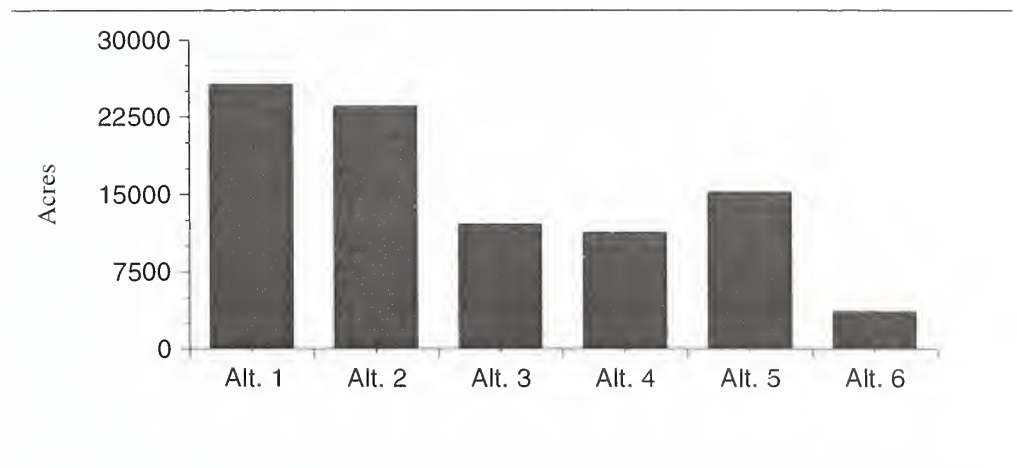
Figure 2-5  
Changes in ROS Class by Alternative



## Roadless Areas

The TLMP (1997) identified one roadless area which lies within the project area. The impact of timber harvesting on roadless areas is much larger than the acres harvested because the sights and sounds associated with the harvest activity affect the surrounding area. Roadless areas generally need to be at least 5,000 acres in size to be considered roadless. Figure 2-6 shows the number of roadless acres that will remain after implementation of an alternative.

Figure 2-6  
Roadless Area Acres Remaining by Alternative



## Issue 4. Wildlife Habitat

The major effect on wildlife habitats in all action alternatives is the reduction of old-growth forest habitat. Impacts to other habitats were reduced by the interdisciplinary design of units prior to alternative formulation. All alternatives result in impacts consistent with the implementation of the TLMP (1997).

Table 2-12 displays the potential reduction in wildlife habitat capabilities, as estimated by habitat capability models, for the key Management Indicator Species (MIS) found in the Chasina Project Area. This table displays the 1954 long-term habitat capability and estimated short-term reduction in habitat capability after potential implementation of the alternatives.

**Table 2-12**  
**Potential Changes in Habitat Capability Numbers Within the Project Area for MIS in 1998**

Species	Habitat Capability		Changes from 1996 by Alternative					
	1954	1996	1	2	3	4	5	6
Sitka black-tailed deer	2,094	1,753	0	-70	-108	-103	-102	-158
Black bear	86	77	0	-2	-4	-3	-3	-5
Otter	52	52	0	0	0	0	0	0
Marten	97	86	0	-3	-5	-5	-5	-8
Hairy woodpecker	900	890	0	-30	-44	-50	-48	-76
Vancouver Canada goose	242	222	0	-5	-11	-10	-9	-15
Bald eagle	123	121	0	0	0	0	0	0
Brown creeper	1,983	1,947	0	-60	-83	-108	-111	-163
Gray wolf	7	5.8	0	-0.2	-0.4	-0.3	-0.3	-0.7

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service, 1998.

Note: Number do not incorporate patch-size effectiveness calculations (see the Old-Growth/Biodiversity section in Chapter 3).

Forest fragmentation represents a change in the overall forest landscape from large, contiguous blocks of old-growth forest to smaller blocks separated by timber harvest units. Increased amounts of forest fragmentation indicate reduced habitat potential for species which are thought to be dependent on interior old-growth forest habitat. One way to analyze forest fragmentation is to measure the reduction of large, contiguous blocks of old-growth forest as a result of timber harvest. Large and medium sized blocks of old growth (Nutmka LUD II Area and South Prince of Wales Wilderness Area) are adjacent to the project area. In addition, the project area contains a significant amount of old-growth habitat in blocks over 1,000 acres in size. Table 2-13 displays the number of acres of old-growth habitat in large blocks that will remain after implementation of an alternative.

**Table 2-13**  
**Effect of Timber Harvest on Forest Fragmentation in Acres**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Acres of unfragmented blocks of 101-500 acres remaining after harvest	3,548	3,630	3,241	3,608	3,255	3,567
Acres of unfragmented blocks of 500-1,000 acres remaining after harvest	4,019	3,064	2,637	5,270	5,563	4,414
Acres of unfragmented blocks of >1,000 acres remaining after harvest	14,215	13,828	13,833	10,951	10,991	10,809
Total acres of old growth remaining after harvest	24,178	23,192	22,468	22,559	22,680	21,658

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1998.

Note: Old growth includes only Volume Class 4 and above.

Late successional corridors approximately 1,000 feet wide (see Figure 2-1) that provide connectivity between core areas of unfragmented old-growth habitat were identified. These corridors are along the west side of South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound and from Kitkun Bay to Chasina Point. Alternative 6 would impact the corridors to the largest degree, followed by Alternative 5, Alternative 4, and Alternative 3. Alternative 2 would do the best job of maintaining these corridors.

## Issue 5. Subsistence Use

Chapter 3 evaluates the potential site-specific effects on subsistence that could result from implementing any of the proposed timber harvest and associated road construction alternatives.

The Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS) identified areas which are most heavily used by subsistence households. Based on the TRUCS, the project area contains no high or moderate use subsistence areas. High and moderate use is interpreted to mean greater than 50 households ever used the area for subsistence deer hunting.

Deer hunting is one aspect of subsistence use affected by timber harvest. The Wildlife and Subsistence sections of Chapter 3 discuss the computer models used to estimate the effects of timber harvest on deer habitat capability—both long range and short range. Based on this analysis, Alternative 1 will cause no reduction of deer habitat capability. Among the action alternatives, Alternative 2 would cause the least reduction to deer habitat capabilities (79 deer), while Alternative 6 would reduce deer habitat capabilities the most severely (182 deer) within the project area.

Table 2-14 displays the number of deer the habitat in the WAAs (1210, 1211, and 1213) can support after the implementation of an alternative, and after the second growth is in a closed canopy (2040). The full WAA habitat capability has not been reduced for the effects of fragmentation.



Table 2-14  
Deer Harvest and Habitat Capability for WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213

Alternative	Habitat Capability		Population of Deer Needed to Meet Demand
	1998	2040	1996
1	5,118	4,457	800
2	5,048	4,327	800
3	5,010	4,254	800
4	5,015	4,265	800
5	5,016	4,267	800
6	4,960	4,160	800

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1996.

Note: Habitat capability for entire WAAs has not been reduced for fragmentation.

The project area is located within portions of three Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs)—1210, 1211, and 1213. The harvest is 80 deer per year based on Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G) hunter surveys for the complete WAAs. Approximately 800 deer are needed to support this level of deer harvest. Currently (1998) the three full WAAs provide habitat capability for 5,118 deer based on the Deer Habitat Capability Model. The habitat capability through the year 2004 is projected to be at least 4,960 deer (Alternative 6). Model “outputs” are often expressed in species population numbers, giving the misleading impression that actual numbers of individuals were being indicated. Population numbers for many species can vary widely from year to year as a result of many factors other than habitat capability. The models were never intended to represent population models that consider fecundity, mortality, population age, structure, etc. and often incorporate an element of “random” environmental events that can affect populations.

Competition for subsistence resources in the project area is a scoping issue. Subsistence users from communities on Prince of Wales Island are concerned with competition from residents of Ketchikan. Since Ketchikan residents are considered non-rural, this competition can be regulated if it starts to restrict rural residents’ ability to obtain subsistence resources. Deer habitat capability in all WAAs is presently adequate to sustain all current and projected harvest now and through the year 2040.

The Federal Subsistence Board may use its authority to regulate non-rural harvest of deer and has authority to prioritize the harvest of deer among rural residents when necessary to protect the resource. The current deer population level does not require restrictions on non-rural users.

There is no evidence to indicate that availability of salmon, finfish, shellfish, or other food resources to subsistence users would be affected by sport or non-rural harvest. Any increase in competition from non-rural Alaskan residents and nonresidents would not be substantial because of the availability of resources in the immediate vicinity and in the surrounding areas.

The above analysis indicates that the actions proposed in all alternatives will not represent a significant possibility of a significant restriction on subsistence use of deer, black bear, or otter in the project area. Wolf harvest in the project WAAs is at the peak of the level that can be sustained. With future reductions of habitat capability for wolf and marten, there may be a significant possibility of a significant restriction of subsistence use of marten and wolf at some point in the future for all alternatives including the no-action alternative.

## Issue 6. Caves and Karst

All alternatives were designed to maintain the natural karst processes and the productivity of the karst landscape. No harvest units are planned on high karst vulnerability areas.

Table 2-15 displays the acres of harvest on high and medium karst vulnerability areas.

**Table 2-15**  
**Acres of Harvest on High and Medium Karst Vulnerability Areas**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
High Karst Vulnerability	0	0	0	0	0	0
Medium Karst Vulnerability	0	92	169	307	197	338

## Issue 7. Social and Economic Effects

The State of Alaska receives 25 percent of the sum of all net receipts from timber sold on National Forest System lands plus any purchaser road credits. This money is earmarked for public school and road maintenance funding. Table 2-16 shows the estimated returns to the State of Alaska from the harvest of timber (from this project only) by alternative. Actual returns will be based upon sale volumes and appraised rates and may differ from this estimate, which is based on mid-market rates.

**Table 2-16**  
**Estimated Returns to State of Alaska from Sale of Timber**

Alternative	Estimated Volume (MMBF)*	Total Receipts**	Estimated Returns to the State
1	0	0	0
2	26	\$3,612,218	\$903,045
3	43	\$6,609,960	\$1,652,490
4	45	\$5,931,000	\$1,482,750
5	38	\$4,927,460	\$1,231,865
6	68	\$10,459,760	\$2,614,940

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1998.

\* Includes right-of-way volume.

\*\* Based on mid-market rates, timber receipts, and purchaser credit for road construction.

Table 2-17 displays the employment (jobs) and personal income (salaries) associated with each alternative averaged over a four-year period. The jobs and salaries listed include those both directly and indirectly dependent upon the timber industry.

**Table 2-17**  
**Timber Industry Employment and Income by Alternative**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Total Volume Harvested MMBF	0	26	43	45	38	68
Employment (Jobs)	0	155	311	269	223	392
Personal Income (Millions\$)	0	9.24	14.94	16.14	13.44	23.52

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1998.

All alternatives provide sufficient volume, in combination with other scheduled offerings, to assist the independent timber purchasers in maintaining timber-related employment in the region. In these alternatives, the total volume (including ROW volume) harvested ranges from 26 MMBF in Alternative 2 to 68 MMBF in Alternative 6. Alternatives 3, 4, and 5 provide 43 MMBF, 45 MMBF, and 38 MMBF respectively.

Under Alternative 1, the no-action alternative, none of the employment described above would be supported by timber harvest activity in the Chasina Project Area. This would result in a negative effect on timber harvest employment should local timber purchasers not be able to substitute volume from another source. The effects of Alternative 1 are not predictable and could range from elimination of shifts to partial or even full shutdown of the local mills for an unspecified period of time.

The projected long-term effects of different harvest levels are contained in the TLMP (1997). Timber supply analysis indicates it is unlikely that sufficient timber supply would be available within the Chasina Project Area to sustain the scheduled timber harvest through the end of the first rotation (year 2054) when second growth would become widely available for harvest. However, this conclusion depends on future timber values and whether improved or more efficient logging systems are developed to make economically marginal timber more attractive. It also depends on the status of new land use allocations that would reduce the timber base.

None of the alternatives are expected to have a significant direct impact on the commercial fishing, recreation, and tourism industries or related employment.

Direct effects to the marine environment are assumed to occur only from development and use of LTFs, and are limited to the intertidal area affected by rock fill and either the intertidal or subtidal areas potentially affected by accumulations of bark debris.

A total of six potential LTF locations were considered for possible development. There are four existing LTF sites and two potential new sites. Three existing LTFs on Kootznoowoo Native Corporation lands (Dora Bay, Divide Head, and Port Johnson) were considered, but not needed for management of National Forest Systems lands. The maximum number of LTFs that would be utilized under any alternative is two (one new site and one existing site). The final selection of which LTF sites to utilize was based on the interagency guidelines (Alaska Log Transfer Facility Siting, Construction, Operation, and Monitoring/Reporting Guidelines). The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Marine Fisheries Service

## Issue 8: Marine Environment

staff conducted subtidal surveys at the sites that appeared to best meet the interagency guidelines. The subtidal survey reports and recommendations, which are included as part of Appendix E, were used to further define which of the potential LTF locations were preferable. Table 2-18 displays the LTFs involved in the various alternatives. See also the detailed alternative maps included with the Chasina FEIS.

**Table 2-18**  
**Log Transfer Facilities Required, by Alternative and System**

LTF Name	Alternative						LTF System
	1	2	3	4	5	6	
Lancaster Cove	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	A-Frame
West Arm Cholmondeley*	N	N	Y	N	Y	Y	A-Frame
North Arm Moira*	N	N	N	N	N	N	A-Frame

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service, 1998.

Y = Planned for intermittent use; N = Not planned for use.

\* New Log Transfer Facilities.

Table 2-19 displays the number of LTFs used or developed, the total acreage of the structural embankment, and the estimated acres to be affected by bark deposition. The combination of the marine habitat covered by the structural embankment and the area potentially covered by bark deposition represents the total loss of marine benthic habitat for each alternative.

**Table 2-19**  
**Marine Benthic Habitat Affected by Alternative**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Number of LTF Sites	1	1	2	1	2	2
Structural Embankment (Acres Affected)	.23	.23	.46	.23	.46	.46
Bark Deposition (Areas Affected)	1.0	1.0	2.0	1.0	2.0	2.0
<b>Total Acres of Marine Benthic Habitat Affected</b>	<b>1.23</b>	<b>1.23</b>	<b>2.46</b>	<b>1.23</b>	<b>2.46</b>	<b>2.46</b>

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1996.



## 2 Alternatives

Alternatives 1, 2, and 4 have no additional effect on the marine environment, while Alternatives 3, 5, and 6 affect the marine system (2.46 acres) in a similar fashion. The loss of habitat is much less than one percent of the available marine habitat in the project area. Since all species identified along the subtidal (underwater) survey transects are common throughout Southeast Alaska, it is concluded that there would not be a significant impact to the marine environment from constructing (or continuing to use) LTFs at the proposed sites.

## Mitigation Measures

### TLMP Mitigation

The Forest Service uses numerous mitigation and preventive measures in the planning and mitigation of land management activities. The application of these measures begins during the planning and design phases of a project. They link to the overall Forest, Ketchikan Administrative Area, and Ranger District management direction and continue through all phases of subsequent forest management. The standards, guidelines, and direction contained in the TLMP (1997), Alaska Regional Guide, and applicable Forest Service manuals and handbooks have been applied in the development of alternatives and design of harvest units and roads.

Listed below is a brief summary of some of the mitigation measures common to all alternatives. Specific mitigation measures, as applied to each individual unit, can be seen in the "As Planned" Unit Layout and Road Cards. These unit and road cards are an important tool for implementing the project, as they list standards and guidelines and provide a mechanism for tracking project implementation. Unit and road cards have been developed for each individual unit that occurs in an alternative and appear in Appendix J.

### Water Quality and Fish Production

#### TTRA, BMPs, Water Quality

Mitigation to protect water quality, fish habitat, and wetlands includes application of the Best Management Practices (BMPs) stated in the Soil and Water Conservation Handbook (USDA FSH 2509.22). This handbook provides standard operating procedures for all stream classes. In addition, the Forest Plan standards and guidelines now specify buffers for all Class I, II, and III streams. The width of this buffer strip may be greater than 100 feet for reasons such as topography, riparian soils, a windfirm boundary, timber stand boundaries, logging system requirements, and varying stream channel locations. In addition, certain Class III streams flow directly into or have been identified as influencing Class I streams. These Class III streams have been buffered to the slope break of the channel or to a windfirm boundary to protect water quality. Split yarding or full suspension was built into the logging and transportation design process, as was partial and full suspension over wetland soils or soils with a higher mass movement potential. Direct in-stream impacts are minimized through road construction timing and fish passage requirements on certain Class I and II streams. Refer to Appendix J (Unit and Road Cards) for the unit-specific stream buffering, suspension, passage, and timing requirements being applied. When pulling culverts and bridges to close roads, stream banks will be restored to their original grade and all disturbed areas will be reseeded with the appropriate grass seed mixture. Application of BMPs and adherence to the TTRA requirements will protect water quality fish habitat and wetlands as well as riparian habitat important to other species such as deer, bear, and furbearers.

While required TTRA buffers will mitigate most temperature sensitivity concerns, there still is concern about providing topographic shading to Class III streams that flow through harvest units. Table 2-20 lists units that have characteristics (south aspect, lack of immediate downstream forested stream buffers, historical and continued harvest activities, etc.) that may contribute to the temperature sensitivity of nearby streams. To mitigate this possible effect,



all Class III streams will have a slope break buffer plus a windfirm buffer applied, as negotiated by the field biologist and project forester.

Table 2-20  
Units Having Buffers for Temperature Sensitivity

Unit Number	Alternative(s)					
	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
678-312			X	X	X	X
678-339						X
679-407						
679-425			X	X		X
679-437			X	X	X	X

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service 1998.

### Anadromous Fish Habitat

Most Class I anadromous streams will receive a minimum 300-foot no-cut buffer. Where practical, roads, tail holds, and guy-circles will be located outside this stream buffer.

### Beach Fringe and Estuaries

Beach fringe areas will receive a 1,000-foot no-cut buffers. When practical, roads, tailholds, and guy-circles will be located outside these buffers.

## Wildlife

Mitigation measures to protect wildlife habitat are a part of the design of the alternatives, including the location of the harvest units and roads. Harvest units and roads are intentionally located away from important wildlife habitats (to the extent practicable) to reduce the effects on wildlife. Beach and estuary habitats are completely avoided by harvest units, while road incursions are minimized to the extent practicable. Where possible, disturbance of important travel corridors is minimized to allow the undisturbed movement of wildlife. Other specific mitigation measures are outlined for individual species.

### Cavity and Snag Dependent Management Indicator Species

Mitigation measures will provide for habitat requirements of cavity and snag dependent Management Indicator Species (MIS) by leaving 275 snags per 100 acres averaged over each VCU. To provide for adequate distribution of snags within VCUs which have marginal numbers of snags, the following units will have small 0.1-acre (or larger) snag patches distributed throughout the unit at a rate of 0.1 acre per 10 acres of unit. The location of these snag patches will be determined during layout or sale administration, and will be designed in such a fashion as to not impose undue safety hazards on logging contractors.

Guidelines for placement of snag patches and old-growth islands include:

- Areas where wildlife use is concentrated (determined during reconnaissance).
- Selected areas should be at least 100 feet away from unit boundary (unless the unit boundary is an existing second-growth stand; then the patch or island can be placed along the unit boundary).
- Patches or islands can be placed along split yard sections of harvest units, particularly split yard streams.
- Snag patches or old-growth islands can be incorporated into stream buffers.
- Snag patches or old-growth islands can be placed along boundaries of muskegs.

Units which will employ these snag recruitment techniques include:

677-301	680-330
677-305	679-392
678-331	681-322
678-334	

### Wildlife Travel Corridors

Important travel corridors have been identified for the project area. Harvest units that occur in these corridors are recommended for partial harvest to maintain forest structure to lessen impact to wildlife mitigation and dispersal. The following units will receive a type of partial harvest:

678-303	679-447
679-378	679-467
679-382	679-470
679-409	679-479
679-425	681-363
679-437	

### Goshawks

Region 10 goshawk management guidelines in effect at the time of unit release will be followed. Goshawk guidelines in the TLMP (1997) call for maintaining the following conditions:

Nest Stand—Maintain an area of at least 25 acres around the confirmed nest tree (and probable nest tree if identified) and attempt to include prey handling areas, perches, and

roosts. Vegetative structure objectives generally include a multi-layered, closed (over 60 percent) forest canopy, a relatively open understory with large trees (usually 20+ inches d.b.h.) and low ground vegetation. These structural characteristics generally equate to Volume Class 5 and higher in the timber resource inventory.

**Management**—No vegetative manipulation or new road construction is permitted. Existing roads may be maintained. Permit no continuous disturbance likely to result in nest abandonment within the surrounding 600 feet from March 15 to August 15. Activity restrictions are removed for active nests that become inactive or unsuccessful.

**Nesting Habitat**—Maintain an area of not less than 75 acres surrounding the nest stand (total management of 100 acres). Include inactive nest stands, hiding cover, and foraging opportunities for young goshawks. Vegetative structure is similar to the Nest Stand but may include some intermediate canopy (e.g. Volume Class 4).

**Management**—No commercial timber harvest is permitted within the Nesting Habitat. New road construction is permitted (outside the nest stand) if no other reasonable roading alternatives outside the mapped Nesting Habitat exist.

All new nests discovered during field reconnaissance or unit layout will be protected from timber harvest and blowdown by implementing the above measures or the Region 10 goshawk management guidelines in effect at the time of unit release.

## Marbled Murrelets

Due to the limited information available on nesting habitat requirements of marbled murrelets, any nests located during field reconnaissance or unit layout will be assessed on a case-by-case basis.

## Bald Eagle Nests

Road construction activities that are within a half mile of bald eagle nests will usually have blasting restricted to the period of September 1 to February 28. If the nest is unoccupied, normal blasting procedures are also permitted from June 1 to August 31, if there is no direct danger to eagles, nests, eagle nest trees, or other eagle habitat elements. Blasting within one-half mile of an active eagle nest is only allowed if: (1) the blasting can be accomplished in accordance with the requirements of the Bald Eagle Protection Act; (2) written coordination with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service has occurred; and (3) the results of the interagency coordination is documented. Harvest units within one-half mile of eagle nests with road construction include:

678-312	679-409	681-363
679-367	679-382	681-365
679-379	680-330	

Also, as part of the Interagency Agreement between the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the Forest Service, the Forest Service agrees to not have repeated helicopter flights within one-quarter mile of active eagle nests. The only harvest unit within one-quarter mile of an eagle nest that is being considered for helicopter harvest is 681-363. However, helicopter drop zones in Port Johnson and Cannery Creek areas need to take eagle nest locations into consideration, because there could be some conflicts.

## Whale Habitats

The following Forest-wide standards and guidelines have been developed for application on all Forest Service permitted or approved activities and have been incorporated by reference into the Chasina DEIS from the TLMP (1997):

- Provide for the protection and maintenance of whale habitats.
- Ensure that Forest Service permitted or approved activities are conducted in a manner consistent with the Marine Mammal Protection Act, the Endangered Species Act, and National Marine Fisheries Service regulations for approaching whales, dolphins, and porpoise.

## Marine Mammals

Forest-wide Standards and Guidelines direct the Forest Service to prevent and/or reduce potential harassment of sea lions and other marine mammals due to activities carried out by or under the jurisdiction of the Forest Service. These have been incorporated by reference into the Chasina FEIS from the TLMP (1997). These Forest-wide Standards and Guidelines to provide for protection and maintenance of harbor seal, Steller sea lion, and sea otter habitats are as follows:

- 1) Ensure that Forest Service permitted or approved activities are conducted in a manner consistent with the Marine Mammal Protection Act and the Endangered Species Act. "Taking" of marine mammals is prohibited; taking includes harassment, pursuit, or attempting any such activity.
- 2) Locate facilities and concentrated human activities requiring Forest Service approval as far from known marine mammal haulouts, rookeries, and known concentration areas as practicable. The following distances are provided as general guidelines for maintaining habitats and reducing human disturbance:
  - Facilities, camps, LTFs, campgrounds, and other developments should be located one mile from known haulouts and farther if the development is large.
  - Individuals associated with Forest Service permitted or approved activities will not intentionally approach within 100 yards, or otherwise intentionally disturb or displace, any hauled-out marine mammal.

Several harbor seal haulout areas have been identified near the project area. They include:

- west side of little island in South Arm
- rocks east of Cannery Creek
- rocks southwest of Lancaster Cove

## Vancouver Canada Geese

Vancouver Canada goose habitat found during unit layout will be protected with a 410-foot buffer where management activities will be avoided, if possible, when the geese are present for nesting or brood rearing activities.

## Heron and Raptor Nest Protection

- Any active heron rookeries or raptor nests will be protected with a 600-foot windfirm buffer of old-growth habitat. Disturbance will be minimized during the active nesting season (generally March 1 to July 31) on a case by case basis.
- The nests will be monitored annually for two years after discovery of the active nest. If the nest remains inactive for two consecutive years, protection measures for the site will be removed.

## Alexander Archipelago Wolf

- A 600-foot windfirm buffer will be maintained around active wolf dens. Road construction within the buffer will be discouraged and alternate routes explored.
- The den will be monitored for at least two consecutive years and if the den becomes inactive, then buffer restrictions can be removed.

## Cave/Karst Resources

Harvest unit boundaries will be modified and logging systems will be prescribed that protect cave and karst resources. Any new karst feature discovered during layout will be discussed with the Forest Geologist to assign the appropriate protection measures.

## Subsistence

Because most subsistence use involves harvesting fish and game, mitigation measures that protect or enhance fish and game resources will also protect and enhance subsistence activities. By placing units and roads away from beach and estuary fringe habitats, and away from salmon bearing streams, mitigation measures were built into each of the alternatives considered in the EIS.

## Recreation

### North Arm Moira, Recreation

Effects of timber harvest on views from anchorages and known recreation sites will be reduced by leaving buffers of timber along the beaches and inland lakes. The proposed visual quality objectives for this plan emphasize the protection of the visual resource as viewed from saltwater, particularly in North Arm of Moira Sound. Protecting these viewsheds will reduce the direct effects on visual quality. Stream riparian buffers will protect fisheries habitat and sport angler's use of Class I and II streams in the project area.

### Scenic Quality

Effects of timber harvest on views from anchorages and known recreational day use areas have been reduced by leaving buffers of timber along the beaches and inland lakes. The visual quality objectives for this plan emphasize the protection of the visual resource as viewed from saltwater, particularly in North Arm Moira Sound. Protecting these viewsheds will reduce the direct effects on visual quality. Stream riparian buffers will protect fisheries habitat and sport anglers use of Class I and II streams in the project area.

## Cultural Resources

Potential effects on cultural resources can be minimized by excluding project activities from most high sensitivity areas (exceptions are LTFs, camps, a small number of units, and most access roads to these facilities). Most high sensitivity areas were surveyed in 1995 and 1996, except for exact road locations which cannot be precisely determined until after unit and road layout occurs. Types of mitigation measures include avoidance, protective enclosures, monitoring of harvest activities, restrictions on size or road location, and recovery and documentation of materials.

## TES Plants

Choris bog orchid (*Platanthera chorisana*) is a designated sensitive species. Two populations of this species were discovered in muskeg openings during botanical surveys of the project area conducted in 1995. Populations were found within the vicinity of harvest Unit 679-363. The primary risk of perturbation to these populations would be through road construction activities. Road locations have been adjusted to avoid direct impacts to known locations of Choris bog orchid.

Several other populations of Choris bog orchid were located in 1996 in the vicinity of harvest Units 679-363, 679-407, 679-414, and 677-311.



### Monitoring

Monitoring activities can be divided into three broad categories: Forest Plan monitoring, routine implementation monitoring, and project-specific effectiveness monitoring. These broad types are discussed in the following sections.

#### Forest Plan Monitoring

The National Forest Management Act requires that National Forests monitor and evaluate their forest plans (36 CFR 219.11). The significance of this requirement is emphasized by the recent development of a National Monitoring and Evaluation Strategy (Forest Service 1993). The Strategy is designed to focus agency attention and resources on evaluating implementation of forest plans to provide the Forest Service with information necessary to ensure responsive and efficient management of National Forests. Embodied in the National Monitoring and Evaluation Strategy are three principles: (1) evaluation of results will be readily available to the public, agencies, and other groups; (2) monitoring and evaluation will focus on ecosystems and emphasize interrelationships among biotic and abiotic components; and (3) the strategy will be flexible to meet local needs while encompassing forest, regional, and national requirements.

Three levels of monitoring are incorporated into Forest Plan monitoring and evaluation.

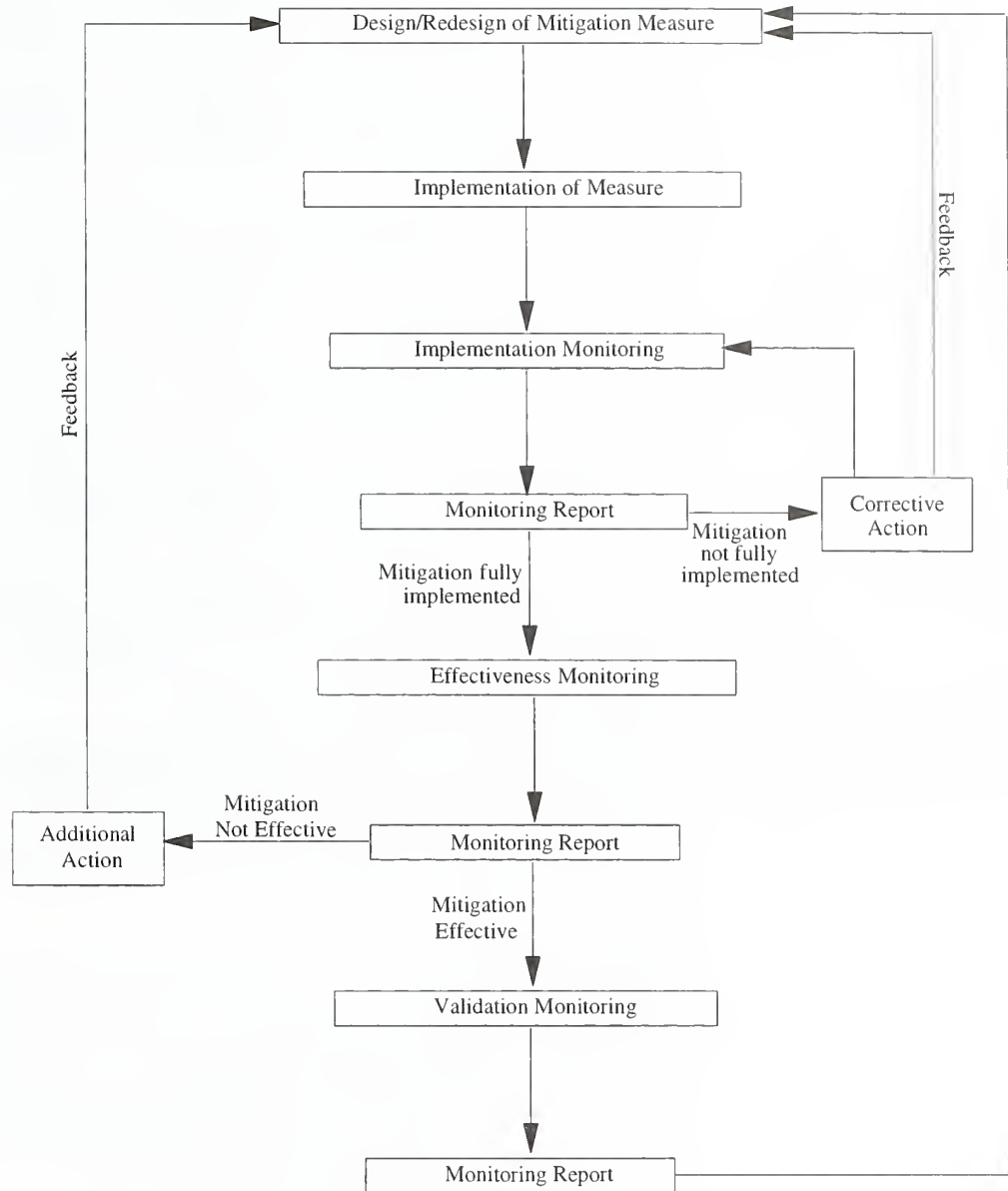
**Implementation Monitoring** is used to determine if goals, objectives, standards and guidelines, and management prescriptions are implemented as detailed in the Forest Plan and project specifications;

**Effectiveness Monitoring** is used to determine if goals, objectives, standards and guidelines, and management prescriptions, as designed and implemented, are effective in meeting Forest Plan goals and objectives; and

**Validation Monitoring** is used to determine whether the data, assumptions, and coefficients used in the development of the Plan are correct.

Most monitoring elements involve the mitigation measures described previously. The mitigation measures are part of a process that includes these three types of monitoring to determine if the measure was implemented and is effective or needs revision. The feedback provided by monitoring results can be used to develop improved methods or additional treatments to ensure that the mitigation will be effective in the future. Figure 2-11 displays how this process of mitigation and monitoring occurs.

Figure 2-7  
Mitigation/Monitoring Feedback Loop



## 2 Alternatives

### Mitigation/ Monitoring Feedback Loop

An annual monitoring report is prepared by each Administrative Area of the Tongass and incorporated into one report at the end of each year. This report addresses all monitoring questions contained in the applicable Forest Plan; references all monitoring being conducted on the Area/Forest; assesses progress toward achieving the goals and objectives described in the Forest Plan; and either certifies that the Forest Plan is sufficient to guide management of the Forest over the next year or proposes needed changes and an approach for dealing with those changes. Forest Plan monitoring is conducted over the entire Forest on a sample basis. Samples may or may not be taken within the Chasina Project Area; however, monitoring results are designed to answer questions regarding the implementation and effectiveness of mitigation within the project area. A total of 36 implementation, effectiveness, and validation monitoring items are identified in the forest-wide monitoring plan described in the TLMP (1997). All monitoring is subject to funding and personnel limitations imposed upon the Agency.

### Routine Implementation Monitoring

Routine implementation monitoring assesses whether the project was implemented as designed and whether or not it complies with the Forest Plan. Planning for routine implementation monitoring began with the preliminary design of harvest units and roads. Specialists used on-the-ground inventories, computer inventories, and aerial photographs to prepare the documents called unit cards for each harvest unit in each of the alternatives. Cards were also prepared for each segment of road. Resource specialists wrote their concerns on the cards and then described how the concerns could be addressed in the design of each unit and road segment. Resource concerns and mitigation measures will be refined further during final layout when specialists will have one more opportunity to revise the unit and road card recommendations. The unit and road card documents will be the basis for determining whether recommendations were implemented for various aspects of the Chasina Project Area.

Routine implementation monitoring is part of the administration of a timber sale contract. The sale administrators and road inspectors ensure that the prescriptions contained on the unit and road cards are incorporated into contract documents and then monitor performance relative to contract requirements.

### Effectiveness Monitoring

#### Project-specific Effectiveness Monitoring

In addition to the Forest Plan monitoring and routine implementation monitoring that will be conducted throughout the Tongass National Forest, including the Chasina Project Area, project-specific effectiveness monitoring activities are identified. Effectiveness monitoring seeks answers about the effectiveness of design features or mitigation measures in protecting natural resources and their beneficial uses. Monitoring records will be kept by the responsible staff.

#### Sensitive Species

*Objective:* To provide protection of specific habitats for this species which is located in the Chasina Project Area.

*Desired Result:* Minimal site disturbance to populations of Choris bog orchid, particularly those located near harvest Units 679-363 and 414

*Measurement:* Protect known locations during sale implementation.

*Threshold:* Visual inspection of site indicates signs of disturbance or reduced vigor.

*Corrective Action:* Consult with Area TES coordinator.

*Responsible Staff:* CRD timber/silviculture staff.

*Record of Results:* Daily diaries used for contract administration. Prepare a brief report of results each year.

*Annual Cost:* On-going business for timber/silviculture

*FTE Needs:* Zero

## Fisheries

### Temperature Sensitivity

*Objective:* To determine response of water temperature in potentially temperature sensitive hydrologic systems.

*Desired Result:* Attainment of State Water Quality Temperature Standards (WQS) for the growth and propagation of fish, shellfish, and other aquatic life and wildlife.

*Measurement:* State WQS criteria for temperature for fresh water uses. Criteria will be measured prior to, during, and following project implementation. Monitoring will be implemented near the units of concern (Chapter 3).

*Evaluation:* Determine if selected streams meet criteria for State WQSs for fresh water uses. Determine if any deviation from WQSs can be correlated to Best Management Practices (BMP) implementation and forest management activities. Report and feedback results into validation monitoring needs and redesign of BMPs.

*Responsible Staff:* CRD fisheries staff.

*Report of Results:* Prepare a brief report.

*Annual Costs:* \$3,500

*FTE Needs:* 0.1 FTE

## Karst Resources

*Objective:* To prevent significant or permanent adverse effects to karst resources as the result of surface management activity and determine if implemented protection measures are effective.

*Desired Results:* Surface management activities will not have an adverse affect on karst resources and hydrology.

*Measurement:* Conduct field inspections on at least 25 percent of surface management activities on medium vulnerability karst.

*Evaluation:* Determine if mitigation was successful in avoiding any significant or permanent adverse effects to karst resources.

*Responsible Staff:* Forest Geologist in coordination with the Craig Ranger District.

*Record of Results:* Report of results to Forest Supervisor.

## Validation Monitoring

Validation monitoring is conducted to show if the assumptions or models used in planning are correct. It is usually carried out at the Regional level in conjunction with research.

Validation monitoring may or may not occur within the Chasina Project Area since this type of monitoring is built into a Forest-wide Action Plan.







## Alternative 2

- Proposed Units
- Private Lands
- State Lands



- Existing Roads
- Proposed Roads
- Project Boundary
- Streams







### Alternative 3

- Proposed Units
- Private Lands
- State Lands



- Existing Roads
- Proposed Roads
- Project Boundary
- Streams







## Alternative 4

- Proposed Units
- Private Lands
- State Lands



- Existing Roads
- Proposed Roads
- Project Boundary
- Streams







## Alternative 5

- Proposed Units
- Private Lands
- State Lands



- Existing Roads
- Proposed Roads
- Project Boundary
- Streams







## Alternative 6

- Proposed Units
- Private Lands
- State Lands



- Existing Roads
- Proposed Roads
- Project Boundary
- Streams





# Chapter 3

## Affected Environment and Effects of the Alternatives

### Outline

<b>Introduction</b> .....	3-1
<b>Physical and Biological Resources</b>	
Air Quality .....	3-7
Aquatic Resources .....	3-10
Floodplains .....	3-64
Riparian Management Area .....	3-70
Wetlands .....	3-76
Soils .....	3-95
Geology, Minerals, and Karst Resources .....	3-121
Wildlife .....	3-139
Old Growth and Biodiversity .....	3-165
Threatened and Endangered Species .....	3-188
Forest Health .....	3-205
Silviculture and Timber .....	3-208
<b>People and the Forest</b>	
Socioeconomic Environment .....	3-263
Subsistence .....	3-292
Cultural Resources .....	3-325
Recreation, Wilderness, Wild and Scenic Rivers, and Roadless Areas .....	3-335
Scenic Resources .....	3-357
Land Adjustments, Uses, and Permits .....	3-387
Roads and Facilities .....	3-389
Marine Environment, Log Transfer Sites, and Related Facilities .....	3-398
Other Environmental Considerations .....	3-410



# Chapter 3

## Affected Environment and Effects of the Alternatives

### Introduction

This chapter presents information about those aspects of the environment that may be affected by the activities in the proposed alternatives. The “Affected Environment” portion of each resource section describes the current condition of the resource, trends related to its status, and relevant characteristics that may be subjected to impacts from the alternatives. The “Effects of the Alternatives” portion of each section presents the direct, indirect, and cumulative effects (or impacts) of activities under the alternatives. Thus, this chapter combines into a single chapter information that in many Environmental Impact Statements (EISs) appears in separate chapters (generally called Chapter 3 “Affected Environment” and Chapter 4 “Environmental Consequences”). This chapter provides the basis for the Comparison of the Alternatives section in Chapter 2.

#### Available Information

The interdisciplinary team (IDT) examined the data and relationships used to estimate the effects of the alternatives. The data and level of analysis used were commensurate with the importance of the possible impacts (40 CFR 1502.15); and relevant discussion in the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP 1997) is incorporated by reference (40 CFR 1502.21).

The ecology, inventory, and management of a large forest area is a complex and developing science; the interaction of resource supply, the economy, and communities is the subject matter of an inexact science. In some cases, information gaps occur because of this. When encountering a gap in information, the IDT concluded that the missing information frequently would have added precision to estimates or better specified a relationship. However, the basic data and central relationships are sufficiently well established in the respective sciences that the new information would be very unlikely to reverse or nullify understood relationships. Thus, new information would be welcomed and would add precision, but it was not essential to a reasoned choice among the alternatives as they are constituted.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Analyzing Effects

Effects are quantified (where possible), although qualitative discussions may also be included. The means by which any identified potential adverse effects will be reduced or mitigated are described in detail in Chapter 2.

Environmental consequences are the effects of implementing an alternative on the physical, biological, social, and economic environment. **Direct** environmental effects are defined as those occurring at the same time and place as the initial cause or action. **Indirect** effects are those that occur later in time or are spatially removed from the activity but would be significant in the foreseeable future. **Cumulative** effects result from the incremental effects of actions when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions, regardless of what agency (Federal or non-Federal) or person undertakes such other actions. Cumulative effects can result from individually minor but collectively significant actions taking place over a period of time.

For the purposes of this analysis, the reasonably foreseeable time frame over which the indirect effects are estimated is the year 2004. This determination of reasonably foreseeable is based on the time frame of approximately 10 years from when the project was initiated. Alternative 6 is used to display the reasonably foreseeable future actions, because this is the maximum harvest alternative, within Forest Plan standards and guidelines, and volume not harvested in other action alternatives could be harvested as part of another project by the year 2004.

The cumulative effects analysis in this document considers the TLMP (1997).

The following assumptions were made to assess the reasonably foreseeable effects to the year 2004. These assumptions reflect current management and technology of National Forests and provide a uniform approach to estimating effects of timber harvest and road construction.

- Laws, standards, guidelines, and Best Management Practices (BMPs) for water quality would be followed. These requirements are expected to be at least as stringent in the future as they are today.
- Timber sale planning would use an interdisciplinary process.
- All acres of suitable land, as identified in the TLMP (1997), would be equally subject to impacts.
- The no-action alternative would represent only a delay in implementing the TLMP and, based on volume projections in the 10 year timber sale action plan, foreseeable cumulative effects would begin to occur before 2004.
- Future effects on resources from timber harvest and road construction would be similar to impacts projected for current alternatives.

Potential adverse environmental effects which cannot be avoided are discussed. Unavoidable adverse effects may result from managing the land for one resource at the expense of the use or condition of other resources. Many adverse effects can be reduced or mitigated by limiting the extent or duration of effects. Mitigation measures within standards and guidelines are specified for project activities to be implemented under the alternatives. These are discussed briefly throughout the chapter, and in detail in Chapter 2.

Short-term effects are those that occur annually or within the first 10 years of project implementation. Long-term productivity refers to the capability of the land and resources to continue producing goods and services for 50 years and beyond.

Irreversible commitments are decisions affecting non-renewable resources such as soils, minerals, plant and animal species, and cultural resources. Such commitments of resources are considered irreversible because the resource has deteriorated to the point that renewal can occur only over a long period of time or at a great expense, or the resource has been destroyed



or removed. For example, a rock pit which is used to provide rock to build roads throughout the project area would be considered an irreversible commitment of the resource. Land use designations (LUDs) allowing land-altering activities were established by the Forest Plan, but the actual commitment to develop, use, or affect non-renewable resources in the Chasina Project Area was made during the development of this project.

Irretrievable commitments represent opportunities foregone for the period during which resource use or production cannot be realized. These decisions are reversible, but the production opportunities foregone are irretrievable. An example of such commitments is the allocation of LUDs that do not allow timber harvest in areas containing suitable and accessible timber lands, a decision that is made at the Forest Plan level. For the time over which such allocations are made, the opportunity to produce timber from those areas is foregone, thus irretrievable. Irreversible and irretrievable commitments resulting from this project are discussed in more detail at the end of this chapter.

## Land Divisions

The land area of the Tongass National Forest has been divided in several different ways to describe the different resources and allow analysis of how they may be affected by Forest Plan and project level decisions. These divisions vary by resource since the relationship of each resource to geographic conditions and zones also varies. Three of these are used for more than one resource and are described briefly here.

### Ecological Provinces

The Tongass National Forest identifies 21 large land areas that are distinguished by differences in ecological processes (TLMP (1997), Chapter 3, Biodiversity). They are defined by a combination of climatic and geographic features. The Chasina Project Area lies within the South Prince of Wales Ecological Province (Number 18) and is discussed in the Biological Diversity and Wildlife sections of this chapter.

### Value Comparison Units (VCUs)

These are distinct geographic areas, each encompassing a drainage basin containing one or more large stream systems. The boundaries usually follow watershed divides. The Tongass contains 867 VCUs, seven of which are found in the Chasina Area. They are used to describe the locations of specific resources in the project area. VCUs 674, 677, 678, 679, 681, and 682 are within the Chasina Area.

### Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs)

These are Forest Service land divisions that correspond to Minor Harvest Areas used by the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G). Approximately 190 apply to the Tongass National Forest, three of which apply to the Chasina Project Area. They are used in the Subsistence and Wildlife sections. Portions of WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 are included within the Chasina Project Area.

## Geographic Information System

The Tongass National Forest has developed a computerized geographic information system (GIS) which was used for the development of this project. The GIS is a large data base containing information on many of the resources of the forest. Much of the data consists of layers, each representing a particular resource or attribute (such as vegetative species, soil types, or recreation places). This system makes it possible to do spatial analysis of alternatives and effects, and to rapidly display resource information in map (plot) format. Numerical data can also be stored, displayed, and analyzed. Specific site reconnaissance information gathered for the Chasina Project was added to the data base.

## Description of the Ecosystem

### Project Area

The Chasina Project Area lies within the South Prince of Wales Ecological Province. This province includes Prince of Wales Island south of Selzer Portage. This province is a combination of climatic and geographic features. The South Prince of Wales Ecological



### 3 Environment and Effects

Province includes 370,594 acres, of which 68,926 acres (including 2,455 acres of saltwater) are within the Chasina Project Area.

The project area is mountainous, often rising abruptly from sea level to several thousand feet. Elevations of forested areas extend up to approximately 3,400 feet in the project area.

#### **Abiotic Components**

The configuration of the coastline, the warm Japanese ocean current, and the high coastal mountains produce abundant rainfall. Storms and moderate to heavy precipitation occur year round, but most commonly from September through November. The abundant moisture feeds numerous streams, rivers, and lakes.

The Chasina Project Area has a maritime climate, resulting from the moderating influence of the Pacific Ocean. In the summer, this provides a cooling influence, while in winter, temperatures are warmer than would be expected for these latitudes. Normal temperatures range from the mid-40s to the mid-60s in the summer, and from the high teens to the low-40s in the winter. During the warmer months, temperatures are highest inland and lowest along the coasts, while in the colder months, the reverse is true.

The local climate has had a significant influence upon the landscape ecology of Prince of Wales. Moderate temperatures and ample precipitation produce good growing conditions for commercial forest species. Relatively low annual temperatures and abundant moisture produce slow rates of decomposition, resulting in the characteristic buildup of organic matter over much of the area's landscape.

The north Pacific Ocean also generates low pressure weather systems which move onshore and produce abundant cloud cover. These low pressure systems also dominate the wind patterns. Table INT-1 displays the number of days, by month, when strong winds occurred between 1953 and 1978. Over 80 percent of the gale force winds reported in this time interval were from the south or southeast. Gale force winds occur during every month of the year, but the vast majority occur during the fall and winter months. The winds generated by these storms are significant factors in the development of forest stands. Blowdown events ranging from a few trees to several hundred acres may occur. These windthrow events, accompanied by heavy precipitation and saturation of the soil, may be a significant trigger for landslides in forested areas. Windthrow events are further discussed in the Silviculture section of Chapter 3.

The Chasina Project Area has complete cloud cover about 85 percent of the year. October is generally the wettest month. High precipitation persists through the middle of November when intermittent snowfall occurs. Snowfall varies according to elevation and distance inland from the coast. Snow accumulation below 500 feet elevation is short-lived, generally melting off within a few days due to warmer temperatures and rain.

Table INT-2 shows mean annual summer and winter temperatures, precipitation, and snowfall for the portion of Prince of Wales Island just north of the project area.

Table INT-1

**Number of Days, by Month, With Winds Over 30 Miles per Hour, National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Meteorological Station at Annette Island, Alaska, 1953-78**

Month	Miles Per Hour						Total Days
	31-35	36-40	41-45	46-50	51-55	56-60	
July	3						3
August	5	4					9
September	11	7	3		1		22
October	67	45	13	4	3		132
November	58	41	5	8	1		113
December	64	39	9	9	2	3	126
January	70	29	5	6	2	2	114
February	60	31	2	8			101
March	25	9	8	4			46
April	32	9	7	2			50
May	8	5	2				15
June	11	1	1				13

SOURCE: Harris 1989.

Note: Daily fastest mile wind speed is obtained by measuring and averaging instantaneous wind velocities over 1 minute once each hour. The highest of all the 24 hourly measurements for the day is called the fastest mile and is included in published reports.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table INT-2

**Mean Yearly Summer and Winter Temperatures, Precipitation, and Snow Accumulation for 2 Communities on Prince of Wales Island**

Recording Station	Mean Summer Temperature (F)	Mean Winter Temperature (F)	Mean Precipitation (inches)	Mean Snow (inches)
Craig	55.0	34.8	106.47	35.7
Hollis	56.6	33.7	109.69	17.0

SOURCE: Alaska Climate Center Technical Note No. 3, 1986.

#### **Biotic Components**

The coastal forest of the South Prince of Wales Ecological Province is part of the cool, temperate rainforest that extends along the Pacific coast from southern British Columbia to Prince William Sound. Most of the forest is composed of old-growth conifers, such as western hemlock, Sitka spruce, mountain hemlock, western redcedar, and Alaska yellowcedar. Red alder is common along streams, beach fringes, and on sites recently disturbed by logging and landslides.

Blueberries, huckleberry, Sitka alder, devil's club, and salal are common shrubs in the forest. Plant growth on the forest floor includes deerheart, dwarf dogwood, single delight, and skunk cabbage. Mosses grow in great profusion on the ground, on fallen logs, on the lower branches of trees, and in forest openings.

Grass-sedge meadows usually are located along lakes and major streams. Interspersed throughout the forest are muskegs, supporting plant communities dominated by sphagnum mosses and sedges.

The alpine zone usually lies above 2,500 feet. It occupies the area above the coastal forest and is separated from the forest by a subalpine or transition zone. Alpine plants have adapted to snowpack and wind abrasion by evolving low-profile growth forms. Low, mat-forming vegetation covers most alpine areas, with cushion-like plants occupying crevices on rock outcrops and talus slopes.

The forests, shorelines, streams, and rivers of Southeast Alaska provide habitat for over 350 species of birds and mammals, including both nongame animals and animals such as black bear, Sitka black-tailed deer, moose, wolf, mountain goat, beaver, otter, and marten. Many of these are found in the project area. The coastline provides an ideal habitat for a large population of bald eagles, and wetlands provide nesting habitat for waterfowl.

A highly productive marine environment includes an abundance of marine mammals, halibut, herring, and shellfish. Both resident and anadromous fish are found within and adjacent to the project area, including five species of Pacific salmon, Dolly Varden char, cutthroat trout, and steelhead trout.

Site-specific information on biological resources in the project area follows in various sections of this chapter.

## Air Quality

### Key Terms

**Ambient Air**—that air, external to building, encompassing or surrounding a specific region.

**Ambient Air Quality Standard**—the prescribed level of pollutants in the outside air that cannot be exceeded legally during a specified time in a specified geographical area.

**Class I Airshed**—one of three classes of areas provided for in the Clean Air Act for the Prevention of Significant Deterioration program. Class I airsheds are the “cleanest” and receive special visibility protection.

**Class II Airshed**—the second of three classes of areas provided for in the Clean Air Act. Class II Airsheds have no specific attainment criteria.

**Prevention of Significant Deterioration (PSD)**—Prevention of Significant Deterioration of ambient air quality is a program established by the Clean Air Act to protect air quality and air-quality-related values.

## Affected Environment

Although there is little scientific information on the baseline air quality of the Chasina Project Area, the air quality of the region is generally good. Exchange of air typically comes from relatively pollution-free air off the Gulf of Alaska. Local sources of airborne particulates include motor vehicle emissions, motor vessels and cruise ships, dust, residential and commercial heating sources in the Ketchikan Gateway Borough population center, marine traffic on Tongass Narrows, the Ketchikan Pulp Company sawmill at Ward Cove, and a limited amount of prescribed burning.

Vehicles and home heating, particularly wood-fired heating, contribute to regional particulate matter concentrations. Alaska has experienced localized problems with wood smoke, and has issued regulations that limit open burning and other air pollution-generating activities in wood smoke control areas between November 1 and March 31. The wood smoke control areas do not include the Chasina Project Area. Open burning may be restricted in the project area when an air quality advisory is issued by the Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation (ADEC) (AAC 50.030). ADEC has the primary responsibility for attainment and maintenance of Ambient Air Quality Standards under the provisions of the Clean Air Act (see TLMP (1997) for related air quality discussion). The Forest Service cooperates with the ADEC to protect air quality in National Forests. The entire project area is a Class II airshed for purposes of Prevention of Significant Deterioration (PSD) and does not have specific attainment criteria under the Clean Air Act. There are no Class I airsheds designated in Southeast Alaska, which is a more restrictive requirement. The Clean Air Act requires air quality impact analyses for PSD sources on Class I airsheds; EPA exempts sources located farther than 200 kilometers from a Class I airshed from such analysis. The nearest Class I airshed is Denali National Park, which is approximately 1,400 kilometers away. Therefore, the Chasina Project is exempt from having to do an air quality impact analysis.

## Effects of the Alternatives

### Direct, Indirect and Cumulative Effects

There is presently little information on the possible effects of ambient air quality on forest resources in Southeast Alaska. Forest health monitoring recently initiated under a national resource program includes air resource related parameters. Methods of conducting inventories are being developed to address this information need. Monitoring of baseline resource conditions on the forest is being conducted at this time.

National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) for indicators of matter less than 10 microns (PM-10) in size are established by EPA as the concentration limits needed to protect all of the public against adverse effects on public health and welfare. PM-10 indicators are utilized because the human respiratory system cannot efficiently filter out particulate matter this size or smaller. Wildfires and prescribed fires can be a source of fugitive particulate matter less than 10 microns in size.

Prevention of Significant Deterioration (PSD) of ambient air quality, is a program established by the Clean Air Act to:

- a. Protect public health and welfare from any actual or potential adverse effects from air pollutants not withstanding attainment and maintenance of all national ambient air quality standards.
- b. Ensure economic growth will occur in a manner consistent with the preservation of existing clean air resources.
- c. Preserve air quality and air quality related values in areas of special national or regional natural, recreational, scenic, or historic values.
- d. Ensure that any decision to permit increased air pollution is made only after there has been adequate opportunity for informed public participation in the decision making process and after careful evaluation of all consequences.

The NAAQS for particulate matter less than 10 microns in size would not be violated by the proposed action. PSD increments in the Southeast Alaska Intrastate Air Quality Control Region for sulphur dioxide, oxides of nitrogen, and total suspended particulate have not yet been exceeded, making an analysis unnecessary.

All of the management alternatives are expected to have limited, short-term impacts on the ambient air-quality. Alternative 1, the no-action alternative, would result in the least emission of particulate and gaseous air pollutants in the near term. The potential for uncontrolled forest fires would be slightly higher for the action alternatives because of the logging slash created. The occurrence of forest fires, even when logging slash is present, is extremely rare in Southeast Alaska due to the annual amount of precipitation.

Local sources of airborne particulates produced or increased by the action alternatives include motor vehicle emissions, dust from road construction, residential and heating sources and marine traffic. No prescribed burning is proposed in any alternative so there will be no effect on air quality from this source. Fugitive dust generated from construction and increased vehicular traffic may temporarily affect air quality.



The action alternatives would result in a continued supply of raw wood products to local sawmills in the Ketchikan Area. This would indirectly affect air quality in the immediate area.

The indirect and cumulative effects of the proposed action alternatives upon air quality will maintain local ambient air quality.



## Aquatic Resources

### Key Terms

**Aelvin**—newly hatched salmon that are still attached to the yolk sac.

**Adfluvial**—species or populations of fish that do not go to sea, but live in lakes and enter streams to spawn.

**Alluvial fan channel**—a fan-shaped deposit of sand, gravel, and fine material made by a stream where it runs out onto a level plain or meets a slower stream.

**Anadromous**—fish that ascend from the sea to breed in freshwater streams.

**Benthic**—refers to organisms that live on the substrate at the bottom of an ocean, lake, or stream.

**Channel types**—the defining of stream sections based on watershed runoff, landform relief, and geology.

**Estuary**—relatively flat, intertidal, and upland areas where saltwater meets freshwater, as at the heads of bays and the mouths of streams.

**Evapotranspiration**—loss of moisture by evaporation from land and water surfaces, and by transpiration from plants.

**Habitat Capability**—the number of fish a particular habitat can potentially produce.

**Large Woody Debris (LWD)**—any large piece of relatively stable woody material having a diameter of at least 4 inches and a length greater than 3 feet that intrudes into a stream channel.

**Resident fish**—non-migratory fish that complete their entire life cycle in freshwater.

**Salmonid**—refers to the taxonomic group of fishes to which salmon belong.

#### Streams:

**Ephemeral**—one that flows briefly only in direct response to precipitation in the immediate locality and whose channel is at all times above the water table.

**Intermittent**—one in contact with the groundwater table that flows only at certain times of the year as when the groundwater table is high and/or when it receives water from springs or from some surface source such as melting snow.

**Perennial**—one that flows continuously throughout the year.

**Watershed**—total land area draining to any point in a stream, as measured on a map, aerial photo, or other horizontal plane.

## Affected Environment

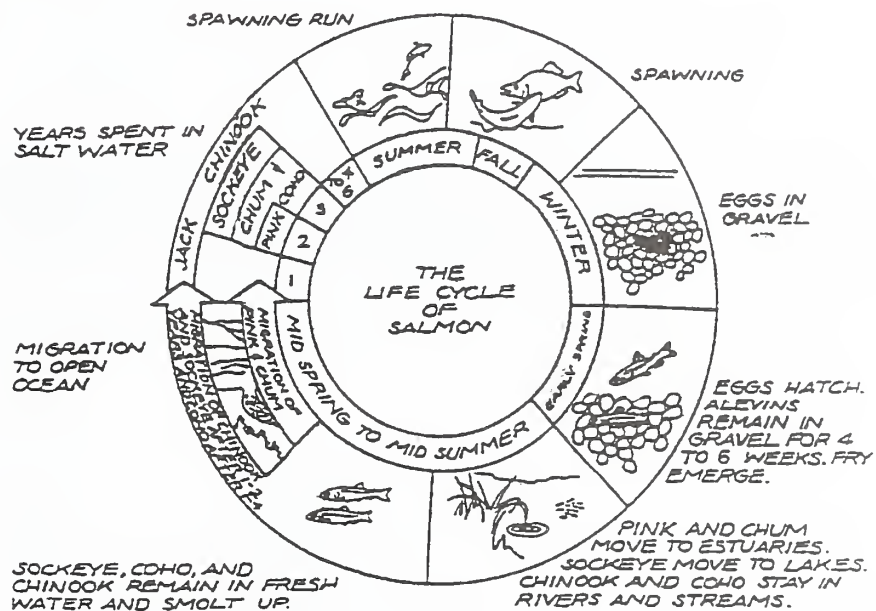
### Introduction

Abundant rainfall, geologic features, and watersheds with high drainage densities provide abundant stream, lake, and riparian ecosystems in the Chasina Project Area. There are over 424 miles of streams and 1,249 acres of lakes and ponds. The 800 acres of estuaries are critical habitat for the survival of salmon and other fishes at different stages of their life cycles. These aquatic resources provide spawning and rearing habitat that support various species of salmon, trout, char, and marine fishes and invertebrates (Table AQU-1). In addition to the highly valued salmonid species, several non-game fishes are known or suspected to occur in the project area. There are no reported sightings or known populations of Federally listed Threatened or Endangered fish species within the Chasina Project Area.

The irregular shoreline in the Chasina Project Area has resulted in numerous small bays and a considerable amount of protected near-shore habitat. Most of these small bays are estuaries. Generally, estuaries occur where freshwater streams meet saltwater, and can be small or large in size. Estuaries are unique systems because they are the transitional zone between freshwater and marine environments, and are relatively protected sites. Estuaries are rich and diverse, harboring many resident marine species and providing food, spawning areas, or shelter for numerous other species at critical points in their life cycles (e.g., salmon). Marine invertebrates such as clams, mussels, starfish and sea cucumbers are associated with estuaries and adjacent waters. Other estuarine inhabitants include herring and smelt, which use these areas as spawning and feeding habitat. Additional species use estuaries for part or all of their life cycles, but are too numerous to list here.

Aquatic resources in the Chasina Project Area help maintain ecological and economic stability in Southeast Alaska. Local subsistence and sport anglers, and charter and commercial fishing industries depend on the fish and marine invertebrate production of Cholmondeley Sound and other waterways in the project area to support their businesses and lifestyles. Southeast Alaska provides 30 percent of Alaska's total salmon harvest (Pacific Fishing Magazine 1996). Fish are a valuable food source for other wildlife that use the forested riparian and beach habitats, and salmon carcasses replenish nutrients in the aquatic systems. The purpose of this section is to describe the current condition of the aquatic resources in the Chasina Project Area, and the effects the proposed timber harvesting activities will have on those same aquatic resources.

## Salmon Life Cycle



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-1  
Fish Species Use of Chasina Project Area Streams, Lakes, and Estuary  
Ecotones by Life stage

Species	Life Stage		
	Spawning	Rearing	Overwinter
Pacific Herring ( <i>Clupea harengus pallasii</i> )	X <sup>1/</sup>		
Pink salmon ( <i>Onchorhynchus gorbuscha</i> )	X <sup>2/</sup>		
Chum salmon ( <i>Onchorhynchus keta</i> )	X <sup>2/</sup>		
Coho salmon ( <i>Onchorhynchus kisutch</i> )	X	X	X
Sockeye salmon ( <i>Onchorhynchus nerka</i> )	X	X <sup>3/</sup>	X
Cutthroat trout <sup>4/</sup> ( <i>Onchorhynchus clarki</i> )	X	X	X
Rainbow trout <sup>4/</sup> ( <i>Onchorhynchus mykiss</i> )	X	X	X
Dolly Varden char ( <i>Salvelinus malma</i> )	X	X	X
Sculpin ( <i>Cottus spp.</i> )	X	X	X
Stickleback ( <i>Gasterosteus aculeatus</i> )	X	X	X

<sup>1/</sup> A marine species that uses near shore and estuary systems, but is not exclusive to these habitats.

<sup>2/</sup> Pink and chum salmon utilize the estuary/freshwater ecotones after emergence.

<sup>3/</sup> Sockeye salmon rear in lakes for 1 to 2 years.

<sup>4/</sup> Rainbow trout, cutthroat trout, and Dolly Varden char can exhibit either anadromous or resident life history patterns.



## Fish Habitat

Fish habitat is described in several ways, including: (1) stream classification, (2) watersheds, and (3) habitat capability.

### Stream Classification

Stream classes are a means to categorize stream channels based on the instream habitat and fish production value. Streams and lakes are separated into four class designations for the Tongass National Forest according to the Aquatic Habitat Management Handbook (FSH 2609.24) and TLMP (1997). Approximately 170 miles of fish-bearing streams are present in the project area. Stream Class definitions are as follows:

**Class I:** Streams and lakes with anadromous or adfluvial fish habitat; or high quality resident fish waters listed in Appendix 68.1, Region 10 Aquatic Habitat Management Handbook (FSH 2609.24), June 1986; or habitat above fish migration barriers known to be reasonable enhancement opportunities for anadromous fish.

**Class II:** Streams and lakes with resident fish populations and generally steep (6-15 percent) gradient (can also include streams from 0-6 percent gradient) where no anadromous fish occur, and otherwise not meeting Class I criteria. These populations have limited fisheries value and generally occur upstream of migration barriers or have other habitat features that preclude anadromous fish use.

**Class III:** Perennial and intermittent streams with no fish populations but which have sufficient flow, or transport sufficient sediment and debris, to have an immediate influence on downstream water quality or fish habitat capability. These streams generally have bankfull widths greater than 5 feet and are highly incised into the surrounding hillslope.

**Class IV:** Other intermittent, ephemeral, and small perennial channels with insufficient flow or sediment transport capabilities to have an immediate influence on downstream water quality or fish habitat capability. These streams generally are shallowly incised into the surrounding hillslope.

**Non-streams:** Rills and other watercourses, generally intermittent and less than 1 foot in bankfull width, with little or no incision into the surrounding hillslope, and with little or no evidence of scour.

In addition to classifying each stream, streams in the project area have been channel typed (USDA Forest Service, 1992). Channel typing stratifies lake and stream sections within a watershed into different stream process groups. The process groups are based on physical characteristics of streams and predict their physical response to different management activities. Stream class and channel type are used to develop aquatic habitat management prescriptions and protection measures to minimize fish habitat disturbance. Channel types are also used as an indicator of the amount and quality of fish habitat within the project area. The most recent in-depth description of stream process groups and channel types is found in the *Channel Type User Guide, Tongass National Forest Southeast Alaska* (USDA Forest Service, 1992).

The field team verified stream classes and channel types during proposed harvest unit reconnaissance. During site visits, stream classes and channel types were identified and noted on field unit cards for later transfer into the GIS stream data layer. Subsequent field reconnaissance during unit layout may identify additional streams. For those streams, the stream class and channel type will be determined and the appropriate management prescriptions applied to protect stream habitat and water quality. It is important to note that Class IV streams were newly identified in the recently published 1997 TLMP. Class IV streams were not identified in the initial 1995 field reconnaissance, but were in the 1996 and



### 3 Environment and Effects

1997 field review. For a summary of miles of stream in the project area by stream class and VCU, see Table AQU-2.

**Table AQU-2**  
**Aquatic Habitats by VCU**

VCU	Miles Class I	Miles Class II	Miles Class III	Miles Class IV	Acres Estuary	Acres Lakes
674	0.5	4.6	16.4	1.9	1.1	0.5
677	19.3	8.1	50.3	2.2	55.7	275.4
678	7.8	17.8	97.1	2.8	92.8	20.6
679	24.9	14.4	37.5	14.7	385.2	255.5
680	16.6	5.3	8.3	3.2	97.8	87.4
681	22.2	11.0	17.0	3.3	128.6	595.9
682	3.5	3.2	8.0	2.5	39.1	14.2
Total	94.8	64.4	234.6	30.6	800.3	1,249.5

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base - Streams, Lakes, and Estuary Layers.

#### **Watersheds**

The project area can be categorized into a number of watersheds. Watershed delineations enable biologists to evaluate various management activities on fish habitat and a system's capability to produce fish. Many watersheds in the project area contain streams that have no name other than the ADF&G Anadromous Stream Catalog number. Several of these streams are important to salmonid production within the project area. See Table AQU-3 for identification of important anadromous streams.

The most informed way to minimize cumulative watershed impacts is to conduct some level of watershed analysis prior to management activities (i.e., timber harvest and road building). Once the amount of disturbance a watershed can recover from is known, an acceptable rate of harvest can be determined.

Table AQU-3 summarizes additional information on these important stream systems within the project area and salmon species found in them.

Table AQU-3

**Major Salmon Producing Streams Within the Project Area and Salmon Species Present**

VCU	Stream Name or LOC and #	Watershed Number	Anadromous Miles	Resident Miles	Watershed Acres	Fish Species
674	Cannery Creek #102-40-10520	H21A	1.2	24.2	1,813	Pink, Chum
678	South Arm E #102-40-10430	H06A	1.4	0.8	987	Pink, Chum, Coho
678	South Arm W #102-40-10470	H05A	0.7	0.6	1,460	Pink, Chum, Coho
679	Horseshoe Canyon #102-40-10150	H59A	1.9	0.0	983	Pink, Chum, Coho
679	Kitkun Bay #102-40-10170	H50A	1.0	0.5	652	Pink, Chum, Coho
679	N. Lancaster #102-40-10090	H63A	1.3	0.0	761	Pink, Chum
679	Triangle Creek #102-40-10110	H62A	3.6	2.1	1,395	Pink, Chum, Coho
682	Nowisky Cove Creek #102-30-10910	H49A	1.7	1.6	829	Pink, Chum

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure AQU-1  
Chasina Project Area Watersheds (Study Watersheds Shaded)



## Watershed Analysis

Watershed analysis is outlined in the 1997 TLMP, Appendix J. The watershed analysis protocol is intended to fit into the NEPA process. The scale and intensity of watershed analysis is determined by the significance of issues, values, and risks associated with management activities. When there are multiple risks to fish in the watershed, the intensity of watershed analysis should be commensurate with the level of cumulative risk. A more intensive, complex, and field based watershed analysis will be needed in watersheds with, but not limited to:

1. High value of fish
2. High sediment yield risks or erosion potential
3. Extensive very high and high hazard soils
4. Presence of threatened, endangered, or sensitive species
5. More than 20 percent of the watershed acres with trees in second growth younger than 30 years
6. High density of roads and stream crossings

The Chasina Project Area contains over 170 separate watersheds. On a regional basis the Chasina Project Area is a low risk area because it contains many small drainages which have limited amounts of fish habitat. There are no significant water uses within the project area, and there are no threatened and endangered species within the project area. However, there are some watersheds that the IDT has watershed concerns because of the large amount of past harvest, high amounts of MMI 3 and 4 soil types, and sedimentation risks to fish habitat.

To determine which watersheds required a higher level of analysis the Ketchikan area hydrologist completed a hydrologic risk analysis for the Chasina Project Area based on resource information in the GIS database and the Sediment Transfer Index model. All watersheds in the Chasina Project Area were rated. The rating system identifies and ranks watersheds based on risk factors including slope, mass movement potential of soils, drainage efficiency and depositional stream length. The assessment ranks watersheds from high to low risk on a scale compared to other watersheds on the project area.

Each watershed proposed for harvest under the Chasina Timber Sale was reviewed to determine the extent of past harvest and road building; extent of high and very high MMI soils; riparian resources; and fisheries concerns including passage, temperature sensitivity, and access. The level of proposed harvest and specific harvest unit prescriptions take into account existing watershed conditions as well as site specific conditions within and adjacent to the units. These investigations incorporated the elements of watershed analysis recommended in the AFHA report, TLMP, and the draft Watershed Analysis Handbook.

Based on this information watersheds that ranked as high risk or that had a high amount of concern because of resource issues and public comments received a more intensive review to determine if harvest units were acceptable. Field review by resource specialists looked at units and reviewed areas such as very high mass movement soils; steep slopes over 75percent; karst; and Class I, II, III, and IV stream riparian areas to implement standards and guidelines and best management practices (BMPs). Areas that did not meet standards and guidelines were deleted from the timber sale units. Specific best management practices and standards and guidelines were prescribed to the remaining areas to protect the resources.

The majority of the non fish bearing streams in the remaining unit pool met the definition of Class IV rather than Class III stream dimension criteria (The TLMP defines these as perennial and intermittent streams with no fish populations but which have sufficient flow, or transport sufficient sediment and debris, to have an immediate influence on downstream water quality or fish habitat capability. These streams generally have bankfull widths greater than 5 feet and are highly incised into the surrounding hillslope.). While these Class IV streams did not

### 3 Environment and Effects

warrant stream buffers, increased protection over Class IV standards was still specified. Harvest controls (split yarding, directional felling) will effectively protect downstream resources. The stream, buffer, and harvest control measures are displayed in the unit cards.

#### **Sediment Transfer Index**

All of the watersheds on the Chasina Project Area were evaluated for potential hydrologic impacts using a watershed-level analysis (Geier and Loggy 1995). A Sediment Transfer Index (STI) was calculated for each watershed. The STI is a quantitative measure of watershed characteristics likely to influence flow and sediment regimes. The STI is composed of three sub-indices based on watershed morphology, discharge, and potential sediment sources.

#### **Watershed Morphology**

The first component of the STI characterizes the morphology of each sub-basin and reach according to transport characteristics by using the product of drainage density and relief ratio (Simons et al., 1980). Drainage density (total stream length/area) is used as a measure of drainage efficiency. Sub-basins or reaches with greater stream length per unit area are more efficient at transporting sediment to the outlet. Relief ratio (basin relief/length) is used as a measure of basin energy. Sub-basins or reaches with higher relief ratios have greater gravitational energy available for sediment transport. The product is an indicator of water and sediment yield (Simons et. al., 1980) and is used as the geomorphic component of the STI.

#### **Discharge**

The geomorphic component of each index is adjusted for discharge using the estimated bankfull flow (i.e., 2-year flood) for each sub-basin or reach. Streams with higher discharge have greater stream power and sediment transport capacity (Brooks et al. 1992). Bankfull flow, which is highly-correlated with channel formation (Dunne and Leopold 1978), was used as the reference flow and estimated by using a regional hydrologic model for Southeast Alaska (Jones and Fahl 1994).

#### **Sediment Sources**

The final transport and depositional indices were derived from the discharge-weighted geomorphic components by incorporating potential sediment sources. Four major categories were used: natural sources, harvest units, roads, and landslides (Geier and Loggy 1995). The final transport and depositional indices are called the Sediment Transfer Index (STI).

#### **Interpretation**

The STI is a quantitative indicator of potential watershed impacts for each management alternative. It measures watershed disturbance in acres per unit area and assigns a weight according to watershed morphology and percent source area (estimated by MMI 3 and MMI 4 soils). The watershed morphology indices, or Texture-Slope Product (TSP), reflects transport efficiency (drainage density) and potential energy available for transport (relief ratio). Watersheds with a high TSP tend to move water, sediment, and other materials quickly through the system. The methodology assumes that fish habitat in valley-bottom portions of high STI watersheds are at greater risk because materials introduced into streams by disturbance in the upper reaches can be transported quickly and efficiently into valley-bottom areas and upset the natural equilibrium of the streams. The STI does not estimate water yield, sediment discharge, sediment routing, or where impact thresholds occur. It does, however, indicate which management alternatives have the greatest potential impacts based on measure characteristics known to correlate with flow regimes, sediment transport, and deposition.

#### **Field Review**

During unit reconnaissance watersheds and timber harvest units that had concern for resource impacts were placed on a priority list. These watersheds were visited by resource specialists



to field verify the STI model predictions, determine the existing conditions, and identify streams, soils, and wildlife use areas.

Locations of streams and soil types were described and recorded in note and map form. Most streams were walked from the origin to the mouth. Information was collected on channel type, stream class, stream gradient, stream channel bank full width, stream channel width, stream channel incision, stream and bank substrate composition, position in watershed, and potential impacts to fish habitat.

Based on the field information, the predictions of the STI model, high sediment yield risks or erosion potential, extensive very high and high hazard soils, amount of past harvest, presence of high value fish, presence of threatened, endangered or sensitive species, density of roads and stream crossings, and public scoping comments, 12 watersheds were identified as having watershed concerns. These watersheds received a more intensive review. Modifications to roads, units, harvest types, and buffers were made to protect resources.

Watershed discussions on the twelve watersheds are listed below.

Table AQU-4  
Watershed E92A Analysis - 1,905 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
680-314	20	.0	Low volume
680-316	18	.0	Low volume
680-317	27	28.1	
679-383	9	6.9	Low volume
679-384	16	14.2	Stream buffers
679-386	22	19.0	Stream buffers
679-392 1/2	25	33.4	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>137</b>	<b>101.6</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 0.7 miles/5.1 miles  
Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 21%/27%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 0 miles/2.6 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 0% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 2% of watershed/0% of watershed

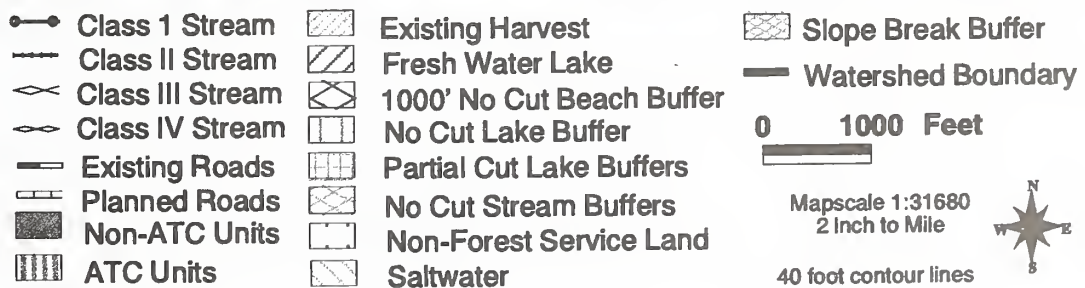
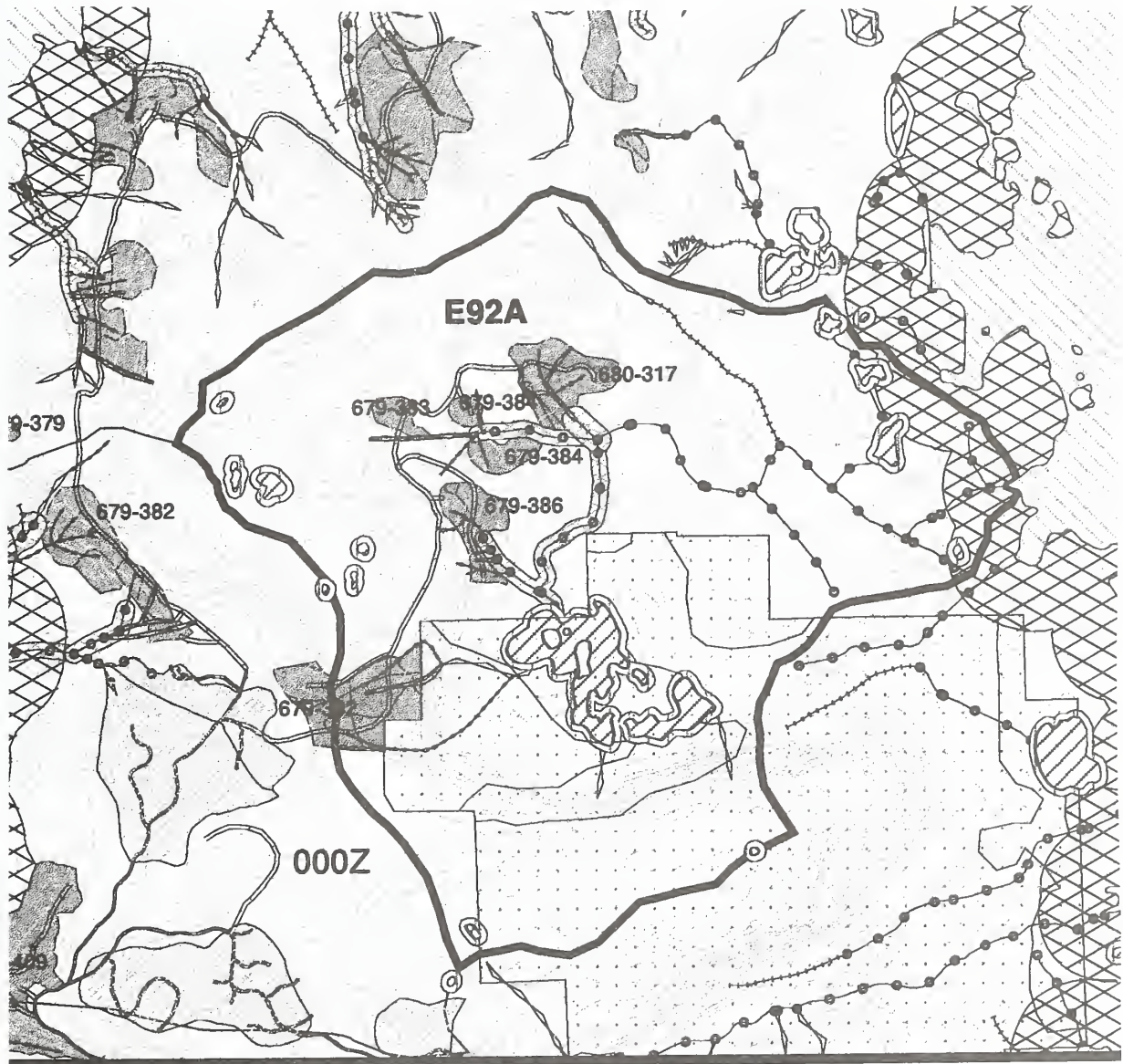
Watershed E92A is a 3rd order watershed that covers an area of approximately 2.9 square miles. A primary concern in E92A is the cumulative impacts of harvest due to the amount of previous harvest in the watershed. Most of the existing harvest is on private land. The sediment transport potential of Watershed E92A is low due to the fact that E92A has a low density of streams, low basin energy, and a low amount of sediment sources. Watershed E92A has a high percentage of riparian and upland wetlands to buffer streams from increased flows and sediment. Due to these factors Watershed E92A rates low on the hydrologic sensitivity scale.

All of the proposed units in Watershed E92A were office reviewed by the soil scientist because the units were located in areas that were of low concern. Units 680-314 and 680-316 were deleted by the silviculturist due to the low volumes per acre.

### 3 Environment and Effects

The main stream in Watershed E92A has not been cataloged by ADF&G. Stream surveys found the presence of pink and chum salmon at the mouth of the stream, as well as cutthroat trout and Dolly Varden char. The entire stream is Class II resident fish habitat. Most of the stream is classified as Moderate gradient/Contained (MC) and Moderated gradient/Mixed control (MM) channel types. The function of these channel types is to transport sediment. Unit reconnaissance identified 15 streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines; special attention was paid to the Class III streams. Units 679-383 , 679-386, and 679-392 each have Class III streams that require slope break buffers. Unit 680-317 has two Class III streams that require slope break buffers. The rest of the streams did not meet current TLMP Class III stream dimension criteria. Because of concerns about the downstream impacts associated with harvest, especially if Class IV green/white protection standards were applied, most of the streams were reclassified as Class IV streams but orange/white protection standards were prescribed to provide additional resource protection. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.

Figure AQU-2  
Watershed E92A Map



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-5  
Watershed E94A Analysis - 1,320 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
680-330 1/4	17.5	4.1	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>17.5</b>	<b>4.1</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk

Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 2.6 miles/ 1.5 miles

Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 62%/62%

Miles of existing/cumulative roads: None on FS land/0.1 miles on FS land

Percent steep slopes > 75%: 0% of watershed\*

Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 0% of watershed/0% of watershed\*

\* Information is only available for a small portion of watershed on Forest Service lands, no data for private lands.

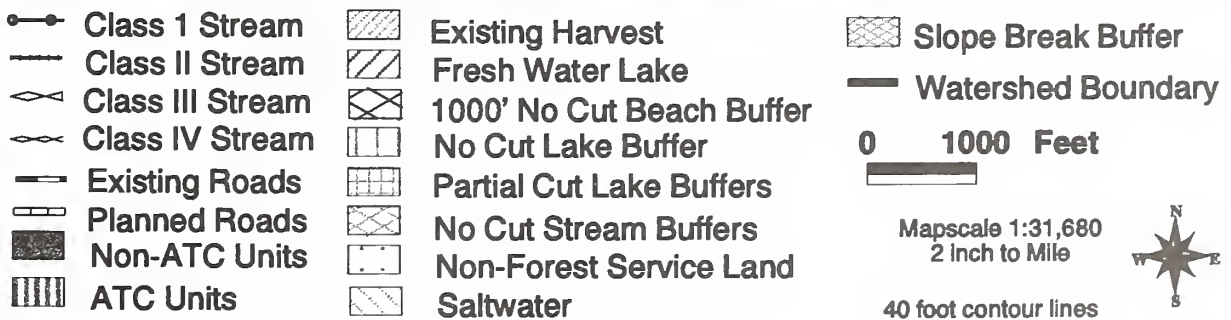
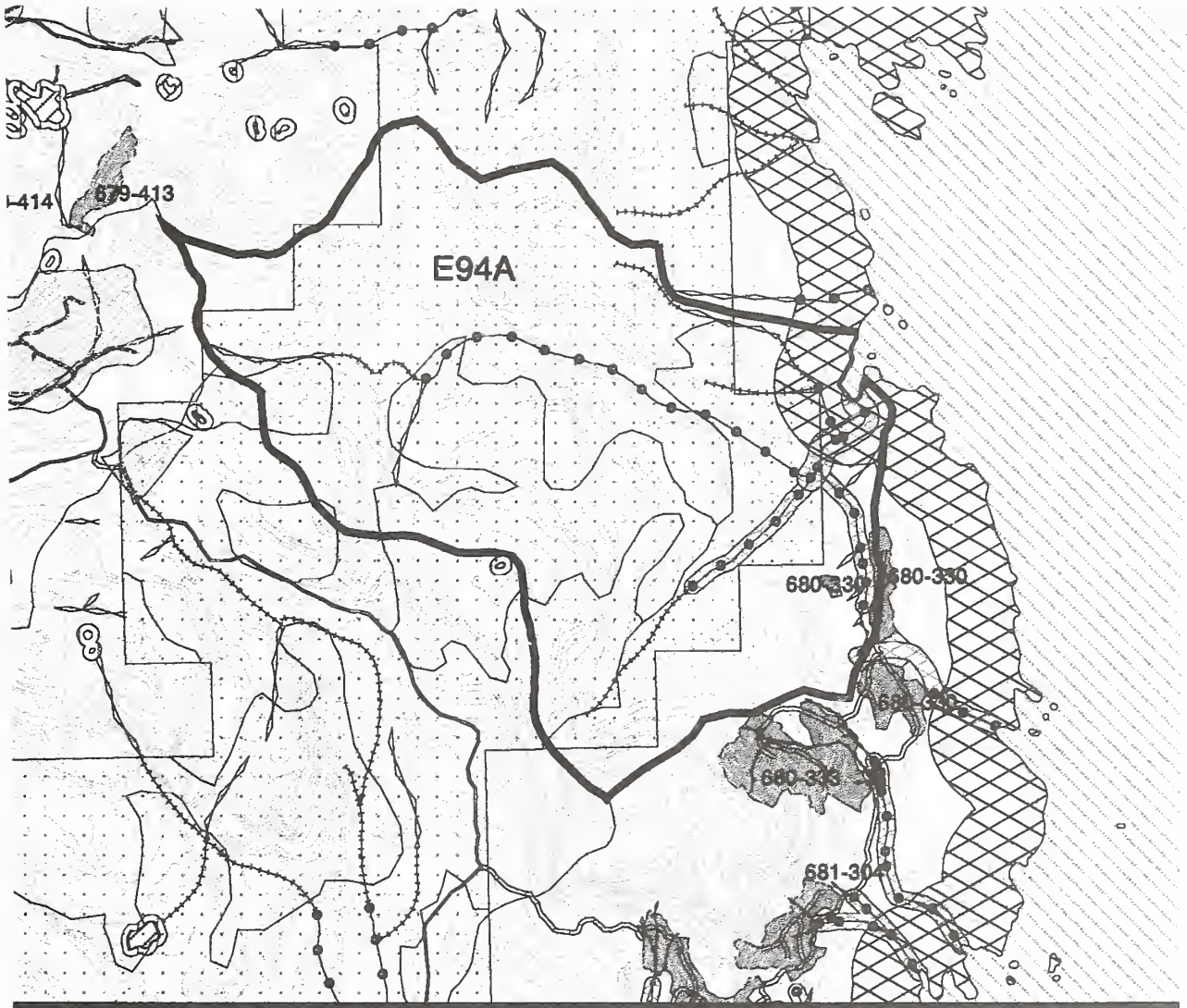
Watershed E94A is a 3rd order watershed that covers an area of approximately 2.1 square miles. A primary concern in E94A is the cumulative impacts of harvest. Watershed E94A has been intensively managed in the past (62 percent harvested). Of this, approximately 30 acres consists of beach harvest at the mouth of the stream from 1957, and the rest is on private lands.

Field review determined that the proposed harvest is primarily on low and moderate MMI soils. The soils in the riparian area will be protected by the TTRA buffers. The maximum length of anadromous habitat that could be affected by the harvest is approximately 0.5 miles. The riparian area downstream of the unit is dominated by alder regeneration following previous harvest to the streambank in 1957. The stream was severely disturbed and has lost most of its large woody debris. As a result it would be very unlikely to retain sediment if it were introduced by harvest. And although it appears to be an area with a low risk of windthrow, any introduction of wood to the stream from windthrow or other sources would be an asset to the fish habitat.

Watershed E94A contains ADF&G stream #102-50-10100, a Class I that contains pink salmon. Most of this stream is located on private land. Stream surveys determined the channel type for the stream to be Moderate gradient/Mixed control (MM). This channel types functions to transport sediment. Unit 680-330 contains two Class I streams that have 120 foot buffers. No Class III or IV streams were identified. Best management practices will be applied. Buffers, BMPs and stream descriptions can be found in the unit cards.



Figure AQU-3  
Watershed E94A Analysis





### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-6  
Watershed EX7A Analysis - 140 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
678-303	47	16.1	Deleted due to Karst
678-305	6	0.0	
678-310 1/2	20	7.0	
678-312 1/4	18	1.8	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>91</b>	<b>24.9</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 0.7miles/0.4 miles  
Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 0%/18%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 0 miles/1.7 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 0% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 98% of watershed/0% of watershed

There are concerns with harvesting in Watershed EX7A because it is in an area of the forest previously unentered by timber harvest. The 1997 TLMP designated this area as Timber Production. Under this designation the area is to be managed for industrial wood production. Additional concerns have arisen because of the high amount of high MMI soil.

Watershed EX7A is a small 2nd order watershed, 0.2 square miles, that drains directly into salt water. Because of its small size the sediment risk for Watershed EX7A is low. There is a high percentage of high MMI soil. The basin energy and drainage efficiency score as moderate compared to other watersheds on the project area. Sediment produced from side slopes should be transported out of the watershed during high flow events but will tend to accumulate in localized low gradient reaches during low and moderate flow events. This local accumulation between storm events may present the greatest potential hazard to fish habitat.

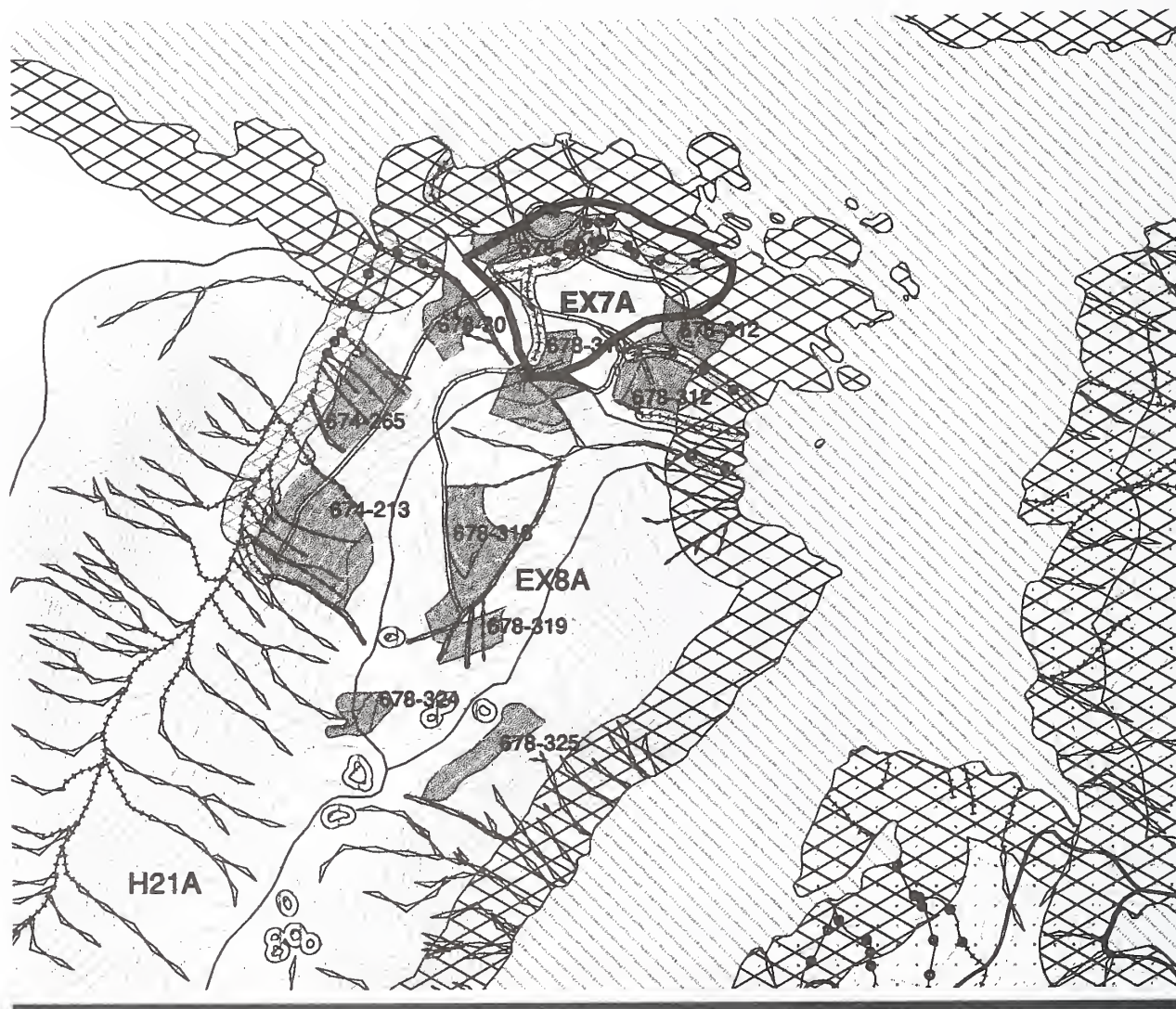
Unit 678-303 had a section deleted in the center of the unit, cliffs on two sides and karst, and it is recommended that there be field review during unit layout for soils and watershed concerns. Unit 678-303 had 29 acres removed by stream/estuary buffers. Unit 678-305 was deleted by the geologist because of the high vulnerability karst in the unit. Unit 678-310 was reviewed by the geologist; the north part of the unit was deleted due to presence of karst. Unit 678-312 has deletions due to stream/estuary buffers. The soil scientist recommends that Units 678-310 and 678-312 have field reviews during unit layout for soil and watershed concerns.

Watershed EX7A contains ADF&G stream #102-40-103701. This stream is classified as a Class I stream that contains pink salmon spawning habitat, as well as Dolly Varden and cutthroat trout. Stream survey classified the stream as a Palustrine (PA) channel type. This channel type is associated with wetland drainage networks, and functions to store fine sediment. The upper portions of the stream were classified as High gradient/Contained (HC). This channel type functions to transport sediment. To protect stream 103-40-103701 a 150 foot no cut buffer was prescribed. Unit reconnaissance identified 10 streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines; special attention was paid to the Class III streams. There were no Class III streams found in the portions of the units in this watershed. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.



# 3 Environment and Effects

Figure AQU-4  
Watershed EX7A Map



- Class I Stream
- Class II Stream
- Class III Stream
- Class IV Stream
- Existing Roads
- Planned Roads
- Non-ATC Units
- ▨ ATC Units

- ▨ Existing Harvest
- ▨ Fresh Water Lake
- ▨ 1000' No Cut Beach Buffer
- ▨ No Cut Lake Buffer
- ▨ Partial Cut Lake Buffers
- ▨ No Cut Stream Buffers
- ▨ Non-Forest Service Land
- ▨ Saltwater

- ▨ Slope Break Buffer
- Watershed Boundary
- 0 1000 Feet
- Mapscale 1:31,680  
2 Inch to Mile
- 40 foot contour lines





Table AQU-7

**Watershed EX8A Analysis - 319 acres**

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
678-310 1/2	20	17.2	Soil/ Watershed concerns
678-314 1/4	4	0.0	
678-316	36	32.9	
678-319	18	8.6	
678-324	10	6.1	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>88</b>	<b>64.8</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk

Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 0.1 miles/0.2 miles

Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 0%/21%

Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 0 miles/0.8 miles

Percent steep slopes > 75%: 16% of watershed

Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 67% of watershed/16% of watershed

Watershed EX8A is a 2nd order watershed that covers an area of 0.5 square miles. There are concerns with harvesting in Watershed EX8A because it is in an area of the forest previously unentered by timber harvest. The 1997 TLMP designated this area as Timber Production. Under this designation the area is to be managed for industrial wood production. Additional concerns have arisen because of the high amount of MMI high hazard soil types.

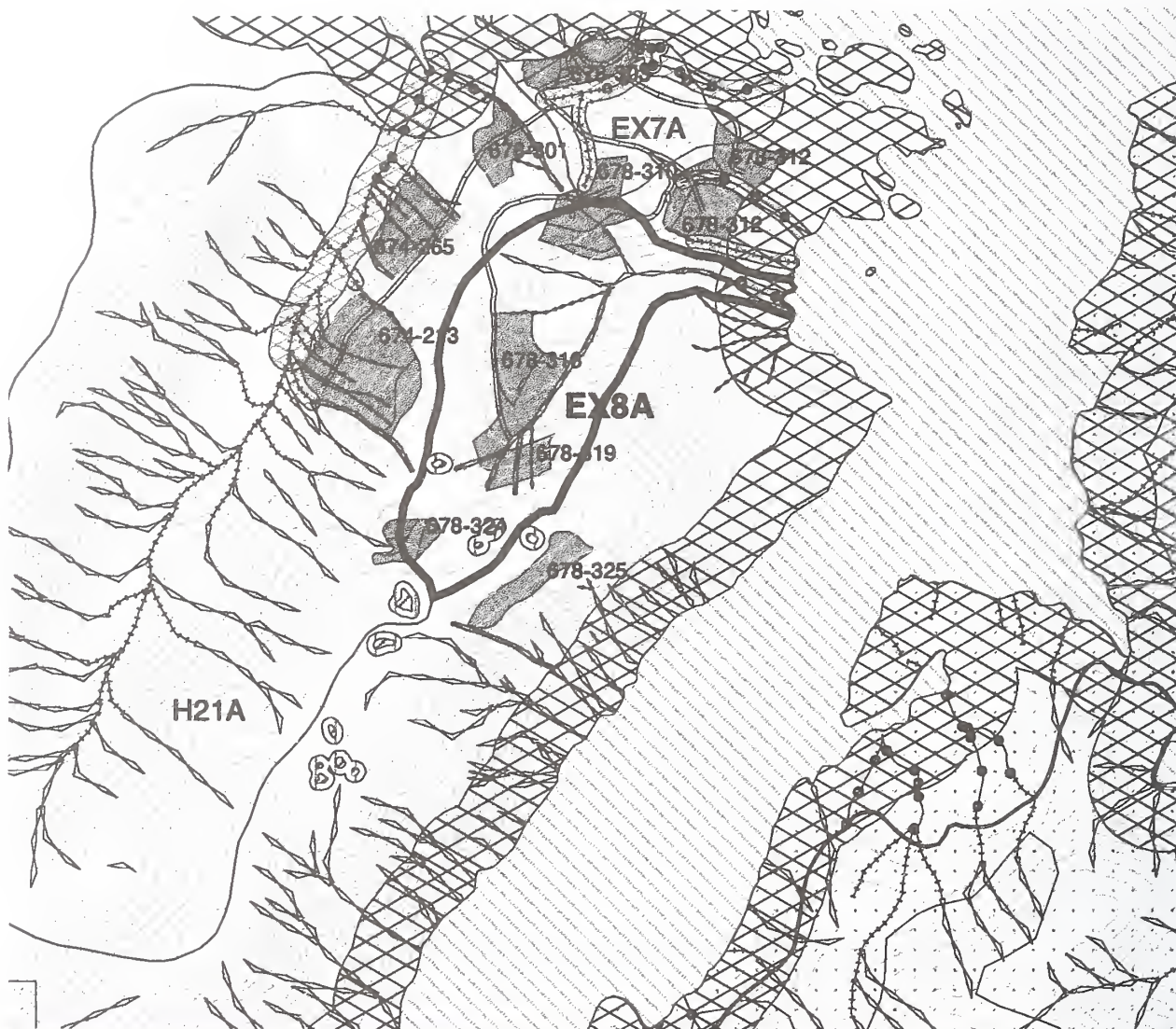
Watershed EX8A has low sediment risk compared to other watersheds on the Chasina Project Area. There is a high percentage of MMI 3 high hazard soil types but harvesting on these soils has been determined to be acceptable. The basin energy and drainage efficiency score as moderate compared to other watersheds on the project area. Sediment produced from side slopes should be transported out of the watershed during high flow events but will tend to accumulate in localized low gradient reaches during low and moderate flow events. There is very little in the way of fish habitat in Watershed EX8A, so impacts to fish habitat are a low concern.

Unit 678-310 was reviewed by the geologist; resource concerns should be addressed during unit layout. Unit 678-316 was reviewed by the soil scientist and deletions were made for rock outcrops, MMI 4, and McGilvery soil. The rest of unit 678-316 was determined suitable for harvest. Unit 678-319 was reviewed by fisheries and silviculture personnel, deletions were made for landslides, V-notches, unstable soils, and cliffs.

Watershed EX8A contains no ADF&G classified streams. Stream surveys classified the main stream in watershed EX8A as High gradient Contained (HC) and Moderate gradient/Mixed Control (MM) channel types. These channel types function to transport sediment. Unit reconnaissance identified seven streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines; special attention was paid to the Class III streams to determine if they required buffers. The stream between units 678-316 and 678-319 requires a Class III stream slope break buffer. Units 678-316 and 678-319 each have one stream that requires a Class III stream slope break buffer. The rest of the streams did not meet current TLMP Class III stream dimension criteria. Because of concerns about the downstream impacts associated with harvest, especially if Class IV green/white protection standards were applied, most of the streams were classified as Class IV streams but orange/white protection standards were prescribed to provide additional resource protection. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.

# 3 Environment and Effects

Figure AQU-5  
Watershed EX8A Map



- Class I Stream
- Class II Stream
- Class III Stream
- Class IV Stream
- Existing Roads
- Planned Roads
- Non-ATC Units
- ▨ ATC Units

- ▨ Existing Harvest
- ▨ Fresh Water Lake
- ▨ 1000' No Cut Beach Buffer
- ▨ No Cut Lake Buffer
- ▨ Partial Cut Lake Buffers
- ▨ No Cut Stream Buffers
- ▨ Non-Forest Service Land
- ▨ Saltwater

- ▨ Slope Break Buffer
- Watershed Boundary
- 0 1000 Feet
- Mapscale 1:31,680  
2 inch to Mile
- 40 foot contour lines





Table AQU-8  
Watershed H21A Analysis, Cannery Creek - 1, 813 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
674-213	51	50.6	
674-265	48	24.7	Soil concerns
678-324	5	3.9	Overstory revoved
674-253	25	0.0	Soil/watershed concerns
678-301	15	13.8	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>144</b>	<b>95.1</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index : High risk, highest in project area  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 1.2 miles/4.2 miles  
Percent present harvest/cumulative harvest: 0%/ 5%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 0 miles/1.4 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 42% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 40% of watershed/38% of watershed

The Cannery Creek Watershed (H21A) is a 3rd order watershed that covers 2.9 square miles. The major concerns with harvesting units in the Cannery Creek (H21A) Watershed relate to the fact that H21A is a very steep watershed. There is very little in the way of depositional stream channel types to store sediment produced from the side slopes. Material introduced into streams in upland areas of the watershed may be transported efficiently to low gradient reaches downstream resulting in sedimentation of fish habitat. Cannery Creek contains a high amount of MMI 3 and 4 soil rating. These soils have the greatest potential for landslides and erosion. The Cannery Creek drainage has a high percentage of steep slopes greater than 75 percent. The timber sale units were reviewed by specialists and determined to be suitable for harvest with the following exceptions: Unit 674-253 was dropped due to MMI 4 soils, unstable stream banks, and second growth at the bottom of the unit. Unit 674-265 had sections deleted for MMI 4 soils, V-notches, and rock walls/McGilvery soil. These units are on the east side of Cannery Creek, an area of high hazard soils. The TLMP and best management practices allow for harvest on these MMI 3 soils. The west side of the Cannery Creek drainage was an area of high concern due to large amounts of MMI 4 soils and slopes greater than 75 percent; no harvest units are planned on the west side of the Cannery Creek drainage. A 300 foot no cut buffer was prescribed for Cannery Creek.

Road locations are preliminary in nature and actual location has not been identified; however, field review of proposed locations indicated that the upper road was unsuitable due to MMI hazard soils, highly incised V-notches, and steep side slopes.

Cannery Creek, ADF&G # 102-40-10520, is a Class I stream that contains spawning habitat for pink and chum salmon for 1.2 miles; above a barrier waterfall the stream is Class II resident habitat for 4.2 miles. A spring (1996) steelhead trout spawning survey was conducted, no steelhead were seen. Stream surveys classified Cannery Creek as a Flood Plain channel type for 0.25 miles at the mouth of the stream and Moderate gradient/Mixed control (MM) channel types in the stream section below the timber sale units. This channel type functions to transport sediment. To protect the Cannery Creek Riparian Management Area (RMA) a 300 foot no cut buffer has been prescribed. Unit reconnaissance identified 13 streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines; special attention was paid to the Class III streams. Units 674-265

### 3 Environment and Effects

and 674-213 have Class III streams that require slope break buffers. Unit 678-301 contains a Class III stream that requires a slope break buffer. The rest of the streams did not meet current TLMP Class III stream dimension criteria. Because of concerns about the downstream impacts associated with harvest, especially if Class IV green/white protection standards were applied, most of the streams were classified as Class IV streams but orange/white protection standards were prescribed to provide additional resource protection. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.

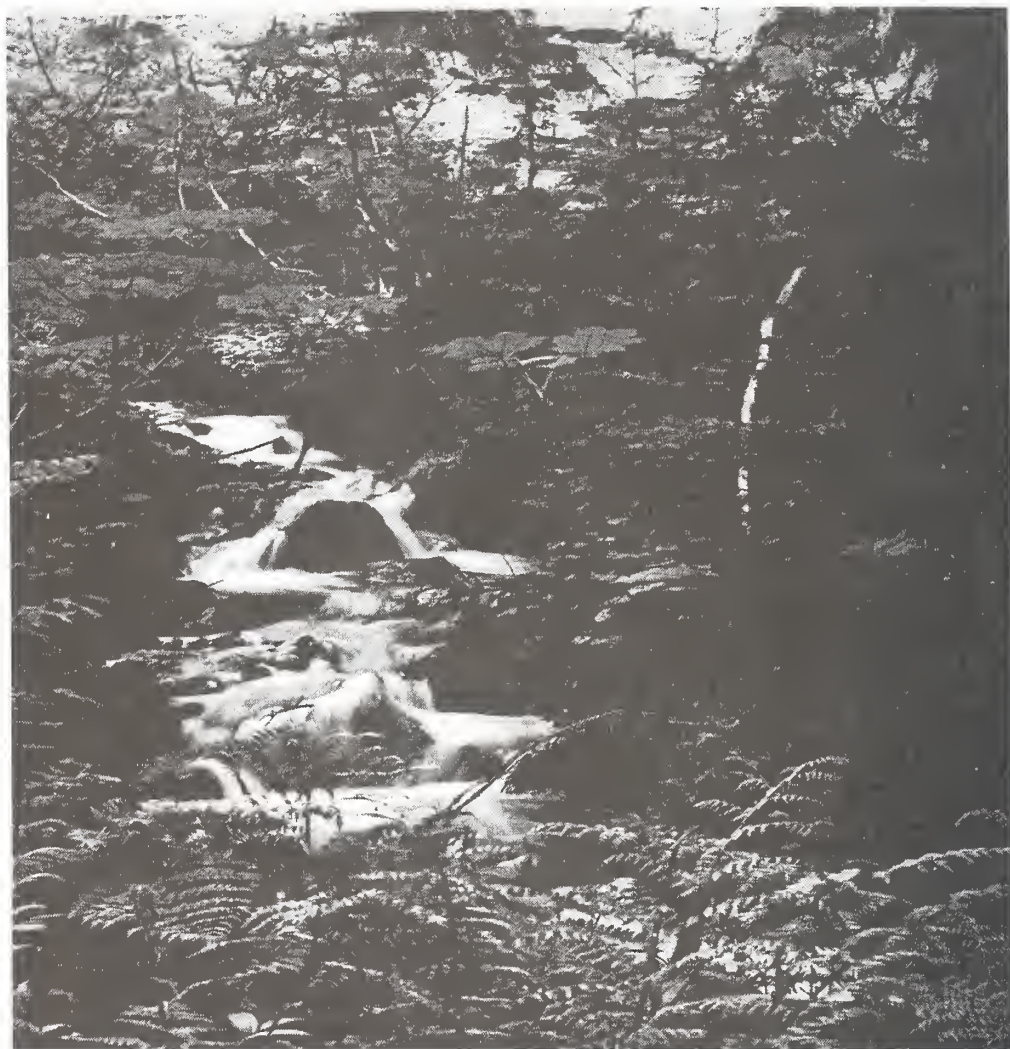
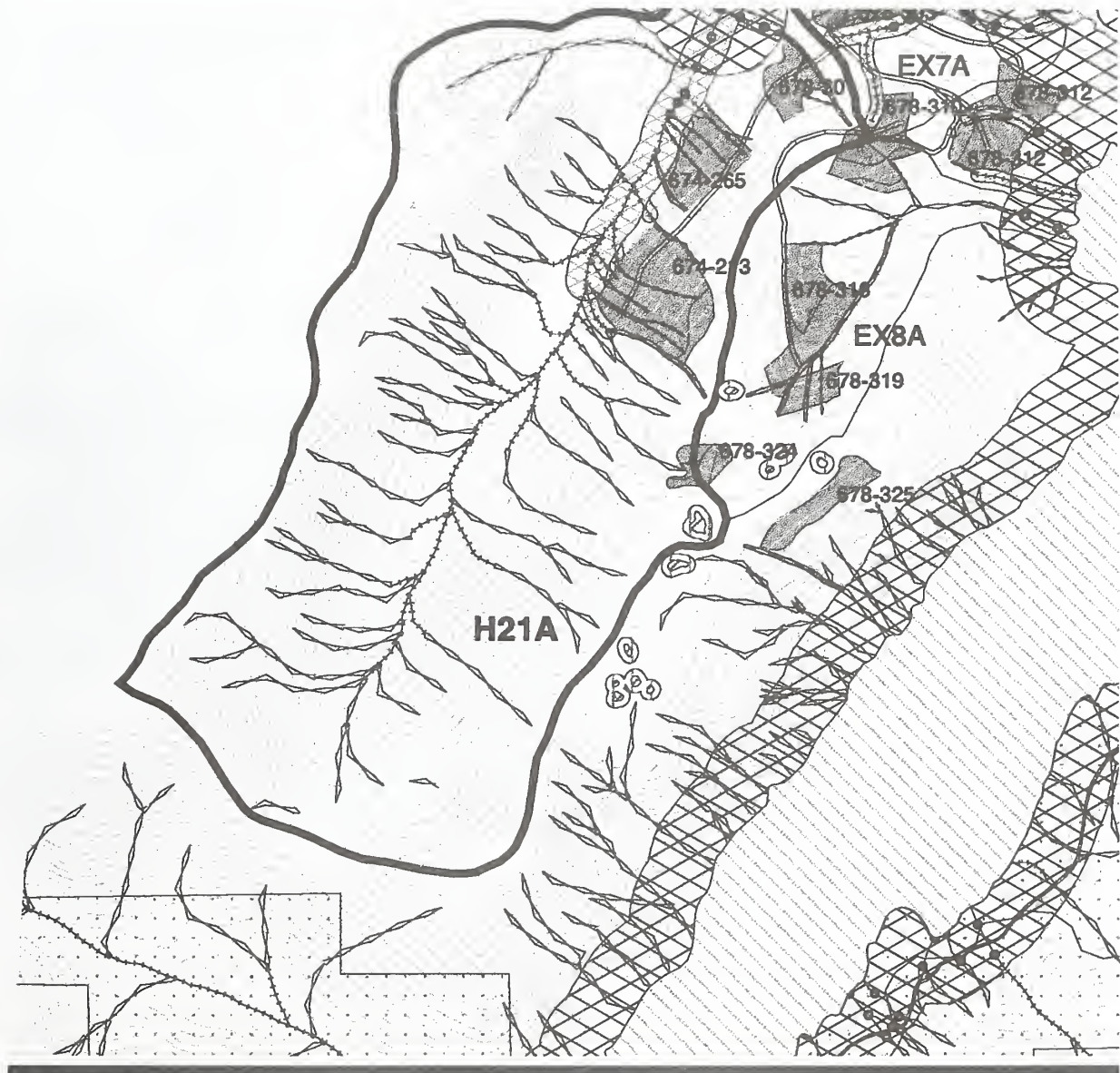




Figure AQU-6  
Watershed H21A Map



- Class 1 Stream
- Class II Stream
- Class III Stream
- Class IV Stream
- Existing Roads
- Planned Roads
- Non-ATC Units
- ATC Units

- Existing Harvest
- Fresh Water Lake
- 1000' No Cut Beach Buffer
- No Cut Lake Buffer
- Partial Cut Lake Buffers
- No Cut Stream Buffers
- Non-Forest Service Land
- Saltwater

- Slope Break Buffer
- Watershed Boundary

0 1000 Feet

Mapscale 1:31,680  
2 inch to Mile

40 foot contour lines



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-9

#### Watershed H54A Analysis - 2,451 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
679-433 1/4	21	7.4	ATC 25% B.A. retention
<b>Total acres</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>7.4</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk

Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 4.2 miles/0 miles

Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 53%/59% (most on private land estimated)

Miles of existing/cumulative roads: No FS roads\*

Percent steep slopes > 75%: 7% of watershed\*

Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 16% of watershed/0% of watershed\*

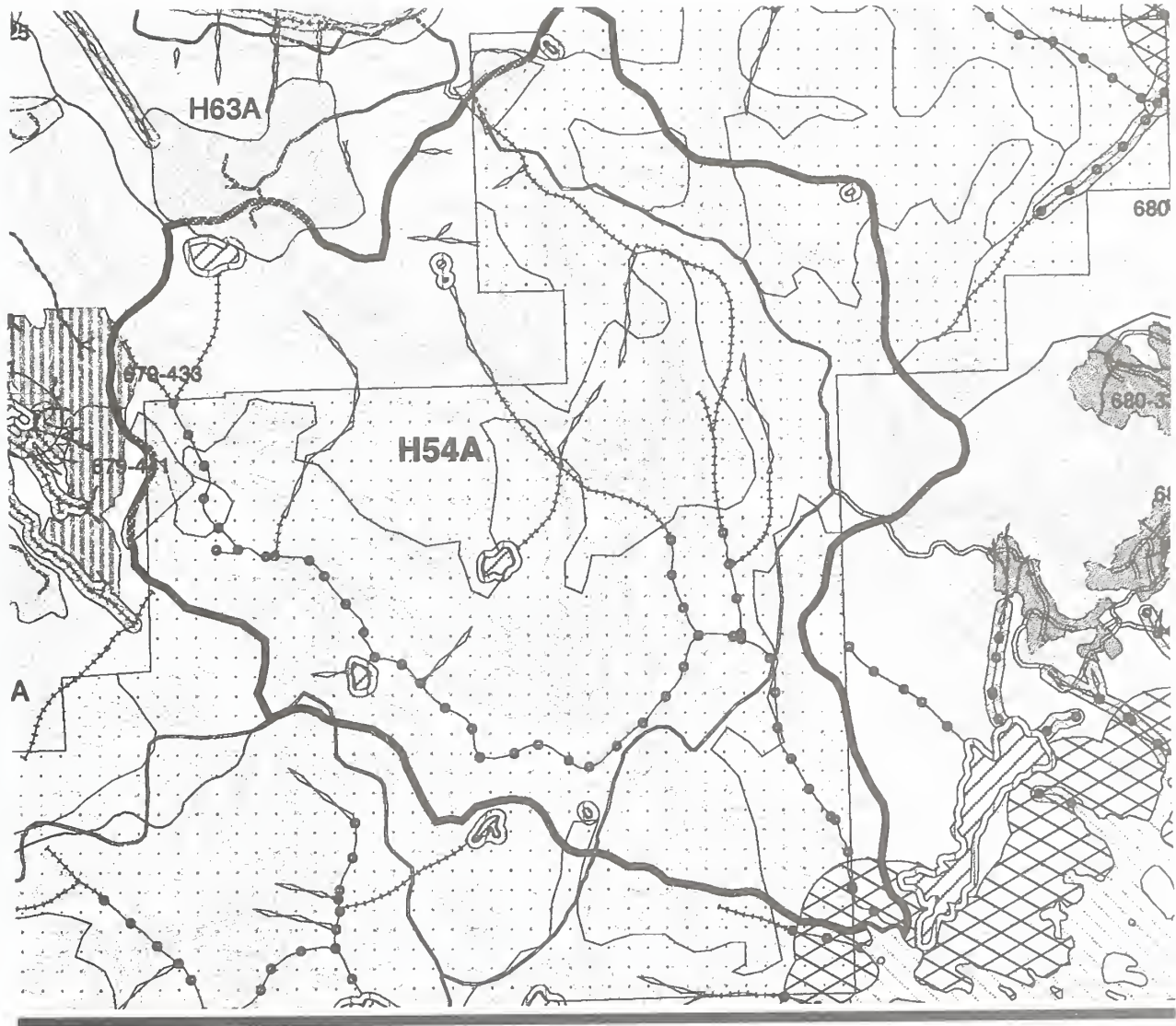
\* Information is only available for a small portion of the watershed on Forest Service lands, no data for private lands.

Watershed H54A is a 3rd order watershed that covers an area of approximately 3.8 square miles. A primary concern in H54A is the cumulative impacts of harvest due to the amount of previous harvest in the watershed. Most of the existing harvest is on private land.

Field and office review determined that the risk to the watershed is low. The proposed harvest is on moderate MMI soils. The risk of sediment introduction or other impacts to the streams are minimal with current practices. Watershed H54A contains only a small portion of Unit 679-433. There are no identifiable streams within this portion of the unit. Unit 679-433 is part of the Alternatives to Clearcutting (ATC) study and will have a silvicultural prescription of group selection/individual tree selection (25 percent basal area (B.A.) retained; uneven-aged). Clumps of trees will be removed. Gaps created by removed clumps will be about equal to the residuals in size. No new roads will be built; Unit 679-433 will be helicopter yarded.

Watershed H54A contains ADF&G stream #102-50-10070. This stream is on private land and was not surveyed by district fisheries personnel. Unit 679-433 was reviewed by fisheries personnel, however, no streams were identified in the unit that would affect Watershed H54A.

Figure AQU-7  
Watershed H54A Map



- Class 1 Stream
- Class II Stream
- Class III Stream
- Class IV Stream
- Existing Roads
- Planned Roads
- Non-ATC Units
- ATC Units

- Existing Harvest
- Fresh Water Lake
- 1000' No Cut Beach Buffer
- No Cut Lake Buffer
- Partial Cut Lake Buffers
- No Cut Stream Buffers
- Non-Forest Service Land
- Saltwater

- Slope Break Buffer
- Watershed Boundary
- 0 1000 Feet
- Mapscale 1:31,680  
2 inch to Mile
- 40 foot contour lines
-



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-10  
Watershed H59A Analysis, Horseshoe Canyon - 983 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
679-470	15	15.1	
679-477	35	35.2	ATC control, no cut
679-473	42	0.0	Soil/Watershed concerns
679-471	8	0.0	Soil/Watershed concerns
679-475	14	0.0	Soil/Watershed concerns
679-507	5	0.0	Soil/Watershed concerns
679-479	3	1.8	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>122</b>	<b>52.1 (16.9 harvested)</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: High risk  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 1.9 miles/0 miles  
Percent of present harvested/cumulative harvest: 8%/13%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 1.6 miles/1.6 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 34% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 11% of watershed/9% of watershed

Watershed H59A is a 2nd order watershed that covers an area of approximately 1.5 square miles. Major concerns with harvesting units in this watershed relate to the fact that H59A has steep side slopes that drain directly into the valley bottom mainstem stream. Material introduced into streams in upland areas of the watershed can be transported efficiently to low gradient stream reaches downstream. Existing disturbance in H59A includes approximately 82 acres of timber harvest and 1.6 miles of road. The harvest was pre-TTRA and there were no requirements to leave buffers along the riparian corridor for habitat protection. Although the existing management levels are low, management activities in headwaters and steep side slopes of watershed H59A could affect flow and sediment regimes. Extensive timber harvest tends to reduce the amount of water loss to evapotranspiration, making more water available for stream flow. This can translate into higher peak flows and higher flood volumes during storms which can alter fish habitat. Concerns over mass movement impacts and the effects of increased harvest on stream flows and fish habitat resulted in the deletion of units 679-471, 679-473, 679-475, and 679-507. Unit 679-477 is part of the ATC study. This unit will remain untreated (uncut) for comparison to the treated stands. No new roads will be constructed in watershed H59A. Unit 679-479 will be helicopter harvested; there are no streams in this unit.

Horseshoe canyon, Watershed H59A, contains ADF&G stream # 102-40-10150, a Class I stream that contains spawning and rearing habitat for pink, chum, and coho salmon. Snorkel surveys conducted in the spring of 1996 determined steelhead to be present. A 1997 snorkel survey found no steelhead.

A Region 10 Level I stream survey determined an average gradient of 1 percent; 67.8 pools per mile; 390.8 pieces of large woody debris per mile; and an average maximum depth of 1.5 feet. This indicates that this stream has good habitat when measured against Region 10 standards. The majority of the stream is classified as a Flood Plain channel type. This channel type functions to store sediment. There are a few beaver ponds on the stream that provide excellent juvenile coho rearing. A 300 foot no cut buffer was applied to the Class I stream to protect the RMA.

Unit reconnaissance identified 29 streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines; special attention was paid to the streams to determine if they required buffers. Most of the streams were located in units that have been dropped due to watershed concerns. Unit 679-470 contains three streams that are all classified as Class IV green/white. BMPs will be applied. Stream, buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.



### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure AQU-8  
Watershed H59A Map

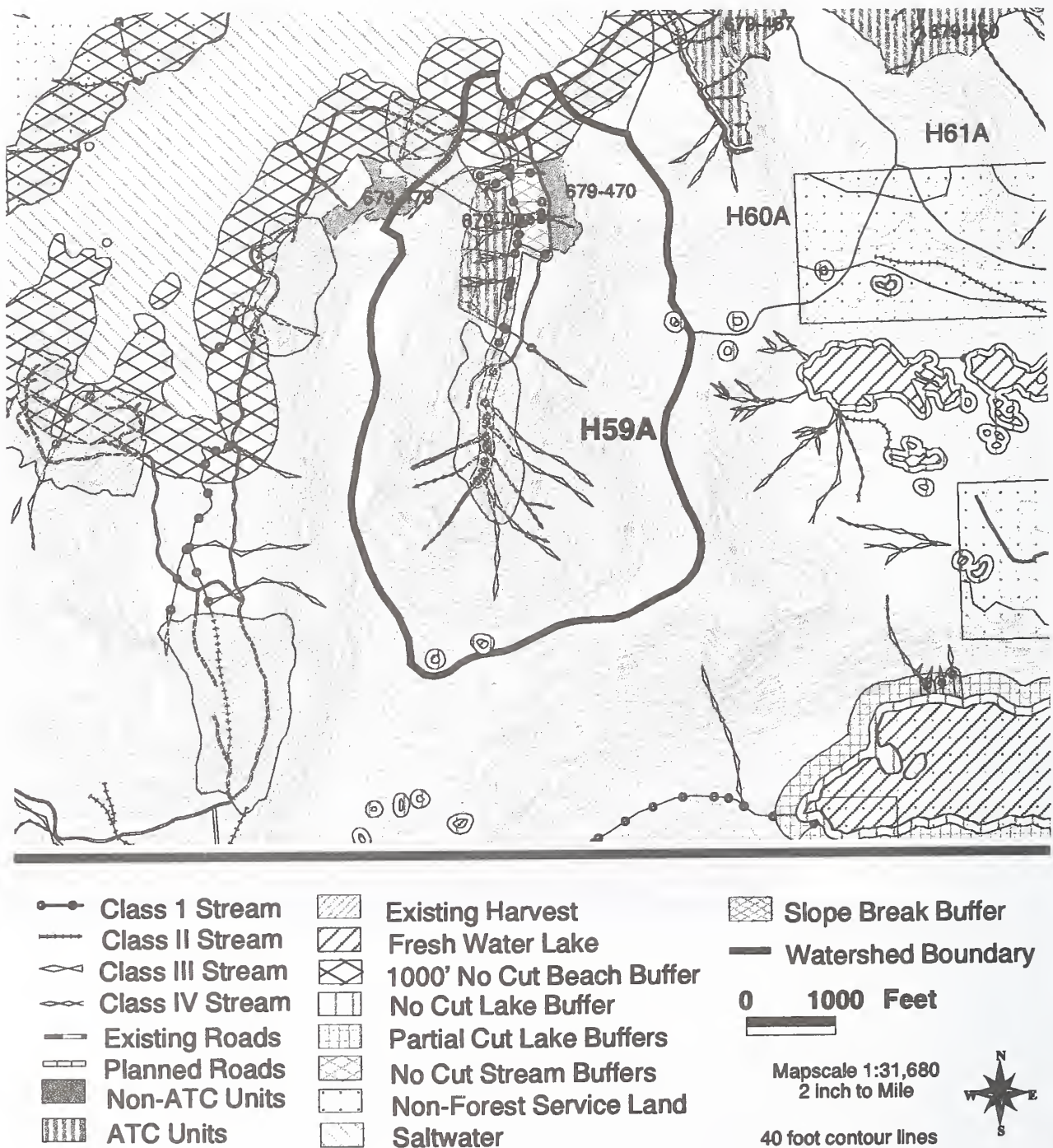




Table AQU-11  
Watershed H60A Analysis - 404 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
679-467	77	41.4	Soil/watershed concerns
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>77</b>	<b>41.4</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 0.1 miles/0 miles  
Percent present harvested/ cumulative harvest: 9%/20%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 0.2 miles/0.2 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 0% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 0% of watershed/0% of watershed

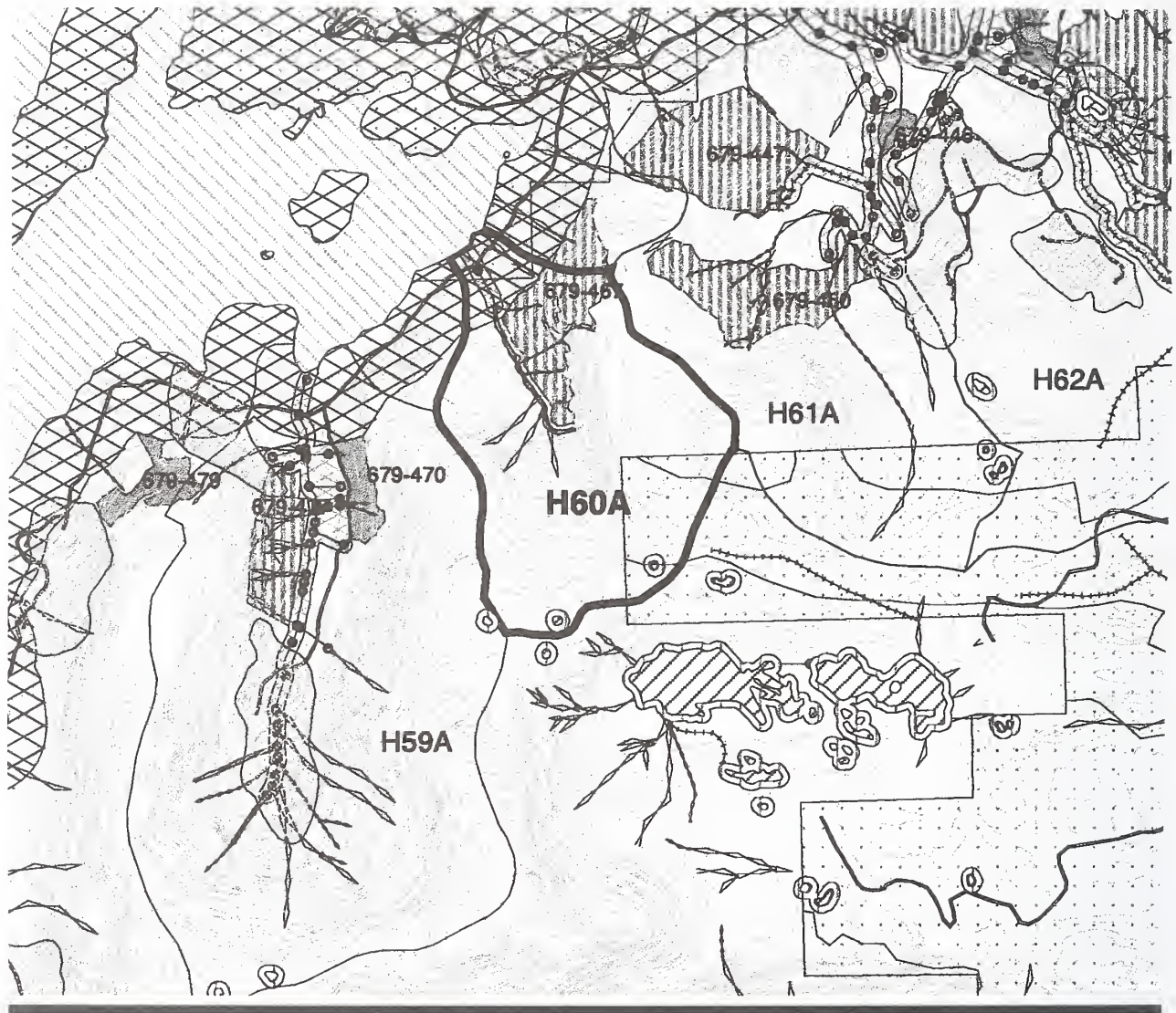
Watershed H60A is a 3rd order watershed that covers 0.6 square miles. The major concern in H60A is the cumulative impacts of harvest, due to the amount of previous harvest in the watershed. Hydrologically Watershed H60A rates out as low. There are no slopes over 75 percent and no MMI 3 and 4 soils, therefore the sediment risk is low. The watershed has relatively flat topography and thus low basin energy. This combined with the low drainage efficiency indicates that risk to fish habitat is low. The only fish habitat present in the watershed would be used primarily by pink salmon.

Unit 679-467 is in the ATC study. This unit will receive a silvicultural prescription of clearcut with wildlife trees reserved (5 percent B.A. Retained; even-aged system). No new roads will be built. Cut trees will be helicopter yarded. This unit had sections deleted for MMI 4 soils, landslides, McGilvery, extremely steep slopes, and low volume timber.

Watershed H60A contains ADF&G stream #102-40-10140, a small Class I stream that contains pink salmon. The majority of this stream is classified as Moderated gradient/Mixed control (MM) channel type. The function of this channel type is to transport sediment. Unit reconnaissance identified six streams in the proposed harvest unit. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines. The main stream on the southwest boundary of the unit, a Class III orange/white, received a slope break buffer. The rest of the streams did not meet current TLMP Class III stream dimension criteria. Because of concerns about the downstream impacts associated with harvest, especially if Class IV green/white protection standards were applied, most of the streams were re-classified as Class IV streams but orange/white protection standards were prescribed to provide additional resource protection. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure AQU-9  
Watershed H60A Map



- Class I Stream
- Class II Stream
- Class III Stream
- Class IV Stream
- Existing Roads
- Planned Roads
- Non-ATC Units
- ▨ ATC Units

- ▨ Existing Harvest
- ▨ Fresh Water Lake
- ▨ 1000' No Cut Beach Buffer
- ▨ No Cut Lake Buffer
- ▨ Partial Cut Lake Buffers
- ▨ No Cut Stream Buffers
- ▨ Non-Forest Service Land
- ▨ Saltwater

- ▨ Slope Break Buffer
- Watershed Boundary
- 0 1000 Feet
- Mapscale 1:31,680  
2 inch to Mile
- 40 foot contour lines





Table AQU-12  
Watershed H61A Analysis - 907 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
679-446 1/2	10.5	2.4	
679-447	59.0	77.1	ATC clearcut with reserves
679-437E 1/8	4.7	4.7	ATC 25% B.A. retention
679-437W 1/8	3.0	2.4	ATC 25% B.A. retention
679-450	35.0	63.6	ATC 33% B.A. retention
679-451	7.0	0.0	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>119.2</b>	<b>150.2</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Moderate risk  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 2.2 miles/0.8 miles  
Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 16%/33%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 1.4 miles/.4 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 25% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 18% of watershed/0% of watershed

Watershed H61A is a 3rd order watershed that covers an area of approximately 1.4 square miles. A primary concern in H61A is the cumulative impacts of harvest, due to the amount of previous harvest in the watershed. Sixteen percent of the watershed was harvested in 1989. The harvest was pre-TTRA and there were no requirements to leave buffers along the riparian corridor for habitat protection. Watershed H61A rates moderate on the hydrologic sensitivity scale. Watershed H61A has a high percentage of transport channel types (95 percent) which tend to transport sediment efficiently; however, there is about 25 percent of the watershed acres in areas of MMI 3 and 4 and slopes greater than 75 percent, which is the sediment potential. Sediment produced from side slopes should be transported out of the watershed during high flow events but will tend to accumulate in localized low gradient reaches during low and moderate flow events. This local accumulation between storm events may present the greatest potential hazard to fish habitat.

Units 679-447, 679-437E and W, and 679-450 are part of the ATC study. Units 679-437E and W have silvicultural prescriptions of group selection/individual tree selection (25 percent B.A. retained; uneven-aged). Clumps of trees will be removed. Gaps created by removed clumps will be about equal to the residuals in size. Unit 679-447 has a silvicultural prescription of clearcut (0 percent basal area retained; even-aged). Unit 679-450 will receive a silvicultural prescription of group reserve/individual tree selection (75 percent basal area retained; uneven-aged system). Designated clumps of trees will not be harvested while individual trees will be removed from outside of the clumps. The remaining unit, 679-446, has had acreage removed due to a Class I stream buffer. Unit 679-451 was dropped due to low volume and the presence of forested wetland soil types. All ATC units and Unit 679-446 will be helicopter yarded. No new roads will be constructed.

Watershed H61A contains ADF&G stream # 102-40-10130, a Class I stream that contains spawning habitat for pink and chum salmon, as well as cutthroat trout and Dolly Varden char. This stream has been classified as Moderate gradient/Contained (MC) and Moderate gradient/Mixed control (MM). A 200 foot no harvest buffer was applied to stream # 102-40-10130 to protect the RMA. Unit reconnaissance identified 15 streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards.

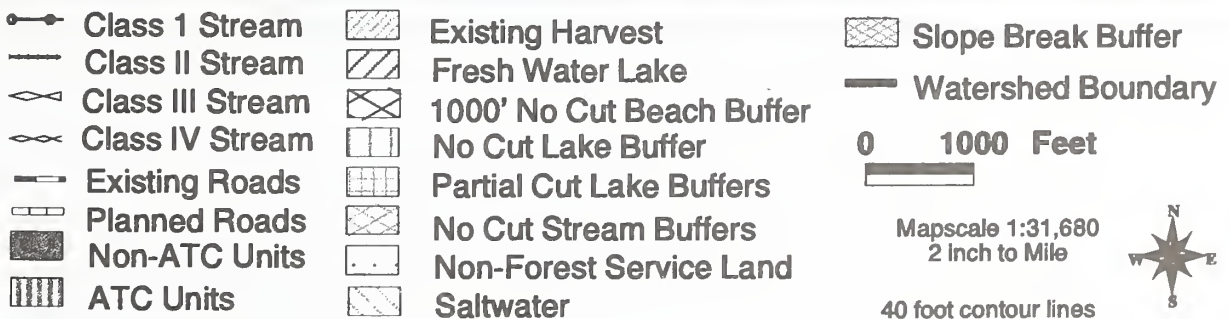
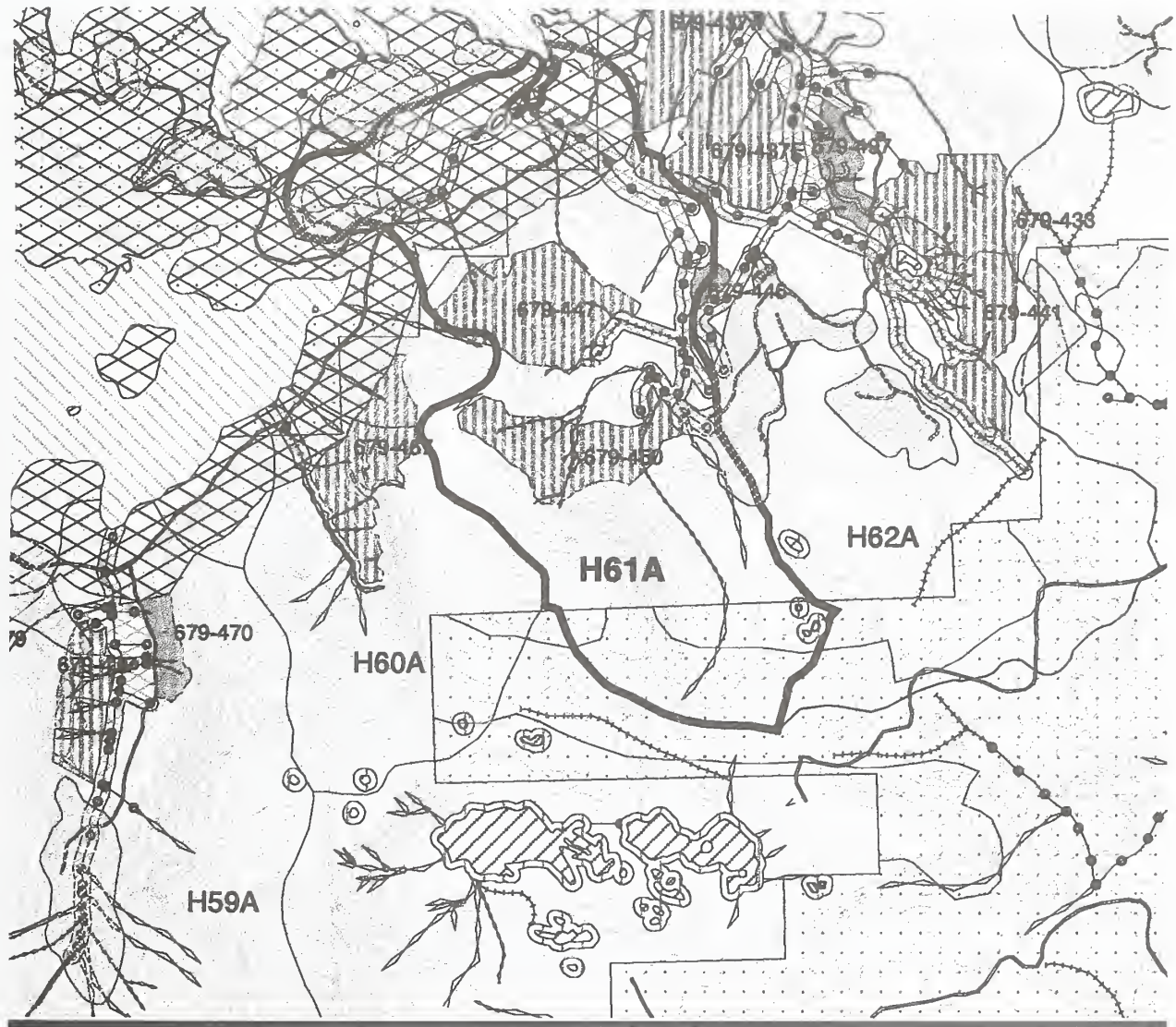
### 3 Environment and Effects

Stream 18 in Unit 679-450 received a slope break buffer. Using the TLMP stream standards, most of the streams did not meet current TLMP Class III stream dimension criteria. Because of concerns about the downstream impacts associated with harvest, especially if Class IV green/white protection standards were applied, most of the streams were classified as Class IV streams but orange/white protection standards were prescribed to provide additional resource protection. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.





Figure AQU-10  
Watershed H61A Map



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-13  
Watershed H62A Analysis - 1,395 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
679-4251/4	5.3	6.7	ATC 75% B.A. retention
679-433 3/4	63.0	54.1	ATC 25% B.A. retention
679-437E 7/8	25.5	59.8	ATC 25% B.A. retention
679-437W 1/2	0.0	20.6	ATC 25% B.A. retention
679-441	25.8	45.4	ATC Group selection
679-446 1/2	10.5	3.2	
679-497	20.0	21.0	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>150.1</b>	<b>210.8</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 3.6 miles/2.1 miles  
Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 27%/42%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 5.9 miles/6.2 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 0% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 0% of watershed/0% of watershed

Watershed H62A is a 3rd order watershed that covers an area of approximately 2.2 square miles. A primary concern in H62A is the cumulative impacts of harvest, because of the amount of previous harvest in the watershed. Sixteen percent of the watershed on Forest Service land was harvested in 1989. The harvest was pre-TTRA and there were no requirements to leave buffers along the riparian corridor for habitat protection. The analysis indicates that Watershed H62A rates low on the hydrologic sensitivity scale. H62A has no high or very high mass movement index soils (MMI 3 or MMI 4). It has a low watershed relief indicating that H62A has a low amount of gravitational energy available for transporting water and materials out of the headwaters and side slopes to the valley bottoms. Compared to other watersheds, materials introduced into streams in upland areas of H62A cannot be transported as quickly or efficiently into the valley bottoms and fish habitat.

All proposed units in watershed H62A, with the exception of Units 679-497 and 679-446, are part of the ATC study. Unit 679-497 and 679-446 have been reviewed by specialists and determined to meet standards and guidelines. Unit 679-425 will have 75 percent of the basal area retained after harvest, as described in watershed H63A. Unit 679-433 has a silvicultural prescription of group retention (25 percent basal area retained; uneven-aged). Seventy-five percent of the stand is to be removed, clumping the remaining trees. Unit 679-437 has been divided into east and west halves. The east half has a silvicultural prescription of group selection/individual tree selection (25 percent basal area retained; uneven-aged). The west section of 679-437 will receive a silvicultural prescription of individual tree selection (25 percent of the basal area retained; uneven-aged system). Unit 679-441 will receive a silvicultural prescription of group selection (75 percent basal area retained; uneven-aged system). All ATC units will be helicopter yarded and subsequent road building was dropped.

Watershed H62A contains ADF&G stream #102-40-10110 (Triangle Creek), a Class I and II stream that contains pink, chum, and coho salmon as well as Dolly Varden char and cutthroat trout. A spring (1996, 1997) snorkel survey determined steelhead to be present. Stream surveys determined the stream to have Moderate gradient/ Mixed control (MM) and Moderate gradient/Contained (MC). These channel types function to transport sediment. Stream #102-40-10110 has a 150 foot no-cut buffer to protect the RMA. Unit reconnaissance

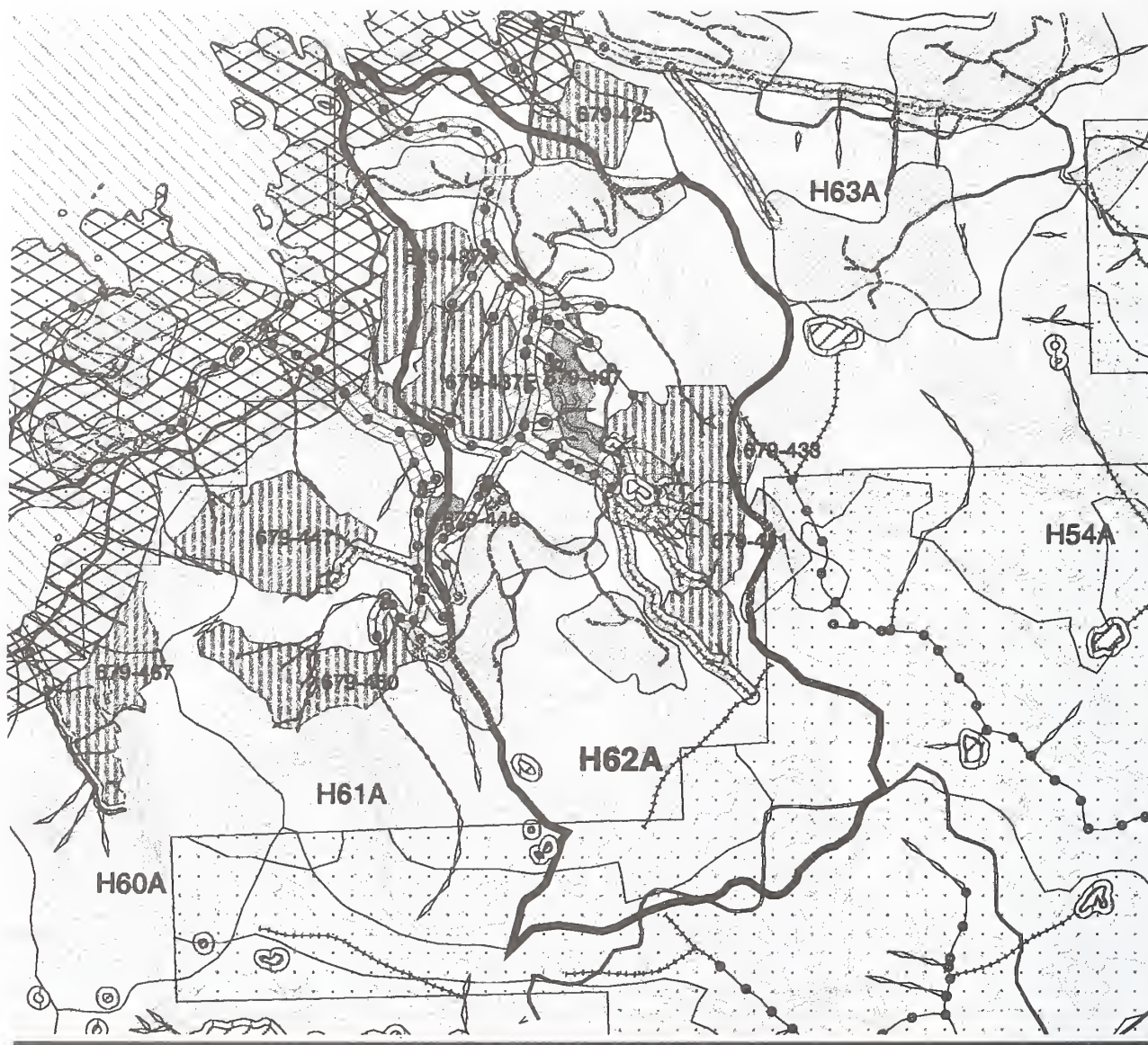


identified 34 streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines. The streams did not meet current TLMP Class III stream dimension criteria. Because of concerns about the downstream impacts associated with harvest, especially if Class IV green/white protection standards were applied, most of the streams were classified as Class IV streams but orange/white protection standards were prescribed to provide additional resource protection. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.



### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure AQU-11  
Watershed H62A Map



- Class 1 Stream
- +— Class II Stream
- ◇— Class III Stream
- ×— Class IV Stream
- Existing Roads
- - - Planned Roads
- Non-ATC Units
- ▨ ATC Units

- ▨ Existing Harvest
- ▨ Fresh Water Lake
- ▨ 1000' No Cut Beach Buffer
- ▨ No Cut Lake Buffer
- ▨ Partial Cut Lake Buffers
- ▨ No Cut Stream Buffers
- ▨ Non-Forest Service Land
- ▨ Saltwater

- ▨ Slope Break Buffer
- Watershed Boundary

0 1000 Feet

Mapscale 1:31,680  
2 inch to Mile

40 foot contour lines





Table AQU-14  
Watershed H63A Analysis - 791 acres

Harvest Unit	Original	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
679-425 1/2	10.5	8	ATC 75% B.A. retention
679-420	53.0	0	Soil/Watershed concerns
679-422	47.0	0	Soil/Watershed concerns
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>110.5</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>75% B.A. retention</b>

Sediment Transfer Index: Low risk  
Miles of anadromous/resident Fish habitat: 0.5 miles/0.8 miles  
Percent of present harvested/cumulative harvest: 41%/42%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 4.8 miles/4.8 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 0% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 3% of watershed/0% of watershed

Watershed H63A is a 3rd order watershed that covers an area of approximately 1.2 square miles. A primary concern in H63A is the cumulative impacts of harvest, due to the amount of previous harvest in the watershed. Thirty-nine percent of the watershed was harvested in 1989. The harvest was pre-TTRA and there were no requirements to leave buffers along the riparian corridor for habitat protection. Watershed H63A rates low on the hydrologic sensitivity scale due to the fact that H63A has a relatively moderate gradient overall. Consequently, materials introduced into the mainstream of H63A tend to be transported quickly and efficiently out of the watershed during high flow events, but will tend to accumulate in localized low gradient reaches during low and moderate flow events. This local accumulation between storm events may present the greatest potential hazard to fish habitat. Management activities in H63A appear to have the potential to affect flow and sediment regimes. H63A contains karst landforms and several resurgences influence stream flow regimes.

Due to the concerns about the amount of harvest in this watershed, Units 679-420 and 679-422 were deleted from the preferred alternative. The remaining unit, 679-425, has about half of its acres in watershed H63A. This unit is part of the ATC study that is being conducted on units in the Chasina Project Area. Unit 679-425 has a silvicultural prescription of individual tree selection (75 percent basal area retained; uneven-aged system). Individual trees will be removed in this system. Reserve trees will be fairly evenly distributed across the unit with only 25 percent being removed. This type of silvicultural prescription will have little effect on the hydrology of watershed H63A. Unit 679-425 will be helicopter yarded and subsequent new road building was deleted.

Watershed H63A contains ADF&G stream #102-40-10090, a Class I and II stream that contains pink and chum salmon as well as Dolly Varden char and cutthroat trout. This stream will receive a 120 foot buffer. Stream surveys classified the stream as Moderate Gradient/Contained (MC) and High Gradient Contained channel types. These channel types function to transport sediment. Unit 679-425 has stream # 102-40-10090 on its north boundary and a Class IV green/white stream; BMPs will be applied. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure AQU-12  
Watershed H63A Map

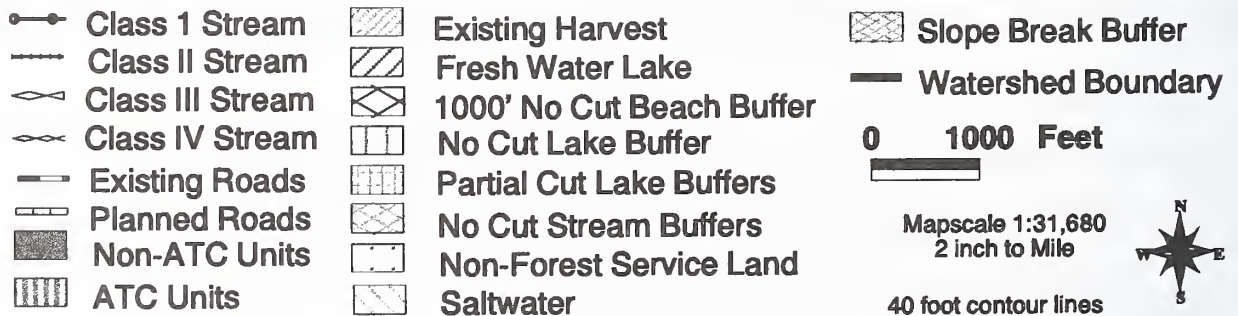
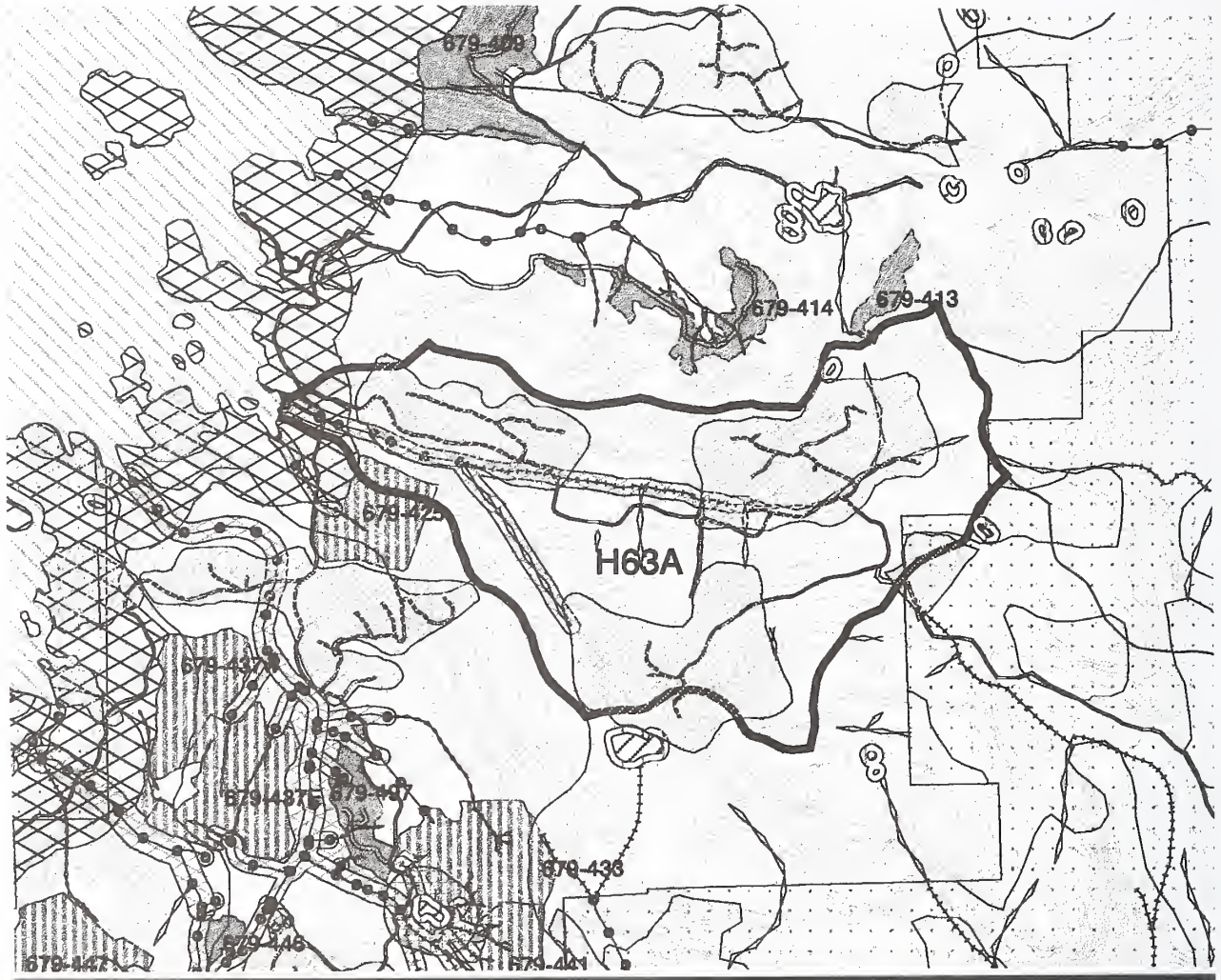




Table AQU-15  
Watershed 000Z Analysis - 1,333 acres

Harvest Unit	Original Acreage	FEIS Acreage	Deletions/Comments
679-379	5	3	Economics
679-382	79.0	41.6	Soil/Watershed concerns
679-502	18.0	0.0	Stream/Estuary Buffer
679-392 1/2	25.0	16.0	
679-403	70.6	0.0	Karst
679-407	43.2	0.0	Karst
679-409 1/2	38.0	53.9	
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>273.8</b>	<b>111.5</b>	

Sediment Transfer Index: Not available  
Miles of anadromous/resident fish habitat: 1.1 miles/0 miles  
Percent present harvested/cumulative harvest: 18%/27%  
Miles of existing/cumulative roads: 3.5 miles/5.0 miles  
Percent steep slopes > 75%: 0% of watershed  
Percent MMI 3/MMI 4: 0.5% of watershed/0% of watershed

This watershed is labeled as 000Z because it is an unconsolidated watershed that does not have a definite boundary or outlet. There are many watersheds labeled 000Z in the Chasina Project Area. This is a generic watershed label used when a watershed is undefined. The specific watershed in question here is located directly north of Watershed H56A and drains to the west into Cholmondeley Sound. Concerns with this area have arisen because of the amount of cumulative harvest in the area.

Because watershed 000Z is unconsolidated a watershed risk assessment was not run. Due to the unconsolidated nature of this watershed, impacts from land management will be localized. Standards and guidelines and BMPs are required and should protect the stream habitat. All units were field reviewed by resource specialist to identify areas of concern and to protect resources.

Silviculture personnel deleted portions of Unit 679-379 because it was uneconomic to harvest due to high amounts of unmerchantable trees. Unit 679-382 was reviewed by the soil scientist. Unstable soils, past landslides, steep slopes, V-notches and streams, low volume timber, and potential damage from roads were deleted. Unit 679-502 was deleted due to stream buffers and unstable soils. Unit 679-403 was removed from the Preferred Alternative for concerns about karst and cumulative watershed impacts. Unit 679-392 was reviewed in the office by the soil scientist; field review may be needed for soil and watershed concerns; no streams were found in this portion of the unit. Unit 679-407 was deleted by the geologist to protect high vulnerability karst. Unit 679-409 was reviewed by the soil scientist and it was determined that the slopes and soils were suitable for harvest with protection.

Unit 679-382 contains ADF&G stream # 102-40-10050, a Class I stream that contains spawning habitat for pink salmon and spawning and rearing habitat for coho salmon. Stream surveys determined the presence of Dolly Varden and cutthroat trout in this stream and in an additional stream on the southern boundary of this unit. Unit reconnaissance identified 20 streams in the proposed harvest units. Streams were walked and classified according to standards and guidelines.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Unit 679-382 has four streams that require Class III stream slope break buffers. The rest of the streams did not meet current TLMP class III stream dimension criteria. Because of concerns about the downstream impacts associated with harvest, especially if Class IV green/white protection standards were applied, most of the streams were reclassified as Class IV streams but orange/white protection standards were prescribed to provide additional resource protection. Stream buffer, and BMP information is displayed in the unit cards.

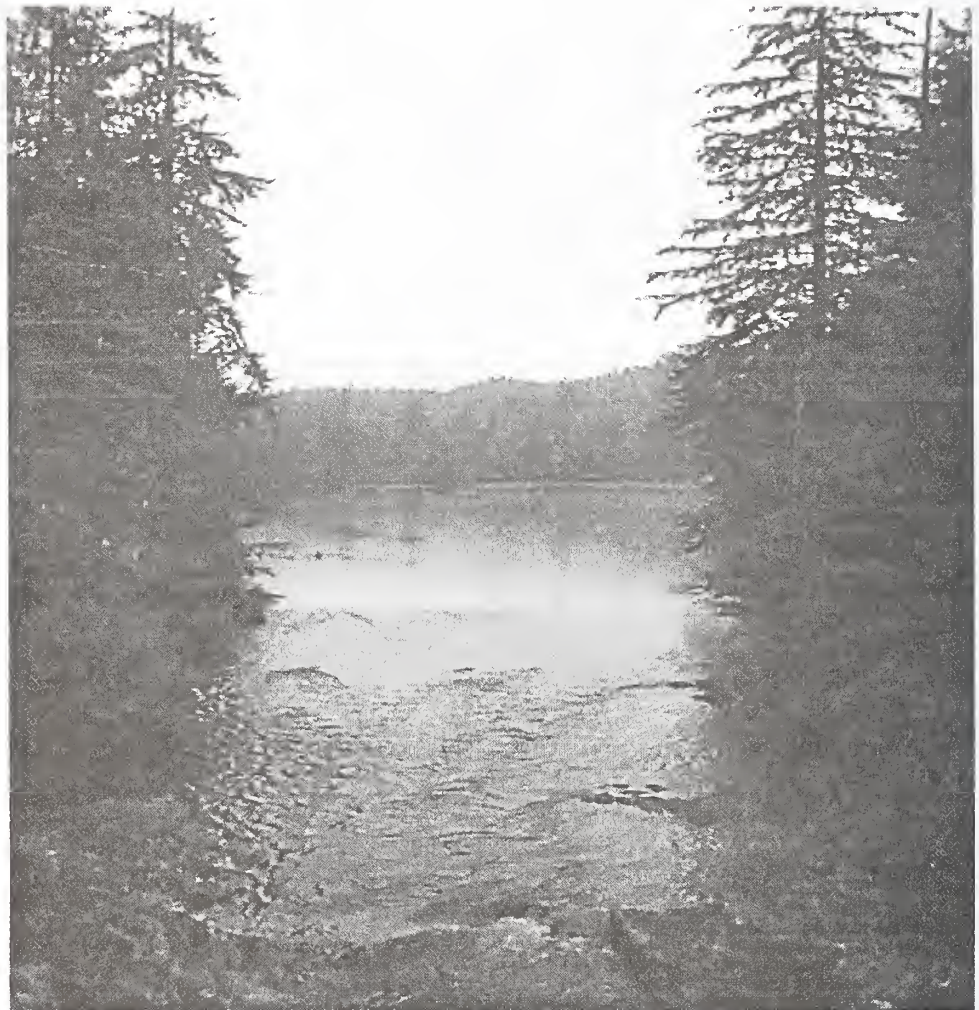
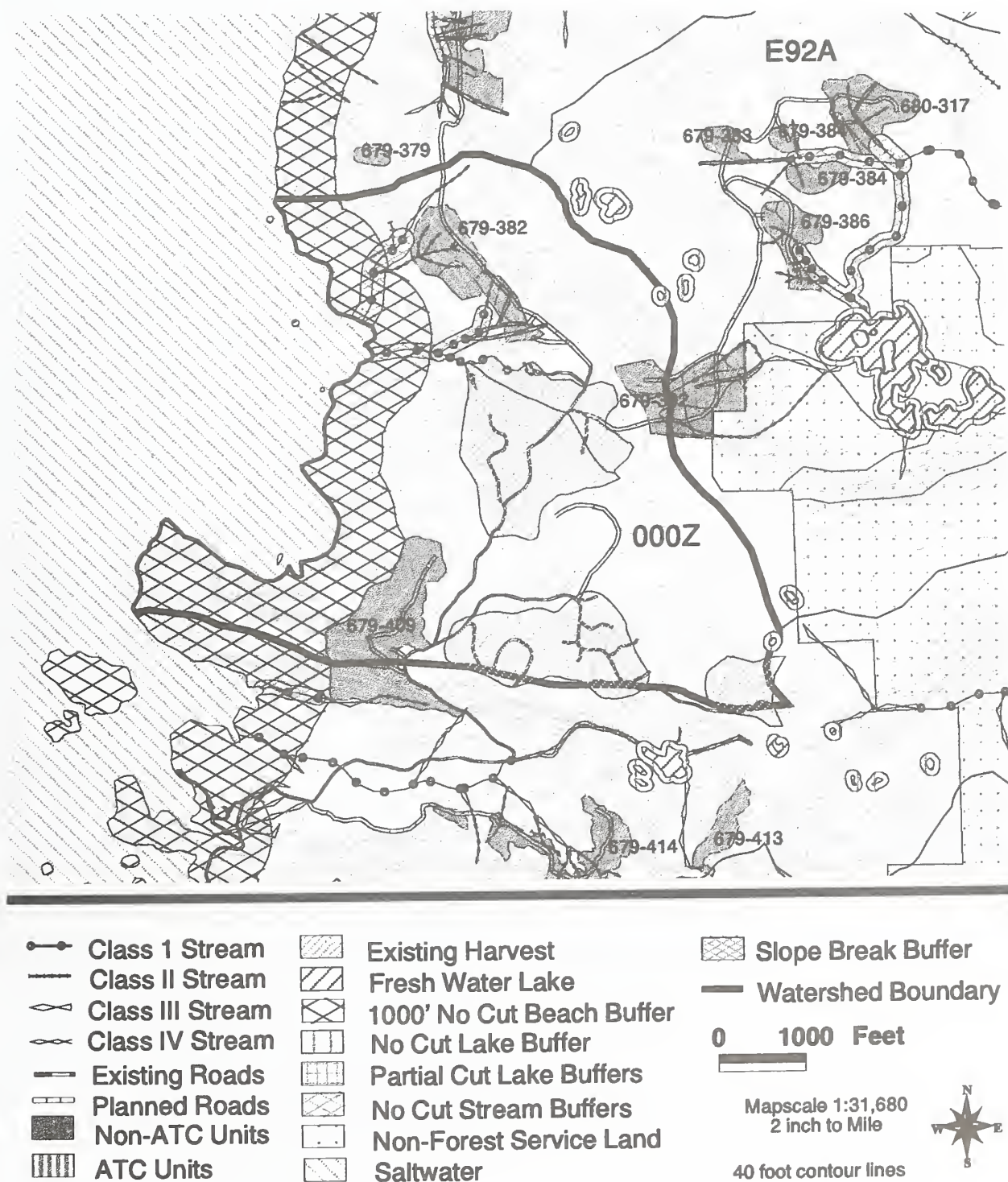




Figure AQU-13  
Watershed 000Z Map



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Habitat Capability

Maintaining or improving habitat capability to produce salmon is a primary management goal of the Forest Service. Although the Forest Service does not have jurisdiction over escapement, the agency is concerned about maintaining escapement in sufficiently high numbers of adult salmon to seed the available habitat. Adult spawner escapements are influenced by numerous factors in addition to changes in upland management, such as commercial fishing harvest rates and ocean survival.

Loss and degradation of freshwater habitats are the most frequent factors responsible for the decline of anadromous salmonid and resident fish stocks. This includes decreases in the quantity and quality of habitat and fragmentation of habitat into isolated patches. On Federal lands, the most significant management activities affecting fish habitat are timber harvest and associated activities (i.e., road building and increased recreational activities).

Several factors affect habitat capability within the stream environment. Key physical components of a fully functioning aquatic ecosystem include complex habitats consisting of floodplains, banks, channel structure (i.e., pools and riffles), water column, and sub-surface waters. These are created and maintained by rocks, sediments, large wood, and water quantity and quality. Upslope and riparian areas influence aquatic systems by supplying sediment, large wood, and water. Disturbance processes such as landslides and floods are important delivery mechanisms of these three components. Not all of the desired habitat features are expected to occur within a specific reach of stream, but they do occur frequently throughout a productive watershed.

A brief summary of some of the major environmental factors affecting fish production within stream systems is described below.

## Large Woody Debris

Large quantities of downed trees are a functionally important component of stream habitat. Large woody debris (LWD) influences channel morphology by affecting pool formation, channel pattern and position, and channel geometry. Wood enters fish-bearing streams from either the adjacent riparian zone or the tributaries flowing down the hillslopes. LWD partially controls downstream transport of sediment and organic matter by storing the material behind large wood. LWD affects distribution, formation, and complexity of habitat units, provides cover for fish, and acts as a substrate for aquatic invertebrates and vegetation.

Due to human activities, many riparian management areas on Federal lands are inadequate as long-term sources of large woody debris. In several watersheds within the Chasina Project Area, future sources and amounts of large wood have been reduced due to past and present timber harvesting practices and related activities. Timber harvest activities decrease the widths of intact riparian areas. In areas where riparian buffers are established, partial harvest and salvage logging within them reduce their ability to contribute large wood to streams. Even lack of protection in riparian areas for nonfish-bearing streams decreases the amount of wood these streams could deliver to fish-bearing streams further downstream in the system.

Under natural conditions, large woody debris is periodically supplied by old-growth riparian forest. LWD is usually contributed by windthrow, undercut stream banks, and side-slope sloughs. Gradual and consistent entry of LWD into the aquatic system is important to maintain stream habitat diversity, stability, and productivity. Large amounts of LWD entering abruptly can be detrimental to the aquatic ecosystem by becoming a physical barrier, causing bank erosion, and provoking channel migration. In harvested timber units, buffer blowdown contributes LWD to stream systems, but it occurs within a short period of time, usually causes channel or bank damage, and decreases future recruitment potential.



Site-specific fisheries mitigation measures such as stream and lake protection zones, timing, and road crossings are contained on the Unit Cards (Appendix J).

## Stream Temperature

Vegetative shading of streams is important because changes in water temperature regimes can affect the survival and production of anadromous and resident salmonids. Increased water temperatures are often related to the removal of streambank vegetation along the mainstem and tributaries of a stream during timber harvest. Removal of vegetation uncovers greater surface area of a stream, which allows solar radiation to warm the water faster. According to State of Alaska Water Quality Standards for the growth and propagation of fish and other aquatic life, water temperatures shall not exceed 65° Fahrenheit (F) at any time. The maximum temperature shall not exceed 58° F for fish migration and rearing, and 56° F for spawning, egg, and fry stages.

Generally, reductions in canopy cover results in higher summer temperatures and lower winter temperatures. In the summer, solar radiation is the primary reason for stream temperature fluctuation. Adult fish become stressed as the water temperature increases; when the water reaches the upper lethal limit, a fish kill results. Small changes in water temperature can also affect the emergence of fry from the gravels and the migration of juveniles to the ocean.

Several watersheds within the Chasina Project Area have already experienced a fairly significant amount of timber harvest. Most of the harvest occurred before the enactment of the Tongass Timber Reform Act (TTRA) of 1991. Consistent with other areas that were harvested prior to TTRA, timber was harvested to the edge of the streams, leaving little or no vegetative buffer on the streambanks. Impacts on the water temperature of these systems will continue until natural reforestation replaces the canopy cover.

## Sedimentation

Accelerated rates of erosion and sediment yield are a result of many forest management activities. Roads are probably the greatest source of management-accelerated sediment delivery to anadromous fish habitats. Many older roads with poor locations and inadequate drainage and maintenance increase the risk of erosion and sedimentation of stream habitat.

Roads have unavoidable effects on streams no matter how well they are designed, located, or maintained. Roads modify natural hillslope drainage systems and accelerate erosion processes. These changes can alter physical processes in streams, leading to changes in streamflow regimes, sediment transport and storage, channel structure, substrate composition, and stability of sideslopes. Altering the physical process of a stream can significantly impact biological processes in the same stream system.

Increased levels of sedimentation, both deposited and suspended, frequently have adverse impacts on aquatic productivity. Fine sediments deposited in spawning gravels can reduce survival of fish eggs and developing alevins by smothering the eggs and blocking emergence paths of the alevins. Sediments can also fill pools, which reduces available rearing habitat for juveniles and resting habitat for adults. As sediment levels increase, fish food availability is reduced as primary production and benthic invertebrate productivity decreases; since salmonids are sight feeders, feeding and social behavior can be disrupted by increased levels of suspended sediments.

Due to the adverse biological and physical impacts of increased sedimentation in stream systems, road and fish-pass stream crossing construction activities are allowed to occur within constrained time frames. In Class I streams, road construction activities are not allowed to occur from the time the adults enter the stream system for spawning until the emergence of the fry from the gravels. The windows for instream operations can vary slightly from stream to stream and between species. In the Ketchikan Area of the Tongass National Forest, the

### 3 Environment and Effects

windows during which instream work may be conducted are generally June 1 to August 7 for pink and chum salmon, June 15 to September 1 for coho salmon, and July 18 through August 7 for steelhead trout and sockeye salmon. However, these operations windows can vary from site to site within the stream system and throughout the project area. Site-specific information on timing restrictions may be found in Appendix J—Unit Cards.

#### Management Indicator Species

Management Indicator Species (MIS) are species whose population changes are believed to best indicate the effects of land management activities (TLMP 1997). Through the MIS concept, the total number of species occurring within a project area is reduced to a manageable set of species that collectively represent the complex of habitats, species, and associated management concerns. The MIS are used to assess the maintenance of population viability, changes in biological diversity, and effects on species in public demand.

For the Chasina Project, coho and pink salmon, and Dolly Varden char are the MIS used to evaluate the environmental consequences of the alternatives on fish habitat capability. The models are indicators of projected changes in habitat due to management practices. Their purpose is to assist in making comparisons between management alternatives. The results from the habitat capability models can not be interpreted as precise estimates of rearing fish biomass or actual fish production.

Coho and pink salmon were selected to represent two different phases of salmon life history: spawning/egg incubation and freshwater rearing. Anadromous fish spend part of their life cycle in freshwater and part in saltwater. Salmon lay their eggs in the stream gravels and the juveniles emerge from the gravels as they hatch. Depending on the species of the salmon, the amount of time the juveniles spend in freshwater before migrating to the ocean varies. Pink salmon are especially dependent on estuaries during their early life stages. Salmon reach maturity out in the ocean, and return to their natal streams to spawn and die. Dolly Varden char were selected to represent resident species due to their wide distribution and habitat requirements. Habitat capability for this species is limited by the quantity and quality of spawning gravels, and relatively deep pools as overwintering habitat. Resident char and trout spend their entire lifecycle in freshwater.

#### Coho Salmon

Coho salmon are highly dependent on quality rearing habitat for their survival. Coho juveniles spend an average of 2 years in freshwater streams before migrating to saltwater. On average, smolts mature in an additional 2 years in the ocean, and reach 6 to 20 pounds. The adults are important to the commercial and sport fishing industries of the Chasina Project Area. In 1995, the ADF&G Commercial Fisheries Division reported that District 102 (which includes the Chasina Project Area) contributed 69,303 coho to the Alaskan fishing industry.

Due to the extended amount of time coho juveniles spend in freshwater, their habitat capability is not only limited by the quantity and quality of spawning gravels, but also by the amount of overwintering habitat present. LWD is critical in providing sufficient quality overwintering and rearing habitat in the form of backwater ponds and deep pools for juvenile coho. Past management activities, such as clearcutting timber to the edge of streambanks, have reduced LWD recruitment, disturbed side-channel habitat, and decreased winter stream temperatures. Due to the importance of LWD for coho production, its abundance in streams is a major parameter used in the coho habitat capability model (TLMP 1997). Coho habitat capability, displayed in Table AQU-16 represents the estimated potential for coho salmon production in the Chasina Project Area.

#### Pink Salmon

Pink salmon are the most widely distributed salmon in Southeast Alaska. Pink salmon are important to the commercial fishery of Southeast Alaska, where they represent the greatest poundage harvests. The ADF&G Commercial Fisheries Division announced that District 102

(which includes the Chasina Project Area) provided 8,860,749 pink salmon to the commercial fishing industry in 1995. Pink salmon juveniles go to sea immediately upon emergence from the gravels of coastal streams. After maturing in the ocean for 2 years, pinks return to their natal streams to spawn and die. Spawning gravel quantity and quality limits pink salmon spawning habitat capability. Substrate composition, water quality and quantity, and water depth and velocity are critical to successful salmon spawning and incubation. Spawning generally occurs in riffles as incubating eggs need a constant supply of clean well-oxygenated water.

Management actions that increase stream sediment levels, destabilize stream spawning habitat, and alter habitat accessibility to migrating juveniles and adults harms spawning and incubating habitat. Increased sediment levels can affect egg survival by depriving the eggs of oxygen. Activities that affect fish passage, reduce migratory holding areas, increase stream temperature, and decrease dissolved oxygen can also effect juvenile and adult migration. Migratory holding areas are deep, quiet pools where adults like to rest. Timber harvest near a stream can cause changes in streambank stability, lateral scouring and sedimentation. These factors affect a watershed's ability to retain storm runoff and flood waters.

The model estimates of pink salmon habitat capability are based on estimates of available spawning habitat in the VCU streams. This was done by first determining average pink salmon spawning area by channel type for Tongass National Forest streams that are typically used by pink salmon and not other salmonids. These estimates were then applied to streams in each VCU that have access by pink salmon. Unlike coho habitat capability estimates, pink salmon model estimates are not influenced by prescribed logging activities. This is because the limited studies conducted inside Southeast Alaska have not shown a direct tie between upland (land not immediately adjacent to streams) management and pink salmon numbers; therefore, effects of past management activities on pink salmon are not quantitatively evaluated with the habitat capability model. Table AQU-16 represents the habitat capability changes between 1954 and 1994.

## Dolly Varden

Spawning gravel, water quality and quantity, and water depth and velocity are important habitat components for Dolly Varden spawning and successful egg incubation. Dolly Varden, like coho salmon, are highly dependent on quality rearing habitat for their health, growth, freshwater survival, and marine survival. Dolly Varden can be either resident or anadromous; the resident form spends its entire life cycle in freshwater systems. Anadromous Dolly Varden juveniles spend 1 to 4 years in freshwater before migrating to saltwater. Since Dolly Varden juveniles spend a significant amount of time in freshwater before migrating to sea, their habitat needs are quite similar to coho salmon habitat needs. Dolly Varden habitat capability, like coho habitat capability, is directly influenced by LWD recruitment. Table AQU-16 shows Dolly Varden habitat capability effects and percent change from 1954 to 1994. Reductions in habitat capability due to previous harvesting practices may be offset by stream rehabilitation over an extended period of time.



Table AQU-16

**Habitat Capability Effects and Percent Change from 1954 to 1994 for Coho and Pink Salmon, and Dolly Varden Char**

Species	1954	1994	%
Coho Salmon	8,693	7,616	-12.4
Pink Salmon	11,444,891	11,444,891	0.0
Dolly Varden	110,958	97,134	-12.5

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base.

## Legal Requirements and Riparian Habitat Protection

Stream systems and adjacent riparian areas are incredibly productive and diverse habitat for both aquatic and terrestrial flora and fauna. Streams and riparian areas are also sensitive to disturbance. Some disturbance, such as windthrow and high water flow events, are a natural part of a healthy, functioning riparian ecosystem. Escalated rates of disturbance, such as can be caused by timber harvesting and road building, generally has a negative effect on streams and their adjacent riparian areas (increased levels of sedimentation, disturbance of water courses and flow, removal of snags, den trees, and over-story canopy, etc.), and can impair their functionality.

Recognizing the importance and fragility of streams (relative to fish habitat) and riparian areas, Congress has set minimum standards for the protection of these areas in two different Acts; both Acts emphasize the protection of fish habitat, but in the process of doing so, some of the riparian areas also receive consideration for protection. The National Forest Management Act (NFMA) sets the minimum standards for fish habitat protection on all National Forests. The NFMA regulation (36 CFR 219.27(e)) states, in part:

*“No management practices causing detrimental changes in water temperature or chemical composition, blockages of water courses, or deposits of sediment shall be permitted within these areas [riparian areas] which seriously and adversely affect water conditions or fish habitat.”*

In accordance with the NFMA stipulation to protect fish habitat and riparian areas, the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP) provides standards and guidelines for stream, lake, estuary, beach, and riparian area protection (TLMP 1997). These standards and guidelines are in accordance with the second Act that Congress passed for fish habitat and riparian area protection; this Act is known as the Tongass Timber Reform Act of 1990 (TTRA).

TTRA, Section 103(a) provides direction for fisheries protection. The objective of this section of TTRA is to protect riparian areas and fisheries resources by applying Region 10 best management practices (BMPs) to projects within these areas, and applying buffer zones a minimum of 100 feet in width on Class I streams and Class II streams flowing directly into Class I streams. The Act states:

*(A) Section 705 (16 U.S.C. 539d) of ANILCA is amended by adding at the end thereof the following new subsection: “(e) in order to assure protection of riparian habitat, the Secretary shall maintain a buffer zone of no less than 100 feet in width on each side of all Class I streams in the Tongass National Forest, and on those Class II streams which flow directly into a Class I stream, within which commercial timber harvesting shall be prohibited, except where independent National Forest timber sales have already been*



*sold.....The Secretary shall use best management practices, as defined in the Region 10 Soil and Water Conservation Handbook (FSH 2509.22), January 1990, to assure the protection of riparian habitat on streams or portions of streams not protected by such buffer zones. For the purposes of this subsection, the terms Class I streams and Class II streams means the same as they do in the Region 10 Aquatic Habitat Management Handbook (FSH 2609.24), June 1986."*

TTRA provides protection to Class I streams and Class II streams flowing directly into Class I streams. There are, however, many Class II, III, and IV streams that do not meet the criteria for protection through TTRA. For those streams not addressed by TTRA, the Region 10 Aquatic Habitat Management Handbook describes the minimum protection standards for management practices in Aquatic Habitat Management Units (AHMU).

Protection measures along lakes, streams, and riparian areas are known as buffers; they are designed to maintain the integrity and function of riparian areas. Buffers are prescribed for streams based on stream class and channel types. Minimum buffer standards and guidelines are found in the TLMP (1997) and in Appendix C of this document. Wider buffers or other protection measures can be specified on specific sites in order to maintain or enhance fish habitat, water quality, or riparian areas. For ease of reference, Table AQU-17 gives a brief description of buffers by process group, type of buffer, and stream or lake class. All buffers in this table meet the minimum requirements of TTRA and AHMU.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-17  
Process Group Buffers

Process Group	Class I & II (direct)	Class II (non-direct)	Class III
Alluvial Fan (AF)	RMA or 140 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 140 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 140 feet , whichever is greater
Flood Plain/Glacial Outwash (FP, GO)	RMA or 130 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 130 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 130 feet, whichever is greater
High Gradient Contained (HC)	RMA or 100 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 100 feet , whichever is greater	RMA, defined as the V-notch (side slope break)
Large Contained (LC)	RMA or 100 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 100 feet, whichever is greater	RMA, defined as the side-slope break
Moderate Gradient Contained (MC)	RMA or 100 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 100 feet, whichever is greater	RMA, defined as the side-slope break
Moderate Gradient/ Mixed Control (MM)	RMA or 120 feet, whichever is greater	RMA or 120 feet, whichever is greater	RMA, defined as the side slope break
Palustrine (PA)	RMA, defined as the flood plan, riparian vegetation, soils, or wetland fens.	RMA, defined as the flood plan, riparian vegetation, soils, or wetland fens.	Consider no harvest (or limited harvest) areas to benefit water quality or palustrine- associated wildlife species.
Lakes and Ponds	RMA or 100 feet, whichever is greater. Consider additional no harvest areas for wildlife, rec., and scenic values.	Consider no harvest (or limited harvest) areas to benefit scenic, wildlife, and other uses.	Consider no harvest (or limited harvest) areas to benefit scenic, wildlife, and other uses.

On all process group buffers manage an appropriate distance beyond the no-harvest zone to provide for a reasonable assurance of windfirmness of the Riparian Management Area (RMA), pay special attention to the area within one site-potential tree height of the RMA. The RMA is defined as the flood plain, riparian vegetation or soils, riparian associated wetland fens, side-slopes, and V-notch.

There are other requirements for determining buffer size. Some examples include the presence of riparian soils, very high mass movement soils (MMI 4), tree crowns that do not extend beyond the slope break, and 50 percent natural shading maintained on temperature-sensitive systems. If present upon site-specific analysis, any of these components can widen the buffer zone beyond the minimums in order to meet riparian area management objectives. See the Riparian Management Area section for additional discussion and requirements. Discussion includes total acreage harvested in riparian management areas and the effects of harvest on this sensitive environment. A more in-depth description of Process Group buffers can be found in the Riparian section of the TLMP (1997).

## **Estuary and Beach Fringe**

Estuary and beach fringes are areas of essentially unmodified old-growth forest that are located along shorelines adjacent to saltwater. The estuary fringe is approximately 1,000 feet slope distance inland from mean high tide around all identified estuaries. The beach fringe can be composed of two parts: primary and extended. The primary beach fringe is approximately 500 feet slope distance inland from mean high tide around all coastline, and the extended beach fringe is from approximately 500-1,000 feet slope distance inland from mean high tide around all coastline.

The estuary and primary beach fringes are classified as unsuitable for timber management, and no commercial timber harvest is permitted; however, on a limited basis unprogrammed timber harvest could be allowed. Among other reasons, unprogrammed timber harvest may include timber sold as part of a salvage sale, for specialty wood products, for customary and traditional uses, and for landings, roads, or timber harvest necessary to access timber in adjacent programmed areas where there are not feasible alternatives in project design. Timber harvest necessary to access timber in adjacent programmed areas, where there are no feasible alternatives in project design (e.g., landings for logical yarding settings), will be considered only on the landward edges of the fringe. Silvicultural prescriptions for any harvest must address beach fringe management objectives. Salvage logging of dead standing and/or down material is allowed if the salvage activity is consistent with long term beach and estuary management objectives. This salvage will not contribute to the Allowable Sale Quantity. Small amounts of standing green timber may be harvested during salvage operations for safety and operational considerations.

## **Consumptive Water Uses**

There are no Congressionally designated municipal watersheds within the Chasina Project Area, but there are a few consumptive water users. The Guildersleeve Logging Camp in Dora Bay uses surface water as a domestic water supply, as do several float houses and private land owners within the project area. The Forest Service camp in Lancaster Cove uses a groundwater source for water consumption.

## Effects of the Alternatives

The objectives of managing aquatic resources in the Chasina Project Area include maintaining fish habitat capability, watershed integrity, large woody debris (LWD) supply, water quality, water temperature, and fish passage through stream crossing structures. The proposed harvest activities have the potential to impact aquatic resources by altering sources of LWD, streambank stability, water quality (particularly through increased sedimentation), water temperature, and stream flow. This section discusses the potential effects on aquatic resources from implementation of the action alternatives.

### Fish Habitat Capability and Water Quality

As previously discussed in this chapter, habitat capability is determined by computer models of the management indicator species (coho and pink salmon and Dolly Varden char). These species are used because they are believed to best indicate the effects of land management activities. In this case, the models predict a 12.4 percent decrease in coho habitat capability and a 12.5 percent decrease in Dolly Varden habitat capability in the Chasina Project Area from 1954 to 1994. A continued decrease in habitat capability is expected for another 100 years until the second-growth trees are old enough to start contributing LWD to the stream systems. A decrease in habitat capability may correlate to a decrease in fish populations.

According to the model, habitat capability for pink salmon remains constant from 1954 to 1994. The pink salmon model is not influenced by prescribed logging activities. The model is designed this way because pink salmon smolts migrate to the estuaries directly after emerging from the gravels and are not dependent upon instream pools created by LWD, as are coho and Dolly Varden. However, if timber harvesting activities cause sediment deposition in pools, and change channel or substrate composition in the lower reaches of streams where pinks spawn, pink salmon populations could be negatively impacted.

Implementing TTRA buffers should help slow the decreasing trend in habitat capability through time, although these buffers will not eliminate all losses. With increased harvest activities, there is a higher risk of unplanned impacts to aquatic systems. Examples of this are blowdown of buffers, a greater occurrence of landslides, and increased sedimentation from numerous road and stream crossings.

### Sedimentation

Many of the sedimentation and erosion problems experienced in areas that have been harvested occur in the vicinity of roads and stream crossings; limited road and stream crossings are of great benefit to aquatic resources. As detailed in the Roads and Facilities section of this chapter, Alternatives 3, 5, and 6 have the greatest number of stream crossings planned (9, 8, and 14, respectively). These three alternatives have the greatest potential to affect fish habitat and water quality through sedimentation from timber harvest and road construction. Conversely, Alternative 2 has fewer road/stream crossings planned (4 total), and more acres of helicopter logging planned (55 percent of the acres to be harvested are by helicopter).

In addition to creating fewer road/stream crossings, which is an important benefit to aquatic resources, helicopter logging usually results in less soil disturbance than cable logging. Cable logging can include some type of log suspension (partial or full) to move the logs to a landing. Disturbance done to the soils is greater when a larger portion of the log is in contact with the ground. Greater disturbance also occurs the longer the log remains in contact with the soils once it is attached to the cable. The greater the disturbance to soils within a unit, the more likely it is that subsurface waters will channelize; this may increase the probability of landslides. Even if a landslide does not occur, increases in soil disturbance may cause more erosion; greater erosion can effect streams within or below units through increased sedimentation. Since helicopter logging minimizes the amount of contact logs have with the



## Water Temperature Sensitivity

ground, it decreases erosion and sedimentation problems. Helicopter logging generally causes fewer negative impacts to water and soil resources than cable logging, if the helicopter logging is done on lands suitable for harvest.

In addition to habitat capability, road/stream crossings, and sedimentation, another concern in timber harvest areas is temperature sensitive streams. Certain characteristics of some units make them more likely to contribute to the temperature sensitivity of nearby streams. These characteristics include one or more of the following: south-facing slopes, lack of forested buffers, prior harvest activities, shallowness, flow, adjacency to ponds or muskegs, and fish production (FSH 2609.24 Appendix 4). TTRA and AHMU buffers provide sufficient shading for Class I and Class II streams, but Class III and IV streams may not be provided enough shading to prevent increased water temperatures. If Class III and IV streams increase sufficiently in temperature, they could have an adverse temperature impact on downstream fish habitat. Therefore, each unit in the Chasina Project Area was analyzed for the presence of temperature sensitive characteristics, and the potential for each unit to increase water temperature in streams adjacent to or within the unit. Table AQU-18 lists units that may contribute to the temperature sensitivity of nearby streams.

**Table AQU-18**  
**Units Having a Potential to Increase Temperature Sensitivity of Nearby Streams**

Unit Number	Alternative(s)				
	2	3	4	5	6
678-312		X	X	X	X
678-339					X
679-407			X		X
679-425			X		X
679-437		X	X	X	X

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service 1996.

## Cumulative Watershed Impacts

Many watersheds in the Chasina Project Area have already experienced varying amounts of timber harvest. When considering new harvest entries, it is important to consider prior management practices on all lands within a watershed. The large amount of mixed (private, State, and Federal) ownership in the Chasina Project Area complicates management practices on Federal lands. Most of the private land within the project area is owned by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation.

As stated earlier in this section, the Chasina Project used the TLMP (Forest Plan Appendix J) and the Draft Watershed Analysis Handbook guidelines to analyze cumulative harvest within watersheds. Table AQU-19 displays the cumulative harvest in third order and important second order watersheds. Cumulative harvest percentages include harvest activity that has occurred on Kootznoowoo Native Corporation lands. Acreage harvested on Kootznoowoo Native Corporation lands was estimated by using satellite imagery taken in 1995.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table AQU-19

**Percent Cumulative Harvest in 3rd Order Watersheds and Important 2nd Order Watersheds by Alternative**

3rd Order Watersheds	Total Acres	Harvested Ac. Kootznoowoo	Harvested Ac. National Forest	Cumulative Percent Harvest of Watershed by Alternative					
				1	2	3	4	5	6
000Z	1,333	0	274	18	18	27	32	26	32
E92A	1,905	404	0	21	21	27	23	21	27
E94A	1,320	795	22	62	62	62	62	62	62
H21A	1,813	0	0	0	0	5	1	5	5
H54A	2,451	1,290	137	58	59	59	59	59	59
H60A	404	38	0	9	9	20	20	20	20
H61A	907	119	24	16	32	33	33	33	33
H62A	1,395	159	223	27	36	42	42	42	42
H63A	791	8	314	41	53	42	54	53	54
<b>2nd Order Watersheds</b>									
EX7A	140	0	0	0	0	18	18	18	18
EX8A	319	0	0	0	0	20	20	18	20
H59A	983	0	76	8	23	13	22	15	23

Increasing rates of harvest before a watershed recovers from prior harvest may have several detrimental results for water quality and fish production. One likely result of this type of disturbance is the reduction in evapotranspiration rates (due to tree loss). By decreasing the evapotranspiration rate, the amount of water available for streamflow is increased. This would produce higher peak flows and higher volumes of water during storm events, which would impact channel morphology, substrate composition, LWD and pool holding effectiveness (for fish). Another consequence of increased harvest disturbance would be from building more roads and increasing the number of road/stream crossings. These crossings and roads could increase sedimentation levels in the low gradient stream reaches, which would reduce fish spawning and rearing areas. This translates into lower habitat capability and fish populations. A third result of disturbance from increased rates of harvest is the potential to increase the temperature sensitivity of the streams within the watershed. Watersheds are particularly vulnerable to this if there is a large number of unbuffered Class III and IV streams present on south-facing slopes. Increasing summer water temperatures can affect fry emergence from gravels and juvenile migration to sea. High temperatures can also result in adult fish kills. Based on the previous watershed analysis, the sediment delivery and depositional potential risk assessment and the results of the Watershed Assessment Meeting held September 18, 1997, with the Chasina IDT, the Craig District Ranger, Supervisor's Office Fish and Hydrology Program managers and the Planning Staff Officer; no significant risk to fish habitat or water quality is anticipated with the Chasina Project.

## Mitigation

There are several mitigation measures in place for the protection of aquatic resources. The intent of using mitigation measures is to provide for other land management uses while taking into account aquatic resource management objectives. Region 10 best management practices (BMPs) should be applied to all management activities near or adjacent to streams, lakes, beaches, estuaries, and riparian management areas.

### Harvest Units

Within harvest units, the most common mitigation measures are stream and lake buffers for Class I and II systems, and specified logging techniques for Class III and IV systems; sometimes Class III streams receive buffers too. For Class I and II TTRA streams, there are 100-foot minimum no cut buffers to limit direct damage to fish systems. The only harvest allowed within a TTRA buffer is incidental right-of-way clearing for road/stream crossings and skyline corridors (see Roads and Facilities section for details). Refer to TLMP Forest Plan or Table AQU-17 for specific buffers by class and process group. During logging, trees are directional felled and split yarded away from unbuffered Class III orange/white and Class IV orange/white streams, or the logs are fully suspended above the stream while yarding them to the landing. Any logging debris falling into a unbuffered Class III orange/white, Class IV orange/white, and Class IV green/white stream must be cleaned out immediately after being placed into the system. Class IV green/white streams require directional felling, and split yarding (where practical) or partial suspension. Any logging debris introduced to the system must be cleaned out either before the yarder leaves the area or by the end of the operating season.

### Roads and Stream Crossings

The choice of road/stream crossing locations are critical in terms of both fish passage and sedimentation effects. Stream reaches with uniform alignment, good bank stability, and uniform gentle gradients are the easiest to cross with provisions for fish passage. Guidelines in the AHMU Handbook recommend that fish passage be provided on all streams with natural gradients of 4 percent or less, using typical designs for bridges and culverts installed at a grade of 1 percent or less. Streams with gradients greater than 4 percent will be evaluated by a fisheries biologist on a site-specific basis.

Some mitigation recommendations for design and maintenance of the road system to maintain riparian and wetland function, and fish habitat include the following:

1. Construction of roads in sediment source areas should be avoided. Roads in these sensitive areas have the potential to accelerate large scale mass wasting. When mass wasting occurs, there is a high probability for direct sediment delivery to anadromous and resident fish habitats.
2. Remove all drainage structures in sensitive areas where fish passage, beaver presence, and unstable stream channels are a concern, unless routine road drainage maintenance is feasible. Close all temporary roads and use water bars to control road drainage. Where culverts are pulled on closed roads, the road bed should be sloped back away from the stream to a naturally stable slope.
3. Avoid crossing active alluvial fan channel areas. When possible, locate crossings at the apex of the fan; the stream is still relatively contained at the apex. If the fan must be crossed, oversized and extra drainage structures should be installed.
4. Avoid or minimize the amount of new road construction through fens. Roads located on fens can impede natural water movement associated with those areas. In order to prevent the impedance of the water, road construction requires a large amount of drainage structures. Fens often contain numerous Class I and II channels, which require special



passage and/or timing restrictions. Roads constructed across fens usually require high maintenance due to beaver activity.

For additional mitigation measures regarding road/stream crossings, see the Roads and Facilities section in this document, the 1997 TLMP, and Region 10 BMPs.

## **Instream Construction Timing**

Seasonal timing for instream construction operations are required by ADF&G for Class I streams. Timing may be recommended for Class II streams and sometimes Class III streams. Timing recommendations are based on the site-specific and downstream impacts to spawning, egg presence, fry emergence, and migration of smolts (BMP 14.64). The general windows represent the period of time instream work may be conducted. The general windows are:

Pink/Chum	June 1 - August 7
Coho	June 15 - September 1
Steelhead/Sockeye	July 18 - August 15

Variances from the general timing windows are allowed, and final timing windows are determined by a fisheries biologist after a site review and with stream specific information.

## Floodplains

### Key Terms

**Best Management Practices (BMPs)**—methods, measures, or practices to prevent or reduce water pollution, including, but not limited to, structural and non-structural controls, operation and maintenance procedures, other requirements, and scheduling and distribution of activities. These are primary control mechanisms for non-point sources of pollution on National Forest System lands. Control of non-point source pollution is required by the Clean Water Act. BMPs must be consistent with State regulations. (USDA FSH 2509.22, 1996)

**Floodplains**—lands adjacent to stream or river channels that are covered with water when the stream or river overflows its banks at flood stages. Well-drained soils develop on these lands and support vegetation.

**Riparian area**—the area including a stream channel, lake, or estuary bed, the water itself, and the plants that grow in the water and on the land next to the water.

**Soil**—technical term for what is commonly referred to as dirt. Soil is made up of both mineral and organic materials that cover much of the earth's surface. It contains living matter and it generally supports the growth of vegetation (Soil Survey Staff 1992). Each type of soil has specific properties that differ from other soils. Each type of soil is given a name.

**Value Comparison Unit (VCU)**—area generally encompassing a drainage basin containing one or more large stream systems. Boundaries usually follow watershed divides.

## Affected Environment

A floodplain is the valley floor inundated by a river or stream during high water periods. Naturally-eroded sediments carried by the floodwaters are deposited in slack water reaches of the floodplain, where they accumulate to form nutrient-rich soils. Floodplains are among the most productive sites found on the Tongass National Forest for timber, wildlife, and fisheries. Changes to the rate or quantity of sediment deposition within the floodplain have the potential to affect these resources.

Federal agencies are directed by Executive Order 11888 to provide leadership and take action on Federal lands to avoid, to the extent possible, the long- and short-term adverse impacts associated with the occupancy and modification of floodplains. Under the TLMP (1997) floodplains are managed through implementation of Riparian Standards and Guidelines for protection of riparian areas. For management purposes, floodplains are defined as the area subject to a 1 percent (100-year recurrence) or greater chance of flooding in any given year.

Values for floodplains in this section are based only on the portion of the project area on National Forest System lands, and the portion of these National Forest System lands on which the soil inventory was conducted. This inventory and the portion of the project area it covers are discussed in the soils section in Chapter 3 of this document.

The area estimated to be affected by roads is averaged as 37.5 feet on each side of the road center line, 75 feet total width, and 9.1 acres per mile. This figure includes rock pits, landings, turnouts, and areas where endhaul material is deposited. The 9.1 acres of

disturbance per mile of road in these tables is believed to overestimate the lands affected by roads because the 75 feet is the clearing width; plus, overlay construction techniques will disturb less soil beneath the road surface. Still, the acreage figures are valid for making comparisons.

Within the Chasina Project Area, several streams support well developed floodplains (Table FP-1). There are 898 acres of floodplain soils identified on the project area. All of these acres of floodplain soils are on National Forest System lands.

**Table FP-1**  
**Acres of Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Stream Name or Location/ADF&G #	Watershed Number	Acres
674	Cannery Creek/102-40-10520	H21A	149
677			0
678	South Arm West/102-40-10470	H05A,000Z	24
	South Arm West/No Number	H05A,000Z	32
	South Arm East/102-40-10430	H06A,000Z	25
	South Arm Center/No Number	H28A	130
	South Arm Center/No Number	H28A,000Z	22
679	Kitkun Bay/102-40-10170	H50A,FD1A,000Z	54
	Horseshoe Canyon/102-40-10150	H59A,000Z	135
	Chasina Point/102-50-10150	F48A,000Z	34
680	Dolomi East/102-50-10100	E94A	9
681	Dolomi South/No Number	FB8A	25
	Dutch Harbor/102-50-10070	H54A,FB9A,FB8A	29
	French Harbor/102-50-10050	H55A,000Z	7
	Paul Lake/No Number	H56A	6
	Paul Lake West/ No Number	H56A	129
682	Nowiskay Cove/102-30-10910	H49A	39
	Moir West/102-30-10950	H79A,FH3A	30
	Moir Center/ No Number	H78A,FH2A,000Z	10
	Moir East/No Number	FH1A,000Z	9
<b>Total</b>			<b>898</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

Previous timber harvest and road-building activity have occurred on floodplain soils in the project area. A total of 152 acres have been harvested (Table FP-2). VCU 678 and 679 show the highest degree of harvest. Fourteen acres of floodplain soils are roaded, based on an average road clearing width of 75 feet (Table FP-3). VCU 679 is the only VCU currently roaded on floodplain soils on National Forest System lands on the project area. Stream channels within floodplains are currently spanned by seven road crossings (Table FP-4).

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table FP-2

**Acres Harvested and Projected Harvest on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Currently	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040
674	0.0	0.0	3.4	0.0	3.4	3.4	0.0
677	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
678	82.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	166.2
679	40.7	11.7	11.7	6.5	6.5	11.7	146.0
680	8.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	8.0
681	21.2	0.1	0.1	0.0	0.1	0.1	62.7
682	0	0.0	0	0	0.0	0	48.9
<b>Total</b>	<b>152.0</b>	<b>11.8</b>	<b>15.2</b>	<b>6.5</b>	<b>10.0</b>	<b>15.2</b>	<b>431.8</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

Table FP-3

**Acres Roaded and Projected Roading on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Currently	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040*
674	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
677	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
678	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
679	14.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
680	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
681	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
682	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>14.6</b>	<b>0.0</b>	<b>0.0</b>	<b>0.0</b>	<b>0.0</b>	<b>0.0</b>	<b>0.0</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

\* No new roads are planned for future harvest.



Table FP-4

**Number of Stream Crossings and Projected Crossings on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Currently	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040*
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
678	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
679	7	0	0	0	0	0	0
680	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
681	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

\* No new roads are planned for future harvest.

## Effects of the Alternatives

### Direct and Indirect Effects

Executive Order 11988 requires agencies to: (1) avoid direct or indirect support of floodplain development actions whenever there are practicable alternatives, (2) evaluate the potential effects of proposed action on floodplains, (3) ensure that planning programs and budget requests consider flood hazards and floodplain management, and (4) prescribe procedures to implement the policies and requirements of the Executive Order.

Tables FP-2 to FP-4 estimate the acres of floodplain soils to be affected by timber harvest and road construction under each of the proposed alternatives. Between six acres (Alternative 4) and 15 acres (Alternatives 3 and 6) are proposed for harvest on floodplains under the action alternatives. No additional road construction is proposed within floodplains under action alternatives. No new road crossings of streams within floodplains are proposed by implementation of the action alternatives. Stream crossings include the main stream and tributary streams flowing into it.

During road construction, both direct and indirect disturbance of floodplains may occur. Modification of channels and streamflows, either locally or upstream of the floodplain, has the potential to alter floodplain hydrology, resulting in different erosion and sediment transport characteristics.

BMPs are followed to minimize impacts on floodplains and related resources including fisheries, wetlands, and riparian areas. The Unit and Road Cards in Appendix J present the BMPs assigned as a result of site-specific field inventory or office review. The BMPs are described in more detail in Appendix F.

### Cumulative Effects

Tables FP-5 and FP-6 estimate cumulative effects of past, proposed under this project, and potential future timber harvest on floodplain soils. VCU 678 would have the greatest acreage affected by timber harvest under all alternatives because it has the largest acreage currently

### 3 Environment and Effects

affected (Table FP-5). It is projected VCU 678 would have the largest acreage affected by timber harvest in 2040, also.

VCU 679 is the only area currently affected by roads, but will not have additional roading on floodplains under any of the action alternatives (Table FP-6). It is projected VCU 679 would still have the largest acreage on floodplains affected by roads in 2040 because more new roads are planned for future timber harvest.

**Table FP-5**  
**Projected Cumulative Acres Harvested on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Currently	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040*
674	0.0	0.0	3.4	0.0	3.4	3.4	3.4
677	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
678	82.0	82.0	82.0	82.0	82.0	82.0	248.2
679	40.7	52.4	52.4	47.2	47.2	52.4	198.4
680	8.1	8.1	8.1	8.1	8.1	8.1	16.1
681	21.2	21.3	21.3	21.2	21.3	21.3	84.0
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	48.9
<b>Total</b>	<b>152.0</b>	<b>163.8</b>	<b>167.2</b>	<b>158.5</b>	<b>162.0</b>	<b>167.2</b>	<b>599.0</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Uses Alternative 3.

Table FP-6

**Projected Cumulative Acres Roaded on Floodplain Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Currently	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040*
674	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
677	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
678	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
679	14.6	14.6	14.6	14.6	14.6	14.6	14.6
680	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
681	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
682	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>14.6</b>	<b>14.6</b>	<b>14.6</b>	<b>14.6</b>	<b>14.6</b>	<b>14.6</b>	<b>14.6</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest.

## Mitigation Measures

Floodplains should not be harvested because they are part of the riparian buffer on streams and are eliminated during field review of proposed units. Existing roads, however, will continue to cross floodplains. To minimize adverse effects, the frequent placement of culverts and bridges is indicated on the Road Cards (Appendix J). These culverts and bridges prevent the road prism from inhibiting the flow of floodwaters (EPA 1993, cited in Foster Wheeler 1995.).

## Monitoring

The Forest Plan recognizes three distinct types of monitoring: implementation, effectiveness, and validation. Implementation monitoring determines if projects and activities comply with Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines. Effectiveness monitoring determines whether the standards and guidelines achieve the desired results. Validation monitoring determines whether the assumptions in the Forest Plan regarding the relationship between management actions and their effects are correct, or if there is a better way to depict these relationships.

A monitoring plan has been developed for the Tongass National Forest by the Forest Planning Team and is described in the TLMP (1997). The Forest Plan contains no specific monitoring items for floodplains. Monitoring for this resource generally is covered by monitoring of riparian and soil and water standards and guidelines, and monitoring of BMPs. In accordance with the 1992 Memorandum of Agreement between the Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation and the USDA-Forest Service Alaska Region, the Forest Service performs annual BMP implementation and effectiveness monitoring. The Chasina Project Area will be part of the Forest Plan monitoring and the Ketchikan Area Monitoring Strategy.

Project-specific monitoring that is unique to the Chasina Project Area, and that would not be included in regular Forest Plan or routine implementation monitoring, has been identified for several resources. Project-specific monitoring is not planned for floodplain resources on the Chasina Project Area.

## Riparian Management Areas

### Key Terms

**Best Management Practices (BMPs)**—methods, measures, or practices to prevent or reduce water pollution, including, but not limited to structural and non-structural controls, operation and maintenance procedures, other requirements, and scheduling and distribution of activities. These are primary control mechanisms for non-point sources of pollution on National Forest System lands. Control of non-point source pollution is required by the Clean Water Act. BMPs must be consistent with State regulations. (USDA FSH 2509.22, 1996)

**Floodplains**—lands adjacent to stream or river channels that are covered with water when the stream or river overflows its banks at flood stages. Well-drained soils develop on these lands and support vegetation.

**Muskeg (peatlands)**—plant communities and soils that have developed in depressions or on relatively flat areas, are poorly drained, have organic soils, and support vegetation that is predominantly sphagnum mosses (bogs) or sedges (fens), with forbs and lesser amounts of shrubs and stunted trees.

**Riparian area**—the area including a stream channel, lake, or estuary bed, the water itself and the plants that grow in the water and on the land next to the water.

**Riparian management area (RMA)**—Land areas delineated in the TLMP (1997) to provide for the management of riparian resources. Specific standards and guidelines, by stream process group, are associated with RMAs. RMAs may be modified by watershed analysis. RMAs are synonymous in this section with the no cut buffers applied adjacent to riparian areas.

**Wetlands**—areas inundated by surface or groundwater with a frequency or duration sufficient to support a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soils conditions. Classification of wetlands is based on soil, vegetation, and hydrology factors. Wetlands in Southeast Alaska include muskegs, estuaries, and forested wetlands.

## Affected Environment

### Riparian Management Areas

Riparian areas are aquatic habitats such as lakes, streams, and estuaries, and the lands adjacent to them. The aquatic and terrestrial elements of a riparian area typically are closely related and interdependent. For example, soil saturation and composition influences the plant species found adjacent to the water body, while plant species composition influences stream shading, water temperature, and bank stability. Riparian areas, particularly on low elevation floodplain sites, are highly productive environments for fish, timber, and wildlife resources. Forested riparian areas often serve as travel corridors for deer between low elevation winter range and higher elevation summer range.

The National Forest Management Act (NFMA) requires that riparian areas be established to protect water quality and fisheries habitat. The Tongass Timber Reform Act (1990) specifies protection requirements for salmon-bearing streams. The TLMP (1997) provides for protection of riparian-related resources under the Riparian Standards and Guidelines.

Under the Riparian Standards and Guidelines (TLMP 1997), administrative riparian management areas (RMAs) are defined as buffers based on stream channel types, process groups and classes. RMAs include freshwater streams and lakes, estuaries, and the lands



adjacent to these aquatic habitats. The adjacent lands are those dominated by riparian vegetation and those adjacent non-riparian lands with potential to influence water quality.

RMAs are defined by the following types of buffers. Each has different management requirements.

## **No Commercial Timber Harvest Buffer**

A minimum 100-foot buffer is applied to either side of all Class I streams and Class II streams that flow directly into Class I streams, as specified in the Tongass Timber Reform Act (1990). No commercial harvest is allowed within the buffer, although limited clearing for road building is permitted. This buffer is commonly referred to as the TTRA buffer. This buffer is included in the no cut buffer, and is not further discussed in this section.

## **No Cut Buffer**

A no cut buffer includes one half the bankfull width of the stream plus the length of the sideslope or floodplain. Buffers vary in width based on class, process group, and channel type of the stream. This buffer is defined as the RMA. No timber harvest is to be scheduled in RMAs where direction states “no programmed commercial timber harvest,” but unprogrammed commercial timber harvest can be scheduled where it meets the objectives of the process group as determined by watershed analysis. Personal use wood and timber salvage can occur if watershed analysis shows objectives of the process group are met. Roads are allowed in these buffers (RMAs), but standards and guidelines in the TLMP (1997) and BMPs must be followed. This buffer generally includes and is greater in width than the no commercial timber harvest buffer. This buffer, however, defaults to the width of the no commercial timber harvest buffer in the few instances where the computed width of the no cut buffer is less than the width of the no commercial timber harvest buffer on Class I and applicable Class II streams.

## **Windfirm Buffer**

A windfirm buffer includes the width of the no cut buffer plus the width of the height of the site potential tree. The additional width is not part of the RMA, but is an additional area for management to provide a reasonable assurance of windfirmness of the RMA.

Additional information on RMAs is presented in the riparian standards and guidelines section of the TLMP (1997). Channel types are further described in the *Channel Types User Guide* (USDA-Forest Service 1992b, cited in Harza 1995).

A total of 2,451 acres are located within RMAs on National Forest System lands on the Chasina Project Area (Table RMA-1). Important RMAs coincide with the floodplain areas noted in the Floodplains section (Chapter 3). Table RMA-1 indicates the acres of old growth and second growth within each of the RMA components.

**Table RMA-1**  
**Acres Within RMA Components, by Vegetation Type on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

RMA Component	Total RMA	Old Growth	Second Growth
No Cut Buffers	2,541	1,655	116
Windfirm Buffers	2,761	1,819	131

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

There are approximately 1,975 acres of existing timber harvest on National Forest System lands on the project area (Table SOILS-12). Approximately 116 acres lie within RMAs (Tables RMA-1 and -2). This acreage was harvested prior to passage of the TTRA of 1990, and was harvested prior to current standards and guidelines that now prohibit harvest in these buffers (TMLP 1997).

**Table RMA-2**  
**Acres of RMA Components Affected by Timber Harvest on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

RMA Component	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040
No Cut Buffers	116	70	98	69	71	134	1,655
Windfirm Buffers	131	109	198	139	153	246	1,819

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

There are approximately 27 miles (246 acres) of existing roads on National Forest System lands on the Chasina Project Area (Tables SOILS-11 and SOILS-13). Approximately 11 acres lie within RMAs (Table RMA-3). Again, it is noted that these areas were roaded prior to establishment of current standards and guidelines.

Table RMA-3

**Acres of RMA Components Affected by Road Construction\* on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

RMA Component	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040
No Cut Buffers	11	4	10	1	7	16	0
Windfirm Buffers	19	8	17	3	13	27	0

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area Data Base 1998.

\* Includes proposed roads and existing roads to be reconstructed. Assumes area disturbed from roads, landings, turnouts, end-haul areas, and rock pits is averaged to a road width of 75 feet, for 9.1 acres per mile of road.

## Effects of the Alternatives

### Direct and Indirect Effects

Riparian areas may be affected directly, through harvest and road construction, or indirectly through changes in hydrology, sediment transport, water temperature, or windthrow. Protection of riparian areas is provided by their designation with the implementation of Forest-wide standards and guidelines for riparian areas (TLMP 1997), and BMPs for both timber harvest and road construction. A summary of BMPs is presented in Appendix F of this document.

Table RMA-2 estimates acres to be affected within RMAs by harvest units under this project. The values in the table represent potential impact to these buffers based on GIS analysis. Watershed analysis has been done per Appendix J in the TLMP (1997) to clear these activities. This analysis is discussed in the Aquatic Resources section of this document. Ranking the action alternatives from greatest to least impact to the RMAs shows impacts of: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 2 greater than 4. Acreage varies from 69 to 134 for these alternatives.

Table RMA-3 estimates acres to be affected within RMAs by roads under this project. Ranking the action alternatives from greatest to least impact to the RMAs follows that for harvest units with: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 2 greater than 4 (Table RMA-3). Acreage varies from one to 16 for these alternatives.

BMPs will be implemented during timber harvest and construction of roads for protection of fisheries habitat and water quality. The unit and road cards in Appendix J include BMPs recommended based on site and office review.

### Cumulative Effects

Cumulative impacts to RMAs are estimated following completion of this project (2004), and to the foreseeable future, 2040 (Table RMA-4). The values in the table include potential impact to these buffers from harvest units, and probable impact from roads based on GIS analysis. Values for 2004 include currently affected acreage and Alternative 3 of this project. Values for 2040 include currently affected acreage, acreage under Alternative 3 of this project, and all additional lands identified as suitable and available for timber harvest under the TLMP (1997).

Table RMA-4

**Cumulative Acres of Timber Harvest and Road Construction in RMA Components on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

RMA Component	Total Area	1954	2004*	2040**
No Cut Buffers	2,541	0	235	1,890
Windfirm Buffers	2,761	0	365	2,184

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Uses Alternative 3 of Chasina Project and existing affected acreage.

\*\* Uses existing, Alternative 3, and additional suitable and available per TLMP 1997. No new roads are planned for future harvest

## Mitigation Measures

Mitigation measures designed to protect riparian areas are based on standards and guidelines in the TLMP (1997), watershed analysis and the site-specific buffers prescribed in the field (Appendix J). The prescription of buffers in the field is the most important mitigation measure because it ensures the location and evaluation of all streams in the harvest units. This field verification identified all Class I streams and Class II streams, and prescribed the appropriate buffer. This procedure allows the avoidance of the riparian area adjacent to any previously unknown Class I and Class II streams. Additionally, field verification allowed the identification of numerous previously unmapped Class III and IV streams, and prescribed buffers or harvest systems. The unit cards identify mitigation measures applied to harvest units (Appendix J).

Buffers on streams are susceptible to blowdown after harvest. Prevention and minimization of blowdown was developed using techniques described in the Southeast Alaska Guide for Reducing Wind Damage (Harris 1989, cited in Foster Wheeler 1995). The applied techniques use unit boundaries and harvest types, which incorporate partial retention around the unit perimeter to reduce risk. The Ketchikan Area is currently monitoring blowdown in stream buffers to determine the effectiveness of the buffers and other techniques (USDA-Forest Service 1992f, cited in Foster Wheeler 1995). One function of buffers on streams is to maintain the supply of large woody debris to the stream. Windthrow is the most common source of natural large woody debris loading. Consequently, the blowdown of portions of buffer strips merely changes the timing of debris input (Gregory and Ashkenas undated, cited in Foster Wheeler 1995). Catastrophic blowdown of long lengths of buffer on streams could reduce long-term input of LWD. Catastrophic blowdown creates a detrimental condition, e.g., barriers to anadromous fish. Because of this, modification of the debris accumulation should be considered on a case-by-case basis. The additional acreage included in windfirm buffers is an additional tool available to management to stabilize no cut buffers (Tables RMA-1, -2, -3, and -4).

For Class I and Class II streams, most of the buffers applied are for one side of the stream. For the most part, planned timber harvest units utilized Class I and Class II streams as unit boundaries rather than including them within the harvest units. Class III streams may also serve as unit boundaries, but may be inside units also.

RMAs are not areas of exclusion of management activities. Some lands defined in this management zone can still be harvested, and affected by road construction. Affecting lands within the management area, however, has a high risk of affecting water resources. Mitigation measures for activities associated with timber harvest are discussed in the Aquatic Resources section of this document.



## Monitoring

The Forest Plan recognizes three distinct types of monitoring: implementation, effectiveness, and validation. Implementation monitoring determines if projects and activities comply with Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines. Effectiveness monitoring determines whether the standards and guidelines achieve the desired results. Validation monitoring determines whether the assumptions in the Forest Plan regarding the relationship between management actions and their effects are correct, or if there is a better way to depict these relationships.

A monitoring plan has been developed for the Tongass National Forest by the Forest Planning Team and is described in the TLMP (1997). The Forest Plan contains no specific monitoring items for RMAs. Monitoring for this resource is generally covered by monitoring of standards and guidelines for fish, riparian, and soil and water, and monitoring of BMPs. In accordance with the 1992 Memorandum of Agreement between the Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation and the USDA-Forest Service Alaska Region, the Forest Service performs annual BMP implementation and effectiveness monitoring. The Chasina Project Area will be part of the Forest Plan monitoring and the Ketchikan Area Monitoring Strategy.

Project-specific monitoring that is unique to the Chasina Project Area, and that would not be included in regular Forest Plan or routine implementation monitoring, has been identified for several resources. Project-specific monitoring is not planned for RMA resources in the Chasina Project Area.

## Wetlands

### Key Terms

**Best Management Practices (BMPs)**—methods, measures, or practices to prevent or reduce water pollution, including, but not limited to, structural and non-structural controls, operation and maintenance procedures, other requirements, and scheduling and distribution of activities. These are primary control mechanisms for non-point sources of pollution on National Forest Service lands. Control of non-point source pollution is required by the Clean Water Act. BMPs must be consistent with State regulations. (USDA FSH 2509.22, 1996)

**Estuarine wetland system**—deep water tidal habitats and adjacent tidal wetlands that are usually semi-enclosed by land, have open, partly obstructed or sporadic access to the open ocean, and in which ocean water is of at least occasionally diluted by freshwater runoff from the land. Predominantly intertidal areas where fresh water lakes and streams connect with the open sea.

**Lacustrine wetland system**—includes permanently flooded lakes and reservoirs, intermittent lakes, and tidal lakes with ocean-derived salinities of less than 0.5 percent. Typically, there are extensive areas of deep water and there is considerable wave action.

**Muskeg (peatlands)**—plant communities and soils that have developed in depressions or on relatively flat areas, are poorly drained, have organic soils, and support vegetation that is predominantly sphagnum mosses (bogs) or sedges (fens), with forbs and lesser amounts of shrubs and stunted trees.

**Palustrine wetland system**—vegetated wetlands including muskegs, scrub-shrub, and forest.

**Riparian area**—the area including a stream channel, lake or estuary bed, the water itself, and the plants that grow in the water and on the land next to the water.

**Riverine wetland system**—a category in wetland classification which includes all wetlands and deep water habitats contained within a channel, with two exceptions: (1) wetlands dominated by trees, shrubs, persistent emergents, emergent mosses, or lichens; and (2) habitats with water containing ocean-derived salts in excess of 0.5 percent. Includes all channel-contained streams.

**Soil**—technical term for what is commonly referred to as dirt. Soil is made up of both mineral and organic materials that cover much of the earth's surface. It contains living matter and it generally supports the growth of vegetation (Soil Survey Staff 1992). Each type of soil has specific properties that differ from other soils. Each type of soil is given a name.

**Soil drainage**—rate of movement of water through the soil and time water is contained in the soil.

**Soil map unit (SMU)**—collection of areas defined and named the same in terms of their soil components, or miscellaneous areas, or both. Each map unit consists of one or more components. (Soil Survey Division Staff 1993.)

**Soil productivity**—capacity of a soil to produce plant growth. Related to inherent chemical, physical, and biological properties of soil.

**Value Comparison Unit (VCU)**—area generally encompassing a drainage basin containing one or more large stream systems. Boundaries usually follow watershed divides.

**Wetlands**—areas that are inundated by surface or groundwater with a frequency or duration sufficient to support a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil conditions. Classification of wetlands is based on soil, vegetation, and hydrology factors. Wetlands in Southeast Alaska include muskegs, estuaries, and forested wetlands.

## Affected Environment

### Introduction

Wetlands are defined as “those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or groundwater with a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions” (40 CFR 230.41(a)(1)). The high precipitation level and glacial terrain of Southeast Alaska have combined to form extensive wetland complexes, including muskegs, estuaries, and forested wetlands.

Executive Order 11990, as amended, requires Federal agencies to avoid to the extent possible the long- and short-term adverse impacts associated with the destruction or modification of wetlands. The TLMP (1997) includes Forest-wide standards and guidelines directed at avoiding or minimizing the loss of wetland acreage and enhancing the values and functions of existing wetlands.

The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (COE) Wetlands Delineation Manual (1987) provides the standard for determining a site’s wetland status. In addition, DeMeo and Loggy (1989) have developed wetland identification procedures specific to Southeast Alaska’s vegetation communities. Under the COE manual (1987), sites are considered wetlands when they meet criteria regarding soil, hydrology, and vegetation. Generally, wetlands are lands where soils are wet often enough that vegetation which can grow and survive on wet soil prevails on the site. The DeMeo and Loggy (1989) procedure, used to classify wetlands on the Ketchikan Area, evaluates the vegetation and soil layers in the GIS data base and then assumes the presence of the wetland hydrological criteria. In addition, their procedure calculates wetland acreages based on the general percentage of the vegetation and soil types within soil map units (SMUs).

Wetland GIS analysis in this section is based only on the portion of the project area on National Forest System lands, and the portion of these lands on which the soil inventory was conducted. This inventory and the portion of the project area it covers are discussed in the Soils section of Chapter 3 in this EIS.

Approximately 21,622 acres, or 53 percent, of the inventoried National Forest System lands on the Chasina Project Area are wetlands under the classification system in Table WETL-1. These include wetlands of the palustrine system (open muskegs, freshwater sedge meadows, forested muskegs, and other forested wetlands), estuarine system (emergent sedge and intertidal/subtidal mudflats), lacustrine system (lakes and ponds), and riverine system (streams). The TLMP Final EIS (1997, pages 3-320 and 3-321) provides detailed descriptions

### 3 Environment and Effects

of the wetland systems and classes. Table WETL-1 presents the acres within each wetland system and class found on the project area. Lacustrine and riverine systems do not generally have the vegetation component needed per the definition to be classified as wetlands, but are included here to be in agreement with the TLMP, NWI mapping (COE 1987), and work in other EISs.

**Table WETL-1**  
**Acres of Wetlands\* on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the**  
**Chasina Project Area**

Wetland System	Wetland Class	Acres
Palustrine	Forested (Mineral)	9,047
	Forested (Organic)	7,720
	Open Muskeg (Organic)	3,591
	Open Muskeg (Mineral)	206
Estuarine		11
Lacustrine (Lakes)		514
Riverine (Rivers and Streams)		533
<b>Total</b>		<b>21,622</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

\* Many of the wetlands in the project area occur in complexes with nonwetlands or other wetland types. A complex is an area of two or more dissimilar vegetation and soil types occurring in a regularly repeating pattern that can be mapped on aerial photographs. Values for this table were derived using percent composition of each vegetation and soil type of the complexes. These percentages were determined during the soil and vegetation survey.

#### Wetland Systems and Classes

Forested wetlands are the most prevalent wetland class on inventoried National Forest System lands on the project area. Forested wetlands occur on 16,767 acres (Table WETL-1). The greatest acreage, 9,047, is on mineral soil. These mineral wetland soils vary from somewhat poorly to poorly drained. Forested wetlands on organic soils occur on 7,720 acres.



Drainage on these organic soils varies from poorly to very poorly drained. Plant associations (USDA 1992j) range from western hemlock to shore pine as drainage on forested wetland soils declines. Timber on the better drained sites is commonly Volume Class 5 or 4. Poorer drained sites are non-commercial timber, Volume Class 3. Small open muskegs may be interspersed with forested wetlands, particularly on the poorer drained organic soils. VCU 679 has the greatest amount of forested wetlands (Tables WETL-2 and WETL-3). This includes those on both mineral and organic soils.

Open muskegs occur on 3,797 acres of inventoried National Forest System lands on the project area. These wetlands are found from low to high elevations. They are dominated by sphagnum moss or sedges and interspersed with forbs, shrubs, and stunted trees. VCU 679 has the greatest acreage of muskeg (Tables WETL-2 and WETL-3).

Estuaries are unique ecosystems located at the interface of freshwater, terrestrial, and marine environments. Estuaries support marine invertebrates such as clams and crabs, saltwater fish, and anadromous fish. These species, in turn, support a wide variety of wildlife, including waterfowl, wading birds, bald eagles, small mammals, and bear. Estuarine wetlands occupy 11 acres on inventoried National Forest System lands on the project area (Table WETL-1). Emergent sedge communities are found in sloughs, terraces between estuary channels, and along adjacent low to mid-level terraces. Inundated by higher tides, these communities are dominated by Lyngbye's sedge, large-awned sedge, red fescue, and sea milkwort. Intertidal/subtidal mudflats are partially exposed during low tides, and typically are unvegetated. The acreage in this classification only includes lands where soils and vegetation both meet criteria for estuaries. VCU 678 is the only area with identified estuary on inventoried National Forest System lands on the project area (Tables WETL-2 and WETL-3).

Lacustrine wetlands are the open water areas of lakes and ponds. A total of 514 acres are identified on inventoried National Forest System lands on the project area. VCU 681 has the greatest acreage of lakes and ponds (Table WETL-2).

Riverine habitats include streams and rivers. Approximately 533 acres of streams are present on inventoried National Forest System lands on the project area (Table WETL-1). VCU 678 has the greatest acreage of streams (Table WETL-2). Table AQU-3 provides additional information on the major salmon producing streams on the project area.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table WETL-2

**Acres of Wetland Classes by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Forested (Mineral)	Forested (Organic)	Muskeg (Mineral)	Muskeg (Organic)	Estuarine	Lacustrine	Riverine
674	796	88	2	130	0	1	52
677	456	263	19	592	0	80	46
678	1,445	223	145	861	11	12	171
679	2,757	2,400	28	982	0	70	139
680	1,050	2,162	0	355	0	42	41
681	1,003	1,584	0	448	0	297	53
682	1,540	1,000	12	223	0	12	30
<b>Total</b>	<b>9,047</b>	<b>7,720</b>	<b>206</b>	<b>3,591</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>514</b>	<b>533</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

Table WETL-3

**Acres of Vegetated Wetlands and Nonwetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Wetland
674	0	132	88	796	1,016	871	1,887	54
677	0	611	263	456	1,330	1,838	3,168	42
678	11	1,006	223	1,445	2,685	8,436	11,121	24
679	0	1,010	2,400	2,757	6,167	6,718	12,885	48
680	0	335	2,162	1,050	3,567	351	3,918	91
681	0	448	1,584	1,003	3,035	3,591	6,626	46
682	0	235	1,000	1,540	2,775	1,452	4,227	66
<b>Total</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>3,797</b>	<b>7,720</b>	<b>9,047</b>	<b>20,575</b>	<b>23,257</b>	<b>43,832</b>	<b>47</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

## Values and Functions

Wetland functions are the physical, chemical, and biological processes or attributes necessary to maintain the integrity of the wetland/upland landscape system (Adams et al., 1987, cited in Harza 1995). These functions can be grouped into three classes: hydrologic, including flood flow moderation and ground water exchange; water quality improvement, including sediment deposition and nutrient exchange; and biologic, including primary productivity, habitat structure, and species diversity. Wetland values are those characteristics of wetlands that are perceived as valuable to society, such as aesthetics, recreational use, commercial fishing, timber harvest, and development sites.

Palustrine wetlands in the project area, particularly muskegs, are moderately important to water quality improvement, flood flow attenuation, and biological production. Palustrine wetlands generally play an important role in groundwater recharge and discharge. Socio-economic values of palustrine wetlands are generally low to moderate, although forested wetlands on organic and mineral soils can have low to moderate economic value.

Estuarine wetlands serve very important biological and water quality functions in relation to primary and secondary productivity, structural and chemical habitat attributes, and species diversity. Hydrologic functions of floodflow alteration and ground water exchange are of lesser importance in estuarine wetlands. Socio-economic values of estuarine wetlands are generally moderate to high.

Lacustrine wetlands support moderate levels of water quality improvement functions, and moderate to high levels of hydrologic functions. Biologic functions vary from low to high, depending on the size, productivity, and species use of the lake. Aesthetic and recreational values of lakes are generally moderate to high; other socio-economic values are variable in importance.

Riverine wetlands provide high levels of hydrologic functions and moderate to high levels of water quality improvement functions. Biological support varies from low, in small, high gradient mountain streams, to high, in large, low-elevation salmon-bearing streams. Recreational and aesthetic values vary from low to very high, depending on stream characteristics, fishing potential, and accessibility. Other socio-economic values are variable in importance.

## Effects of the Alternatives

### Direct and Indirect Effects

#### Effects of Proposed Harvest on Wetlands

Vegetated wetlands comprise approximately 47 percent, or 20,575 acres, of the inventoried National Forest System lands on the project area (Table WETL-3). More important is the forested, muskeg, and estuarine wetlands that could be impacted by harvest operations. Tables WETL-4 to WETL-9 estimate lands to be affected by timber harvest on these wetlands for the action alternatives, and lands currently affected. Estuarine lands will not be affected by timber harvest under this project because a 1,000 foot estuary fringe is applied around all identified estuaries per the TLMP (1997). Roads may still be located in this buffer zone, however. VCU 679 has the greatest acreage of forested wetlands on organic soils, forested wetlands on mineral soil, and total vegetated wetlands affected by current harvest (Table WETL-4). Acreage of vegetated wetlands harvested by the action alternatives ranked from greatest to least is: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 4 greater than 2 (Tables WETL-5 to WETL-9).

### 3 Environment and Effects

Muskegs are generally unsuitable for timber harvest; however, small muskegs included in larger forested tracts may be affected by harvest and adjacent yarding operations. BMPs will be applied for the protection of water quality and will protect wetland water quality improvement functions. Timber harvest on forested wetlands with mineral soils may temporarily change the hydrology of the site. Patric (1966, cited in Harza 1995) suggests an increase in water yield may result from timber harvest. A temporary increase in soil moisture is expected until vegetation is re-established on the site.

Site productivity on wetland soils is typically lower than on more well-drained soils. Concurrently, growth rates are expected to be slower on wetland than on non-wetland sites, and merchantable timber may not be available on a 100-year rotation. VCU 682 has the greatest percentage of harvest on vegetated wetlands for the existing condition (Table WETL-4). Harvest on vegetated wetlands is 39 percent on this VCU. VCUs with the greatest portion of vegetated wetlands harvested by action alternatives are: 674 for Alternatives 6, 4, and 3; 680 for Alternative 5; and 682 for Alternative 2 (Tables WETL-5 to WETL-9). VCUs by alternative with greater than 50 percent of their timber harvest on vegetated wetlands are: VCU 682 for Alternative 2; 674, 678, and 680 for Alternative 3; 674 and 678 for Alternative 4; 674, 678, 680 and 681 for Alternative 5; and 674 and 680 for Alternative 6. These figures can give a misleading impression of impact to wetlands when a small acreage is to be harvested in a VCU and it is all scheduled on wetlands. Harvest in VCU 674 for Alternative 4 is an example. The percent of harvest on vegetated wetlands by alternative ranked from greatest to least is: 3 (49 percent), 5 (47 percent), 6 (37 percent), 4 (34 percent), 2 (24 percent), and current harvest (14 percent) (Tables WETL-4 to WETL-9).

The preceding comparison of percent harvest on wetlands is commonly done in EISs, and so was presented here also. A more informative analysis for affects of harvest on wetlands is the portion of the vegetated wetlands in a VCU that will be harvested. Comparison of VCUs and alternatives shows all will have less than ten percent of vegetated wetlands harvested (Tables WETL-4 to WETL-9).

The Record of Decision (ROD) in the TLMP (1997) notes that information is incomplete for affects of timber harvest on four forested organic wetland soils (Kaikli, Karheen, Kitkun, and Maybeso). The information needs sections of the TLMP describes an ongoing study on stocking and growth response following timber harvest on these soils. The ROD specifies to avoid harvest on areas of these soils greater than two acres in size pending the results of this study or information obtained under the monitoring plan.

Review of units under this project resulted in the deletion of Unit 682-303, and portions of Units 682-307 and 680-330 for these soils. Occurrence of these soils in other units is noted on the unit cards and avoidance per the TLMP is recommended (Appendix J).



Table WETL-4

**Acres of Timber Currently Harvested on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Harvest on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Harvested
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
677	0	0	0	0	0	3	3	0	0.0
678	2	5	24	47	78	395	473	16	2.9
679	0	1	93	73	167	1,083	1,250	13	2.7
680	0	0	8	1	9	116	125	7	0.2
681	0	0	15	3	18	73	91	20	0.6
682	0	0	0	13	13	20	33	39	0.5
<b>Total</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>140</b>	<b>137</b>	<b>285</b>	<b>1,690</b>	<b>1,975</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>1.4</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

Table WETL-5

**Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 2 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Harvest on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Harvested
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
679	0	2	20	125	147	427	574	26	2.4
680	0	0	31	0	31	49	80	39	0.9
681	0	4	40	12	56	275	331	17	1.8
682	0	0	1	1	2	0	2	100	0.1
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>92</b>	<b>138</b>	<b>236</b>	<b>751</b>	<b>987</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>1.2</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table WETL-6

**Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 3 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Harvest on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Harvested
674	0	0	0	95	95	8	103	92	9.4
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	2	2	114	118	15	133	89	4.4
679	0	5	93	309	407	521	928	44	6.6
680	0	4	74	52	130	67	197	66	3.6
681	0	2	44	17	63	207	270	23	2.1
682	0	0	13	30	43	59	102	42	1.5
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>226</b>	<b>617</b>	<b>856</b>	<b>877</b>	<b>1,733</b>	<b>49</b>	<b>4.2</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

Table WETL-7

**Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 4 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Harvest on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Harvested
674	0	0	0	13	13	0	13	100	1.3
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	2	6	136	144	134	278	52	5.4
679	0	3	54	240	297	705	1,002	30	4.8
680	0	0	2	3	5	22	27	18	0.1
681	0	2	14	16	32	129	161	20	1.0
682	0	0	21	44	65	89	154	42	2.3
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>97</b>	<b>452</b>	<b>556</b>	<b>1,079</b>	<b>1,635</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>2.7</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

Table WETL-8

**Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 5 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forest (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Harvest on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Harvested
674	0	0	0	87	87	8	95	92	8.6
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	2	6	135	143	116	259	55	5.3
679	0	5	95	299	399	647	1,046	38	6.5
680	0	0	38	9	47	1	48	98	1.3
681	0	0	30	1	31	26	57	54	1.0
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>169</b>	<b>531</b>	<b>707</b>	<b>798</b>	<b>1,505</b>	<b>47</b>	<b>3.4</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

Table WETL-9

**Acres of Timber Harvested Under Alternative 6 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Harvest on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Harvested
674	0	0	0	95	95	8	103	92	9.4
677	0	0	0	0	0	32	32	0	0.0
678	0	2	10	142	154	305	459	34	5.7
679	0	5	95	316	416	781	1,197	35	6.7
680	0	4	74	52	130	67	197	66	3.6
681	0	5	49	25	79	321	400	20	2.6
682	0	0	21	44	65	89	154	42	2.3
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>249</b>	<b>674</b>	<b>939</b>	<b>1,603</b>	<b>2,542</b>	<b>37</b>	<b>4.6</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Effects of Road Construction on Wetlands

Tables WETL-10 to WETL-15 estimate lands to be affected by road construction on vegetated wetlands by VCUs for action alternatives and existing roads. The area estimated to be affected by roads is averaged as 37.5 feet on each side of the road center line, 75 feet total width, and 9.1 acres per mile. This figure includes rock pits, landings, turnouts, and areas where endhaul material is deposited. The 9.1 acres of disturbance per mile of road in these tables is believed to overestimate the lands affected by roads because the 75 feet is the clearing width, plus, overlay construction techniques will disturb less soil beneath the road surface. Still, the acreage figures are valid for making comparisons.

Acres of vegetated wetlands to be affected by roads and ranking alternatives from greatest to least is: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than existing greater than 2 greater than 4 (Tables WETL-10 to WETL-15). Ranking of alternatives by percent of roads on vegetated wetlands from greatest to least is: 3 equal to 5 greater than 6 greater than 2 greater than 4 greater than existing.

The preceding comparison of percent of roading that will be done on wetlands is commonly done in other EISs, and so was presented here also. A more informative analysis for affects of roading on wetlands is the portion of the vegetated wetlands in a VCU that will be roaded. Percent of vegetated wetlands to be affected by roads is less than two percent for all VCUs for all alternatives (Tables WETL-10 to WETL-15).

Table WETL-10

#### Acres of Existing Roads on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non- Wetland	Total	Percent Roads on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Roaded
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
679	0	3	19	19	41	196	237	17	0.7
680	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
681	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
682	0	4	2	1	7	2	9	78	0.2
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>198</b>	<b>246</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>0.2</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.



Table WETL-11

**Acres of Roads Under Alternative 2 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non- Wetland	Total	Percent Roads on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Roaded
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
679	0	1	4	8	13	11	24	54	0.2
680	0	0	14	0	14	4	18	78	0.4
681	0	0	8	1	9	19	28	32	0.3
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>70</b>	<b>51</b>	<b>0.3</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

Table WETL-12

**Acres of Roads Under Alternative 3 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non- Wetland	Total	Percent Roads on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Roaded
674	0	0	0	13	13	0	13	100	1.3
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	3	1	24	28	0	28	100	1.0
679	0	2	9	27	38	27	65	58	0.6
680	0	1	23	11	35	8	43	81	1.0
681	0	0	8	1	9	19	28	32	0.3
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>41</b>	<b>76</b>	<b>123</b>	<b>54</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>70</b>	<b>0.6</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table WETL-13

**Acres of Roads Under Alternative 4 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non- Wetland	Total	Percent Roads on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Roaded
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
679	0	1	4	14	19	21	40	48	0.3
680	0	0	1	1	2	2	4	50	0.1
681	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>0.1</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

Table WETL-14

**Acres of Roads Under Alternative 5 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non- Wetland	Total	Percent Roads on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Roaded
674	0	0	0	13	13	0	13	100	1.3
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	3	1	24	28	0	28	100	1.0
679	0	2	9	27	38	22	60	63	0.6
680	0	0	10	0	10	1	11	91	0.3
681	0	0	8	1	9	19	28	32	0.3
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>65</b>	<b>98</b>	<b>42</b>	<b>140</b>	<b>70</b>	<b>0.5</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

Table WETL-15

**Acres of Roads Under Alternative 6 on Vegetated Wetlands by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non- Wetland	Total	Percent Roads on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Roaded
674	0	0	0	13	13	0	13	100	1.3
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.0
678	0	3	1	24	28	0	28	100	1.0
679	0	2	9	27	38	32	70	54	0.6
680	0	1	23	11	35	8	43	81	1.0
681	0	1	11	11	23	48	71	32	0.8
682	0	0	19	21	40	47	87	46	1.4
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>63</b>	<b>107</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>135</b>	<b>312</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>0.9</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Cumulative Effects

Tables WETL-16 to WETL-20 estimate the acres of timber to be harvested and roads to be constructed under this project, and to 2040.

Alternatives ranked from greatest to least in cumulative acreage of vegetated wetlands affected by timber harvest under this project are: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 4 greater than 2 greater than existing (Table WETL-16). Percent of wetlands in VCUs affected by timber harvest is less than ten percent for all VCUs for all alternatives. VCUs with the greatest percentage of wetlands affected by alternatives are: 678 for existing and Alternative 4; 679 for Alternatives 2 and 5; and 674 and 679 for Alternatives 3 and 6. All alternatives will affect less than six percent of the total vegetated wetlands on inventoried Forest Service lands in the project area.

Table WETL-16

**Projected Cumulative Acres of Timber Harvested on Vegetated Wetlands and Percent of these Wetlands Affected, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6		2040*	
	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%
674	0	0.0	0	0.0	95	9.4	13	1.3	87	8.6	95	9.4	143	14
677	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	293	22
678	78	2.9	78	2.9	196	7.3	222	8.3	221	8.2	232	8.6	2,012	75
679	167	2.7	314	5.1	574	9.3	464	7.5	566	9.2	583	9.4	4,727	77
680	9	0.2	40	1.1	139	3.9	14	0.4	56	1.6	139	3.9	1,732	49
681	18	0.6	74	2.4	81	2.7	50	1.6	49	1.6	97	3.2	1,935	64
682	13	0.5	15	0.5	56	2.0	78	2.8	13	0.5	78	2.8	1,674	60
<b>Total</b>	<b>285</b>	<b>1.4</b>	<b>521</b>	<b>2.5</b>	<b>1,141</b>	<b>5.5</b>	<b>841</b>	<b>4.1</b>	<b>992</b>	<b>4.8</b>	<b>1,224</b>	<b>5.9</b>	<b>12,516</b>	<b>61</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Uses Alternative 3.

Alternatives ranked from greatest to least in cumulative acreage of vegetated wetlands affected by roads under this project are: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 2 greater than 4 greater than existing (Table WETL-17). Percent of wetlands in VCUs affected by roads is less than two percent for all VCUs for all alternatives. The VCUs with the greatest percentage of wetlands affected by alternatives is: 679 for Alternatives existing, 2, and 4; and VCUs 674 and 679 for Alternatives 3, 5 and 6. All alternatives will affect less than two percent of the total vegetated wetlands on inventoried National Forest System lands in the project area.



Table WETL-17

**Projected Cumulative Acres of Roads on Vegetated Wetlands and Percent of these Wetlands Affected, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area.**

VCU	Existing		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6		2040*	
	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%
674	0	0.0	0	0.0	13	1.3	0	0.0	13	1.3	13	1.3	13	1.3
677	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0
678	0	0.0	0	0.0	28	1.0	0	0.0	28	1.0	28	1.0	28	1.0
679	41	0.7	54	0.9	79	1.3	60	1.0	79	1.3	79	1.3	79	1.3
680	0	0.0	14	0.4	35	1.0	2	0.1	10	0.3	35	1.0	35	1.0
681	0	0.0	9	0.3	9	0.3	0	0.0	9	0.3	23	0.8	9	0.3
682	7	0.2	7	0.2	7	0.2	7	0.2	7	0.2	47	1.7	7	0.2
<b>Total</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>0.2</b>	<b>84</b>	<b>0.4</b>	<b>171</b>	<b>0.8</b>	<b>69</b>	<b>0.3</b>	<b>146</b>	<b>0.7</b>	<b>225</b>	<b>1.1</b>	<b>171</b>	<b>0.8</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest.

Alternatives ranked from greatest to least in acreage of vegetated wetlands affected both by timber harvest and roads under this project are similar to results for harvest units: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 4 greater than 2 greater than existing (Table WETL-18). This follows because of the much greater acreage of harvest units than roads. Percent of wetlands in VCUs affected by timber harvest and roads is less than 11 percent for all VCUs for all alternatives. VCUs with the greatest percentage of wetlands affected by alternatives are: 679 for existing, Alternatives 2 and 5; 679 and 678 for Alternative 4; and 674 and 679 for Alternatives 3 and 6. All alternatives will affect less than eight percent of the total vegetated wetlands on inventoried National Forest System lands in the project area.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table WETL-18

**Projected Cumulative Acres of Timber Harvest and Roads on Vegetated Wetlands and Percent of these Wetlands Affected, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6		2040*	
	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%	Ac.	%
674	0	0.0	0	0.0	108	10.6	13	1.3	100	9.8	108	10.6	156	15
677	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	293	22
678	78	2.9	78	2.9	224	8.3	222	8.3	249	9.3	260	9.7	2,040	76
679	208	3.4	368	6.0	653	10.6	524	8.5	645	10.5	662	10.7	4,806	78
680	9	0.2	54	1.5	174	4.9	16	0.4	66	1.8	174	4.9	1,767	50
681	18	0.6	83	2.7	90	3.0	50	1.6	58	1.9	120	4.0	1,944	64
682	20	0.7	22	0.8	63	2.3	85	3.1	20	0.7	125	4.5	1,681	61
<b>Total</b>	<b>333</b>	<b>1.6</b>	<b>605</b>	<b>2.9</b>	<b>1,312</b>	<b>6.4</b>	<b>910</b>	<b>4.4</b>	<b>1,138</b>	<b>5.5</b>	<b>1,449</b>	<b>7.0</b>	<b>12,687</b>	<b>62</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest.

Table WETL-19 projects timber harvest after this project to 2040 on vegetated wetlands by VCU. No additional roads are planned for future harvest after this project to 2040. Table WETL-16 projects cumulative acres of harvest and percent of VCUs affected to 2040. Table WETL-17 does the same for roads. Table WETL-18 does the same for timber and roads combined. The following assumptions were used to project future harvest and road construction on vegetated wetlands on inventoried National Forest System lands through the reasonably foreseeable future, 2040. The operable timber base will remain the same as currently identified (TLMP 1997); standards and guidelines for harvest and road construction activity will remain the same; access to timber in relation to wetlands will remain the same; all suitable and available timber (TLMP 1997) will be harvested by 2040; and no new roads will be built after this project for additional harvest to 2040. Estimations to 2040, use Alternative 3 of this project.

The values for 2040 in Table WETL-19, and then used in computations for Tables WETL-16 and WETL-17, appear to be unreasonably high. These figures include large acres of muskeg, which while included as available and suitable for timber production in the TLMP (1997), are not commercial timber and will not be harvested. Thus, there seems to be an error in the TLMP data base used here.

Table WETL-19

**Projected Acres of Timber Harvested to 2040 on Vegetated Wetlands, by VCU, on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Estuarine	Muskeg	Forested (Organic)	Forested (Mineral)	Total Wetlands	Non-Wetland	Total	Percent Harvest on Wetlands	Percent Wetlands Harvested
674	0	15	5	28	48	9	57	84	5
677	0	232	44	17	293	1,344	1,637	18	22
678	1	808	169	838	1,816	6,582	8,398	22	68
679	0	685	1,498	1,970	4,153	3,102	7,255	57	67
680	0	188	911	494	1,593	501	2,094	76	45
681	0	275	823	756	1,854	2,042	3,896	48	61
682	0	136	577	905	1,618	899	2,517	64	58
<b>Total</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2,339</b>	<b>4,027</b>	<b>5,008</b>	<b>11,375</b>	<b>14,479</b>	<b>25,854</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>55</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

## Mitigation Measures

Federal agencies exercising statutory authority and leadership over Federal lands are required under Executive Order 11990 to preserve and enhance the natural and beneficial values of wetlands while carrying out their responsibility for: (1) acquiring, managing, and disposing of land and facilities; (2) providing Federally undertaken, financed, or associated construction and improvements; and (3) conducting Federal activities and programs affecting land use.

Locations of proposed harvest units were field or office reviewed by silviculture, wildlife, fisheries, geology, soils, and other resource specialists. Locations of proposed roads were primarily field reviewed by the engineering staff. Other specialists had minimal field review of roads, and their review was primarily done in the office. Units could be further modified, and road segments relocated, during layout to minimize impacts on wetlands. BMPs assigned for protection of water quality and fisheries should also protect wetland functions and values (Appendix J).

Mitigation measures designed to protect wetland areas involve, to the extent possible, the avoidance of wetlands. Additionally, in some cases, suspension is required during logging, and in other cases, wetland buffers for wildlife are prescribed. Field layout of road systems allows site-specific identification of small drainages in wetlands requiring culverts, and the road segments requiring additional culverts and permeable subgrades to maintain water circulation. Culverts and permeable subgrade materials are required when roads cross wetlands; these road segments are identified on the road design cards. Additionally, the use of BMPs in both construction and maintenance of roads ensures that flows, circulation patterns, and chemical and biological characteristics of the wetland waters will be minimally impaired. Implementation of these procedures is required to maintain the physical and chemical functions of wetlands (EPA 1993, cited in Foster Wheeler 1995).

Construction of new roads on wetlands will be limited to the necessary transportation components of roads, landings, and drainage structures. Road development necessitates the

## 3 Environment and Effects

alteration of wetland vegetation within the road right-of-way; however, BMPs will be used to ensure protection of water quality, hydrologic processes, and biological functions of the wetlands. BMPs will be applied in cases where use of wetlands as filter strips to capture sediment is a concern. Ditch construction will be minimized on open muskegs to the extent practical to minimize both water accumulation on the road surface and sediment production. To ensure continuing hydrologic functions of wetlands, culverts and other road drainage features should be located to maintain water levels and flows at natural levels. Rock overlay, a highly permeable fill (Harza 1995), will be used to minimize changes to wetland hydrology.

Through application of BMPs, impacts of road construction should be limited to the wetland directly underlying the road and adjacent cuts and fills. Water flow, circulation patterns, and chemical and biological characteristics of the water within wetlands should be maintained. Adverse effects to fisheries habitat should be minimized. Wildlife use of wetlands may be altered by road construction, depending on the species. Small species may be displaced from the immediate roadway; larger species using wetlands as travel corridors and foraging areas may be displaced during periods of vehicular traffic on the roads. Species sensitive to disturbance may be displaced on a long-term basis from roads with high traffic levels.

### Monitoring

The Forest Plan recognizes three distinct types of monitoring: implementation, effectiveness, and validation. Implementation monitoring determines if projects and activities comply with Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines. Effectiveness monitoring determines whether the standards and guidelines achieve the desired results. Validation monitoring determines whether the assumptions in the Forest Plan regarding the relationship between management actions and their effects are correct, or if there is a better way to depict these relationships.

A monitoring plan has been developed for the Tongass National Forest by the Forest Planning Team and is described in the TLMP (1997). The Forest Plan contains two specific monitoring items for wetlands. Monitoring for this resource generally is also covered by monitoring of standards and guidelines for soil and water, which includes monitoring of BMPs. In accordance with the 1992 Memorandum of Agreement between the Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation and the USDA-Forest Service Alaska Region, the Forest Service performs annual BMP implementation and effectiveness monitoring. The Chasina Project Area will be part of the Forest Plan monitoring and the Ketchikan Area Monitoring Strategy.

Project-specific monitoring that is unique to the Chasina Project Area, and that would not be included in regular Forest Plan or routine implementation monitoring, has been identified for several resources. Project-specific monitoring is not planned for wetland resources on the Chasina Project Area.



## Soils

### Key Terms

**Best Management Practices (BMPs)**—methods, measures, or practices to prevent or reduce water pollution, including, but not limited to, structural and non-structural controls, operation and maintenance procedures, other requirements, and scheduling and distribution of activities. These are primary control mechanisms for non-point sources of pollution on National Forest System lands. Control of non-point source pollution is required by the Clean Water Act. BMPs must be consistent with State regulations (USDA FSH 2509.22, 1996).

**Glacial till**—gravel, boulders, sand, and finer materials transported and deposited by a glacier. Till is often a dense, hard layer underlying soil and overlying bedrock.

**Mass Movement Index (MMI)**—rating used to estimate potential of soils in soil map units to fail in a mass movement event. Ratings vary from low (least potential), moderate, high, and very high (greatest potential).

**Mass movement/mass wasting**—general term for processes where large masses of earth materials are moved down slope by gravity. Commonly referred to as landslides.

**Soil**—technical term for what is commonly referred to as dirt. Soil is made up of both mineral and organic materials that cover much of the earth's surface. It contains living matter and it generally supports the growth of vegetation (Soil Survey Staff 1992). Each type of soil has specific properties that differ from other soils. Each type of soil is given a name.

**Soil depth**—depth to non-soil materials, which are generally rock or glacial till. Depth classes are: shallow = 20 inches or less; moderately deep = 20 to 40 inches; deep = greater than 40 inches.

**Soil drainage**—rate of movement of water through the soil and time water is contained in the soil.

**Soil map unit (SMU)**—collection of areas defined and named the same in terms of their soils components, or miscellaneous areas, or both. Each map unit consists of one or more components. (Soil Survey Division Staff 1993).

**Soil productivity**—capacity of a soil to produce plant growth. Related to inherent chemical, physical, and biological properties of soil.

**Value Comparison Unit (VCU)**—area generally encompassing a drainage basin containing one or more large stream systems. Boundaries usually follow watershed divides.

**V-Notch**—a shallow to deeply cut stream drainage, generally in steep mountainous terrain. Looks like a "V" from a frontal or overhead view.

**Wetlands**—areas inundated by surface or groundwater with a frequency or duration sufficient to support a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil conditions. Classification of wetlands is based on soil, vegetation, and hydrology factors. Wetlands in Southeast Alaska include muskegs, estuaries, and forested wetlands.

## Affected Environment

### Introduction

Geologic processes and the type of rocks resulting from these processes have shaped the landscape in Southeast Alaska. This information is presented in the Geology section in Chapter 3 of this document. Glaciers and weathering further shaped the landscapes formed by geologic processes. Tectonic uplift, and fluvial erosion and deposition, have continued to modify the landscape since the retreat of the glaciers, about 10,000 years ago. Soils that form are closely related to these processes and parent materials.

Soil varies from place to place. Soils are a result of climate and living organisms acting on parent material, topography (local relief), and the time that the soil forming processes have acted (Soil Survey Division Staff 1993). The development and properties of soil in Southeast Alaska are influenced by high levels of rainfall, a short growing season, cool summer temperatures, and cool soil temperatures. These conditions result in soils that, when compared to soils in other parts of the United States, are generally less deep, have poorer drainage, and have a greater accumulation of organic matter.

Soils in the project area have developed from a variety of inorganic (mineral) and organic (vegetative) sources. Soils are often classified as either mineral or organic. Mineral soils develop from glacial deposits, stream sediments, uplifted marine sediments, colluvium, and metamorphic and igneous rock. Organic soils are the remnants of plants that have only partially decomposed. Most organic soils form in areas where water collects because of relief, an impermeable subsurface layer, or both.

National Forest System (NFS) lands have been inventoried to identify the soil resource (USDA-Forest Service 1994c). Non-National Forest System lands, which includes private and State lands, were not mapped. Land exchanges following the survey resulted in some lands under other ownership having a soil inventory, and some National Forest System lands not being inventoried. The project area is approximately 68,945 acres. National Forest System lands occupy 43,831 acres of the project area, of which 40,826 acres have had a soil inventory and 3,005 acres are not mapped. Lands under other ownership occupy 25,114 acres, of which 15,850 acres are not mapped and 9,264 acres are mapped. Analysis for this section was done primarily on National Forest System lands where the soil inventory has been done. The entire project area was analyzed for the Cumulative Effects section

The following areas and harvest units on the project area include National Forest System lands that do not have soil inventory information. Lancaster/Kitkun area: proposed units from the Draft EIS have been dropped from this project because of inclusion in the Kitkun Bay medium old-growth habitat reserve (OGHR) established by the TLMP (1997). Port Johnson area and units: 681-363, 681-365, 681-367, 681-372, and west third of 681-376. The other proposed units from the Draft EIS have been dropped from this project because of inclusion in either the Kitkun Bay medium OGHR, or the 1,000 foot estuary fringe established by the TLMP (1997). Unmapped lands were reviewed as part of the field and office reviews for these units (Appendix J).

### Soil Productivity

Characteristics and conditions of soil affect the productivity of many other forest resources. Tree growth, wildlife and fish habitat, and recreation opportunities are influenced by soils. Soil drainage, soil depth, and type of soil (mineral versus organic) are responsible for the greatest differences in forest productivity in Southeast Alaska. Well drained soils are generally the most productive. All but one of the well drained soils are mineral. Drainage in mineral soil ranges from well-to-poorly drained. Most organic soils are poorly or very poorly drained. McGilverly is the only well drained organic soil. It is a shallow soil. The poorly drained organic soils are usually moderately deep to deep, but may be shallow also. Depth of

## Soil Types

well drained mineral soil ranges from deep to shallow. Poorly drained mineral soils are usually shallow. Mineral soils are generally more productive than organic soils.

The following soils are of particular concern on the project area. Acres of soils are summarized in Table SOILS-1 and SOILS-2.

### Forested Wetlands

Poorly drained soils are often wetlands. Forested wetlands include all poorly drained mineral soils and that portion of the poorly drained organic soils that support forest vegetation. Poorly drained organic soils that do not support forest vegetation are commonly called muskegs.

### McGilvery Soils

McGilvery soil is generally a moss layer overlying rock. This well drained organic soil supports forest vegetation. Standards for the TLMP Draft (1991) were used when reviewing the units in this EIS. Units with greater than 41 percent McGilvery were considered on a case-by-case basis, rather than eliminated from the timber base at the start of the project. The TLMP (1997) changed the standards for McGilvery. Now all McGilvery soils are included in the tentatively suitable land base but harvest requires at least partial suspension over nearly the entire length of the yarding distance, and harvest may still be considered on a case-by-case basis. Another change in the TLMP (1997) is that all soils on slopes equal to and greater than 72 percent are classified as unsuitable for timber production. Basically, although the TLMP Draft (1991) and the TLMP (1997) used different language, the results are the same as to the type of McGilvery soils that were deleted from this project as being unsuitable for harvest because of, either alone or in combination, the factors of: excessively steep slopes, cliffs, or rock faces; lack of adequate suspension; inadequate regeneration following harvest; and unsafe for presale and timber crews to work on.

### Riparian Soils

Mineral soils on floodplains adjacent to some creeks are generally highly productive. These soils are generally deep and well drained. They are known as floodplain soils. Riparian soils for this classification include both floodplain soils, and the estuary soils that occur at the mouths of some streams.

### Karst

Areas of carbonate limestone and marble are commonly referred to as karst. Soils on karst are primarily well drained and mineral. Productivity of these soils is generally high. McGilvery soil occurs on karst also. Acreage of soils on karst may be less than the acreage of karst noted in the geology section. The location of carbonate materials has been updated on National Forest System lands in the project area. This was done after the soils were mapped. Some areas of organic soils may overlay karst, but this is not characterized for these map units and the lands were not identified as karst on the soil inventory. An example is SMU 29 with McGilvery soils.

### Glacial Till

Mineral soils on glacial till are generally more prone to landslides than are other mineral soils.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SOILS-1

**Acres of Mineral Soil Types by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Glacial Till	Karst	Riparian	Forested Wetland***	Other	Total*
674	0	0	149	796	508	<b>1,453</b>
677	0	0	0	456	1,249	<b>1,705</b>
678	135	0	202	1,445	5,549	<b>7,331</b>
679	4	930	189	2,757	3,640	<b>7,520</b>
680	280	7	8	1,050	75	<b>1,420**</b>
681	0	467	196	1,003	740	<b>2,406</b>
682	39	1	89	1,540	1,100	<b>2,769</b>
<b>Total*</b>	<b>458</b>	<b>1,405</b>	<b>833</b>	<b>9,047</b>	<b>12,861</b>	<b>24,604**</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Does not include acreage for lands not mapped

\*\* Includes correction for soils that are both till and wetland.

\*\*\* Does not include small acreage of open wetlands.

Table SOILS-2

**Acres of Organic Soil Types by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	McGilvery <41%	McGilvery >41%	Other Forested	Muskeg	Total*
674	278	3	67	130	<b>478</b>
677	114	386	255	592	<b>1,347</b>
678	1,615	1,005	182	861	<b>3,663</b>
679	673	549	1,634	982	<b>3,838</b>
680	140	438	1,515	355	<b>2,448</b>
681	361	650	858	448	<b>2,317</b>
682	531	251	611	223	<b>1,616</b>
<b>Total*</b>	<b>3,712</b>	<b>3,282</b>	<b>5,122</b>	<b>3,591</b>	<b>15,707</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Does not include acreage for lands not mapped.



## Surface Erosion and Mass Movement

In the forest environment, surface erosion occurs when exposed soil is detached and transported by water. Most undisturbed soils in the Chasina Project Area are resistant to surface erosion due to a relatively thick, organic surface layer which absorbs large quantities of water and protects the soil from displacement. If this layer is removed, the underlying mineral soil is subject to rapid erosion.

Mass wasting is the dominant process of natural erosion and slope reduction in geologically youthful Southeast Alaska (Swanston 1969, cited in Harza 1995). Mass movement occurs when the soil materials can no longer resist the down slope component of gravity. The stability of soil on a slope is determined by soil strength, soil depth, type of soil, drainage and groundwater accumulation, slope gradient, vegetation, and type of material underlying the soil.

Areas of natural mass wasting are associated with side slopes within narrow V-notch drainages and the steep, upper side slopes of valleys. Natural landslides occur most frequently on slopes steeper than 68 percent during periods of high-intensity rainfall (Swanston 1969, cited in Harza 1995). The increasing volume of water moving through the soil causes an increase in shear stress, due to rising seepage pressures and increasing weight of the soil material, and a decrease in shear resistance, resulting from increased pore-water pressure in the soil (Swanston 1970, cited in Harza 1995).

Two major types of debris slides occur in the project area. Those initiated in soils over bedrock on steep to extremely steep slopes, and those where soils derived from glacial till slide over the underlying compact unweathered till on moderately steep to extremely steep slopes. Organic soils, and well drained mineral soils on lesser slopes, typically have a low susceptibility to mass movement.

Swanston (1991, cited in Harza 1995) evaluated landslides greater than 100 cubic meters occurring between 1963 and 1983 in Southeast Alaska. He determined that 77 percent were of the debris avalanche and debris flow type that involve movement of water-charged soil, rock, and organic material down shallow gullies and hillslope depressions. The remaining 23 percent were debris torrents that are generally confined within deeply incised gullies and canyons. Sixty-two percent of all landslides initiate on slopes having an average gradient steeper than 75 percent, and an additional 30 percent develop on slopes between 56 and 75 percent. Landslides also appear to have a limited range of elevation, with 72 percent of all failures occurring below 1,320 feet elevation.

Mass movement indices (MMIs) have been assigned to soils in soil mapping units to rate the relative potential for soils to move by landslide events. The MMI classification has been developed and revised since 1969, by Ketchikan Area soil scientists. The MMI is based on slope, drainage, bedrock characteristics, parent material, soil characteristics, existing landslides, vegetation, and management activities.

Lands with a very high mass movement rating (very high MMI) are the most likely to fail by landslides. Areas having a very high MMI are not included in the suitable timber base. These generally include poorly drained mineral soils on slopes of 72 percent or greater. Visible indicators of very high MMI conditions include unstable soils, existing slumps or slides, jack-strawed trees, pistol-butted trees, wet mineral soil on very steep slopes, or a distinct change to relatively young vegetation or disturbance-preferring plant communities.

Very high MMI soils occur primarily in VCU 674 and 678 (Table SOILS-3). These soils comprise 36 and 31 percent of these VCUs, respectively. The other VCUs have less than 10 percent of very high MMI soils.

Areas of high mass movement (high MMI) potential also require special consideration when planning and conducting timber harvest operations. All watersheds in the project area have areas of high MMI soils (Table SOILS-3). Watersheds of particular concern because of a

### 3 Environment and Effects

high percentage of high MMI soils include: 674 (43 percent), 682 (38 percent), 677 (27 percent), and 678 (23 percent).

Table SOILS-3  
Acres and Percent of Soil by Mass Movement Rating by VCU on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area

VCU	Mass Movement Index								Not Mapped Acres	Total Acres	
	Very High Acres	%	High Acres	%	Moderate Acres	%	Low Acres	%			
674	690	36	823	43	71	4	347	18	0	0	1,931
677	295	9	850	27	650	21	1,256	40	106	3	3,158
678	3,366	31	2,533	23	1,511	14	3,585	33	0	0	10,994
679	226	2	1,781	14	5,676	44	3,675	29	1,457	11	12,815
680	0	0	132	3	1,597	41	2,139	55	8	<1	3,876
681	436	7	418	7	1,862	30	2,008	33	1,415	23	6,138
682	0	0	1,663	38	1,744	40	978	22	19	<1	4,405
Total	5,013	12	8,200	19	13,111	30	13,988	33	3,005	7	43,317

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

**Table SOILS-4**  
**Timber Harvest on Slopes Greater than 72% by Harvest Unit and Alternative**

Unit	Alternative				
	2	3	4	5	6
677-302					0.3
677-305					2.2
678-325		1.9	1.9		1.9
678-339					1.2
678-344					0.3
679-467		17.8	17.8	17.8	17.8
679-473	1.7		1.7	1.7	1.7
679-475	21.6		21.6	21.6	21.6
681-363	5.6	5.6			5.6
681-367	1.3	1.3	1.3		1.3
681-368	4.2	4.2	4.2		4.2
681-372	12.8	12.8			12.8
<b>Total</b>	<b>47.2</b>	<b>43.6</b>	<b>48.5</b>	<b>41.1</b>	<b>70.9</b>
Total Project Area Wide	6116.3				

Source: TLMP GIS coverage of slopes >72%

Table SOILS-4 displays the amount of timber harvest proposed on slopes greater than 72 percent by harvest unit and alternative. The project area contains more than 6,100 acres of which only 71 acres are still included in harvest unit boundaries. A majority of these units with slopes greater than 72 percent have been deleted, but small slivers show up in GIS as being in the unit which really are not. This includes Units 677-302, 677-305, 678-325, 678-339, 678-344, 679-473, 681-367 and 681-368. Unit 679-475 was not included in the preferred alternative because of concerns due to the amount of steep slopes. Partial suspension was recommended for Units 679-467 and 681-363 because of erosion potential. These units will be helicopter yarded so full suspension will be achieved. Approximately 13 acres of slopes greater than 72 percent are mapped in Unit 681-372 which has been recommended for partial suspension. This unit will be helicopter yarded so full suspension will be achieved, and in addition, there are not any streams within the harvest unit. The cliffs that made this area rate more than 72 percent are located outside of the unit boundary.

## Effects of the Alternatives

Soil disturbance is an unavoidable consequence of timber harvest and associated road construction. The severity of soil disturbance varies depending on site conditions and management practices employed. Factors such as parent material, soil depth and drainage, weather conditions, slope gradient, slope shape, slope length, drainage dissection, and type of disturbance influence the potential for adverse impacts. Areas most susceptible to adverse impacts have been identified and eliminated from consideration in timber harvest units. These areas include the very high MMI soils, riparian soils, and some areas with McGilvery soils on slopes greater than 72 percent.

Properties of the six alternatives and their differences are summarized in Chapter 2. Discussion of alternatives in the soils and related sections generally refers to the action alternatives—Alternatives 2 through 6. Alternative 1 is the no-action alternative, and conditions would be the same as the existing condition if this alternative was implemented.

### Direct and Indirect Effects

Direct and indirect effects of timber harvest and associated road construction fall into three general categories: reduced soil productivity, accelerated mass wasting, and accelerated surface erosion.

#### Soil Productivity

Yarding of logs by shovel or cable methods may result in soil displacement and loss of organic surface layers. Any site where suspension is not adequate, or shovel operation is inadequate, is particularly vulnerable to soil displacement during yarding. Reduced soil productivity and delayed regeneration of commercial tree species may occur where disturbance is severe. However, cable systems that partially or fully suspend logs generally cause minimal soil disturbance (Everest et al. 1987, cited in Harza 1995). In general, at least partial log suspension is required on high MMI soils, forested wetland soils, and McGilvery soils.

The most significant adverse impact on soil productivity is construction of roads, landings, and rock pits that remove land from the productive base. Implementation of action alternatives would result in loss of soil productivity on the acreage affected by roads, landings, rock pits, turnouts, and endhaul deposit sites, in addition to the areas impacted by ground disturbance during yarding.

Table SOILS-5 estimates the total acres of soil disturbance caused by implementing the proposed alternatives. Table SOILS-6 estimates the acres of soil disturbance by VCU and by alternative. Reduced soil productivity resulting from accelerated soil erosion and mass wasting is discussed in the next section. The following assumptions were used in developing these tables:

- The area at risk of soil disturbance, when averaged over all cable and shovel logging harvest acres, is 10 percent of the harvested area. There is no significant ground disturbance from yarding logs in helicopter-logged units. A zero disturbance figure was used in these units.
- The area disturbed from roads is equal to an average of 37.5 feet on each side of the road center line, or 9.1 acres per mile. This figure includes rock pits, landings, turnouts, and areas where endhaul material is deposited.

Projected total disturbance is greatest with Alternative 6 (Table SOILS-5). This corresponds to highest level of disturbance from both roads and harvest units for Alternative 6 (Table SOILS-6). Projected total disturbance is least for Alternative 4. This corresponds to the



lowest level of disturbance for roads in this alternative. Rating of action alternatives for projected total disturbance is: 6 greater than 5 greater than 3 greater than 2 greater than 4. Projected disturbance for roads by action alternatives is: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 2 greater than 4. Projected disturbance for harvest units by action alternatives is: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 equal to 4 greater than 2.

The projected disturbance for action alternatives by VCUs for roads, harvest units, and total of roads and units, is generally greatest in VCU 679 (Table SOILS-5). The exceptions are greater disturbance in VCU 681 for roads in Alternative 2, VCU 678 equal to VCU 679 for timber harvest in Alternative 5, and VCU 682 for roads in Alternative 6.

Table SOILS-6 also shows the difference in extent of impact in VCUs by alternatives. Affected VCUs by action alternatives range from: 679 and 680 for Alternative 4; 679, 680, and 681 for Alternative 2; 674, 678, 679, 680, and 681 for Alternatives 3 and 5; and 678, 679, 680, 681, and 682 for Alternative 6. VCU 677 will not be impacted by the action alternatives, but has been impacted by existing harvest. All but VCU 674 has been impacted by existing harvest activities.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SOILS-5

**Potential Acres of Soil Disturbance from Timber Harvest and Roads\* by Alternatives on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

	Alternatives						2040**
	Existing	2	3	4	5	6	
Acres of Soil Disturbed	443	98	250	82	377	440	2,585

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Roads include rock pits, landings, turnouts, and endhaul areas.

\*\* Assumes harvest primarily by cable systems, although could be mostly helicopter logged.

Table SOILS-6

**Potential Acres of Soil Disturbance Resulting from Timber Harvest (TH) and Construction of Roads (RD) by VCU and by Alternative on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing Acres		Alt. 2 Acres		Alt. 3 Acres		Alt. 4 Acres		Alt. 5 Acres		Alt. 6 Acres		2040***	
	TH*	RD**	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD
674	0	0	0	0	6	13	0	0	6	13	6	13	6	0
677	0.3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	164	0
678	47	0	0	0	12	28	0	0	12	28	12	28	840	0
679	125	237	14	24	38	65	38	40	12	60	54	70	725	0
680	12	0	8	18	11	43	0	4	3	11	11	43	209	0
681	9	0	6	28	6	28	0	0	6	28	31	71	389	0
682	3	9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	14	87	252	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>197</b>	<b>246</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>70</b>	<b>73</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>38</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>39</b>	<b>140</b>	<b>128</b>	<b>312</b>	<b>2,585</b>	<b>0</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* TH includes acreage within harvest units that may experience reduced soil productivity following harvest activities.

\*\* RD includes acreage of soils removed from productivity due to roads and associated activities.

\*\*\* Assumes harvest primarily by cable systems, although could be mostly helicopter logged.

No new roads are planned for future harvest.

Timber harvest activities can affect soil productivity by influencing drainage characteristics. Inadequate suspension or shovel operations can redirect subsurface drainage and channelize flow. Evapotranspiration may be decreased until forest vegetation is reestablished. There can be a temporary increase in soil moisture. Road fills and cuts can disrupt natural drainage patterns. Localized changes may occur in soil drainage. Drainage could increase or decrease, depending on the site and type of construction activity. Altered soil drainage can be minimized by proper yarding, and by proper road design and installation of adequate drainage structures.

Soil compaction is the increase in soil bulk density and decrease in porosity. Soil compaction may occur when machinery runs over the same area numerous times, such as with shovel logging systems. It may also occur when trees are yarded with ground lead or one-end suspension. Compaction of the soil can prevent tree roots from penetrating the soil and taking up nutrients. Compaction can also reduce the capability of the soil to absorb and transmit water. Soil puddling occurs when equipment operates on wet ground, creating ruts or deep tracks that hold water. Both compaction and puddling are more likely to occur in fine silty soils, organic soils, and under saturated conditions. Adherence to BMPs reduces the potential for soil compaction and puddling.

## **Mass Movement**

Timber harvest and road construction have the potential to accelerate the rate of mass movement over natural conditions. Mass movements (landslides) are the dominant erosional processes on steep slopes, and their frequency of occurrence and soil movement rates are increased by logging and road construction (Swanson et al. 1987, cited in Harza 1995). Swanson and Marion (1991) reported a 3.5 times increase in landslides on harvest areas over unharvested areas. They further noted, however, that as a general rule, landslides in harvest areas are significantly smaller, occur at lower elevations, develop on gentler gradients, and tend to travel shorter distances.

Timber harvest may increase the potential for landslides by decreased evapotranspiration and increased soil moisture, loss of root strength, windthrow of adjacent trees, and removal of the surface organic layer and exposing mineral soil. Tree roots have a stabilizing effect on soil stability because the roots create an interconnected network that provides lateral strength within the soil mantle. Tree roots may also anchor the soil mass when they penetrate cracks in the bedrock or compact till. After trees are cut, roots tend to decrease in strength 3 to 5 years after harvest, resulting in an increased likelihood of soil mass movement on steep slopes (Swanson 1969, cited in Harza 1995). Windthrow along proposed harvest unit boundaries may also lead to increased mass movement.

Construction of roads and landings, and excavation of rock pits may increase the potential for landslides by the above means, but the potential for landslides is even greater from cuts on the uphill slopes, placing fill on the downhill slopes, and from blasting. Activities such as blasting, excavating, and side casting change the load stress on slopes. Roads may also accelerate the frequency of landslides by re-directing or accumulating water, and creating increased pore water pressure and shear stress on unstable slopes.

The soil mass movement index (MMI) developed for the Ketchikan Area rates the relative potential for soil mass movement to occur. Tables SOILS-7 through SOILS-10 estimate the acres of harvest and road construction on low, moderate, high, and very high MMI soils by VCU and alternatives. Soils rated very high have the greatest potential for mass movement. Both very high and high rated soils are given extra consideration when planning timber harvesting operations. Operations allowed and mitigation measures may differ, however, on the two groups of soils. Very high MMI soils are removed from the suitable timber base and are not harvested. Roads may cross very high MMI soils, but

### 3 Environment and Effects

extra precautions, like full bench and endhaul, are implemented. Timber harvest on high MMI soils must have at least partial suspension. Roads on high MMI soils with slopes greater than 67 percent have the same protection as roads on very high MMI soils.

Field review of harvest units in the preferred alternative (Alternative 3) has eliminated very high MMI soils from the units (Appendix J). Potential impact on very high MMI soils in harvest units by action alternatives is: 6 greater than 2 greater than 4 equal to 5 greater than 3 (Table SOILS-10). Potential impacts to very high MMI soils in harvest units in action alternatives is greatest in VCU 679 for Alternatives 2, 4, and 5, and VCUs 678 and 679 for Alternative 6 (Table SOILS-10).

No road construction is estimated to occur on very high MMI soils in the action alternatives based on GIS review (Table SOILS-10). GIS information includes only the main roads. It is not known what lands and soils will be impacted by temporary and spur roads.

Ranking of action alternatives for acres of timber harvest on high MMI soils is: 6 greater than 4 greater than 5 greater than 3 greater than 2 (Table SOILS-9). Acres impacted in VCUs by action alternatives is greatest in VCU 679 for Alternatives 2 and 3, and VCU 678 for Alternatives 4, 5, and 6.

Ranking of action alternatives for acres of road construction on high MMI soils is: 6 greater than 5 equal to 3 greater than 4 equal to 2 (Table SOILS-9). Impacts estimated by GIS to high MMI soils by roads are limited to VCU 679 for Alternatives 2 and 4. Impacts are greatest in VCU 678 for Alternatives 3 and 5, and greatest in VCU 682 for Alternative 6.



Table SOILS-7

**Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on Low MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing Acres		Alt. 2 Acres		Alt. 3 Acres		Alt. 4 Acres		Alt. 5 Acres		Alt. 6 Acres	
	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD
674	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	0	3	0	3	0
677	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5	0
678	116	0	0	0	17	0	17	0	0	0	33	0
679	470	89	150	9	219	13	249	9	280	13	287	13
680	117	0	76	18	86	21	0	0	29	11	87	21
681	175	0	151	23	76	23	22	0	54	23	177	26
682	10	5	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	15
<b>Total</b>	<b>889</b>	<b>94</b>	<b>377</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>402</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>289</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>366</b>	<b>47</b>	<b>593</b>	<b>75</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

Table SOILS-8

**Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on Moderate MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing Acres		Alt. 2 Acres		Alt. 3 Acres		Alt. 4 Acres		Alt. 5 Acres		Alt. 6 Acres	
	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD
674	0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	4	0	5	0
677	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	15	0
678	154	0	0	0	30	2	30	0	30	2	149	2
679	841	139	280	11	544	45	597	28	585	41	719	50
680	156	0	4	0	92	22	27	4	0	0	92	22
681	237	0	52	5	51	5	50	0	3	5	78	23
682	3	2	2	0	61	0	67	0	0	0	67	41
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,396</b>	<b>141</b>	<b>338</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>783</b>	<b>74</b>	<b>771</b>	<b>32</b>	<b>622</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>1,125</b>	<b>138</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SOILS-9

**Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on High MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing Acres		Alt. 2 Acres		Alt. 3 Acres		Alt. 4 Acres		Alt. 5 Acres		Alt. 6 Acres	
	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD
674	0	0	0	0	95	13	13	0	87	13	95	13
677	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	10	0
678	227	0	0	0	86	26	232	0	230	26	271	26
679	99	9	139	4	165	6	149	4	176	6	184	6
680	0	0	0	0	18	0	0	0	18	0	18	0
681	0	0	44	0	61	0	61	0	0	0	61	6
682	21	2	0	0	41	0	87	0	0	0	87	30
<b>Total</b>	<b>353</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>183</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>466</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>542</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>511</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>726</b>	<b>81</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

Table SOILS-10

**Acres of Timber Harvest (TH) and Road Construction (RD) on Very High MMI Soils on Inventoried National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing Acres		Alt. 2 Acres		Alt. 3 Acres		Alt. 4 Acres		Alt. 5 Acres		Alt. 6 Acres	
	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD	TH	RD
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
677	28	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
678	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	6	0
679	0	1	6	0	0	0	6	0	6	0	6	0
680	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
681	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>0</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

## Landslides

Swanston and Marion (1991) investigated the occurrence of landslides on forested terrain on the Tongass National Forest for the period between 1963 and 1983. This period bridged the development of large-scale clearcutting in Southeast Alaska. Slides inventoried were greater than 100 cubic yards in initial failure volume. A total of 1,395 landslides were identified. A little over 7 percent, 103, occurred in clearcut areas or were directly associated with timber harvesting. Fifteen landslides (about 1 percent) were associated with road construction, but were not used in the following calculations. A little over 91 percent of the slides occurred in uncut areas. The rate of occurrence of landslides was about three and one-half times greater on harvested ( $2.127 \times 10^{-5}$  landslides/acre/year) versus uncut ( $6.2285 \times 10^{-6}$  landslides/acre/year) lands. Swanston and Marion noted that as a general rule, landslides are significantly smaller in harvest areas. Extrapolating from data presented in the Swanston and Marion paper, an estimate of the average size of slides is 0.99 acre in harvest areas, and 2.03 acres in uncut areas.

An estimation of the number of slides greater than 100 cubic yards in size on forested lands for 20 years following this project, and the acreage affected by these slides, is shown in Table SOILS-11. It is assumed that the Chasina Project Area is representative of the terrain included in the study by Swanston and Marion, and that the study period represents climatic conditions that will continue into the future. The number of slides for action alternatives is estimated at between 1.1 for Alternative 6, to 0.4 for Alternative 2. Ranking of action alternatives from greatest to least for number of slides is: 6 greater than 3 equal to 4 greater than 5 greater than 2. Approximately five landslides are estimated on uncut lands for all alternatives. Number and acreage of landslides is estimated to be greater on uncut than on harvested lands for all alternatives. These values do not include estimations for landslides attributable to construction of roads, the numbers and acres of which could be comparable or greater than those from timber harvest.

Table SOILS-11

### Estimated Occurrence and Acreage of Landslides\* by Alternative for 20-year Period Following Harvest on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area

	Existing		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6	
	No.	Acres	No.	Acres	No.	Acres	No.	Acres	No.	Acres	No.	Acres
Harvested	0.8	0.8	0.4	0.4	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6	1.1	1.1
Uncut	5.2	10.6	5.3	10.8	5.2	10.6	5.4	10.7	5.3	10.7	5.1	10.4
<b>Total</b>	<b>6.0</b>	<b>11.4</b>	<b>5.7</b>	<b>11.2</b>	<b>5.9</b>	<b>11.3</b>	<b>6.1</b>	<b>11.4</b>	<b>5.9</b>	<b>11.3</b>	<b>6.2</b>	<b>11.5</b>

SOURCE: Swanston 1991, USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Slides greater than 100 cubic yards.

## Surface Erosion

Timber harvest and road construction have the potential to accelerate the amount of surface erosion over natural conditions. Road and landing construction, rock pit development, and yarding may increase surface erosion by exposing mineral soil.

Surface erosion (including sheet, rill, and gully erosion) should be limited within harvest units due to the considerable amount of vegetative ground cover preceding timber

### 3 Environment and Effects

harvest. Surface erosion could occur if operations expose mineral soil, or if equipment and yarding causes trenches, which concentrate water runoff.

Surface erosion is more likely to occur on exposed road surfaces and cut surfaces. Roads in the project area are constructed with blasted quarry rock. Vehicular traffic and weathering breaks down the surface material into fine particles. The amount of sediment produced is a function of the type of rock, and the type and amount of traffic. Sediment from cut and fill slopes, borrow pits, and rock pits can be reduced if exposed soil is seeded following construction. Surface runoff during precipitation events and snowmelt transports sediment to drainage ditches. Ditches and culverts that flow into streams may result in increased turbidity. Roads left open after harvest activities, and especially those with high traffic levels and heavier loads, have a greater potential for continued surface erosion than temporary roads that are closed. Planning calls for all roads on National Forest System lands on the project area to be closed to all but administrative use upon completion of the Chasina Project. The Chasina road system is isolated, so traffic will be less than on roads connected to communities. Potential problems with sedimentation from roads is further discussed in the Aquatic Resources section of Chapter 3.

Lacking quantitative estimates of sediment yield from road surfaces in Southeast Alaska, the best evaluation of potential surface erosion from roads is by comparing miles of roads. Miles of roads by VCUs and by alternatives was used as a general evaluation of potential sediment yield (Table SOILS-12). This evaluation does not account for differences in type of rock used to surface roads, different types of soil that the roads are built on, nor for differences in where drainage runs off from these roads. Surface erosion based on miles of new road ranked from greatest to least for action alternatives is: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 2 greater than 4.

**Table SOILS-12**  
**Miles of Existing and New Road by VCU and Alternative on National Forest System Lands on the Chasina Project Area**

VCU	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
674	0.0	0.0	1.4	0.0	1.4	1.4
677	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
678	0.0	0.0	3.1	0.0	3.1	3.1
679	25.6	2.6	7.1	4.5	6.6	7.7
680	0.0	2.0	4.7	0.4	1.2	4.7
681	0.0	3.1	3.1	0.0	3.1	7.9
682	1.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	9.5
<b>Total</b>	<b>26.6</b>	<b>7.7</b>	<b>19.4</b>	<b>4.9</b>	<b>15.4</b>	<b>34.3</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1997.



Another way to estimate surface erosion is by road density, which is miles of road per square mile of area. Road densities were computed using both existing and new roads for alternatives. Road densities for the alternatives ranked from greatest to least are: 0.90 for Alternative 6, 0.68 for Alternative 3, 0.62 for Alternative 5, 0.51 for Alternative 2, 0.46 for Alternative 4, and 0.39 for existing condition.

Comparison of miles of road in VCUs by action alternatives shows greatest impact in VCU 681 for Alternative 2; VCU 679 for Alternatives 3, 4, and 5; and VCU 682 for Alternative 6 (Table SOILS-12). Overall, VCU 679 may be most affected by surface erosion because it has greater miles of existing roads in the VCU than will be constructed in any VCU under any action alternative. VCU 677 will have the least amount of surface erosion from roads because there are no roads in the existing condition nor for the action alternatives.

These calculations are only for roads on National Forest System lands. They do not include roads on lands under other ownership that the Forest Service may use, nor the miles of roads on VCUs on lands under other ownership. Miles of road by VCU on lands under other ownership include: 15.1 in 677, 5.8 in 678, 1.4 in 679, 19.3 in 680, 13.4 in 681, and 0.4 in 682.

## Cumulative Effects

These cumulative effects consider the combined effects of past, present, and future timber harvest activities on soil disturbance, erosion, and mass wasting. Cumulative effects can result from multiple activities that take place on the same site, or the combined effects of activities spread across the landscape. In the Chasina Project Area, timber harvest and related activities have been conducted since the early 1980s. Aside from some limited salvage sales along existing harvest units and roads, multiple entries have generally not occurred on the same site, nor are they anticipated to occur within the time frame of this project. Therefore, cumulative effects considered here are the combined effect of past, present, and future harvest activities spread throughout the project area, rather than repeated activities on a single site. This analysis does not take into account that while harvest units are generally single entry, roads can have repeat activities for each entry. Cumulative effects are estimated for additional lands to 2040 based on lands identified as suitable and available for timber harvest by the TLMP (1997).

Forested watersheds can be very sensitive to disturbances occurring on their slopes (Bolda and Meyers 1997). In particular, activities such as timber harvesting and road building may have significant impacts on the quality of water within streams draining these watersheds. These impacts can include changes in sedimentation, turbidity, flow regimes, temperature, and nutrient inputs (Binckley and Brown 1993; Campbell and Doeg 1989; Dennis 1988; MacDonald et al. 1991; Robinson and Mackay 1987; Moring 1982; cited in Bolda and Meyers 1997). Disturbances in the stream environment can produce undesirable changes in the biota of a stream. For example, a change in the distribution of macroinvertebrates can affect the fishery of the stream. The effects of road construction, use, and maintenance are the most persistent and constitute the greatest potential for cumulative effects (Geppert, Lorenz, and Larson 1984, cited in Harza 1995).

The following tables are used in the discussion for cumulative effects. Tables SOILS-13 through SOILS-18 display lands affected by harvest units and roads in three periods: prior to implementation of this project (existing condition), alternatives under this project (Alternatives 2 through 6), and additional suitable and available lands that could be affected by future harvest (2040). Table SOILS-13 displays the cumulative acreage of harvest on NFS lands for each VCU in the project area. Although soil disturbance is usually restricted to less than 15 percent of an activity area, total harvested acres is used in order to portray the total area affected by management activities in each VCU. Table SOILS-14 displays the cumulative acreage affected by road construction on NFS lands for each VCU. Tables SOILS-15 (for NFS lands) and SOILS-17 (for all lands) display the cumulative acreage of harvest units and roads for each VCU. Tables SOILS-16 (for NFS lands) and SOILS-18 (for

### 3 Environment and Effects

all lands) display the percentage of each VCU affected by timber harvest and roads on the project area. Table SOILS-19, in conjunction with Table AQU-19, displays cumulative effects of harvest in watersheds within VCUs for all lands on the project area.

#### Cumulative Effects on National Forest System Lands

The following information summarizes the cumulative effects on NFS lands within VCUs on the project area. VCU 679 has the greatest acreage currently affected by both harvest units and roads (Tables SOILS-13 to SOILS-15). VCU 679 will also have the greatest acreage affected by both harvest units and roads for all alternatives. The greatest impact to VCU 679 would be under Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6, where 19 to 20 percent of the VCU would be affected by timber harvest and roads (Table SOILS-16). Cumulative acreage affected by timber harvest by action alternatives is ranked as: 6 greater than 3 greater than 4 greater than 5 greater than 2 (Table SOILS-13). Cumulative acreage affected by roads by action alternatives is ranked as: 6 greater than 3 greater than 5 greater than 2 greater than 4 (Table SOILS-14). Cumulative acreage affected by both harvest units and roads for action alternatives follows results for timber harvest listed above (6 greater than 3 greater than 4 greater than 5 greater than 2)(Table SOILS-15). This follows because of the greater acreage in harvest units than in roads.

Cumulative effects on this project area were projected beyond the life of this project to 2040. This calculation assumes that all lands suitable and available for harvest as identified by the TLMP (1997), and not previously harvested, nor harvested under Alternative 3 of the Chasina Project, will be harvested by 2040. This projection still shows that the greatest acreage affected by harvest units, roads, and total of harvest units and roads will occur in VCU 679 on National Forest System lands (Tables SOILS-13 to SOILS-15).

Table SOILS-13

**Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Timber Harvest on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040**

VCU	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040*
674	0	0	103	13	95	103	160
677	3	3	3	3	3	35	1,640
678	473	473	606	751	732	932	9,004
679	1,250	1,824	2,178	2,252	2,296	2,447	9,433
680	125	205	322	152	173	322	2,416
681	91	422	361	252	148	491	4,257
682	33	35	135	187	33	187	2,652
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,975</b>	<b>2,962</b>	<b>3,708</b>	<b>3,610</b>	<b>3,480</b>	<b>4,517</b>	<b>29,562</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Uses Alternative 3.

Table SOILS-14

**Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Roads\* on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040**

VCU	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040**
674	0	0	13	0	13	13	13
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
678	0	0	28	0	28	28	28
679	237	261	302	277	297	307	302
680	0	18	43	4	11	43	43
681	0	28	28	0	28	71	28
682	9	9	9	9	9	96	9
<b>Total</b>	<b>246</b>	<b>316</b>	<b>423</b>	<b>290</b>	<b>386</b>	<b>558</b>	<b>423</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Assumes the area disturbed from roads, landings, turnouts, endhaul areas, and rock pits is averaged to a road width of 75 feet, for 9.1 acres per mile of road.

\*\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SOILS-15

**Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads\* on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040**

VCU	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040**
674	0	0	116	13	108	116	173
677	3	3	3	3	3	35	1,640
678	473	473	634	751	760	960	9,032
679	1,487	2,085	2,480	2,529	2,593	2,754	9,735
680	125	223	365	156	184	365	2,459
681	91	450	389	252	176	562	4,285
682	42	44	144	196	42	283	2,661
<b>Total</b>	<b>2,221</b>	<b>3,278</b>	<b>4,131</b>	<b>3,900</b>	<b>3,866</b>	<b>5,075</b>	<b>29,985</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Assumes the area disturbed from roads, landings, turnouts, endhaul areas, and rock pits is averaged to a road width of 75 feet, for 9.1 acres per mile of road.

\*\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest.

Table SOILS-16

**Cumulative Percent of VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads\* on National Forest System Lands: Currently, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040**

VCU	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040**
674	0	0	6.0	0.7	5.6	6.0	9.0
677	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	1.1	51
678	4.3	4.3	5.8	6.8	6.9	8.7	82
679	11.5	16.2	19.2	19.6	20.1	21.4	76
680	3.2	5.7	9.3	4.0	4.7	9.3	63
681	1.4	7.0	6.0	3.9	2.7	8.7	66
682	1.0	1.0	3.3	4.4	1.0	6.4	60
<b>Total</b>	<b>5.1</b>	<b>7.5</b>	<b>9.4</b>	<b>8.9</b>	<b>8.8</b>	<b>11.6</b>	<b>68</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Assumes the area disturbed from roads, landings, turnouts, endhaul areas, and rock pits is averaged to a road width of 75 feet, for 9.1 acres per mile of road.

\*\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest.



## **Cumulative Effects on All Lands**

The data noted in the previous paragraph does not give an accurate portrayal of the project area because of the amount of harvest and road construction on lands under other ownership in some VCUs. Comparison of Tables SOILS-15 and SOILS-17 shows a considerable increase in acreage currently affected by harvest units and roads by VCUs for the existing condition when lands under other ownership on the project area are considered. VCU 681 has the greatest acreage affected by existing harvest units and roads when considering all lands on the project area (Table SOILS-17). The ranking of alternatives for cumulative acreage affected by both harvest and roads on all lands is the same as for National Forest System lands noted previously (6 greater than 3 greater than 4 greater than 5 greater than 2) because calculations only include acreage the Forest Service plans to affect under these alternatives. VCUs 680 and 681 have greater than 20 percent of their acreage affected under existing harvest and roads on all lands (Table SOILS-18). VCU 681 is greatest with 39 percent affected, and VCU 680 is less at 33 percent. Acreage affected increases in VCUs 681 and 680 for all action alternatives. Affected acreage greater than 20 percent by VCU for action alternatives includes: all alternatives for VCUs 680 and 681, and Alternative 6 for VCU 679.

Cumulative effects on this project area were projected beyond the life of this project to 2040. This calculation assumes that all lands suitable and available for harvest as identified by the TLMP (1997), and not previously harvested, nor harvested under Alternative 3 of the Chasina Project, will be harvested by 2040. This projection shows that the greatest acreage affected by the total of harvest units and roads on all lands will occur in VCU 679 (Table SOILS-17).

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SOILS-17

**Cumulative Acres by VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads\* on All Lands: Currently\*\*, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040**

VCU	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040***
674	0	0	116	13	109	116	173
677	1,142	1,142	1,142	1,142	1,142	1,174	2,779
678	571	571	732	849	858	1,058	9,129
679	2,014	2,612	3,007	3,056	3,120	3,280	10,262
680****	2,242	2,340	2,482	2,273	2,300	2,482	4,576
681	5,095	5,455	5,393	5,256	5,180	5,567	9,289
682	43	44	145	197	43	284	2,662
<b>Total</b>	<b>11,107</b>	<b>12,164</b>	<b>13,017</b>	<b>12,786</b>	<b>12,752</b>	<b>13,961</b>	<b>38,870</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

- \* Assumes the area disturbed from roads, landings, turnouts, endhaul areas, and rock pits is averaged to a road width of 75 feet, for 9.1 acres per mile of road.
- \*\* Shows some current harvest and roads on lands under other ownership, and National Forest Service roads and harvest to 1995.
- \*\*\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest on NFS lands. Plans are not known for future harvest and roads on lands under other ownership.
- \*\*\*\* Roads existing in this VCU were calculated by hand as they were not entered in GIS Data Base 1998.

Table SOILS-18

**Cumulative Percent of VCU Affected by Timber Harvest and Roads\* on All Lands: Currently\*\*, Following Implementation of Alternatives on the Chasina Project Area, and Possible Additional Harvest to 2040**

VCU	Existing	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	2040***
674	0.0	0.0	6.0	0.7	5.6	6.0	9.0
677	13.0	13.0	13.0	13.0	13.0	13.4	31.7
678	3.2	3.2	4.1	4.8	4.8	5.9	51.2
679	12.5	16.2	18.7	19.0	19.4	20.4	63.8
680****	33.0	34.5	36.6	33.5	33.9	36.6	67.4
681	38.8	41.6	41.1	40.1	39.5	42.4	70.8
682	1.0	1.0	3.3	4.4	1.0	6.4	60.2
<b>Total</b>	<b>16.1</b>	<b>17.6</b>	<b>18.9</b>	<b>18.5</b>	<b>18.5</b>	<b>20.2</b>	<b>56.4</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

- \* Assumes the area disturbed from roads, landings, turnouts, endhaul areas, and rock pits is averaged to a road width of 75 feet, for 9.1 acres per mile of road.
- \*\* Shows some current harvest and roads on lands under other ownership, and National Forest Service roads and harvest to 1995.
- \*\*\* Uses Alternative 3. No new roads are planned for future harvest on NFS lands. Plans are not known for future harvest and roads on lands under other ownership.
- \*\*\*\* Roads existing are not entered on USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998, and were calculated by hand.

Data in Tables SOILS-17 and SOILS-18 most likely underestimates lands affected under other ownership. The percentage of lands under other ownership included in the project area by VCU is: 674 equals 0 percent, 677 equals 63 percent, 678 equals 38 percent, 679 equals 20 percent, 680 equals 42 percent, 681 equals 51 percent, and 682 equals 1 percent. Flights over these lands suggest that GIS data underestimates the existing impacts of harvest on lands under other ownership. This is particularly noticeable for VCUs 677 and 678 with 63 percent and 38 percent other ownership, but only 13 and 3 percent affected lands, respectively (Table SOILS-18). Lands affected under other ownership are only shown for the existing condition as of 1995. Harvest and roading is continuing on these lands. The most recently affected lands have not been entered into the GIS data base. This includes lands in VCUs 677 and 678. Some lands with recent harvest and roading, VCU 674 for example, are outside the area of this project, and are not included in the analysis for this project. Roads on lands under other ownership in VCU 680 have not been included in the GIS data base, but were calculated by hand. Plans by other owners for future harvest are not known and could not be entered into these calculations. Thus, estimations for cumulative acres affected (Table SOILS-17) and cumulative percent of VCUs affected (Table SOILS-18) on all lands on the project area do not include adjustments for other owners on other lands for existing condition, alternatives under this project, nor for 2040.

Affected acreage in the smaller divisions of watersheds within VCUs may be of greater concern than the acreage affected in the larger areas covered by VCUs. Table AQU-19 and

### 3 Environment and Effects

SOILS-19 display percent harvest in select watersheds on the project area. These figures are only for harvest units. They do not include the additional disturbance from roads for this harvest. Watersheds now exceeding 20 percent harvest include: E92A (21 percent, VCU 680), E94A (62 percent, VCU 680), H54A (58 percent, VCU 681 and 679), H62A (27 percent, VCU 679), H63A (41 percent, VCU 679), H38A (54 percent, VCU 677), H27A (61 percent, VCU 678), and H56A (39 percent, VCU 681). Watersheds E92A, H54A, H62A, and H63A will have additional acreage harvested under Alternative 3 of this project (Table AQU-19). The following watersheds are under 20 percent harvest prior to initiation of this project, but will equal or exceed 20 percent harvest under Alternative 3: 000Z (27 percent, VCU 679 with Units 679-382, -392, -403, and -409), H60A (20 percent, VCU 679), H61A (33 percent, VCU 679), and EX8A (21 percent, VCU 678) (Table AQU-19). The level of disturbance in some watersheds may be underestimated because of inaccurate GIS data as discussed previously in the discussion of VCUs. Probable watersheds (and VCUs) from Tables AQU-19 and SOILS-18 include: H38A (677), H41A (677), H40A (677), H42A (677), EW8A (677), H28A (678), H37A (679), and H54A (679 and 681).

Watersheds with greater than 20 percent of the watershed acres with trees in second growth younger than 30 years and to be further affected by this project have been cleared by watershed analysis per requirements of the TLMP (1997). This analysis is discussed in the Aquatic Resources section of this document.

Table SOILS-19

#### Cumulative Percent Harvest in Selected Watersheds Currently and Following Implementation of Alternatives\*

VCU	Watersheds	Total Acres	Non-National Forest Harvested Acres	National Forest Acres	Cumulative Percent Harvest of Watershed by Alternative					
					1	2	3	4	5	6
677	H38A	459	248	1	54	54	54	54	54	54
677	H41A	1,337	63	0	5	5	5	5	5	6
677	H40A	704	57	0	8	8	8	8	8	8
677	H42A	1,910	255	0	13	13	13	13	13	15
677	EW8A	787	101	1	13	13	13	13	13	13
678	H27A	700	426	0	61	61	61	61	61	63
678	H28A	2,014	31	116	7	7	7	7	7	9
679	H37A	1,728	241	1	14	14	14	14	14	14
679	H50A	652	0	114	17	17	17	17	17	17
681	H56A	4,473	1,717	8	39	40	39	39	39	42

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1998.

\* Does not include acres of roads.



## Mitigation Measures

Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines are designed to minimize accelerated soil erosion and to maintain the inherent long-term soil productivity within the levels of the Soil Quality Standards (FSH 2509.18; FSM 2554, R10 Supplement 2500-92-1). The minimum soil quality standard requires that 85 percent of an area be maintained in a condition of acceptable productivity for trees and other managed vegetation following land management activities. A minimum percentage of ground cover is also required to be maintained: the effective ground cover must be at least 85 percent on slopes less than 35 percent, 90 percent on slopes from 35-75 percent, and 95 percent on slopes greater than 75 percent.

Implementation of Best Management Practices (BMPs) can further reduce impacts to soils (FSH 2509.22). BMPs to protect soil during timber harvest include limiting the operating period of timber sale activities to avoid wet soil conditions (BMP 13.4), avoidance of unstable areas (BMP 13.5), protection of wetlands during harvest (BMP 12.5), proper log landing location and design for erosion control (BMP 13.10), revegetation of areas disturbed by harvest activities (BMP 12.17), and type of yarding on different soil conditions to reduce soil disturbance (BMP 13.9).

BMPs have also been developed to minimize erosion related to road construction, use, and maintenance. These include construction, revegetation, and stabilization to minimize erosion (BMPs 12.17, 14.5), timing restrictions (BMP 14.6), slope stabilization measures to minimize mass failures (BMPs 13.5, 14.7), minimize surface erosion (BMP 14.8), control of road drainage (BMP 14.9), pioneer road construction guidelines (BMP 14.10), control of excavation and sidecast material (BMP 14.12), minimize sediment during operations on waterways (BMPs 14.14, 14.17), development of rock pits (BMP 14.18), maintenance of roads (BMP 14.20), and obliteration of temporary roads (BMP 14.24).

These BMPs are designed to reduce erosion caused by timber harvest and road construction use and maintenance. They apply to all harvest units and roads proposed for all alternatives in the Chasina Project Area. Implementation of BMPs should result in acreage of soil disturbance no greater than that displayed in Tables SOILS-5 and SOILS-6.

All potential harvest units were reviewed in the office using soil inventory and GIS information. Harvest units with potential concerns were identified and prioritized for field review. Not all harvest units were reviewed in the field for soil and watershed concerns because of the constraints in time, finances, and manpower. For example, units in old-growth habitat reserves and in alternatives other than the preferred alternative were given a low priority for field review.

Review of roads for soil and watershed concerns was primarily an office review using soil inventory and GIS information. Only portions of some roads were reviewed. These were primarily portions in some harvest units that were field reviewed. Most roads were located in the field by the engineering staff only to the extent of identifying that a route was feasible at the time of field review for this EIS. Review for site specific concerns by other resource specialists was generally not possible during that time.

Specific mitigation measures for harvest units and road locations with special concerns are described on the harvest unit and road design cards (Appendix J). BMPs assigned for protection of water quality and fisheries should also serve to protect soils (Appendix J). Some unit cards may refer to slope breaks of 75 percent. This was the standard at the time of field review for this EIS (TLMP Draft Revision 1991), and corresponds to slope

## 3 Environment and Effects

breaks on SMUs. The 75 percent value is still cited on unit cards because it is within the range of observable error in the field for the current value of 72 percent in BMP 13.5 and the TLMP (1997).

Additional field review may be needed for protection of the soil and watershed resources in harvest units and roads during layout following signing of the Record of Decision for this EIS because of the limitation noted above for field review done during the preparation of this EIS. Units could be further modified, and road segments relocated, during layout to better protect the soil resource.

### Monitoring

The Forest Plan recognizes three distinct types of monitoring: implementation, effectiveness, and validation. Implementation monitoring determines if projects and activities comply with Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines. Effectiveness monitoring determines whether the standards and guidelines achieve the desired results. Validation monitoring determines whether the assumptions in the Forest Plan regarding the relationship between management actions and their effects are correct, or if there is a better way to depict these relationships.

A monitoring plan has been developed for the Tongass National Forest by the Forest Planning Team and is described in the TLMP (1997). The Forest Plan contains four specific items for the monitoring of soils, which includes monitoring of BMPs. In accordance with the 1992 Memorandum of Agreement between the Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation and the USDA-Forest Service Alaska Region, the Forest Service performs annual BMP implementation and effectiveness monitoring. The Chasina Project Area will be part of the Forest Plan monitoring, and the Ketchikan Area Monitoring Strategy.

Project-specific monitoring that is unique to the Chasina Project Area, and that would not be included in regular Forest Plan or routine implementation monitoring, has been identified for several resources. Project-specific monitoring is not planned for soil resources in the Chasina Project Area.

## Geology, Minerals, and Karst Resources

### Key Terms

**Cave**—any naturally occurring void, cavity, recess, or system of interconnected passages which occurs beneath the surface of the earth or within a cliff or ledge and which is large enough to permit an individual to enter.

**Cave Resources**—any material or substance occurring in caves such as animal life, plant life, paleontological resources, cultural resources, sediments, minerals, speleogens, and speleothems.

**Doline or Sinkhole**—bowl- or funnel-shaped depressions ranging in diameter from a few to more than 3,000 feet, and from about 10 to 300 feet in depth. Sinkholes originate primarily either by solution from the surface downward or by collapse in solution cavities at depth.

**Grike**—solution-widened joints, faults, and/or bedding contacts in a karst area.

**Insurgence**—point at which a stream flows into the ground.

**Epikarst**—the upper surface of the karst, including the upper percolation zone through which surface waters enter the karst hydrologic system and in which most dissolution of the carbonate takes place.

**Karst**—a type of topography that develops in areas underlain by soluble rocks, primarily limestones. Dolines, collapsed channels, vertical shafts, and caves are formed when the subsurface layer dissolves. Areas on which karst has developed are said to display “karst topography” or are referred to as a “karst landscape”.

**Karst Lands**—the areas found atop carbonate rock within which karst has developed, and including the watersheds that contribute surface flow to karst.

**Karst Landscape**—an ecological unit found atop carbonate bedrock on which karst has developed, and including the recharge areas on adjacent noncarbonated substrate. A few of the characteristics of this ecological unit include: older, well-developed spruce and hemlock forests, increased productivity for plant and animal communities, extremely productive aquatic communities, well-developed subsurface drainage, and underlying unique cave resources.

**Resurgence**—point at which an underground stream reaches the surface and begins flowing above ground.

**Runnels**—solution channels carved by water into bedrock, either on flat or inclined surfaces.

**Skarn**—a term generally reserved for rocks composed mostly of lime-bearing silicates, derived from nearly pure limestones into which large amounts of silicon, aluminum, iron, and magnesium have been introduced.

**Speleogen**—relief features on the walls, ceiling, and floor of any cave or lava tube which are part of the surrounding bedrock.

**Speleothem**—any natural mineral formation or deposit occurring in a cave or lava tube, including but not limited to any stalactite, stalagmite, cave flower, flowstone, concretion, or formation of clay or mud.

## Affected Environment

### Introduction

This section provides a view of the regional geologic features and parameters that influence the mineral and karst resources of the Chasina Project Area. Key elements of these geologic features are the lithology and structures that control the mineral deposition and development of the karst lands of the region.

### Geologic Setting

The Chasina Project Area is predominately underlain by pre-Ordovician Wales Group rocks of the Alexander terrain. The Wales Group lithologies stretch across the project area in distinct fault displaced blocks trending northwest. The Wales Group dominate rock types are schist and phyllite interbedded with limestone and slate, limestone, and greenstone (Condon 1962, Herreid et al. 1978, Hedderly-Smith 1993). Contacts are gradational, with interbedding of the dominant rock types. The Wales Group is strongly metamorphosed showing intense folding and foliation, having undergone greenschist-facies metamorphism. The limestone has commonly metamorphosed to marble. This marble is a distinctive unit of the Wales Group (Herreid et al. 1978). Most of the marble is very light to medium-gray fine grained crystalline rock that weathers medium gray. The marble, almost blue in appearance, is intensely folded and sheared. Locally the marble's color varies from bluish hues to blue and white banded to pink and tan.

The peninsula south of Port Johnson consists of slightly metamorphosed volcanic and sedimentary rocks of the Silurian to Ordovician Descon Formation. Wales Group rocks are more severely deformed than the stratified Descon Formation rocks. Chasina Point is underlain by Mesozoic or Paleozoic Byron Lake intrusive complex consisting of diorite, granodiorite, and quartz monazite (Condon 1962, Mass et al. 1995, Hedderly-Smith 1993).

Rock units have been offset by major northwest-trending faults, moving the blocks to their present location where they have been subsequently glaciated, weathered, and eroded. The most important structural feature in the project area is the doubly-plunging anticline (dome) oriented east-west and centered on Paul Lake (Mass et al. 1995).

### Mineral Setting

Southern Prince of Wales Island, in which the project area is located, has experienced extensive mineral exploration and production activities since the initial discoveries in 1897. Within the Chasina Project Area are two separate areas of mineralization, the Dolomi Area and the South Arm Cholmondeley Area. Mineralization within the Dolomi Area can be divided into three types: (1) conformable, low-sulfide, gold-bearing quartz veins that are brecciated and locally contain marble; (2) unconformable, low-sulfide, gold-bearing quartz veins; and (3) conformable, copper-gold-bearing, quartz-marble breccia zones (Maas et al. 1995). Marble and calcareous schist either host or are adjacent to the various mineral deposits found within the South Arm Cholmondeley Area.

During field investigations by the U. S. Bureau of Mines (BOM) during the summer of 1990, 30 mines, prospects, or occurrences were located within the Chasina Project Area (Maas et al. 1991). The following is a summary of those findings. Figure GEO-1 shows the location of the mine, prospect, or occurrence. Please refer to Mass et al. for specific deposit and analysis information.

#### Dolomi Area

##### Equator (1)

The Equator Prospect is one mile northeast of Lancaster Cove at an elevation of 360 feet. According to a 1908 report by Wright and Wright it consists of a 50-foot tunnel driven on a



3-foot wide quartz vein containing chalcopyrite and pyrite. Gold and copper were recovered from this vein during BOM sampling.

## Dolomi Area (2)

Seventeen samples were collected from a variety of locations in the Dolomi Area by the BOM. Mineralized zones and quartz veins were tested and samples worth noting are discussed.

## Roy Creek (3)

The Roy Creek Veins are 8.5 miles north of Dolomi via logging roads and were discovered by Sealaska geologists in 1988. There are two quartz-pyrite-chalcopyrite veins in road cuts within chlorite-schist greenschist. Gold, silver, and copper were recovered from these veins during BOM sampling.

## 7-Mile Gold (4)

The 7-Mile Gold Prospect is 7 miles by logging road north of Dolomi and was discovered by Sealaska geologists in 1988. The prospect consists of a silicified limestone-marble breccia zone containing pyrite-chalcopyrite clots hosted in altered limestone. Gold, silver, and copper were recovered from these veins during BOM sampling.

## Kael Pit (5)

The Kael Pit is a borrow pit located along a USFS road 1.25 miles from Lancaster Cove. Gold-copper mineralization was discovered at this pit by Sealaska geologists in 1988. Until October 1995, Sealaska Corporation maintained claims on this prospect. Those claims have been relinquished. Gold and copper were recovered from these silicified marble breccia zones during BOM sampling.

## Croesus (6)

The Croesus Prospect is one mile northeast of the south end of Kitkun Bay. Wright described this prospect as consisting of two tunnels driven along a quartz vein. The vein is hosted in marble with thin interbeds of greenstone. The rugged crystalline quartz vein yielded gold during BOM sampling.

## San Juan (7)

The San Juan Prospect is 0.5 miles northwest of the corner of Kitkun Bay. The prospect was discovered in 1899 (Brooks 1902). By 1908 (Wright and Wright 1908), the prospect is described as consisting of a tunnel at 500 feet elevation and a second tunnel above that. BOM investigations found an adit at 680 feet elevation, a caved shaft and quartz dump, a caved portal at an elevation of 580 feet and a trench. The upper adit exposes a shear zone in limestone with interbedded schist. This shear zone yielded gold during BOM sampling.

## Golden Fleece (8)

The Golden Fleece Mine is one mile north of the abandoned town of Dolomi near the inlet to James Lake. It was discovered in 1899 (Brooks 1902) and by 1902, the deposit was developed with two drifts and several shafts, a mill, and a tram connecting the mine to the town of Dolomi. Gold was produced up to 1922, from quartz lenses within marble. Samples were collected across quartz and quartz-marble breccia zones in two adits in 1990, and gold was recorded from the samples.

## Alpha (9)

The Alpha Prospect is 0.5 miles east of the north end of James Lake. Wright reports a quartz vein hosted in banded limestone and a shaft and open cuts. The BOM sampled pyrite-chalcopyrite-rich quartz from a dump and quartz-marble veins. These samples yielded gold and copper.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Valparaiso (10)

The Valparaiso Mine is on the north side of Paul Lake. It was discovered in 1899, and consists of a quartz vein hosted in limestone. The deposit was mined sporadically between 1900 and 1993. The BOM sampled within several levels of the mine from the quartz vein and gold was recovered.

#### Paul Lake (11)

The Paul Lake Prospect is on the north side of Paul Lake about 2,000 feet easterly from the Valparaiso shaft. The prospect is developed in a quartz vein similar to the vein at the Valparaiso Mine. The BOM sampled the vein which contained sparse pyrite, chalcopyrite, galena, sphalerite, malachite, azurite, and limonite. Samples yielded gold, silver, copper, lead, and zinc.

#### Moonshine (12)

The Moonshine Prospect is near a small stream that forms the outlet to James Lake. The prospect was reported to consist of two adits and surface cuts that expose quartz veins and quartzite that contain native gold. The veins are hosted in schist and limestone. BOM investigations revealed an open cut and two adits exposing quartz veins hosted in interbedded calcareous schist and gray marble. The samples taken from these veins yielded gold.

#### Amazon (13)

The Amazon Prospect is 0.3 miles east of Paul Lake. It consists of a 123-foot-deep shaft and associated drift. The workings expose a quartz vein hosted in calcareous schist. BOM sampling of the dump, rubble at the shaft, and a vein exposed near the shaft yielded gold.

#### Boston (14)

The Boston Prospect is along the eastern side of Amazon Lake and consists of three inclined shafts, a caved adit, and some cuts and trenches. The BOM was able to find the trenches and sampled quartz veins hosted in calcareous schist and gray limestone. The samples yielded gold, silver, and copper.

#### Jumbo (15)

The Jumbo Prospect is hundreds of feet west of a small creek that joins James and Amazon Lakes. Though a shaft following a gold-bearing quartz-breccia vein hosted in phyllite was reported (Brooks 1902) the BOM investigations could not find it. Investigations revealed an adit and samples taken from a quartz-marble breccia vein yielded gold.

#### Stockton Quartz (16)

The Stockton Quartz Prospect is on the west side of Dolomi Bay. BOM investigations revealed a shaft with a small dump of quartz and greenstone blocks. Samples contained little gold.

#### Moss Point (17)

Moss Point Prospect is near Moss Point on the south shore of Port Johnson. It consists of a limonite-stained phyllite with disseminated pyrite. A 20-foot-long adit was located at an elevation of 365 feet within the pyrite-bearing zone. Samples were taken from the beach to within the adit. These samples yielded gold and copper.

#### South Arm and Dora Bay (18)

Reconnaissance samples were collected at four locations between South Arm and Dora Bay. They did not contain significant metal values.

#### Borrow Pits (19)

Samples of pegmatite dike-veins and quartz veins were collected from borrow pits 3 and 4.5 miles southerly along the road from the Cholmondeley logging camp of Dora Bay. These samples yielded gold, zinc, uranium, cerium, lanthanum, and yttrium.

## Dora Lake Narrows (20)

The Dora Lake Narrows occurrence is on the west side of Dora Lake Narrows and consists of dike-veins containing columbium, uranium, yttrium, zirconium and other rare earth elements.

## Borrow Pit (21)

A borrow pit 0.5 miles west of the Lucky Boy Prospect consists of calcareous metasediments and greenstone with quartz-calcite-sulfide-bearing veins and stringers. Samples taken from various mineralized zones within the pit yielded gold, silver, lead, and zinc.

## North Lucky Boy (22)

The North Lucky Boy Prospect is on the east slope of the south end of Dora Lake. Geologically similar to the Lucky Boy Prospect, it consists of quartz-calcite veins containing pyrite, sphalerite, galena, and chalcopryrite. BOM investigations found several trenches and cuts but not a reported adit. Samples taken from the quartz calcite veins within the area yielded gold, silver, copper, lead, and zinc.

## Lucky Boy (23)

The Lucky Boy Prospect, in the pass between Dora Lake and Miller Lake, was developed between 1902 and 1917. It consists of a quartz-calcite-breccia vein hosted in schist and some limestone. The underground workings and trenches were sampled by the BOM. Samples taken from the quartz calcite veins within the area yielded gold, silver, copper, lead, and zinc.

## Borrow Pit (24)

A borrow pit 0.2 miles north of Miller Lake consists of metasediments with concordant quartz-calcite veins. Samples taken from the quartz-calcite veins within the pit yielded gold and copper.

## Cymru (25)

The Cymru Mine is near the end of Miller Lake on the north side of its outlet on North Arm. It consists of quartz-calcite veins bearing pyrite and chalcopryrite hosted in marble with interbedded chlorite schist. It was discovered in 1899, and by 1909, workings consisted of a couple shafts, two adits, and deep trenches. By 1928, most of the surface improvements were in poor condition or had disappeared altogether (Bufvers 1967). BOM investigations sampled from the underground workings and trenches. Samples taken from the prospect yielded silver, copper, gold, lead, and zinc.

## North Arm Marble (26)

Eleven limestone claims (MS 728) are located on the North Arm near its head. Maps of these claims, dated 1906, show a quarry, a tramway connecting the claims to the beach, and a tunnel. BOM investigations found a wide band of gray and cream colored marble in the area. Near the quarry 3.5 by 3.5 by 6-foot marble blocks are scattered. Representative marble samples were collected from the adit. They were found to contain 92.2 percent total  $\text{CaCO}_3$ .

## South Arm Cholmondeley Area

### Friendship (27)

The Friendship Prospect is along the west shore of South Arm Cholmondeley Sound, 2 miles from the mouth, at elevation 100 feet. There is a flooded pit and a swallow and a 15-foot shaft which exposes a mineralized quartz-calcite vein cropping out along a 350-foot shear zone. The vein filling within the shear zone cuts marble and schist and ore minerals including chalcopryrite, malachite, and azurite are found. Gold and copper were recovered from this vein during BOM sampling.

### Moonshine (28)

The Moonshine Mine is on the west side of South Arm Cholmondeley Sound on the crest of a ridge between elevations 2,300 and 2,500 feet, about 1.5 miles from tidewater. Development commenced in 1906 and reported workings at the property include two adits, a 90-foot shaft

### 3 Environment and Effects

and glory hole, numerous trenches and pits, and a dilapidated mining camp. The mine operated between 1900 and 1910, with unknown production. The Moonshine Mine developed high-grade silver-bearing galena ore from a well defined quartz-calcite fissure vein occurring in marble and quartz chlorite schist host rock. Lead, silver, copper, and zinc were recovered from this vein during BOM sampling.

#### Hope-Cholmondeley (29)

The Hope-Cholmondeley Prospect is on the west side of South Arm Cholmondeley Sound between elevations 2,350 and 2,450 feet, about 0.33 miles south of the Moonshine Mine. Workings consist of four trenches, a shallow shaft, and a short adit which line up along a northwest trend. The prospect exposes mineralized quartz-calcite fissure veins and pods in silty marble and chlorite schist host rock. The primary ore minerals are sphalerite and galena with minor chalcopyrite and pyrite. Silver, lead, and zinc were recovered from these veins during BOM sampling.

#### Ruby Tuesday (30)

Originally named the Ketchikan Copper Co. Prospect, the Ruby Tuesday properties were discovered in 1900. Several drill holes combined with detailed geologic mapping and geochemical sampling data comprise an extensive database available on the property. The three areas of mineralization observed at Ruby Tuesday include: (1) zinc-lead-copper-silver volcano genic massive sulfide adjacent to a marble band, (2) marble hosted disseminated sphalerite, and (3) the replacement lead-zinc pods.



**Figure GEO-1**  
**Locations of Mines, Prospects, and Occurrences Within the Chasina Project Area**



SOURCE: Mass et al. 1991

Numbers correspond to the individual locations discussed in the text.

## Mining Claims

Currently the Bureau of Land Management (BLM) mining claim activity reports indicate that there is one mining claim group consisting of 110 claims within the project area. This is the Ruby Tuesday Prospect which is currently under claim by Abacus Minerals Corporation from Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada. These are centered around the Ruby Tuesday and Friendship Prospects (Numbers 27 and 30 in Figure GEO-1) between South Arm and Cannery Creek. Until recently, Sealaska Corporation had the Kael claim group consisting of 40 claims to the west of Lancaster Cove. These claims have been relinquished. Sealaska Corporation is in the process of receiving subsurface mineral rights on 1,260 acres of the National Forest System lands within the project area as part of the Sealaska Subsurface Exchange Agreement. The subsurface rights which would be conveyed lie south of the southern tip of Kitkun Bay. Sealaska may receive title to an additional 2,685 subsurface acres in the future.

An examination of the Bureau of Land Management records revealed 11 patented mining claim groups within the Chasina Project Area. These are the Golden Fleéce (MS 540, 1581), Valparaiso (MS 766), James (MS 766), Paul Lake (MS 760), Moonshine (MS 789), Jumbo

(MS 1058), Amazon (MS 790), Boston (MS 1056), Cape Horn (MS 1055), Stockton Quartz (MS 587), and North Arm Marble (MS 728) (Mass et al. 1995).

## Karst Resources

Karst is a comprehensive term that applies to the unique topography, surface and subsurface drainage systems, and landforms that develop in areas of soluble rock. Karst lands are produced by the action of water on soluble rocks, in this case limestones and marbles. The dissolution of the rock results in the development of internal drainage, which produces sinking streams, closed depressions, and other solutional landforms such as sinkholes, collapse channels, caves, etc. (White et al. 1995).

The geologic and climatic setting of Alaska are particularly favorable for karst development. Extensive areas of very pure carbonate, some 515,000 thousand acres (approximately 805 sq. miles or 207,690 hectares), are found within the boundaries of the Tongass National Forest. Because of the highly fractured nature of the carbonates, the climatic conditions, and the peatlands proximal to the carbonate bedrock, karst has developed, to one extent or another, within all carbonate blocks. It has been suggested that karst development to the extent found throughout Alaska is globally rare (Aley et al. 1993).

The Tongass National Forest contains the largest concentration of dissolution caves known in the State of Alaska. The Forest also contains world-class surface or epikarst features particularly in the alpine and sub-alpine zones (Aley et al. 1993). The karst and cave features and associated resources are a recently discovered and recognized attribute of the lands within Alaska and have been found to be of national and international significance for a wide variety of reasons, including their intensity and diversity of development, the biological, mineralogical, cultural, and paleontological components, and recreational values (Aley et al. 1993).

The karst landscape in Alaska can be characterized as an ecological unit found atop carbonate bedrock in which karst has developed and includes the recharge areas on adjacent non-carbonate substrate. A few of the characteristics of this ecological unit include: mature, well-developed spruce and hemlock forests, increased productivity for plant and animal communities, extremely productive aquatic communities, well-developed subsurface drainage, and the underlying unique cave resources. Because of the presence of these well developed spruce and hemlock forests, much of the past and proposed timber harvest has been or is focused on the karst lands.

The following are a few key concepts or philosophies of karst management that must be understood to apply any karst management strategy to the land:

1. The Federal Cave Resources Protection Act (FCRPA) is the primary U.S. law affecting caves. It requires protection of significant caves on Federal lands. A cave must possess one or more of the criteria outlined in 36 CFR Part 290.3 to be determined "significant". Though "non-significant" caves may exist, most meet the criteria for "significant". The intent of this act is to protect cave resources, not karst resources. However, it is important to recognize that caves and associated features and resources are an integral part of the karst landscape. Karst must be managed as an ecological unit to ensure protection of the cave resources (Baichtal 1994, 1995).
2. As a practical matter, all lands underlain by carbonate rocks within Alaska should be considered a karst landscape. This approach is appropriate because the climatic circumstances of Alaska combined with the purity of the carbonates, proximal peatlands, and highly fractured bedrock are particularly favorable for karst development.
3. Karst lands add a third dimension to land use planning—a vertical dimension. Karst landscapes function differently than other landscapes. One must recognize these differences and change their management strategies accordingly.

4. Subsurface drainage networks generally operate independently of, and with more complexity than, the surface drainage systems above them (Aley et. al. 1993; Huntton 1992a). The watershed characteristics of the surface topography may have little or no relationship to the subsurface karst drainage system. The many solution-widened fissures become injection points into the complex subsurface drainage system. These fissures rapidly move water and sediment vertically downward into the underground lateral systems. Sediment transported from roads and disturbed lands may emerge unexpectedly at one or more distant springs even across surface watershed boundaries.
5. A large portion of a particular karst system's vulnerability is that system's openness. The degree to which the surface is connected to the karst system conduits at depth relates directly to the affect of any planned land use. A high density of solution and collapse features indicates the presence of well-developed underground systems. The presence of a single sinkhole demonstrates a direct surface/subsurface connection, even if the sinkhole intermittently retains water (Baichtal et al. 1996).
6. It is important to understand the differences in sediment transport mechanisms between karst and non-karst landforms. A particle of soil within deposits atop non-carbonate substrate must be transported by gravity, landslides, and/or surface water flows, sometimes over great distances, into a watercourse to become sediment. Atop a karst landform, depending on the openness of the karst system, a soil particle only needs to be transported laterally a few inches or feet before it can be washed vertically through the epikarst into the karst conduits at depth (Baichtal et al. 1996).
7. On a low-to-moderate vulnerability or sensitivity karst lands where mineral or glacially derived soils fully or partially cover the epikarst, forest regeneration is exceptional. In these areas, even the complete erosion of soil and litter from the surface of the carbonate substrate will not prohibit the reestablishment of a forest, for the displaced surface materials are retained within the epikarst channels (Harding and Ford 1993). However, the overall productivity of the land may have been decreased due to the increase in the percentage of bare rock. It is the inclusions within these areas such as sharp karst knobs, steep slopes, and areas of intense karst development which have had problems regenerating or now support stunted, chlorotic vegetation. On highly sensitive karst lands, the epikarst channels are too deep to allow conifer seedlings to establish themselves even if the displaced soils are retained. It is also possible that the channels are open on their bottom, directly transporting sediment and debris into the karst groundwater system. Highly sensitive or vulnerable karst areas are generally on sites at higher elevations, have thin organic soils which are easily displaced, are on steeper slopes, and/or are in areas of intense karst development. Previous harvest in such areas has resulted in an increase in the percentage of bare rock and less than desirable forest regeneration.

## Karst Management Goals

The goal of the karst management strategy proposed here is to maintain and protect, to the extent practical, the natural karst processes and the productivity of the karst landscape while providing for other land uses where appropriate. The proposed strategy is designed to assess a karst resource's vulnerability or sensitivity to a proposed land use. The strategy recognizes the differences in intensity of karst development across the karst landscape.

The key elements of the strategy focus on the openness of karst and its ability to transport water, nutrients, soil and debris, and pollutants into the underlying hydrologic systems. The strategy strives to maintain the capability of the karst landscape to regenerate a forest after harvest, to maintain the quality of the waters issuing from the karst hydrologic systems, and protect the many resource values within the underlying cave systems as per the requirements of the Federal Cave Resource Protection Act (Baichtal et al. 1996).



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Karst Management Strategy

Karst lands impose land management liabilities not encountered in non-karst areas because the three-dimensional landform of karst lands functions differently than other landforms. Recognizing these differences, the Tongass National Forest has begun to change its land management strategies accordingly. The Forest is incorporating karst management standards and guidelines into the current revision of the Tongass Land Management Plan (Baichtal et al. 1996). This same karst management strategy has been applied within the Lab Bay Final EIS on Northern Prince of Wales Island (USFS 1994, 1995a, 1996a), to the Indian River Project Area on Chichagof Island on the Chatham Area of the Tongass National Forest (USFS 1996b), and to Tuxekan Island, west of northern Prince of Wales Island (USFS 1995b). These standards and guidelines provide for other land uses while taking into account the function and biological significance of the karst and cave resources within the landscape. The Forest Service is adopting a land management strategy for the karst lands similar to "hazard area mapping" or "risk assessment". Referred to as "vulnerability mapping" or "karst vulnerability", this strategy assesses the susceptibility of the karst resources to any proposed land use. The thesis of this approach recognizes that not all karst development and associated resources are equal. Vulnerability mapping utilizes the fact that some parts of a karst landscape are more sensitive than others to planned land uses. The zonation scheme is intended as a guide for management purposes at the strategic planning level.

This karst management strategy has been developed during the last five years combining the most current thinking on karst management issues (Aley and Aley 1993; Aley et al. 1993; Blackwell 1995; Eberhard 1994; Griffiths 1991; Harding and Ford 1993; Herring 1995; Huntoon 1992a and b; Kiernan 1993; Lichon 1993; Stringer et al. 1991; Tasmania Forestry Comm. 1993) and the results of field studies specific to the Alaska Karst Lands (Aley et al. 1993; Baichtal 1993a, b, c, 1994, 1995; Baichtal et al. 1996; Elliott 1994; Lewis 1995; Streveler 1991; Swanston 1993; USFS 1994, 1995a, b, 1996a, b).

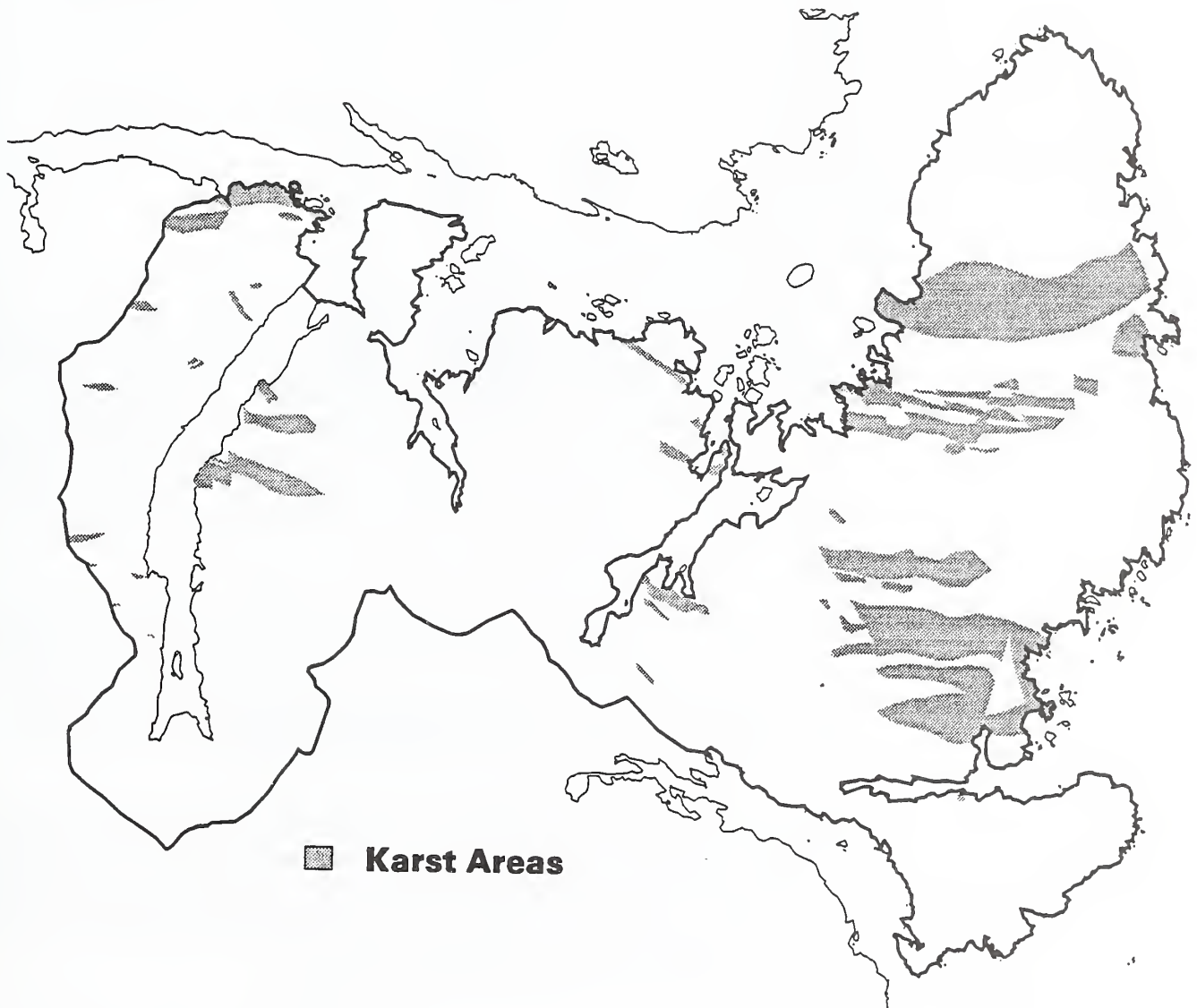
The Standards and Guidelines for Karst and Cave Resource Management are discussed in the 1997 Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP) pages 4-18 to 4-20 and in Appendix I, pages I-1 to I-22. The standards and concepts outlined in the Fores Plan were applied to this planning effort.



## Chasina Project Area Karst Resources

Karst resources are well developed within the Wales Group Marbles of the project area. Drainages disappear along the margins of the faulted marble blocks and sinkholes and other collapse features are numerous across the surface of the karst plateaus. Figure GEO-2 shows the location of the carbonates within the project area boundaries. There are 7,263 acres of the project area on karst, 3,036 acres of those karst lands are on Forest Service lands.

Figure GEO-2  
**Location of Karst Lands in the Chasina Project Area**



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table GEO-1  
Acres of Karst Land by Vulnerability Class

	National Forest Acres	Project Area Total*
Low Vulnerability Karst Lands	107	687 acres
Moderate Vulnerability Karst Lands	2,637	5,878 acres
High Vulnerability Karst Lands	383	698 acres
Total	3,127	7,263 acres

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, GIS query, TNF

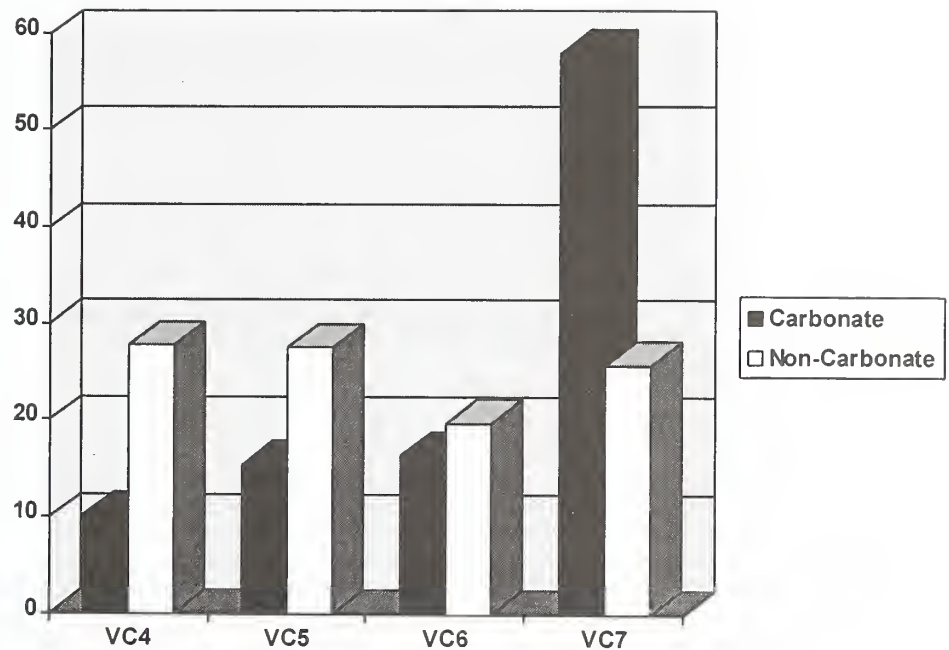
\*Includes private lands.

The karst lands of the project area tend to be of moderate vulnerability with inclusions of high vulnerability. The highly vulnerable areas are both discrete karst features and areas of intense epikarst development. Soils are a mosaic of both mineral and organic. Mineral soils vary from shallow to deep, are well drained, and parent material is the carbonate substrate. Pockets of glacial till are found throughout the karstlands. Organic soils are shallow and well drained. Though karst topography and subsurface drainage systems are well developed in the carbonate substrate, few caves were found. Caves that were discovered tended to be shallow, short tubes within the epikarst zone. The carbonates within the project area tend to be form ridges across the low elevations of the eastern half of the project area. Therefore, few areas contribute surface waters to these higher karst lands.

The most impressive karst system developed within the project area lies one mile north of Paul Lake. Here, an un-named system of small lakes drain into a large sinkhole over 500 feet in diameter and greater than 100 feet deep. The stream which flows into the sink loses into the gravel floor of the sink. Though dye tracing was not done on this system, it is believed that this system resurges into Paul Lake. An alignment of deep sinks across the adjacent private lands suggest the route the subsurface flows take. Several deep karst features are present on the private land which may provide access to this system.

Some 266 acres of karst lie above 1,500 feet in elevation and are in the alpine or sub-alpine zones. Therefore, 6,997 acres of forested karst lie within the project area. Past harvest has been disproportionately high within the karst landscape. Based on the previous harvest data on lands within the project boundary, 51 percent of the forested karst lands within the project area have been harvested compared to 27 percent of other landscapes. This is most likely due to the size and volume of timber found on top of the karst lands. Figure GEO-3 shows the volume class by percent rock type for the project area.

Figure GEO-3  
Timber Volume Class by Percent Rock Type



SOURCE: USDA Forest Service, GIS query, TNF

## Effects of the Alternatives

This section describes the potential and direct effect on minerals and karst resources from implementation of the action alternatives.

### Minerals

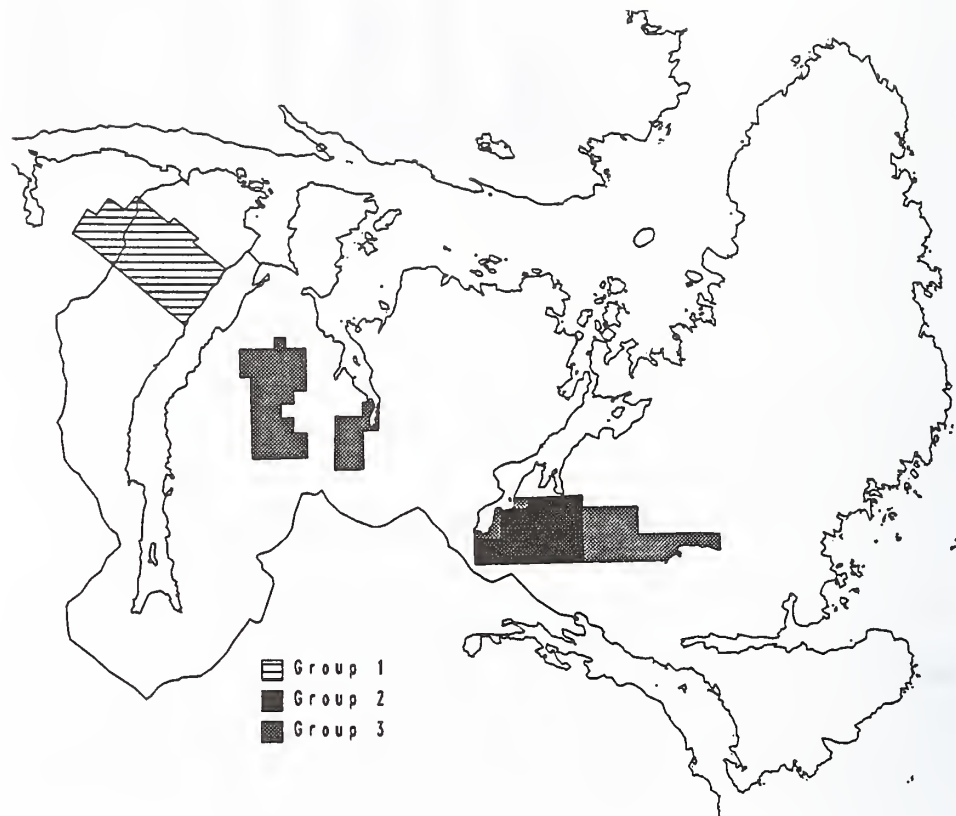
The proposed action would have no direct impact on actual mineral resources. In general, the project would affect mining activities by providing easier access for mapping and surveying because of road construction and access to less developed or underdeveloped areas. Geologic mapping would also be enhanced by increased exposure due to road construction and quarry development. The Ruby Tuesday Claim Group, stretching northwesterly from the South Arm (see Figure GEO-1), would have road access developed under Alternatives 3, 5, and 6. This would greatly improve access to this claim group for further exploration and possible development.

### 3 Environment and Effects

The chemically pure carbonates of Alaska have long been considered for their commodity values. Values are not determined solely on chemical purity but on brightness as well. The more pure the carbonate bedrock, the more intense karst development may be. The impacts of any proposed mineral development within the karst landscape can be analyzed through the environmental analysis which is triggered once a Plan of Operation is received. However, on karst lands found to be of unquestionably high vulnerability, mineral development would not be appropriate.

Sealaska Corporation has selected 3,945 acres of the project area for the subsurface mineral rights. The selected areas are shown in Figure GEO-4. Sealaska is about to be conveyed the subsurface mineral rights to 1,260 acres in T77S, R88E as part of the Sealaska Subsurface Land Exchange. An additional 1,075 subsurface acres in T77S, R88E and 1,610 acres in T77S, R87E may be conveyed in the future. Once conveyed, quarry development and availability of rock for road construction may be limited in some areas, affecting the economics of some alternatives.

Figure GEO-4  
**Sealaska Corporation Potential Subsurface Mineral Rights in the Chasina Project Area**





## Karst Resources

Any surface management activity on a karst landscape is likely to affect the components of that landscape. Surface landforms and surface water hydrology would most obviously be affected; however, the direct link between surface water hydrology and subsurface drainage implies that karst hydrologic systems and cave ecosystems would also be affected. The differences in vulnerability or sensitivity of a particular system may be a function of the extent of karst development, the openness of the karst systems, and the sensitivity of other resources that benefit from the karst ground water systems. The components and resources associated with the karst landscape and possible affects of surface management activities on the karst landscape are described at length in Aley et al.1993; Baichtal 1993a and b; Baichtal 1995; Baichtal et al. 1996, Blackwell et al. 1995, Eberhard 1994; Griffiths 1991; Harding and Ford 1993; Huntoon 1992a and b; Kiernan 1993; Lewis 1995; Lichon 1993; US Forest Service 1994, 1995a and b, 1996a, b, and c; and White 1995.

As prescribed in the Karst Management Strategy outlined herein and in the revised Forest Plan (1997) and Baichtal et al. 1996, no harvest would occur on high vulnerability karst lands. From the original unit pool for the Chasina Project Area, several units were dropped and others modified to protect high vulnerability karst areas. The remaining acres of karst on which timber harvest is proposed can be characterized as moderate vulnerability karst lands which contain few discrete karst features of high vulnerability. It can be expected that 10 to 20 percent of the acres of harvest units proposed on karst lands will be deleted to protect discrete karst features.

No dye studies were conducted to determine the subsurface drainage systems present in the karst lands within the project area. Most systems seem to be rather simple with streams sinking into karst features along the upper boundary of a carbonate block and resurging along the lower boundary of the carbonate outcrop, traveling only short distances. The karst plateau north of the Halibut Creek Fault seems, for the most part, to drain to the northeast into a series of small lakes and into Halibut Creek. A few resurgences were mapped along the coastal margins of this carbonate band and along the southern limits. Because no dye studies were undertaken, and most streams which border the carbonate blocks are Class I or II, no ground-disturbing activity shall occur within 100 feet of any karst feature accepting a surface stream(s) or any resurgence.

Even though no dye traces were conducted, it is believed that there should be little chance of sediment or organic material entering the karst hydrologic systems. The epikarst is moderate-to well-developed and is visible at the surface. The soils are a mosaic of shallow organic soils and mineral soils and glacial till. The mineral and glacial soils infill the epikarst channels. Since the epikarst is not open to the conduits at depth, there should be little opportunity to move sediment and debris vertically into the karst hydrologic systems beneath. Partial suspension was required on these lands to minimize soil disturbance.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table GEO-2 illustrates by alternative the acres of karst proposed for harvest. Table GEO-3 lists the miles of roads atop karst needed to access harvest units, the percentage of the karst harvested on the National Forest, and total karst lands which will be affected. As can be seen from the table, acres of proposed harvest on karst varies from 0.0 to 337.8 acres. Currently, 51 percent of the forested karstlands have been harvested; the alternatives add an additional 1 percent to 5 percent of harvest on karst. As previously mentioned, none of the harvest is on high vulnerability karst and no proposed roads cross high vulnerability karstlands.

**Table GEO-2**  
**Acres of Proposed Harvest on Karstlands by Alternative**

Units	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
674-265*	0.00	0.00	0.04	0.04	0.04	0.04
678-303	0.00	0.00	14.34	14.34	14.34	14.34
678-312	0.00	0.00	7.28	7.28	7.28	7.28
678-324*	0.00	0.00	0.09	0.09	0.00	0.09
678-325	0.00	0.00	3.48	3.48	0.00	3.48
678-331*	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.01
678-334	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	12.12
679-392	0.00	0.00	18.06	18.06	0.00	18.06
679-403	0.00	0.00	0.00	70.54	0.00	70.54
679-409	0.00	0.00	79.88	79.88	79.88	79.88
679-420	0.00	38.42	0.00	38.42	38.42	38.42
679-422	0.00	29.34	0.00	29.34	29.34	29.34
679-425	0.00	0.00	18.52	18.52	0.00	18.52
679-437W	0.00	0.00	21.52	21.52	21.52	21.52
679-450	0.00	5.68	5.68	5.68	5.68	5.68
681-316	0.00	4.24	0.00	0.00	0.00	4.24
681-322	0.00	14.04	0.00	0.00	0.00	14.04
681-332*	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.17
<b>Total Acreage</b>	<b>0.00</b>	<b>91.72</b>	<b>168.89</b>	<b>307.19</b>	<b>196.50</b>	<b>337.77</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, GIS query, TNF

\* Acres of karst shown for these harvest units likely represents GIS mapping errors.

Table GEO-3  
Effects of the Alternatives on Karst Lands

Item	Units	1	2	3	4	5	6
Area of Karst Within Units	Acres	0.00	91.71	168.89	307.13	196.49	337.75
% Karsts Harvested on USFS Lands	% Area	17.16	20.18	22.72	27.28	23.63	28.29
% Total Karsts Harvested	% Area	48.79	50.05	51.12	53.02	51.50	53.44
% Forested Karsts Harvested	% Area	50.65	51.96	53.06	55.04	53.45	55.47
Miles of Roads on Karst	Miles New	0.00	0.89	2.21	1.85	1.77	2.74
	Miles Existing	17.62	17.62	17.62	17.62	17.62	17.62
	Miles Total	17.62	18.51	19.83	19.47	19.39	20.36
	% Change	0.00	5.05	12.54	10.50	10.05	15.55

Based on 7,263 acres of total carbonate, 3,036 acres of USFS carbonate, 3,544 total acres of harvest on carbonate, 521 existing acres of harvest on USFS carbonate, and 266 acres of karst above 1,500 feet.

## Mitigation

### Mineral Resources

No mitigation measures are recommended in relation to possible mineral development in the area. All known mineral improvements, such as mine claim markers, would be protected.

### Karst Resources

On moderate vulnerability karst lands where timber harvest is proposed, the following karst management objectives and land uses are appropriate. The intent of this mitigation is to provide for other land uses taking into account karst management objectives. Timber harvest and related activities could be conducted in such areas under more restrictive guidelines than normally employed on lands underlain by non-carbonate bedrock. To protect the fragile soils found here, as a minimum, the yarding system selected may be required to achieve partial suspension. Longer timber harvest rotational periods may be appropriate. Reduced timber harvest unit size and a greater dispersal of harvest units may be required. Existing roads and quarries will be utilized in preference to the construction of new ones. Roads shall avoid sinkholes and other collapse features and losing streams. At no time shall roads divert water to or from karst features. Measures shall be taken to reduce erosion and sediment transport from the road surface and cutslopes. Sediment traps, cut and fill slope revegetation, and road closure and revegetation may be appropriate. Because karst development is more intense here, additional design criteria may be required. Such criteria may relate to road construction methods, blasting, culvert placement and density, and sediment retention and erosion prevention. No quarry shall be developed atop karst without adequate site survey and design. Quarries should be properly closed after abandonment. Recreational development would be appropriate with consideration of the karst resource values listed above, particularly with respect to reducing disturbance of sensitive soils and use of construction methods that avoid erosion and diversion of natural and road drainage waters into karst features.

# 3 Environment and Effects

It is probable that within and adjacent to areas found to be of moderate vulnerability, will be karst areas with high vulnerability. Karst lands found to be of unquestionably high vulnerability shall be identified and removed from the commercial forest lands suitable land base. Along such boundaries or margins the following guidelines shall apply:

1. No surface disturbing activity such as timber harvest, road construction, and/or quarry development shall occur within a minimum of 100 feet of the edge of a sinkhole, collapse channel, doline field, losing stream, or other collapse karst feature if groundwater dye tracing studies have indicated that such features contribute to Class I or Class II streams or a domestic water supply. If groundwater dye tracing studies have not been completed, and it is suspected that the groundwaters contribute to a "significant" cave, Class I or II stream, or domestic water supply, no ground disturbing activity shall occur within 100 feet of any above mentioned karst features;
2. No surface disturbing activity such as timber harvest, road construction, and/or quarry development will occur on lands that overlie a known "significant" cave or on lands that are known to contribute surface drainage into the hydrologic system of a "significant cave". Neither should these activities occur on lands that are close enough to the entrance of a significant cave to be capable of altering the microclimate of the cave's entrance and/or cave features within;
3. When designing buffers to protect karst systems and their features, the buffer should be designed to be windfirm. There is no credible standard buffer distance that will provide the assurance required to protect the systems from blowdown of the forest within a given buffer. Each buffer must be carefully designed considering wind direction patterns, blowdown history, previous adjacent harvest, topography, and stand windfirmness. Delineated lands surrounding such features and systems must be of sufficient size to insure protection even if blowdown occurs.

## Monitoring

A monitoring strategy should be developed and maintained which determines the effects of land uses, specifically timber harvest and road construction, on the karst landscape. As a minimum, karst hydrology, soil loss, forest regeneration, sedimentation, and debris transport should be monitored.



## Wildlife

### Key Terms

**Carrying capacity**—the maximum number of a wildlife species that a certain area will support through the most critical period of the year.

**Habitat**—the sum total of environmental conditions of a specific place that is occupied by an organism, population, or community of plants or animals.

**Habitat capability**—an estimated number of animals that a habitat could potentially sustain.

**Management Indicator Species (MIS)**—species of vertebrates and invertebrates whose population changes are believed to best indicate the effects of land management activities.

**Viable population**—the number of individuals of a species required to ensure the long-term existence of the species in natural, self-sustaining populations adequately distributed throughout their region.

**Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs)**—divisions of land designated by the Alaska Department of Fish and Game and used by the Forest Service for wildlife analysis.

## Affected Environment

Alaska's wildlife are valuable for aesthetic, economic, recreational, ecological, and subsistence reasons. Over 350 species of mammals, birds, amphibians, and reptiles occur on the Tongass National Forest, and most of these, except brown bear and mountain goat, can be found in the Chasina Project Area. They occupy a diverse range of land types and plant communities and are variably adapted to climatic extremes, change in habitat, predation, and hunting pressure.

### Management Indicator Species (MIS)

Management Indicator Species (MIS) are species of vertebrates and invertebrates whose population changes are believed to best indicate the effects of land management activities (USDA Forest Service 1982). Through the MIS concept, the total number of species occurring within a project area is reduced to a manageable set of species that collectively represent the complex of habitats, species, and associated management concerns. The MIS are also used to help set management goals for species in public demand (TLMP 1997).

### 3 Environment and Effects

The following have been selected as MIS for this project and will be discussed in detail in this chapter:

Species	Rational for Selection
Sitka black-tailed deer	Important game species
Marten	Old growth; important furbearer
Black bear	Represents estuarine habitat; game species
Bald eagle	Old-growth coastline; high public interest
River otter	Represents riparian habitat; furbearer
Hairy woodpecker	Cavity excavator
Brown creeper	Represents large, high volume, old-growth trees
Vancouver Canada goose	Represents riparian habitat; game species
Alexander Archipelago wolf	Species of concern

The following species were selected as Tongass National Forest MIS, but have not been selected as MIS for the Chasina Project Area:

Species	Rationale for Nonselection
Brown bear	Does not occur in Project Area
Red-breasted sapsucker	Abundant and adaptable in Project Area
Mountain goat	Does not occur in Project Area
Red squirrel	Does not occur in Project Area

#### Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs)

Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs) represent divisions of land that the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G) uses for data collection purposes and the Forest Service uses for wildlife analysis purposes. WAAs included in the Chasina Project Area are 1210, 1211, and 1213 (Figure WIL-1). Specific VCUs that are included within Project Area WAAs are listed in Table WIL-1. See the Subsistence section of this chapter for a further analysis of wildlife species by WAA.

Table WIL-1  
VCUs Within Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs) and Percent of the WAA that Includes the Project Area

WAA	% of WAA in Project Area	VCUs
1210	5	682
1211	100	677, 678, 679, 680, 681
1213	6	674

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, GIS Data Base.

Figure WIL-1  
Wildlife Analysis Areas



Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAAs) are divisions of land identified by ADF&G and used by the USDA Forest Service for wildlife analysis.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Major Habitat Categories

The following categories are the different types of environments in which the MIS species occur. The environment can be described in physical or biological terms, which often includes elevation, topography, and type of vegetative community. A species may occupy a range of different habitats or more than one distinct kind of habitat in different seasons. Terrestrial habitats in the Chasina Project Area include:

- Beach fringe
- Estuary fringe
- Riparian
- Forest
  - Old-growth forest
  - Second-growth forest
- Alpine/subalpine
- Muskeg (Peatlands)

A brief description of these habitats follows. Table WIL-2 displays an acreage inventory of each habitat by WAA. Note that because several categories overlap each other (e.g., beach fringe may contain some old-growth and some riparian habitats), the sum of the total acres will not be the same as the total acreage for the Project Area.

Table WIL-2  
Major Habitat Categories in the Project Area, 1996 (by Wildlife Analysis Area), in Acres\*

WAA	1,000 ft. Beach Fringe	Old- Growth Forest	Second- Growth Forest	Commercial Forest	Alpine Subalpine	Riparian Management Area	Muskeg
1210	924	4,256	32	2,453	2	596	272
1211	4,107	31,306	1,931	20,322	1,117	8,321	1,090
1213	112	1,869	0	1,403	390	753	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>5,143</b>	<b>37,431</b>	<b>1,963</b>	<b>24,178</b>	<b>1,509</b>	<b>9,670</b>	<b>1,362</b>

\* Certain use areas overlap. For example, old-growth and second-growth forest are also included in beach fringe and estuary fringe habitats.

#### Beach Fringe

For the purposes of this analysis, beach fringe is the land within 1,000 feet of the mean high tide and excludes estuarine habitats. Areas within 1,000 feet of the ocean shoreline are transitional zones between land and water, salt and freshwater, and vegetated and non-vegetated conditions (USDA Forest Service 1979a). Forested areas in this transitional zone are heavily used by species with high economic, recreational, subsistence, or aesthetic values. Black bear, river otter, bald eagle, marten, Sitka black-tailed deer, and Vancouver Canada goose concentrate their activities during some seasons in these forest stands. No alternatives in the Chasina EIS propose any additional timber harvest within beach fringe.

#### Estuary Fringe

Estuary fringe habitat is a 1,000-foot zone around estuaries. Bears, Vancouver Canada goose and other waterfowl, mink, river otters, and eagles are the primary users of the estuary fringe habitat. The estuary fringe is similar to beach fringe, but because of species diversity, it has a



greater value to wildlife, especially black bears, furbearers, bald eagles, and waterfowl. No harvest is proposed within the estuary fringe in any of the alternatives for the Chasina Project Area.

## **Riparian**

The riparian habitat is recognized as some of the most productive wildlife habitat in Southeast Alaska. It occurs along rivers and streams or around inland lakes, and contains elements of both aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems. Many wildlife species use riparian zones to a much greater extent than other areas (USDA Forest Service 1985), and riparian habitats are extremely important for eagles, furbearers, and black bears (USDA Forest Service 1986). Riparian areas are important migration routes for some wildlife species and serve as travel routes for numerous species because of the presence of water, food, and cover.

Alternatives described in this EIS do not propose any harvest adjacent to Class I or II streams or lakes larger than 5 acres, except for road construction; the width of all proposed buffer strips is at least 100 feet. For additional information see the Soils and Aquatics sections of this chapter.

## **Forest**

Forest habitat includes all areas with forest cover, including old growth and second growth described below, and noncommercial forest land as described in the Silviculture and Timber section of this chapter. Many wildlife species, including those associated with old-growth stands, will to different degrees use all forested areas within the Project Area.

### **Old-growth Forest**

Old-growth forest is characterized by stands of trees, usually well past the age of maturity with declining growth rates and signs of decadence, such as dead and dying trees, snags, and downed woody material. The stand usually includes large diameter trees, multi-layered canopies, a range of tree diameter sizes, and the notable presence of understory vegetation. These and other characteristics make old-growth forests important habitat for Sitka black-tailed deer, marten, black bear, and cavity nesting birds such as the hairy woodpecker. These forests are in a dynamic, steady state where the death of old trees is balanced by the growth of new trees. This category of old growth includes the unproductive forest as well as the productive commercial forest lands. Old-growth forest acres are also included in beach fringe, estuary fringe, riparian, and other habitat areas. For a more detailed discussion of old-growth vegetation, see the Silviculture, Timber, and Other Vegetation and Biodiversity sections of this chapter.

### **Second-growth Forest**

Second-growth forest is defined for the purposes of this section as consisting mostly of areas that have been harvested. Large-scale second-growth stands are of lower value to wildlife such as deer, marten, bear, and cavity nesters. Conifer seedlings aggressively invade and eventually shade out desirable herbaceous vegetation and provide fewer trees and snags suitable for excavation by woodpeckers and other cavity users. This habitat type was inventoried to help display the amount of past timber harvest activity that has occurred within the Chasina Project Area. Some second-growth forest has been created naturally by windthrow, landslides, and avalanches.

### **Alpine/Subalpine**

The alpine/subalpine category includes all stands at or above treeline, including open meadows of grasses, forbs, and shrubs; and scrub forest (Sidle and Suring 1986). Subalpine habitat includes a mosaic of forested, scrub, and non-forested stands that occur at higher elevation than the upland forest, at the lower edge of the alpine zone (Sidle and Suring 1986). Alpine/subalpine habitat within the Chasina Project Area is generally above 2,000 feet in elevation. These habitats are important summer foraging areas for deer and black bear.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Wildlife Habitat Capability Models

##### Muskeg (Peatlands)

Muskegs are most often characterized by stunted Alaska yellow cedar and shore pine, along with sedges and other bog vegetation. Muskegs dominated by sphagnum moss or tall sedge cover smaller areas. The water table is at the surface, and numerous small ponds are scattered throughout the muskeg.

Wildlife models were used to calculate habitat capability for each MIS in the Project Area. For specific information on the models used, see Appendix B of the TLMP 1997. Because of the amount of timber harvest on non-National Forest System lands throughout the Ketchikan Administrative Area, a maximum potential impact was assumed and no habitat capability was calculated for State or private lands. There are 1,744 acres of conveyed State Selection land and 18,223 acres conveyed to Kootznoowoo Native Corporation within the 68,927 acre Project Area (see Land Adjustments, Uses, and Permits section of this chapter).

The terms "habitat capability" and "populations" are not interchangeable. Habitat capability is the estimated number of animals the habitat can support through the most critical period of the year. Population is the estimated number of animals actually present at a given time. Populations may temporarily exceed habitat capability (for example, due to a series of mild winters). Population numbers for many species can vary widely from year to year as a result of many factors other than habitat capability. The models were never intended to represent population models that consider fecundity, mortality, population age structure, etc. and often incorporate an element of "random" environmental events that can affect populations.

Given data limitations, the complexity of ecological relationships, and the need to simplify variables for use in the models, actual population sizes in some areas may vary considerably from those predicted by the analysis. However, the procedures provide estimates of habitat capability that over time are expected to be a reasonable indicator of population trends as they relate to the amount and quality of habitat only. Actual populations at any given point in time can be greatly influenced by weather, hunting, trapping, disease, predation and related factors. Table WIL-3 estimates the 1954 and the current (1996) wildlife habitat capability in the Project Area.

Table WIL-3  
Wildlife Habitat Capability Within the Chasina Project Area

Selected MIS	1954*	1996*	Percent Change.
Sitka Black-tailed Deer**	2,094***	1,753***	-16
Marten**	97	86	-11
Black Bear	86	77	-10
Bald Eagle	123	121	-2
River Otter	52	52	0
Hairy Woodpecker**	900	890	-1
Brown Creeper**	1,983	1,947	-2
Vancouver Canada Goose	242	222	-8
Wolf	7	5.8	-16

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability models.

\* Habitat Capability for just the portion of WAAs in the Project Area.

\*\* Patch-size Effectiveness calculations are displayed in the Biodiversity section.

\*\*\* Originally run using Suring 1992 Deer Model, has been modified proportionally to reflect results of the 1996 Modified Panel Model.

## Sitka Black-tailed Deer

The Sitka black-tailed deer was chosen as an MIS because it is an important game and subsistence species and is seasonally associated with old-growth forests.

Historically, population fluctuations of Sitka black-tailed deer in Southeast Alaska have been linked with winter severity (Merriam 1970) and predation pressure (Van Ballenberghe and Hanley 1984). Deep snow and late springs associated with severe winters have occurred several times in the past 80 years. Deer die-offs are common during severe winters, even in the best old-growth winter ranges. Predators of deer, wolves, bears, and hunters, can also contribute to the population decline during these winters, inhibiting subsequent recovery of the deer population. In general, winter severity increases with latitude and with a decreased maritime influence in Southeast Alaska (Longhurst and Robinette 1981); within the Project Area, VCUs 679, 680, and 681 have a low snow depth rating, and VCUs 674, 677, 678, and 682 have a moderate snow-depth rating.

Research conducted throughout Southeast Alaska indicates that high volume, old-growth forests at lower elevations are essential to maintaining a sustainable deer population during severe winters (Schoen et al. 1985; Hanley and Rose 1987; Yeo and Peek 1992). Large strong branches, characteristic of the old-growth stands, intercept snow, allowing the deer to maintain access to the available forage. High volume stands of old-growth forests support adequate herb and shrub layers of deer forage. In most cases, timber harvest of deer winter range reduces the long-term quality of deer winter range. Effects on deer populations are compounded by the combination of deep-snow winters and large amounts of deer winter range converted to second growth. Snow significantly reduces forage availability in clearcuts during the winter. Closed canopy second-growth stands provide little to no forage. The amount of second growth and winter severity are key factors in determining the capability of the land to support deer populations.

An interagency model (DeGayner et al. 1996) was developed to evaluate the potential quality of winter habitat for Sitka black-tailed deer. Winter is assumed to be the most limiting season for the Sitka black-tailed deer throughout the area (Hanley and McKendrick 1985, cited by Suring et al. 1992). The deer model incorporated the following factors in the analysis: (1) snow conditions, (2) physiographic features including aspect and elevation, (3) vegetational characteristics including: (a) volume class of old growth, (b) forest type, (c) second growth (25 to 150 years), and (d) clearcut (0 to 25 years).

Results of the deer model indicates there is a habitat capability for approximately 1,753 deer in the Chasina Project Area (Table WIL-3). This represents a 16 percent reduction in habitat capability since 1954, because of past timber harvest. Table WIL-4 shows habitat capability by WAA at current conditions and before 1954.

Three of the seven VCUs that make up the Chasina Area are rated as "low snow" which results in a higher deer habitat capability. National Forest System land within the Chasina Project Area is good deer habitat, primarily because of low elevation, low snow, and large blocks of forest cover. This corresponds with what was observed during field reconnaissance; most of the best deer habitat is in the low elevation areas around Kitkun Bay, Cannery Creek, and Chasina Point.



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table WIL-4

**ADF&G Population Objectives and Deer Habitat Capability by WAA for 1954 and 1996 in the Chasina Project Area and for the Entire WAA**

WAA	ADF&G Population Objectives	1954 Habitat Capability Entire WAA	1954 Habitat Capability Project Area	1996 Habitat Capability Project Area	1996 Habitat Capability Entire WAA	Percent Change	
						Project Area	Entire WAA
1210	1,950	2,486	180*	172*	2,486	-4*	0
1211	1,653	1,880	1,860*	1,527*	1,783	-18*	<1
1213	906	858	54*	54*	849	0*	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>4,509**</b>	<b>5,224</b>	<b>2,094</b>	<b>1,753</b>	<b>5,118</b>	<b>-16</b>	<b>&lt;1</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and Sitka Black-tailed Deer Habitat Capability Model, Suring et al, 1992.

\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations.

\*\* Numbes based on Suring 1991 Model.

#### Deer Population Objectives

The ADF&G has established deer population objectives for all WAAs in Southeast Alaska for the years 1991-1995. The population objectives for the individual WAAs can be found in "Population Objectives-Strategic Plan for Management of Deer in Southeastern Alaska 1991-95" (ADF&G 1991).

Deer population objectives for the WAAs range from maintaining deer habitat at 100 percent of the 1954 level, to 75 percent of the 1954 level. The existing habitat capability for deer in all WAAs in the Project Area is above ADF&G population objectives. A complete analysis of how projected Forest-wide timber harvest levels affect deer habitat capability compared to the ADF&G population objectives can be found in the TLMP 1997.

#### Marten

The marten was selected as an MIS to represent old-growth associated species. The marten is also an important furbearer. Marten populations are moderate in the Project Area. High pelt prices, susceptibility to trapping pressure, and liberal trapping regulations have created a large demand for marten.

Marten prefer mature old-growth forests with a well developed overhead canopy. Snags and downed woody debris are important to martens for winter and summer dens and resting sites and cover for prey species. The distribution and abundance of marten is determined to a large extent by the availability of cover and the presence of prey species (Simon 1980).

Throughout the year, especially in the winter, small mammals are an important food source for martens. During the summer their diet is supplemented by birds, insects, fruits, and berries.

The marten model was developed to evaluate the potential quality of winter habitat for the marten (Suring et al. 1988a). The underlying assumption is that if adequate winter habitat is available, habitat requirements throughout the rest of the year will not be limited. The model incorporated the following factors in the analysis: (1) classes of timber volume in old-growth forests, (2) stand size classes (stand age), (3) beach fringe habitat, (4) riparian habitat, (5) elevation, and (6) old-growth patch size.



The marten model (without patch-size effectiveness or road densities taken into consideration) indicates there is habitat capability for an estimated 86 martens in the Chasina Project Area (Table WIL-3). This 11 percent decline from the 1954 habitat capability of 97 marten is due to past harvest activity.

## **Black Bear**

The black bear was selected as an MIS to represent estuarine habitat. The black bear is also an important game species. Black bears occur throughout the Project Area, and populations are currently stable. As of the 1990/91 black bear harvest season, nonresident hunters have been limited to one black bear, while Alaska residents may harvest two black bear.

Black bears are highly adaptable and can tolerate moderate disturbances, such as habitat alteration, as long as the basic requirements for food and cover are satisfied (Lawrence 1979). As clearcut stands mature, both forage resources and numbers of denning sites may decline.

After emergence from dens in the spring, black bears seek sources of new plant growth for food (Mondafferi 1982). Grass flats of estuaries, low elevation forests near the beach (beach fringe habitats), and avalanche slopes provide the needed high quality forage. The Kitkun Bay estuary receives heavy spring and summer bear use. During the summer, black bears feed on forbs, berries, and salmon. In the fall they feed on berries and forbs (Sidle and Suring 1986) in the subalpine areas.

Bear den sites include: (1) cavities in trees and stumps; (2) caves; and (3) excavated and natural depressions under tree roots, stumps, and fallen logs. Black bears search for food in clearcuts that provide access to cover, which is found in mature and old-growth forests. Clearcuts 10 to 15 years old are preferred because of the production of large amounts of berries (Lindzey and Menslow 1977).

The model for black bears incorporated the following factors in the analysis: (1) the average annual value of upland habitats, (2) the average annual value of riparian habitats and potential salmon production, and (3) the average annual value of beach fringe habitats. (For more information regarding the model see: Suring et al. 1988b.)

The black bear model indicates there is habitat capability for an estimated 77 black bears in the Chasina Project Area (Table WIL-3). This is a 10 percent decline from the pre-1954 habitat capability of 86 black bears.

## **Bald Eagle**

The bald eagle was selected as an MIS because the public has a strong interest in the species and the species has special habitat requirements. Bald eagle habitat is defined as beach fringe habitat. The majority of eagles in Southeast Alaska nest in coniferous forest habitats along the coastline and associated saltwater inlets (Suring et al. 1988c). Eagles prefer to nest in continuous stands of old growth rather than in narrow leave strips of old-growth trees. Of the 3,850 nests surveyed in Southeast Alaska, 92 percent were within 300 feet of the shoreline (Hodges and Robards 1982).

Bald eagles nest adjacent to the habitats that provide the best opportunities for foraging or searching for food, such as over open water and on tidal flats. Eagles primarily feed on fish, but are also known to feed on water birds, marine invertebrates, and carrion. Perch sites near the nest and foraging areas are also important components of bald eagle habitat. The bald eagle and its habitat have been given special protection through the Bald Eagle Protection Act as implemented by an Interagency Agreement between the Forest Service and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USDA Forest Service and USDI Fish and Wildlife Service 1990).

Among the provisions of the Interagency Agreement are: requirement of a 330-foot vegetation protection buffer around eagle nests, timing restrictions for blasting within one half mile of known nests, and a requirement that formal consultation with the U.S. Fish and

### 3 Environment and Effects

Wildlife Service take place when any portion of the agreement cannot be implemented. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and Forest Service personnel have identified 59 nest sites in the Chasina Project Area. Table WIL-5 displays the number of identified eagle nests which occur in each WAA.

Table WIL-5  
Number of Eagle Nests by WAA

WAA	# Nests
1210	0
1211	56
1213	3
<b>Total</b>	<b>59</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base.

The model evaluated only the nesting habitat of bald eagles because limited information is available on the winter habitats and movements of bald eagles in Southeast Alaska (Suring et al. 1988c). The model considered the following factors in the analysis: (1) old-growth forest, (2) volume class, (3) distance from shore, and (4) elevation of riparian habitat.

The model indicates there is nesting habitat capability for an estimated 121 eagles (Table WIL-3). This is a 2 percent decline from the pre-1954 habitat capability of 123 eagles. Some evidence exists that nest sites are not the most limiting factor (TLMP 1997).

#### River Otter

The river otter was selected as an MIS to represent riparian habitats. The river otter is also an important furbearer.

River otters concentrate along intertidal zones and the adjacent narrow beach fringe. They also travel extensively throughout streamside habitats. The old-growth forests in Southeast Alaska are assumed to provide optimum habitat for river otters (Suring et al. 1988d), with seedling and sapling (i.e. clearcut) and pole timber stands providing limited habitat. High value otter habitat must provide adequate shelter in addition to sufficient food (Melquist and Hornocker 1983). River otters feed on fish (primarily sculpins and rockfish), crabs, and occasional invertebrates other than crabs (Sidle and Suring 1986).

River otters depend on large woody debris in streamside, lakeside, and beach habitats. The large extensive root systems, downed tree trunks, and overturned root wads of old-growth trees create undercuts and hollows that maintain den and resting sites and cover. From May through July, female otters use old-growth habitats near streams for inland dens (up to 0.5 miles from the coastline). The annual harvest of river otter on the Tongass National Forest has varied from a high in 1979-80 of 652 animals, to a low of 373 animals in the 1986-87 harvest season. Harvest numbers are a function of both otter abundance and trapper effort.

Habitat capability for this species was determined for spring (May through July) because river otters make use of all occupied habitats at this time of year (Suring et al. 1988d). The model incorporated the following factors in the analysis: (1) distance from saltwater, (2) beach, (3) estuary, (4) elevation of riparian habitat, (5) volume class, (6) stream class, and (7) lake size.

The model indicates there is habitat capability for an estimated 52 otters (Table WIL-3) in the Chasina Project Area, which indicates no decline in habitat capability from 1954.

## **Hairy Woodpecker**

The hairy woodpecker was chosen as an MIS representing cavity users because of its preference for stands of old-growth western hemlock and Sitka spruce, and for its association with snags (standing dead trees). Hairy woodpeckers are year-round residents in Southeast Alaska and use snags and partially dead trees for nesting and foraging. These woodpeckers feed on the larvae of wood-boring beetles, and other insects. In the winter seeds and berries are eaten (Sidle and Suring 1986).

The hairy woodpecker is important as a primary cavity excavator because by creating holes in trees it creates habitat needed for other wildlife species (Kessler 1979; Noble and Harrington 1977). Forty-two species of mammals and birds in Southeast Alaska nest or den in tree cavities, including woodpeckers, owls, hawks, waterfowl, bats, squirrels, martens, and otters. Several of these species depend exclusively on cavities in the large diameter snags characteristic of old-growth stands for nest and den sites. Most cavity nesting or denning species would be represented by hairy woodpeckers and respond similarly to proposed activities.

Hairy woodpecker habitat is defined as Volume Class 4 through 7 timber stands below the subalpine category. Availability of suitable winter habitat for roosting and foraging is considered an important constraint on the habitat suitability of the hairy woodpecker. The model (Suring et al. 1988e) incorporates the following factors in the analysis: (1) old-growth forests, (2) volume class, and (3) old-growth patch size.

The model indicates there is habitat capability in the Chasina Area for an estimated 890 hairy woodpeckers (Table WIL-3). This is a 1 percent decline from the pre-1954 habitat capability of 900 woodpeckers.

## **Brown Creeper**

The brown creeper was chosen as an MIS because it is associated with large, old-age trees and represents the old-growth forest community. Brown creepers and other bark foraging birds also select larger diameter trees as foraging sites during cold, windy weather to lessen their exposure (Grubb 1975, Webber 1986). The diet of brown creepers consists of the larvae, pupae, and eggs of insects gleaned from the crevices of bark; spiders; other small invertebrates; and occasionally seeds (Pearson 1923, Reilly 1968). Large diameter trees are preferred because a bird can feed longer on a large tree and capture more prey per visit (Airola and Barrett 1985).

The abundance of large coarse-barked trees and the length of the vertical foraging height appears to affect the territory size (Apfelbaum and Hanley 1977); the area necessary to support the birds increases as the number of large, tall trees decreases. Brown creepers spend most of their time foraging on live rather than dead trees (Morrison et al. 1987).

Brown creeper habitat is defined as Volume Class 6 and 7. Slightly more than one-tenth of the number of brown creepers observed in stands with 30,000 board feet per acre were observed in stands with 20-30,000 board feet per acre (i.e., Volume Class 5) (Hughes 1985). Other habitats in Southeast Alaska were not considered to provide suitable habitat for brown creepers.

The model indicates there is habitat capability in the Chasina Project Area for an estimated 1,947 brown creepers (Table WIL-3). This is a 2 percent decline from the pre-1954 habitat capability of 1,983 brown creepers.



### 3 Environment and Effects

#### **Vancouver Canada Goose**

The Vancouver Canada goose was selected as an MIS to represent old-growth and riparian habitats. The Vancouver Canada goose is also a game species.

Banding studies have indicated Vancouver Canada geese are primarily nonmigratory (Ratti and Timm 1979) and are found almost exclusively in Southeast Alaska. These geese use forested habitats for nesting and brood rearing; they place nests in trees, use trees for perches during incubation, and rely primarily on forest understory plant species for food during this part of their life cycle (Doyle et al. 1988). Lebeda and Ratti (1983) suggest that the three most important factors for nesting Vancouver Canada geese are: (1) dense understory vegetation, (2) forest surrounding surface water, and (3) an abundant food source.

For an analysis of the effects on Vancouver Canada geese, the model developed by Doyle et al. (*Habitat Capability Model for Vancouver Canada Goose in Southeast Alaska; Nesting and Brood Rearing Habitat* 1988) was used. This model only considered those habitats within 2,600 feet of uncontained river channels, lakes, or salt water as being suitable for Vancouver Canada geese.

The model indicates there is habitat capability in the Chasina Project Area for an estimated 222 Canada geese (Table WIL-3). This is an 8 percent decline from the pre-1954 habitat capability of 242 Canada geese.

#### **Alexander Archipelago (Gray) Wolf**

The wolf was selected as an MIS species because of public concerns over what effects additional timber harvest and higher road densities would have on the wolf population within the Chasina Project Area.

Wolves do not exhibit a preference for specific habitats or habitat characteristics (Paradiso and Nowak 1982). The presence and well being of wolves appears to be dependant on the availability of prey rather than on landform, climate, or vegetation.

A review of the population dynamics of wolves demonstrated that rates of increases are primarily determined by the availability of deer and other ungulate prey (Keith 1983). Packard and Mech (1980) concluded that intrinsic social factors and the influence of food supply are interrelated in determining population levels of wolves. It has been demonstrated that predation by wolves sustains declines in ungulate populations that have been initiated by other factors (e.g., severe weather, habitat changes) (Mech and Karns 1977, Nelson and Mech 1981, Gasaway et al. 1983, Van Ballenberghe and Hanley 1984, Smith et al. 1986).

Prey species available to wolves in Southeast Alaska include Sitka black-tailed deer, moose, mountain goat, beaver, and spawning salmon. Of these species, deer, beaver, and spawning salmon are the primary prey in the Chasina Project Area.

The habitat capability model developed for wolf primarily runs off the habitat capability model outputs of the deer, moose, and mountain goat models. For the Project Area, only the deer habitat capability model outputs were used since moose and mountain goats do not occur in the area. The wolf habitat capability model estimates the Chasina Project Area can support approximately 6 wolves (Table WIL-3). This is a 16 percent reduction from the pre-1954 habitat capability of approximately 7 wolves.



## Effects of the Alternatives

This analysis considers the direct, indirect, and cumulative effects of timber management in the Project Area. Direct effects are projected to 1998, the anticipated end of the current proposed action; to 2004, which includes the reasonably foreseeable future; to 2040, to show the cumulative impacts of past and proposed timber harvest; and to 2140, to show the cumulative impacts of harvesting all the suitable lands through the first rotation and halfway through the second.

### Direct and Indirect Effects on Wildlife Habitat

Each action alternative includes harvest of wildlife habitat. Project unit design criteria, BMPs (FSH 2509.22, 1991), and/or legislated protective measures (TTRA) and Forest Standards and Guidelines significantly reduce or eliminate potential impacts to beach fringe, estuary fringe, and riparian habitats in each alternative. Alpine/subalpine habitat is not affected by road and unit location because of inaccessibility and/or low productivity. Changes throughout the Project Area in these habitats are 1 percent or less for each alternative (Table WIL-6). Impacts to MIS that depend on these habitats are low. Alternative 1, the no-action alternative, will harvest no acreage, with the effect that existing wildlife habitats will remain at current levels, with changes over time due only to natural succession or future timber harvest.

Table WIL-6 displays the percent change in wildlife habitats as a result of timber harvest.

Table WIL-6  
Proposed Acres for Harvest and Percent Change from 1954 in Wildlife Habitats by Alternative

	1954 Acres	Existing Acres	Alt. 1		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6	
			Acres Cut	% Chg	Acres Cut	% Chg	Acres Cut	% Chg	Acres Cut	% Chg	Acres Cut	% Chg	Acres Cut	% Chg
1,000 ft. Beach Fringe	5,143	5,143	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Riparian	9,670	9,670	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Old-Growth VC 4-7	26,141	24,178	0	0	986	4	1,710	7	1,619	7	1,498	6	2,520	10
Alpine/ Subalpine	3,115	3,115	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, GIS Data Base.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Beach Fringe

None of the alternatives propose any timber harvest within the 1,000-foot beach fringe zone.

## Estuary Fringe

None of the alternatives were designed to harvest timber within the 1,000-foot estuary fringe zone.

## Riparian

For the purpose of this analysis, riparian habitat was identified by using riparian soils, and the Riparian Area Prescriptions as shown in Appendix C. TTRA buffers, or 100-foot minimum buffers around lakes larger than five acres, are not proposed for harvest.

## Old-growth Forest

Old-growth forest comprises 37,265 acres of which 24,178 acres is commercial forest (Volume Class 4-7) in the Project Area. Only impacts to commercial forest lands are addressed because these lands are considered to be important wildlife habitat. Within some harvest units are scattered patches of nonforested or low productivity forest types. The biggest difference among the alternatives is the total number of acres scheduled for harvest for each particular alternative. Alternative 2 proposes to harvest 4 percent of the existing commercial old-growth forest. Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6 harvest 7, 7, 6, and 10 percent respectively. The effects of old-growth habitat loss on old-growth associated species are reflected in Habitat Capability for MIS later in this section. For a discussion of the amount of timber harvest by volume class, see the Silviculture and Timber section of this chapter.

## Alpine/Subalpine

None of the action alternatives for the Chasina Project propose any timber harvest in the subalpine habitat.

## Direct and Indirect Effects on Habitat Capability

The previous section discusses changes to wildlife habitats used by the MIS. This section discusses how those changes in habitats affect the potential habitat capability for each MIS. As mentioned in the Affected Environment earlier in this section, the models that estimate the capability of habitats to support selected species are not necessarily accurate reflections of actual populations in the Project Area. Actual population levels are not known for a given period in time and probably never will be due to weather, hunting, trapping, disease, predation, and other related factors which are difficult or impossible to predict for any given time in the future. However, changes in the amount and quality of habitat, as estimated by each MIS model, are considered reasonable predictors of long-term changes in a population trend that is associated with the amount and quality of the habitat only.

Several MIS show a habitat/use relationship with the size of preferred habitats. The wildlife models for this analysis do not take into account those patch-size relationships for Sitka black-tailed deer, marten, and hairy woodpecker. Patch-size relationships are shown in the Biodiversity section. Direct impacts to black bears, otters, and bald eagles have been greatly reduced in all action alternatives through avoidance of timber harvest in beach fringe, estuary fringe, stream corridors, riparian, and alpine/subalpine habitats.

Alternative 1 would have no direct effect on habitat capabilities for any MIS. Tables WIL-7 through WIL-15 display the changes in habitat capabilities, measured against Alternative 1, that would occur under Alternatives 2 through 6.

## Sitka Black-tailed Deer

Sitka black-tailed deer are dependent on low elevation, high volume, old-growth stands during severe winters, and are affected by proposed timber harvest under the action alternatives. Alternative 2 would decrease habitat capability 4 percent in the Project Area

while Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6 would decrease habitat capability 6, 6, 6, and 9 percent, respectively (see Table WIL-7).

Second-growth canopy closure in timber stands 20 to 30 years after harvest may be delayed by thinning to promote forage production (Hanley et al. 1989). Second-growth forest management has been widely used in Southeast Alaska, but recent research has not documented benefits to Sitka black-tailed deer from thinning and canopy gaps.

**Table WIL-7**  
**Changes in Habitat Capability for Deer to Year 1998**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability*	1,753	1,683	1,645	1,650	1,651	1,595
Change in Capability	0	-70	-108	-103	-102	-158
Percent Change	0	-4	-6	-6	-6	-9

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations.

Table WIL-8 displays the amount of harvest of Deer Habitat Suitability Index (HSI); the higher the index, the better the site is for deer winter habitat. All alternatives harvest more acres of high HSI than of low and medium, but the high HSI category is also the most abundant.

**Table WIL-8**  
**Harvest of Deer Winter Habitat, by Habitat Suitability Index in Acres**

Habitat Suitability Index	Existing	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
0 (none)	19,807	0	15	45	104	79	166
.01-.20 (low)	11,595	0	101	148	157	80	239
.21-.42 (medium)	15,785	0	202	478	462	379	742
.43+ (high)	19,270	0	670	1,062	912	967	1,396
<b>Total Acres</b>	<b>66,457</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>988</b>	<b>1,733</b>	<b>1,635</b>	<b>1,505</b>	<b>2,543</b>

SOURCE: Data derived from GIS Data Base.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Black Bear

Avoidance of beach fringe, estuary fringe, stream corridors, and riparian habitat for timber harvest helps protect some of the most important black bear habitat. Alternatives would harvest habitat capable of supporting an estimated two to five black bear, representing a less than 3 to 6 percent decline in habitat capability (Table WIL-9).

Table WIL-9  
Changes in Habitat Capability for Black Bear to Year 1998

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability	77	75	73	74	74	72
Change in Capability	0	-2	-4	-3	-3	-5
Percent Change	0	-3	-5	-4	-4	-6

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

#### Marten

The marten is an old-growth associated species that uses a wide range of old-growth volume classes, tree species, and landscape positions. Alternatives 2 through 6 would harvest habitat capable of supporting an estimated three to eight martens, for a 3 to 9 percent decline in habitat capability (see Table WIL-10). Martens are easily trapped and can be over harvested, especially where trapping pressure is heavy (Strickland, et al., 1982) and not effectively controlled. Density of roads may affect the quality of habitat for marten through trapping, especially where there is potential of over trapping (Thompson 1988). Mean home range sizes reported for marten throughout their range are approximately 1 square mile (2.6 square kilometers) (Strickland, et al. 1982). Home ranges of males tend to be discrete but they overlap with the ranges of one or more females. Whenever roads are built within 2 miles (3.2 kilometers) of the beach or built less than 2 miles (3.2 kilometers) apart, a high risk exists that unregulated trapping on these roads will result in an over harvest of resident marten. It is assumed, therefore, that as road densities exceed 0.2 mi./mi.<sup>2</sup>, densities of marten will decrease. As road densities approach 0.6 mi./mi.<sup>2</sup>, marten densities could be reduced by as much as 90 percent due to greatly increased trapping pressure (Suring, et al. 1992). However, marten population reductions from trapping can be controlled by harvest regulations and road access management plans.

Road management objectives have been developed for the Project Area and can be found in Appendix J. Even with all proposed and existing roads closed to motorized traffic, there is still a potential for over harvesting marten since the Project Area is so accessible by boat.



**Table WIL-10**  
**Changes in Habitat Capability for Marten to Year 1998\***

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability**	86	83	81	81	81	78
Change in Capability	0	-3	-5	-5	-5	-8
Percent Change	0	-3	-6	-6	-6	-9

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

\* Without road density effects.

\*\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations.

### **River Otter**

The otter is a species that benefited from measures taken during unit design which limited timber harvest in beach fringe, estuary fringe, stream corridors, and riparian habitat. No impacts to river otter are anticipated. (Table WIL-11).

**Table WIL-11**  
**Changes in Habitat Capability for River Otter to Year 1998**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability	52	52	52	52	52	52
Changes in Capability	0	0	0	0	0	0
Percent Change	0	0	0	0	0	0

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

### **Hairy Woodpecker**

The hairy woodpecker is a primary excavator that prefers high volume, old-growth timber, but can also effectively use lower volume stands. Alternative 2 would decrease habitat capability 3 percent in the Project Area; Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6 would decrease habitat capability by 5, 6, 5, and 9 percent, respectively (Table WIL-12). Hairy woodpeckers may also benefit from snag retention in clearcuts as a mitigation of timber harvest (see Snag Abundance Analysis and Chapter 2 Mitigation).

Table WIL-12  
**Changes in Habitat Capability for Hairy Woodpecker to Year 1998 by Alternative**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability*	890	860	846	840	842	814
Change in Capability	0	-30	-44	-50	-48	-76
Percent Change	0	-3	-5	-6	-5	-9

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations.

## Snag Abundance Analysis

An analysis was completed for all VCUs within the Project Area to determine if prior harvest has reduced the number of snags to an undesirable level.

This analysis was accomplished by using a snag density of snags per acres for all the Volume Class 4-7 acres in each VCU. Areas that had been previously harvested were assumed to have no snags. In existing old-growth forest, the maximum number of snags per acre assumed to be usable was eight per acre, although more probably exist. It was assumed that more than eight snags per acre was in excess of nesting and courtship needs of the hairy woodpecker, which was the MIS chosen to represent cavity dwellers and users of snags for the Chasina Project Area; although, these snags could be used by other wildlife species. The analysis indicates that there is an adequate number of snags existing in VCUs 674, 678, 679, and 682. Some VCUs—677, 680, and 681 were identified as needing further analysis to confirm adequate distribution of snags. This was due to past timber harvest on other ownership or because proposed units were the only source of snags in the immediate vicinity (proposed units harvested a stringer of timber surrounded by non-commercial timber).

Based on map and photo review, the following units have been identified for snag retention, to maintain a good distribution of available snags:

Unit #	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
677-301						X
677-302						X
677-305						X
677-311						
677-315						
677-319						
677-327						
677-328						
679-441	X	X	X	X	X	X
679-392			X	X		X
680-330		X	X		X	X
681-322		X				X

## Brown Creeper

The brown creeper prefers large old-growth trees. All action alternatives would remove habitat capable of supporting an estimated 60 (Alternative 2) to 163 (Alternative 6) brown creepers (Table WIL-13). Alternative 2 would decrease habitat capability by 3 percent, while Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6 would decrease habitat capability by 4, 6, 6, and 8 percent, respectively.

Table WIL-13  
Changes in Habitat Capability for Brown Creeper to Year 1998

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability	1,947	1,887	1,864	1,839	1,836	1,784
Change in Capability	0	-60	-83	-108	-111	-163
Percent Change	0	-3	-4	-6	-6	-8

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Vancouver Canada Goose

The Vancouver Canada goose nests in forested areas in proximity to open water and preferred food plants. The action alternatives would harvest habitat capable of supporting an estimate of between 5 (Alternative 2) and 15 (Alternative 6) geese in the Project Area. The action alternatives would decrease habitat capability 2 to 7 percent in the Project Area (Table WIL-14).

**Table WIL-14**  
**Changes in Habitat Capability for Vancouver Canada Goose to Year 1998**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability	222	217	211	210	213	207
Change in Capability	0	-5	-11	-10	-9	-15
Percent Change	0	-2	-5	-5	-4	-7

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

#### Bald Eagle

Scheduling development activities away from beach fringe, estuary fringe, lake buffers, and Class I and II streams will effectively reduce impacts to bald eagle nesting habitat. A less than one percent decrease in nesting habitat capability is predicted for all alternatives (Table WIL-15). Management activities within 330 feet, one quarter mile, and one half mile of an eagle nest site are restricted by an Interagency Agreement between the Forest Service and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USDA Forest Service and USDI Fish and Wildlife Service 1990). For a list of units that may have timber harvest activities restricted to certain time periods, see Chapter 2 Mitigation Measures.

**Table WIL-15**  
**Changes in Nesting Habitat Capability for Bald Eagle to Year 1998**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability	121	121	121	121	121	121
Change in Capability	0	0	0	0	0	0
Percent Change	0	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1

SOURCE: USDA- Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

Note: < = less than; > = greater than

#### Alexander Archipelago Wolf

The wolf habitat capability model runs off the Sitka black-tailed deer habitat capability model, since there are not any moose or mountain goats in the Project Area. The habitat capability does not include the effects of road density, due to the fact that the road system is isolated and is not connected to any large population centers. The Cumulative Effects section includes a discussion of effects that might be anticipated if the road system was connected to



the Prince of Wales Island road system. This would greatly increase the accessibility of the area to hunters and trappers. The Project Area road system is currently used by hunters and trappers who boat to the area and then walk the roads or use ATVs. All action alternatives would remove habitat utilized by wolves. Alternative 2 would see a decrease in wolf habitat capability of 3 percent. Alternatives 3, 4, 5 and 6 would each reduce the habitat capability by 7, 5, 5, and 12 percent respectively.

**Table WIL-16**  
**Changes in Habitat Capability for Alexander Archipelago Wolf to Year 1998**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Habitat Capability	5.8	5.6	5.4	5.5	5.5	5.1
Change in Capability	0.0	-0.2	-0.4	-0.3	-0.3	-0.7
Percent Change	0.0	-3.0	-7.0	-5.0	-5.0	-12.0

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.



### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Comparison of Alternatives: Summary

Table WIL-17 summarizes the habitat capability for each MIS in 1954, 1996, and 1998. It also includes the percent change from 1954 to 1998.

Table WIL-17  
Summary of Habitat Capability in the Year 1998 and Percent Change from 1954

Species			Alt. 1		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6	
	1954	1996	1998	% Chg	1998	% Chg	1998	% Chg	1998	% Chg	1998	% Chg	1998	% Chg
Deer*	2,094	1,753	1,753	-16	1,683	-20	1,645	-21	1,650	-21	1,651	-21	1,595	-24
Black Bear	86	77	77	-10	75	-13	73	-15	74	-14	74	-14	72	-16
Marten*	97	86	86	-11	83	-14	81	-16	81	-16	81	-16	78	-20
Otter	52	52	52	0	52	0	52	0	52	0	52	0	52	0
Hairy Woodpecker*	900	890	890	-1	860	-5	846	-6	840	-7	842	-6	814	-10
Brown Creeper	1,983	1,947	1,947	-2	1,887	-5	1,864	-6	1,839	-7	1,836	-7	1,784	-10
Vancouver Canada Goose	242	222	222	-8	217	-10	211	-12	210	-13	213	-12	207	-14
Bald Eagle	123	121	121	-2	121	-2	121	-2	121	-2	121	-2	121	-2
Wolf	7	5.8	5.8	-17	5.6	-20	5.4	-23	5.5	-21	5.5	-21	5.1	-27

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations (see the Old-Growth/Biodiversity section).

#### Cumulative Effects: Reasonably Foreseeable

This portion of the analysis (reasonably foreseeable future) will focus on effects to the year 2004, which is halfway through the first rotation. The TLMP 1997 considers cumulative effects for 150 years and is incorporated here by reference.

Habitat capability was not calculated for State and private lands. This will represent a maximum potential impact, because even if these lands are harvested, they would be providing at least some minimal habitat capability.

Alternative 6 is used to display the reasonably foreseeable future actions because this is the maximum harvest alternative, and volume not harvested in other action alternatives could be harvested as part of another project by the year 2004.

Table WIL-18 shows the direct effects on habitat capability for MIS of the reasonably foreseeable actions from 1954 through 2004, using Alternative 6 as being equal to the total effects of the reasonably foreseeable actions of all the other alternatives.

Table WIL-18  
Reasonably Foreseeable Direct Changes in Habitat Capability for MIS, 1954-2004.

Species	Habitat Capability 1954	Habitat Capability 1996	Habitat * Capability 2004	Percent * Reduction From 1954
Sitka Black-tailed Deer **	2,094	1,753	1,595	-24
Black Bear***	86	77	72	-16
Marten ** ***	97	86	78	-20
River Otter	52	52	52	-2
Hairy Woodpecker **	900	890	814	-10
Brown Creeper **	1,983	1,947	1,784	-10
Vancouver Canada Goose	242	222	207	-14
Bald Eagle	123	121	121	-2
Wolf	7	5.8	5.1	-27

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

\* Based on Alternative 6, because Alternative 6 is the maximum harvest amount.

\*\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations (see Old-Growth/Biodiversity Section).

\*\*\* Does not consider effects of road densities.

## Total Cumulative Direct and Indirect Effects of Habitat Capability for MIS of Proposed Alternatives in 2040

Decreases in habitat capabilities projected to the end of 2004 are displayed in Table WIL-18. Alternative 6 is used to display the reasonably foreseeable future actions because this is the maximum harvest alternative, and volume not harvested in other action alternatives could be harvested as part of another project by the year 2004.

The total cumulative direct and indirect effects are displayed in Table WIL-19; this takes into account the effects of canopy closure on units harvested by all alternatives and all other stands that are currently in the clearcut stage and converting them to the second growth.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table WIL-19

**Total Cumulative Direct and Indirect Effects of Habitat Capability for MIS for the Proposed Alternatives of this EIS by 2040 (assuming no further timber harvest)**

Species	Habitat Capability	Habitat Capability	Habitat Capability 2040					
	1954	1996	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Sitka Black-tailed Deer*	2,094	1,753	1,753	1,623	1,550	1,561	1,563	1,456
Black Bear ** (20 percent reduction)	86	77	62	60	58	59	58	58
Marten* **	97	86	69	26	8	8	8	7
River Otter	52	52	52	52	52	52	52	52
Hairy Woodpecker*	900	890	890	860	846	840	842	814
Brown Creeper	1,983	1,947	1,947	1,887	1,864	1,839	1,836	1,784
Vancouver Canada Goose	242	222	222	217	211	212	213	207
Bald Eagle	123	121	121	121	121	121	121	121
Wolf	7	5.8	5.8	5.4	5.2	5.2	5.4	5.2

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations (See Old-Growth/Biodiversity Section).

\*\* Considers effects of road densities.

#### Road Density Effects Analysis

The cumulative analysis also displays the effect a road connection between the Project Area and the Prince of Wales Island road system would have on wildlife species, such as wolf, black bear, and marten. For this part of the analysis, it is assumed that the Project Area is connected to the Prince of Wales Island road system.

The Project Area includes 67.7 square miles of National Forest Land. Using Alternative 6 as the maximum amount of road in the Project Area, there is a potential for 87 miles of roads (for a density of 1.28 miles of road per square mile of land).

#### Wolf

Concern has been expressed that high road densities and liberal hunting regulations can result in over harvest of the wolf population. The TLMP 1997 Standards and Guidelines recommend a mitigation measure: consider an open-road density of 1 mile per square mile of road, or in WAAs that adjoin Wilderness or roadless areas of greater than 247,000 acres (which this Project Area does), consider allowing open-road densities of up to 1.2 miles of Forest development roads per square mile of roaded area.



If it is assumed that all existing and proposed roads in the Project Area are open, the open-road density in the Project Area would be 1.28 miles of road per square mile (87 miles of road divided by 67.7 square miles), over the recommended road density of 1.2 miles of open road per square mile.

## **Black Bear**

Although black bears can adapt to changes in their environment induced by humans, increased access by humans often leads to increased human-related mortality (legal harvest, poaching, and defense of life and property). The black bear habitat capability model has factors that attempt to take this increased mortality into consideration.

For habitat that is linked to a transportation system, the habitat capability of the areas within 2 miles is reduced by 20 percent. For the analysis of the effect of road density, it is assumed that all areas of the Project Area are within two miles of a road. So the black bear habitat capability would be reduced by 20 percent. Table WIL-19 displays the effect of connecting some of the Project Area road system to the Prince of Wales road system.

## **Marten**

There is also concern that marten densities will decrease (due to their susceptibility to over trapping) as road densities exceed 0.2 miles of road per square mile. Marten densities could be reduced by 90 percent as road densities approach 0.6 miles of road per square mile (Suring et al. 1992).

Again, assuming that all of the existing and proposed roads of the Project Area for all alternatives are open, the open-road density for Alternative 2 would be .5 miles of road per square mile (31 divided by 67.7). Comparing the open-road density to the Road Density Graph in the Marten Habitat Capability Model (Suring et al. 1992), the suitability index for marten based on road density is 0.3, so 0.3 was multiplied by the marten model outputs to make adjustments for road densities (see Table WIL-19). Miles of road for the remaining alternatives are: Alternative 3 = 62.1; Alternative 4 = 42.4; Alternative 5 = 56.1; and Alternative 6 = 86.7 for a road density of .9, .62, .83, and 1.28, respectively. Alternatives 3-6 would reduce marten habitat capability to less than 10 percent. The open road density severely impacts the marten habitat capability, indicating that there is a potential to over harvest marten in the Project Area. If the Project Area road system is ever connected to the Prince of Wales road system the marten population could receive even more pressure from hunters and trappers due to the easy access.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table WIL-20 displays the impacts of harvesting the scheduled acres of the suitable-available forest lands in the 150-year planning period and assumes all harvested stands are in the closed canopy, second-growth condition.

Table WIL-20

**Total Cumulative Changes Caused by This and Future Timber Sales, in Habitat Capability for MIS to the Year 2140**

Species	Habitat Capability 1954	Habitat Capability 1996	Habitat Capability 2004*	Percent Reduction From 1954	Habitat Capability 2140**	Percent Reduction From 1954
Sitka Black-tailed Deer**	2,140	2,017	1,713	29	1,273	47
Black Bear	86	17	69	20	54	37
Marten***	97	86	73	25	52	46
River Otter	52	52	51	2	46	12
Hairy Woodpecker***	900	890	763	15	406	55
Brown Creeper	1,983	1,947	1,675	16	887	55
Vancouver Canada Goose	242	222	197	19	160	34
Bald Eagle	123	121	120	2	116	6
Gray Wolf	7	5.8	4.9	30	3.7	47

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service GIS Data Base and interagency habitat capability model.

\* Based on Alternative 6, because Alternative 6 is the maximum harvest amount.

\*\* Assumes harvest of all suitable-available forest lands identified by the TLMP Draft Revision, Alternative P (1991a) within the Project Area.

\*\*\* Numbers do not incorporate Patch-size Effectiveness calculations or road density reductions.

## Old Growth and Biodiversity

### Key Terms

**Biodiversity**—the variety and abundance of life forms, processes, functions, and structures, including the relative complexity of species, communities, gene pools, and ecosystems at spatial scales that range from local through regional to global.

**Canopy**—the middle and uppermost layers of foliage in the forest.

**Corridor**—a patch or strip of habitat linking or providing connectivity between larger patches.

**Edge**—the biological and abiotic actions operating at edges; examples are—differences in microclimates, species, richness, productivity, and predation. A boundary between two distinct ecosystems, such as between forest and muskeg.

**Forage**—to search for food.

**Fragmentation**—reducing the size and connectivity of habitat patches; the degree and impacts of fragmentation depend on scale (in space and time) and the life requirements of the affected species.

**Habitat Capability**—an estimated number of animals that a habitat could potentially sustain.

**Patch**—an assemblage of similar vegetation, such as old-growth forest.

**Planning Area**—for the purpose of analyzing viable populations, the planning area is the ecological province, i.e., North Central Prince of Wales Province and South Prince of Wales Province.

**Snag**—standing dead tree.

**Viable Population**—a population with the estimated numbers and distribution of reproductive individuals to maintain the population over time.

## Affected Environment

### Old-growth Forest

The definition of old-growth forest varies by habitat and includes such factors as age and size of trees, spacing, snags, canopy layers and structure, and the amount of down (on-the-ground) material (USDA Forest Service 1991a).

Old-growth stands have an uneven appearance because they contain trees of many ages, sizes, and condition, and contain numerous dead tops and snags. Based on past forest inventories, old-growth stands are assumed to have reached an equilibrium where timber growth equals mortality (USDA Forest Service 1991a). Tree establishment largely depends on large woody debris (logs and stumps) (Harmon 1986, Harmon and Franklin 1989) and gap formation (Alaback 1988). Woody debris provides micro sites for trees to grow on. Gaps created by windthrow or other disturbances allow light to penetrate to the forest floor. This process of tree death and replacement is continual; in any one year, a significant portion of the trees in individual stands are likely to blow down (Harris 1989). Thus, the forest is a mosaic of older and younger trees, dynamically changing yet remaining remarkably stable as a forested ecosystem (Bormann and Likens 1979, Alaback 1988, Schoen et al. 1988, Franklin 1990).

### 3 Environment and Effects

Old-growth forest is an important source of valuable forest products. The high quality trees of these species, along with the cedars, provide some of the finest commercial timber for lumber, musical sounding boards, and other specialty products.

Old-growth forests also have become important to many people for aesthetic and cultural purposes. Large trees, characteristic of some old-growth stands, have become symbols of a pristine landscape.

Old-growth forest is also important wildlife habitat for old-growth associated species such as Sitka black-tailed deer, martens, black bear, Vancouver Canada geese, and cavity or snag-dependent species such as flying squirrels, woodpeckers, and owls. Many species have evolved to use the structural attributes of old-growth forests. The combination of a dense canopy with scattered small openings (typically 20 to 40 feet across) allows forage growth under openings, while the large limbs within the canopy intercept enough snowfall to provide winter food and thermal cover for deer and other species. The large, dense stems also provide some measure of thermal insulation in the winter, as well as during cold rains in the spring and summer. Large dead, dying, or diseased trees become nesting sites for martens, owls, eagles, wrens, and chickadees. These trees are also suitable as feeding sites for woodpeckers, sapsuckers, brown creepers, and others.

The value of old-growth forest for wildlife habitat is also thought to transcend individual stands. Large, contiguous, unfragmented blocks of old-growth forest are important to forest interior species, such as the northern goshawk and marbled murrelet. The large old-growth blocks provide expansive hunting territories and protection from predators, and promote genetic mixing among populations that would be less likely to breed if they were spatially separated by forest fragmentation. The large old-growth blocks are important winter range for deer.

Old-growth forests are an important, but decreasing, component of the temperate rain forest ecosystem. They differ in ecological function in many ways from younger, even-aged forests. Old-growth stands typically exhibit a wider variety of reproductive niches for species whose existence is thought to be old growth dependent, including certain animals, understory plants, and microorganisms which appear to be most successful when permitted to develop under at least a partially intact mature forest canopy.

#### **Chasina Old-growth Blocks**

Within and immediately adjacent to the project area are large blocks of old-growth forest which are naturally fragmented due to mountains, alpine, and saltwater inlets. These blocks of old-growth forest are becoming more fragmented as a result of timber harvest (both on private and National Forest System lands). The Existing Condition Map in the separate map packet shows all remaining unharvested, old-growth, commercial forest within the project area.



Table OG-1  
Existing Old-growth Blocks in the Chasina Project

VCU	Name	Acres Low Volume Strata	Acres Medium and High Volume Strata
674/678	Cannery Creek	657	2,790
678	South Arm	574	2,777
679/682	Kitkun Bay	1,346	3,955
681/682	Port Johnson	726	1,493
679	Lancaster	1,658	4,777
<b>Total</b>		<b>4,961</b>	<b>15,792</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, GIS Data Base

It is recognized that maintaining appropriate habitat corridors or connections between blocks of old-growth forest habitat is important to minimize isolation and gradual decline of wildlife species associated with the old-growth blocks (Harris 1984, 1985; Hunter 1990). Some of the corridors between these blocks have been affected by previous timber harvest activities. The Existing Condition Map displays large blocks dominated by old-growth forest and areas that are important for maintaining connectivity between the large blocks.

# 3 Environment and Effects

Other areas (including stands deemed inoperable for timber harvest because of unstable soils, steep slopes, economic isolation, or other factors) could also be interspersed and provide additional opportunities to connect old-growth blocks. While there has been historic timber harvest within the beach, estuary, and streamcourse buffers, these old harvest sites will mature in time and could provide travel corridors for some wildlife species for genetic interchange.

For additional discussion of old growth and connectivity, see Fragmentation and Connectivity later in this section.

## Biological Diversity and Viable Populations

### Biodiversity

National Forest Management Act (NFMA) regulations define diversity as the distribution and abundance of different plant and animal communities and species. Biological diversity, or biodiversity, refers not only to the variety of organisms in an area; it also includes their genetic composition, the complex pathways that link organisms to one another and to the environment, and the processes that sustain the whole system. Biodiversity plays a key role in how well an ecosystem functions. It can be evaluated at different scales, ranging from genetic diversity to landscape diversity.

Genetic diversity is the smallest scale. It refers to the variation in the genes of individual plants, animals, and microorganisms. There is concern when individuals of a species do not reproduce very well or do not show much variation among individuals. Species diversity refers to the variety of living organisms, ranging from beetles to bears, from mosses to massive trees. This scale not only includes the number of different species in an area, but also their abundance and distribution. Loss of genetic diversity and/or severe reductions in the size of populations can subject plant and animal species to increased risk of local extinction (extirpation).

This risk of genetic and species loss is higher if the structure, composition, or function of vital habitats are compromised. An example of such a compromise might be fragmentation of large blocks of suitable habitat into smaller isolated blocks that separate small populations of wildlife species from each other. In managing forest ecosystems, therefore, biodiversity management is often evaluated at larger scales. It is thought that conservation of functioning ecosystems will serve to conserve the species associated with them.

One of these larger scales of diversity, “within-ecosystem,” focuses on plant associations and habitat types and the diversity of plants and animals within those communities. This diversity scale usually measures the number of species present (richness) or the structural complexity of a given habitat type. For example, the number of breeding birds in Southeast Alaska has been shown to decline from 13 species in old-growth, spruce-hemlock forests to just three species immediately following logging (seedling/sapling stage) as vegetation structure and species composition become greatly simplified (Sidle 1985). As clearcuts (seedling/sapling stage) proceed to mid-successional stages (sapling/shrub and pole), species richness temporarily increases to 10 to 14 species, but declines again to seven species in older seral stages (young sawtimber) due to the loss of understory vegetation associated with canopy closure. Retention of snags, live trees, and down woody debris can be used to enhance within-ecosystem diversity by maintaining a portion of old-growth structure within regenerating stands (Sidle 1985, Della Sala 1993).

The next scale is “between-ecosystem” diversity, which describes the variation from one community to another in a particular area along environmental gradients. Southeast Alaska has a high between-ecosystem diversity, because natural forested patches are relatively small (compared to Oregon and Washington, for example) and are often interspersed in a matrix of muskegs. Large-scale logging can affect this diversity, because it increases the fragmentation

of old-growth patches and is followed by a subsequent uniform age class of second growth that is quite different both from the adjacent old growth and from the muskeg matrix.

The largest scale considered is the diversity of ecosystems across a landscape, such as a province or biogeographic region. At this scale, differences in geology, for example the karst region on northern Prince of Wales, and climate come into play. Large areas of several million acres are evaluated and subdivided into ecological provinces and subprovinces (as in the TLMP 1997). An area is expected to support high levels of landscape diversity if viable populations of wildlife and habitat types are well distributed across the region. Evaluation of this scale of diversity is important for a number of reasons. Silviculturally, for example, a plant association on limestone-derived soils may respond differently following logging than the same plant association on glacial soils. The frequency of certain forest structural patterns (size and distribution of trees) may also differ on different soils, creating a variety of wildlife habitat.

Diversity is evaluated at all levels, because ignoring scale can lead to adverse effects on ecosystem function. For example, for years it was thought that maximizing forest fragmentation (the “staggered setting” approach) would benefit wildlife, because it maximized forest edges (boundaries between ecosystems). More recent research has found, however, that maximizing edge can ruin forest interior conditions critical for certain species (Forman and Godron 1986, Hunter 1990).

Ecosystem alteration, including habitat destruction, simplification, and fragmentation, is the most pervasive cause of biodiversity loss. Therefore, minimizing habitat alterations and promoting natural patterns help maintain biodiversity. To maintain biodiversity, large natural areas, corridors, and migration routes should be protected; removal of natural barriers should be avoided; areas that have already been developed should be utilized in place of altering undisturbed areas and restoring areas that have been altered. In natural resource management, it is sometimes necessary to focus on what is more limiting (e.g., large old-growth patches) or rare (e.g., possibly some plant or animal species), and to seek to maintain these aspects of the ecosystem, rather than to focus strictly on maximizing the number of species.

The amount of contiguous habitat, and the extent to which similar habitats connect by corridors, are considered key concepts in managing for biological diversity (Harris 1984, 1985; Hunter 1990). Due to the importance of unfragmented old-growth forest patches and the role of these areas in maintaining viable wildlife populations, old-growth habitat and an analysis of patch-size effectiveness will be used in this section as a tool to evaluate impacts on biodiversity.

A more detailed discussion of Tongass National Forest direction for managing biological diversity can be found in the TLMP 1997, Vol. 338b, pp. 3-11 to 3-39.

## **Viable Populations**

Regulations developed to implement the National Forest Management Act of 1976 on National Forests state in part: “Fish and wildlife habitat shall be managed to maintain viable populations of existing native and desired non-native vertebrate species in the planning area. For planning purposes, a viable population shall be regarded as one which has the estimated numbers and distribution of reproductive individuals to insure its continued existence is well distributed in the planning area” (36 CFR 219.19). Wildlife habitat planning and management for viable populations is carried out in the context of overall multiple-use objectives.

Under the TLMP (1997), a variety of different LUDs preserve particular old-growth areas from timber harvest (i.e. Beach Fringe and Estuary, Stream Protection, LUD II, Special Interest Areas). This designation of no-harvest LUDs is intended to allow for seasonal wildlife migration from lowland to higher elevation ranges, to provide adequate acreage for

### 3 Environment and Effects

forest interior and old-growth dependent species, and to facilitate genetic exchange between wildlife populations.

The TLMP (1997) provides for regional management and maintenance of population viability at the planning area level. “Planning Area,” for defining viable populations, is the ecological province level (TLMP 1997). Under TLMP, individual project areas are not expected to independently maintain viable populations, but only to contribute to and not cause a decline of overall viable populations. However, their contribution to well-distributed populations through the maintenance of connectivity can be critical. Standards and guidelines outline prescriptions for maintaining biodiversity at the project area level (TLMP 1997).

The Chasina Project Area lies within the South Prince of Wales Island Biogeographical Province (#18), as defined by TLMP (1997). This province is comprised of 161,981 acres of productive old growth, of which 82 percent are designated for preservation in a natural setting under the terms of Alternative 3 for the TLMP 1997. These areas are composed largely of LUD I and II areas, as well as buffers for beach fringe, estuaries, streams, riparian management areas, and eagle nests.

Figure OG-1 illustrates the setting of the project area within the South Prince of Wales Island Biogeographical Province (No. 18).



Figure OG-1  
South Prince of Wales Ecological Province, No. 18



This province is comprised of 370,594 acres, of which 85,481 acres are designated for preservation in wilderness areas in the Preferred Alternative of the TLMP (1997).

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Old-growth Reserves

Through Old-growth Habitat Reserves (OGHR), TLMP 1997 maintains wildlife populations through a complex of large, medium, and small old-growth habitat reserves laid out across the Tongass National Forest totaling more than one million acres, outside congressionally designated areas. This strategy implements the concepts recommended by the VPOP Committee. Within the Chasina Project Area, three blocks of old-growth forest were recommended to be retained as a OGHR. The Nutkwa LUD II Large OGHR (approximately 38,300 acres) is immediately west of the project area on the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound. The Kitkun Bay Medium OGHR (approximately 11,805 acres) lies in the middle of the project area. A small OGHR is located on the north tip of Chasina Point (1,525 acres), which has been proposed to be increased to 2,202 acres. This increase was based on Interagency involvement by the USF&WS and the ADF&G. The Chasina Point OGHR was lacking the recommended amount of productive old-growth acreage, so the OGHR was expanded to the west.

## Fragmentation and Connectivity

The extinction of species is a serious and irreversible threat. Habitat loss and fragmentation are prime causes of extinction today. Fragmentation occurs whenever a large continuous habitat is transformed into smaller patches that are isolated from each other, such as occurs from catastrophic windstorms or from extensive clearcutting. The changed landscape functions as a barrier to dispersal for species associated with the original habitat. These smaller and more isolated habitats also support smaller populations, which are more vulnerable to local extinction.

Research shows that forest fragmentation results in an increased ratio of forest “edge” to forest “interior” habitat, and can have a strong negative effect on forest interior species. One such effect is that as more edge habitat becomes available, as a result of fragmentation, the edge-dwelling species invade the interior environment and become a major threat to the survival of the forest interior species. Rosenberg and Raphael (1986) recommended a minimum stand size of 50 acres when delineating old-growth habitat, and suggested that when a stand is greater than 50 percent isolated, the minimum stand size should be 124 acres. By maintaining large contiguous blocks of habitat, the forest interior species would realize less competition and predation from open forest and edge species.

## Patch Sizes

The analysis of forest fragmentation in the Chasina Project Area was based on the total number of old-growth forest patches within specific size classes. Patch-size classes were selected to represent MIS requirements based on the species patch-size effectiveness curves (Tables OG-2 and OG-3; see also explanation on next page). Old-growth forest patches were defined as the amount of contiguous old growth of Volume Class 4 and above.

Table OG-2  
**Patch-Size Relationships**

Patch Size (Acres)	Species Relationship
0-25	Incorporates optimal patch size for red squirrel
26-100	Incorporates optimal patch size for brown creeper
101-500	Incorporates optimal patch size for marten
501-1,000	Incorporates optimal patch size for woodpeckers
> 1,000	Incorporates optimal patch size for deer

SOURCE: Workshop to recommend patch-size relationship and corridor requirements for the MIS and TES species.

Table OG-3  
Patch-size Effectiveness Values by Patch-size Class and by Species

Species	Patch-size Classes (Acres)				
	0-25	26-100	101-500	501- 1,000	> 1,000+
Sitka Black-tailed Deer	0.3	0.35	0.5	0.83	1.0
Marten	0.2	0.50	1.0	1.00	1.0
Hairy Woodpecker	0.1	0.42	0.7	1.00	1.0
Brown Creeper	0.8	1.00	1.0	1.00	1.0

SOURCE: Workshop to recommend patch size relationships and corridor requirements for the MIS and TES species

## Patch-Size and Corridor Requirements of MIS and TES Species

An interdisciplinary group of biologists from the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G), Forest Service, and the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service (USF&WS) (1989) categorized management indicator species (MIS) and threatened and endangered species (TES) into one of three groupings based on how the species generally utilize or respond to their environment with regard to needing minimum habitat patch sizes and/or dispersal corridors.

### Landscape

Wildlife species in this category generally have large seasonal or year-long home ranges and territories. These species are capable of utilizing a wide variety of vegetative conditions, although preferences for certain vegetation types exist which provide a higher quantity/quality of forage or cover needs. These species will travel or move through a wide variety of habitats to utilize their environment; therefore, these species do not have specific patch-size or corridor requirements.

### Community

Wildlife species in this category generally have smaller home ranges and territories than the landscape species. These species show a high preference or requirement for a particular vegetation community or combination of communities, especially during the season of the year that is considered critical. Preferred or required habitats may need to be within mean dispersal distances of the species, and corridors may be needed. These species generally show a relationship with patch size of the preferred or required habitats. In some situations, as patch sizes are reduced, a species may be replaced by another species which can more effectively use the habitat.

### Structural

Wildlife species in this category require a specific or unique habitat element or site, such as a pond or cliff for nesting. Often, the size, location, and abundance of these sites are the result of natural geologic or climatic events rather than the effects of management.



Each of the MIS and TES species that occurs within the Chasina Project Area was placed within one of the above groups, as follows:

<u>Landscape</u>	<u>Community</u>	<u>Structural</u>
Black bear	Marten	Bald eagle
Gray wolf	Hairy woodpecker	Trumpeter swan
River otter	Brown creeper	Peregrine falcon
	Marbled murrelet	
	Vancouver Canada goose	
	Sitka black-tailed deer	

For the species within the landscape and structural groups, no specific patch-size or corridor requirements are needed. For the species within the community category, the committee identified types of vegetative communities or habitats that are applicable to patch-sizes and corridor requirements for each species. These include:

**Marten:** patch size includes the acres of all conifer stands from older second growth and all CFL, old growth; corridor requirements include all conifer stands from older pole timber through old growth.

**Hairy woodpecker:** patch size includes all old-growth conifer stands plus older second-growth stands; there are no corridor requirements for this species.

**Brown creeper:** patch size includes all Volume Class 5+ old-growth conifer stands; there are no corridor requirements for this species.

**Marbled murrelet:** patch size includes all old-growth conifer stands; there are no corridor requirements for this species, as it has been observed flying in the subalpine and alpine habitats.

**Vancouver Canada goose:** adequate information was not available to develop patch-size relationship for this species. These birds are highly mobile and are found throughout the islands of Southeast Alaska. No vegetative corridor requirements have been identified.

**Sitka black-tailed deer:** patch size includes all old-growth stands; no specific corridor requirements were developed.

The relationship of patch size to the effectiveness of that habitat to support a particular species was analyzed, and index graphs were developed. Table OG-4 displays a summary of the effectiveness of various patch-size classes for the above Chasina MIS species.

Prior to timber harvest, the project area contained extensive amounts of unfragmented forest patches (Figure OG-2, map of distribution of forest patches in 1954, later in this section). Approximately 75 percent of the commercial forest land throughout the project area was in forest patches greater than 1,000 acres. Timber harvest has decreased the acreage in this patch size class from 19,612 acres to 14,215 acres. See Figure OG-2 for the 1954 condition and Figure OG-3 for the existing condition, Alternative 1.

Fragmentation of existing old-growth results in a reduction in the effectiveness of remaining patches as wildlife habitat. Individual species respond to natural and human-induced fragmentation differently. Species like brown creepers and hairy woodpeckers can be supported by smaller patches of forest habitat than species such as deer and marten (Proceedings of workshop to recommend patch-size relationships and corridor requirements for the MIS and TES species) (Table OG-3).

### 3 Environment and Effects

Patch-size effectiveness percentages for 1954, range from .995 percent (brown creepers) to .888 percent for deer (Table OG-4). The 1954 patch-size effectiveness was not 100 percent effective because many of the existing patches were not at the optimum size. The values for 1996 vary from .836 percent effective to .994 percent effective. The greatest difference in percent effectiveness between 1954 and 1996 was for deer.

**Table OG-4**  
**Adjusted Habitat Capabilities Based on Patch-size Effectiveness**

Species	1954 W/o*	1996 W/o*	1954 With**	1954 Patch Effect %	1996 With**	1996 Patch Effect %
Sitka Black-tailed Deer	2,094	1,753	1,859	.888	1,466	.836
Marten	97	86	93	.960	81	.946
Hairy Woodpecker	900	890	828	.920	795	.893
Brown Creeper	1,983	1,947	1,975	.995	1,935	.994

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, MIS Habitat Capability Models.

\* Without patch-effectiveness percent applied.

\*\* With patch-effectiveness percent applied.

Note: Habitat capability is an estimated number of animals that a habitat could potentially sustain. It does not represent actual populations.

#### Connectivity

The connectivity, or corridors, between habitat patches in a landscape may be at least as significant to maintaining diversity as the size of the patches (Noss 1983). Forman and Godron (1981) defined corridors as being of four types: (1) line corridors, those which are all edge and possess no interior habitat; (2) strip corridors, those which maintain interior habitat; (3) stream corridors, those bordering a water source; and (4) network corridors, those which intersect and form patterns. Corridors can function as more than one type; for example, when a stream corridor is wide enough to incorporate interior habitat, it also functions as a strip corridor. Forman and Godron's work also highlighted the fact that some interior species will not live in or even migrate through extensive lengths of unsuitable habitat, and that strip corridors were preferable to line corridors. Management of corridors as well as habitat patches should strive to mimic natural patterns (Noss and Harris 1986).

The main dispersal corridors throughout the project area are thought to be the beach fringe and saddles between mountains.

Currently, the old-growth blocks that consist of Port Johnson, Kitkun Bay, and Lancaster are all connected by beach fringe and inland old-growth forest. These blocks of old-growth forest provide the connectivity from the outside portion of the island along Clarence Strait to the Kitkun Bay area and along the coast up to Chasina Point. This is an important wildlife corridor since the wildlife corridor to Chasina Point on the Clarence Strait side of the peninsula has been heavily impacted by logging on private land and is probably not effective at this time.

The other two old-growth blocks in the project area (Cannery Creek and South Arm) are also currently connected by beach fringe forest. However, about 1.5 miles of beach fringe between these two blocks has been recently conveyed to Kootznoowoo Native Corporation and is in the process of being logged. The west side of South Arm is an important corridor

because it provides the best link for animals in southern Prince of Wales Island to migrate north along the coast to Sulzer Portage (which connects South Prince of Wales to North Prince of Wales). There are two 800-foot elevation saddles that connect South Arm to Moira Sound and Klakas Inlet. The Sulzer Portage and Big Creek areas are also in the process of being logged. The Cannery Creek block has not had any prior timber harvest activity, while the South Arm block has had some low elevation stands that were A-frame logged about 20 years ago.

## Effects of the Alternatives

Analysis conducted for the TLMP 1997, Alternative 3 indicates approximately 82 percent of productive old-growth forest would remain distributed throughout the planning cycle (150 years) within the South Prince of Wales Island Biogeographical Province to potentially support viable populations of Management Indicator Species (MIS). All alternatives proposed by this EIS provide areas that would remain connected by beach fringe, estuary fringe, and stream corridors, and the myriad of oversteepened slopes and other areas unsuitable for timber harvest. Managed stands would change from multi-aged, old-growth timber to even-aged stands of timber in early succession/understory colonization stage.

Following clearcut logging of old-growth forest, the stands that subsequently develop are even-aged (Harris and Farr 1974) and tend to contain a higher percentage of Sitka spruce and a lower percentage of the cedars. Clearcutting differs from natural disturbances in that it typically represents a large-scale change rather than dispersed, small, partial blowdown patches. It also differs in that nearly all trees are felled, whereas in natural disturbances many trees remain standing or partially standing (Hansen et al. 1991).

There has been a national concern over the limited and dwindling supply of old-growth forest, as exemplified by the spotted owl controversy in Oregon and Washington. Approximately 1.8 percent of the old-growth forest on National Forest System lands on South Prince of Wales Island has been harvested. Under the Selected Alternative in the TLMP 1997, approximately 18 percent of the old-growth forest in the South Prince of Wales Island Ecological Province will be converted from old-growth forest to successive crops of younger trees which will be harvested before they mature into old-growth forest. The subsequent crops of younger trees will yield more useable wood fiber per acre. At the same time, this conversion of old-growth forest to younger stands will cause some changes in the value of certain forest products, changes in value of wildlife habitat, reductions in diversity of ecosystem function and composition, and changes in inherent aesthetic qualities.

### Fragmentation and Patch-size Effectiveness

To help identify important blocks of old-growth habitat, a map was generated using Geographic Information System (GIS) that displayed all blocks of old-growth timber Volume Class 4 and greater. The patches were then categorized into the various acreage classes. This procedure was completed for the years 1954 (prior to logging) and 1996 (the current condition, Alternative 1), and for Alternatives 2-6. These patches are displayed in Figures OG-2 through OG-8. Table OG-5 displays the acreage in each patch size class, for the year 1954, the existing condition (1996), and Alternatives 2-6.

Alternative 2 is the best alternative for maintaining the large blocks of old-growth habitat, while Alternative 6 has the most impact on large blocks.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table OG-5  
Patch-size Acreage by Alternative and Acres of Interior Habitat

Alt.	>1,000 Acre Patches	501-1,000 Acre Patches	101-500 Acre Patches	26-100 Acre Patches	0-25 Acre Patches	Interior Habitat
1954	19,612	1,706	2,935	1,200	550	12,524
1	14,215	4,019	3,548	1,581	643	10,200
2	13,828	3,064	3,630	1,795	714	9,976
3	13,833	2,637	3,241	1,886	744	9,017
4	10,951	5,270	3,608	1,839	727	9,094
5	10,991	5,563	3,255	1,993	725	9,144
6	10,809	4,414	3,567	1,948	798	8,237

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, GIS Data Base

Table OG-6 displays the results of patch-size effectiveness for Sitka black-tailed deer, marten, hairy woodpeckers, and brown creepers (the Chasina MIS species with patch size criteria requirements). Note that none of the action alternatives are significantly different.

Table OG-6  
Adjusted Habitat Capabilities Based on Patch Size and the Percent Effective by Alternative

Species	1954	Alt. 1 1996	Alt. 2 1998	Alt. 3 1998	Alt. 4 1998	Alt. 5 1998	Alt. 6 1998
Sitka Black-tailed Deer	1,859	1,466	1,390	1,364	1,373	1,280	1,273
% effective	.888	.836	.826	.829	.832	.775	.798
Marten	93	81	78	75	76	75	72
% effective	.960	.946	.936	.931	.933	.930	.925
Hairy Woodpecker	828	795	757	743	735	738	704
% effective	.920	.893	.880	.878	.875	.876	.865
Brown Creeper	1,975	1,935	1,876	1,851	1,828	1,825	1,772
% effective	.995	.994	.994	.993	.994	.994	.993

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service, GIS Data Base

Note: Habitat capability is an estimated number of animals that a habitat could potentially sustain. It does not represent actual populations.



## Effect of Proposed Alternatives on Old-Growth Habitat in Chasina

Alternative 1 (the no-action alternative), maintains all old-growth blocks in their existing condition.

Table OG-7 is a summary of how the existing blocks of old-growth forest are affected by various timber harvest associated activities. Note that some blocks have different activities depending upon the alternative. For example, the Cannery Creek block has timber harvest, road construction, and LTF construction for Alternatives 3, 5, and 6; Alternative 4 harvests a similar amount of acreage, but it is all harvested by helicopter.

**Table OG-7**  
**Old-growth Blocks Impacted by Timber Harvest, Road Construction, and LTF Construction by Alternative**

Old-growth Block	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Cannery Creek	N/A	N/A	1, 2, 3	1	1, 2, 3	1, 2, 3
South Arm of Chom.	N/A	N/A	N/A	1	1	1
Kitkun Bay	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Port Johnson	N/A	1	1	1	N/A	1
Lancaster	N/A	1, 2	1, 2	1, 2	1, 2	1, 2

1 = Timber Harvest; 2 = Road Construction; 3 = New LTF Construction  
Note: All alternatives maintain 1,000 foot beach estuary buffer.

Figure OG-2 represents the pre-harvest (1954) condition, while Figure OG-3 represents the existing condition (Alternative 1), and Figures OG-4 through OG-8 show the effect that the alternatives would have on the existing large blocks of old-growth forest. Past timber harvest activity has reduced the amount of old-growth forest in blocks greater than 1,000 acres, resulting in a corresponding decrease in the total amount of old-growth forest that is in the project area. The action alternatives also reduce the amount of old-growth timber remaining in blocks greater than 1,000 acres.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure OG-2  
Patch-size Effectiveness, 1954

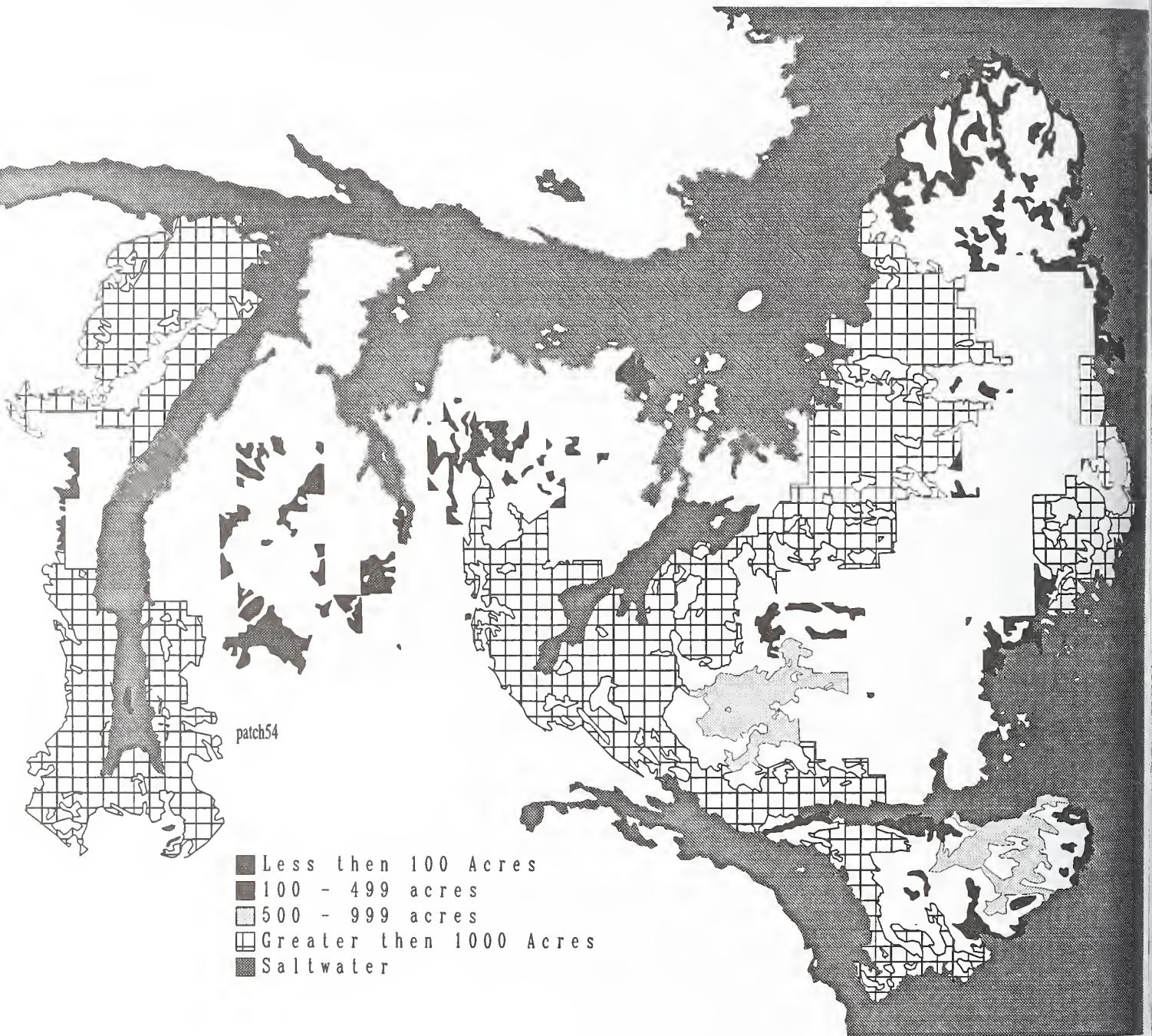
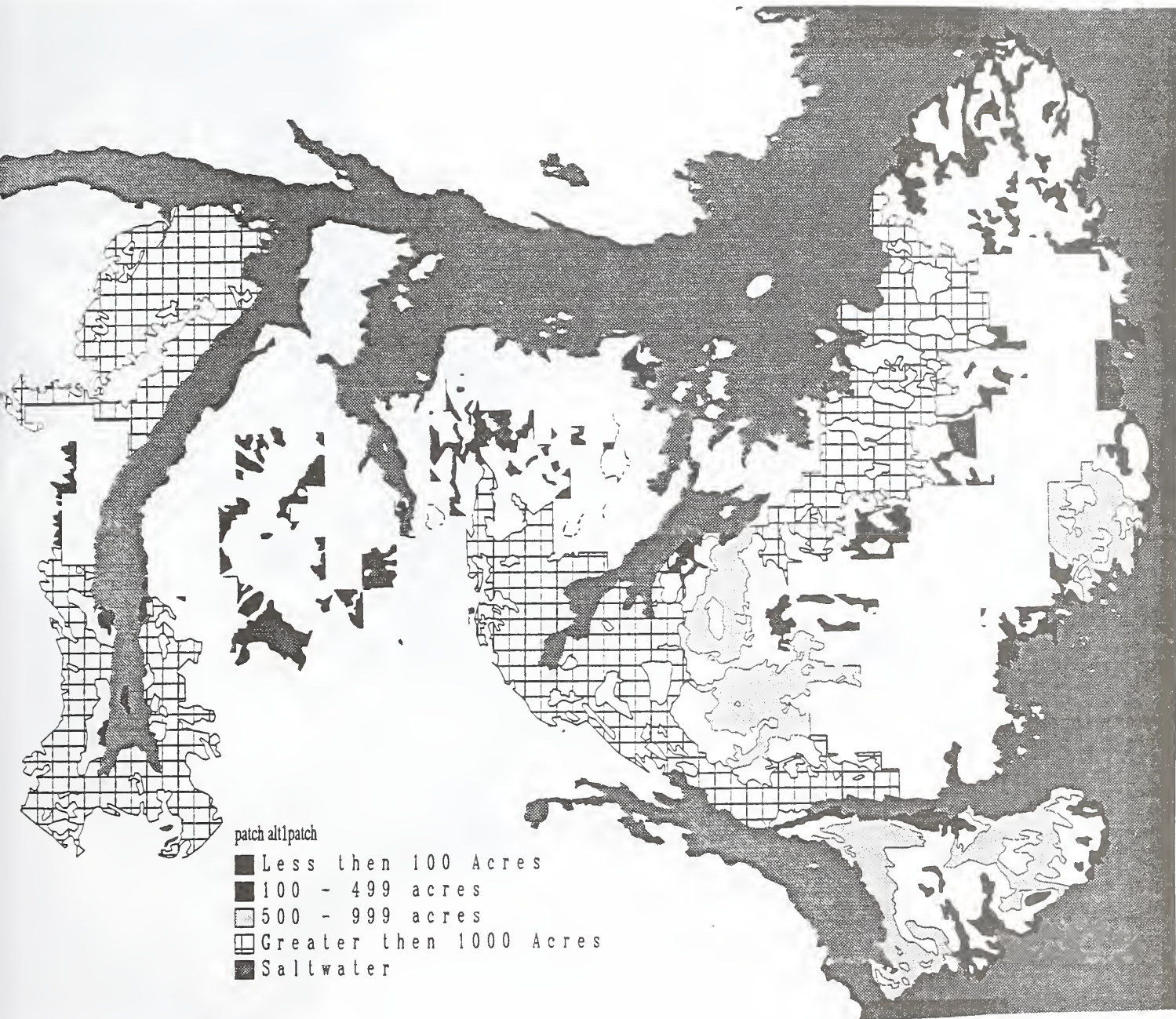




Figure OG-3  
Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 1





### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure OG-4  
Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 2

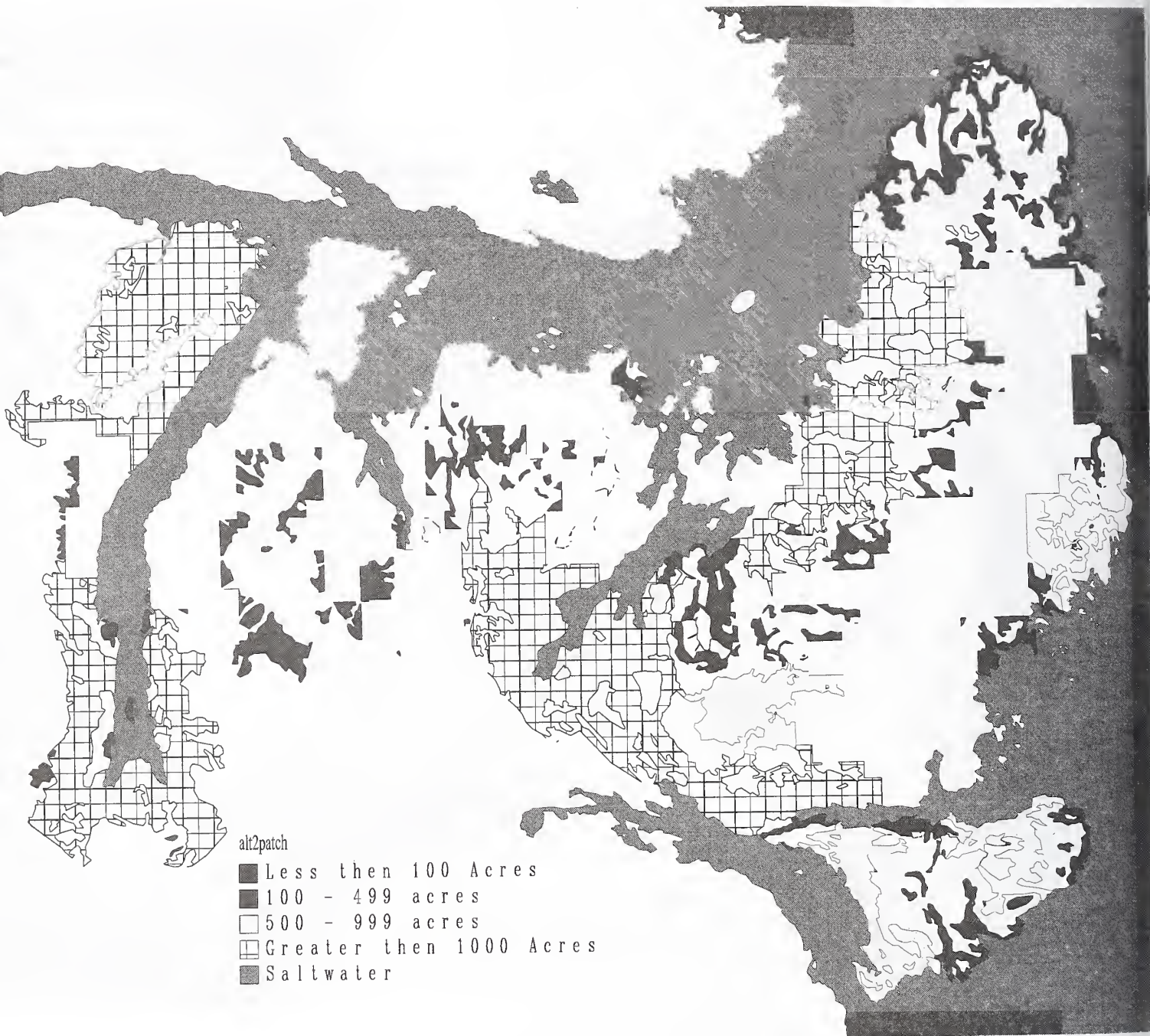
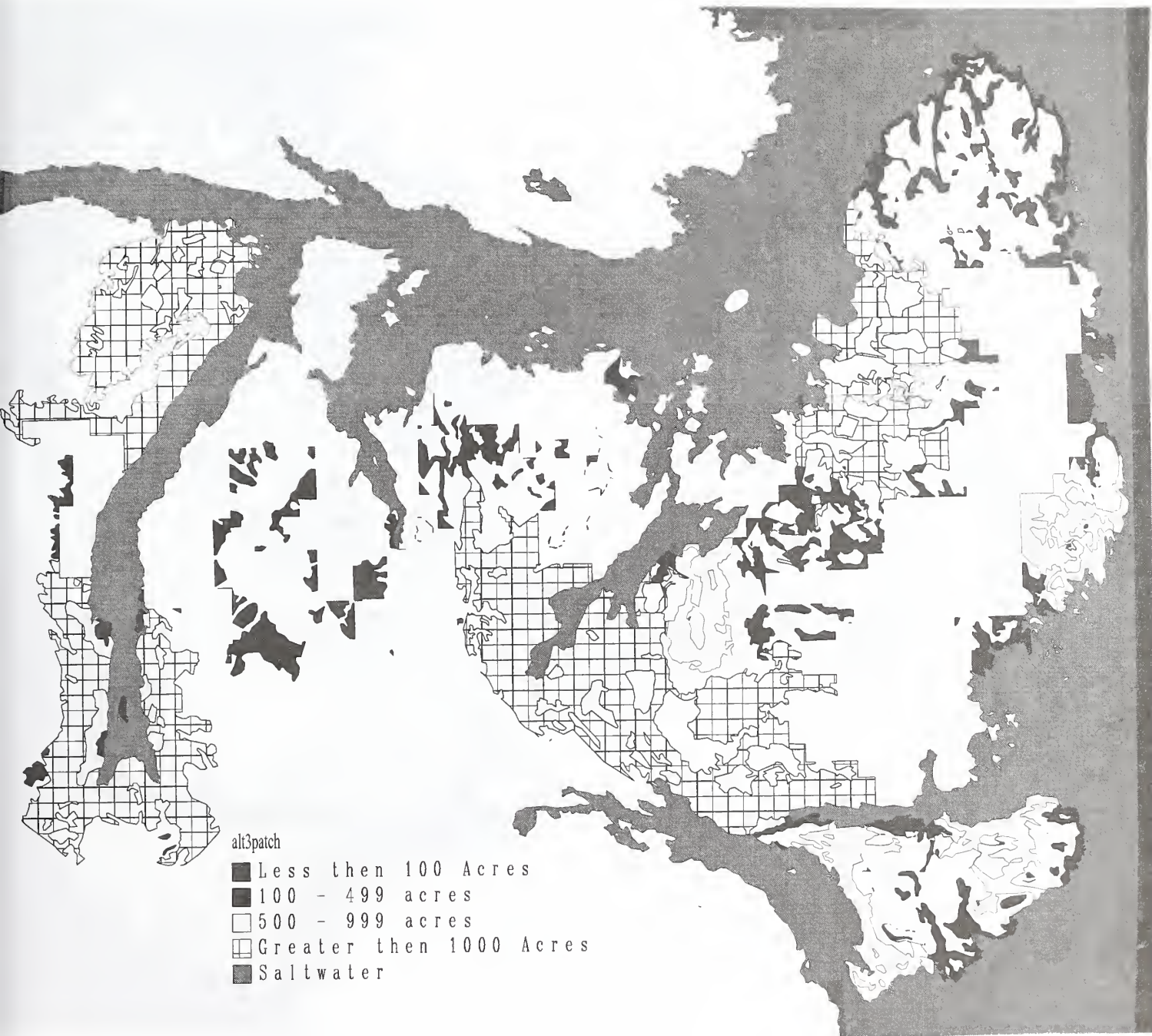




Figure OG-5  
Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 3





### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure OG-6  
Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 4

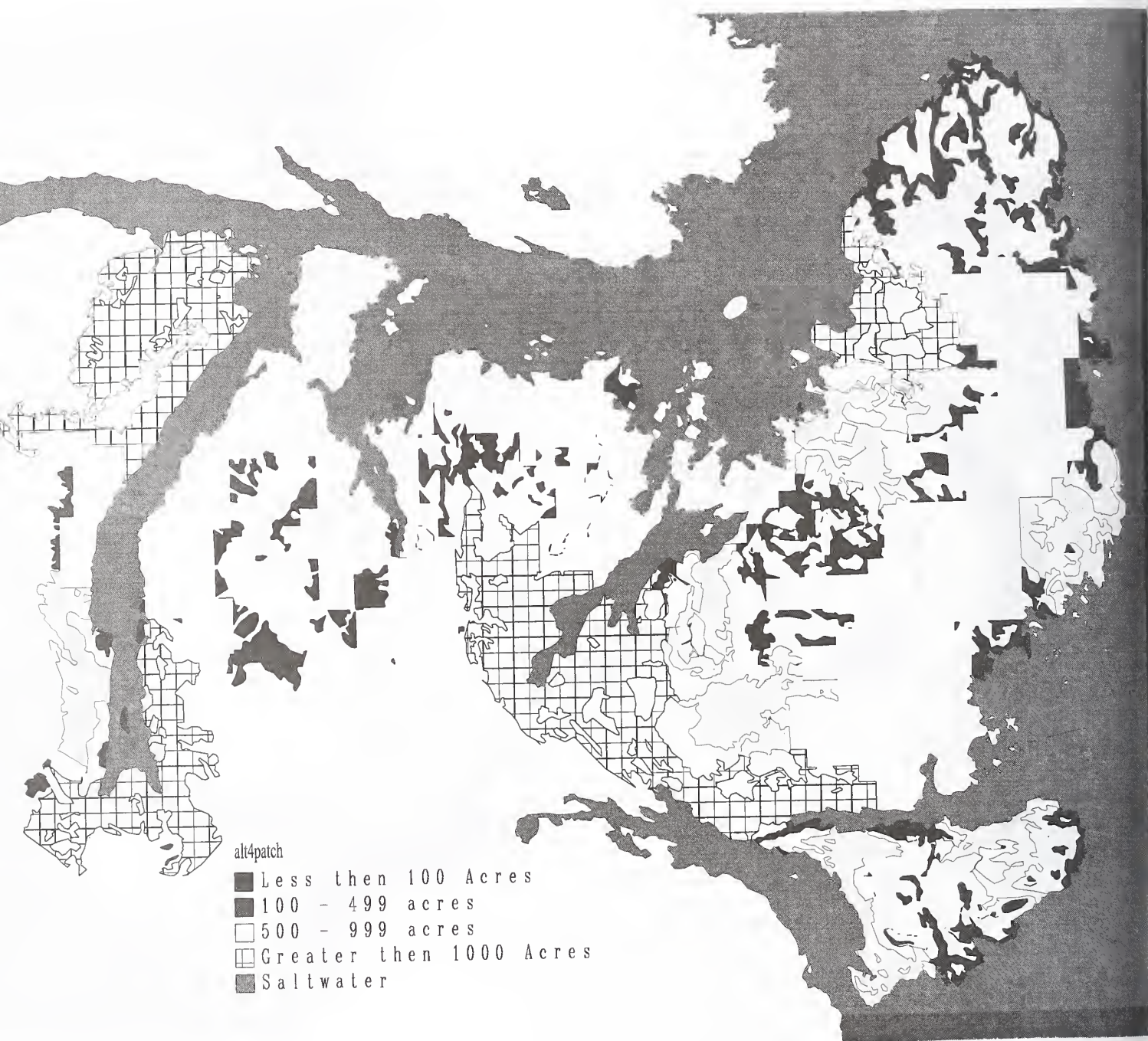
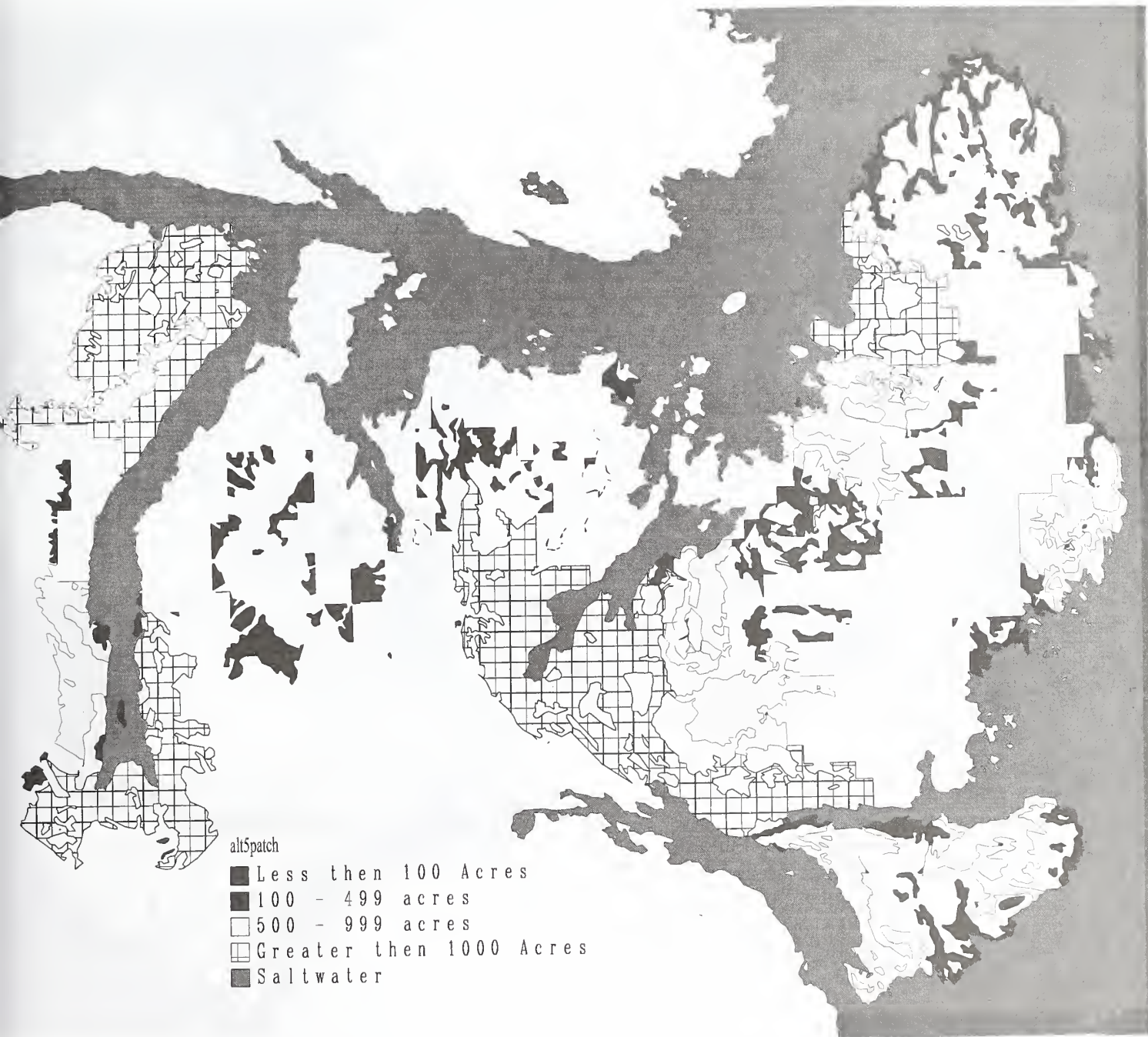


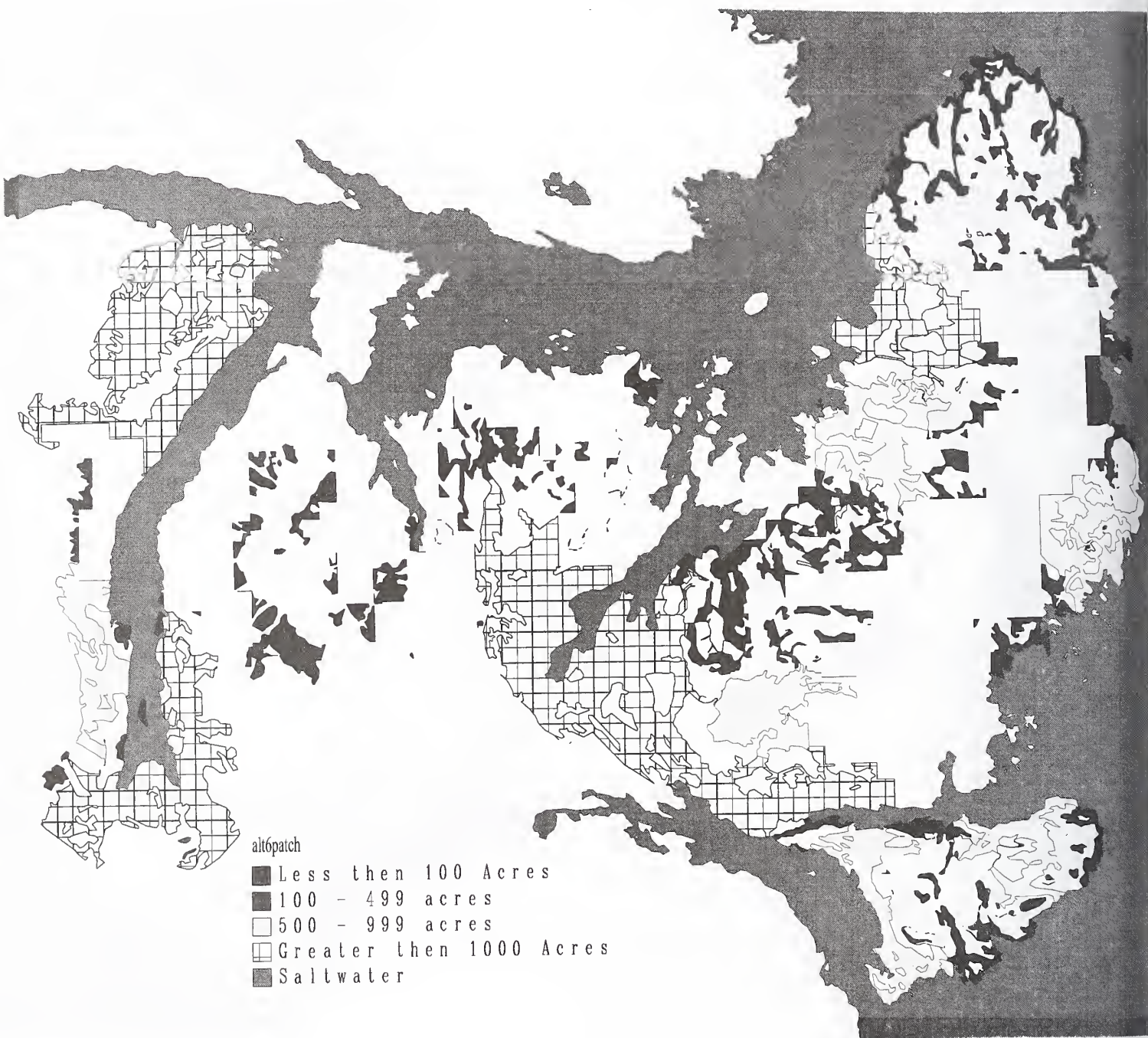
Figure OG-7  
Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 5





### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure OG-8  
Patch-size Effectiveness, Alternative 6





## Effects of the Alternatives on Connectivity and Corridors

Kitkun Bay to Lancaster has been identified by the ADF&G and the USF&WS as probably the most important wildlife corridor in the project area. It contains low elevation, high volume old growth adjacent to a large area that has been intensively harvested.

The South Arm corridor is also an important travel corridor for linking southern Prince of Wales Island to northern Prince of Wales Island via Sulzer Portage. Table OG-8 displays which alternatives impact these identified corridors.

**Table OG-8**  
**Corridors Impacted by Timber Harvest, Road Construction, and LTF Construction**

Corridor	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
South Arm	N/A	N/A	1, 2, 3	1	1, 2, 3	1, 2, 3
Kitkun/Lancaster	N/A	1	1	1	1	1

1 = Timber Harvest; 2 = New Road Construction; 3 = New LTF Construction

Note: All alternatives maintain the 1,000 foot beach and estuary buffer.

## Effects of the Alternatives on Viable Populations of Wildlife

Forest Plan land allocation on South Prince of Wales Island prohibits timber harvest in Old-Growth Habitat Reserve Areas such as the large old-growth blocks that exist within the South Prince of Wales Wilderness Area, Nutkwa LUD II area, and areas identified for semi-primitive recreation in the Dickman Bay and McLean Arm areas.

Maintaining the large, medium, and small old-growth blocks that are proposed by the TLMP 1997 and adjacent areas will contribute to the maintenance of a well-distributed, viable population of wildlife.

## Comparison of Alternatives

Based on old-growth habitat and patch-size effectiveness, Alternative 1 would do the most to preserve the natural biological diversity of the project area and maintain natural ecosystem processes. Of the action alternatives, Alternative 2 maintains the most acreage in large old-growth patches. There is not much difference among action alternatives when considering patch-size effectiveness, although Alternative 6 has the most impact.

## Threatened and Endangered Species

### Key Terms

**Endangered**—a species in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

**Threatened**—a species that is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

**Species of Concern**—a species or group of species being considered by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service for listing as endangered or threatened, but for which conclusive data is lacking on its biological vulnerability and degree of threat.

**Sensitive**—species (identified by the Forest Service) whose population viability is of concern on National Forests within the region, and which may need special management to prevent their being placed on State or Federal threatened and endangered species lists.

**Haul-Out**—an area of large, smooth, exposed rocks used by seals and sea lions for resting and pupping.

## Affected Environment

### Threatened or Endangered Species

Federally listed threatened and endangered species are those plant and animal species formally listed by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USF&WS) or the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), under the authority of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973, as amended. Species of concern are those being considered for listing as threatened or endangered by the USF&WS and NMFS. What are now being called species of concern were previously referred to as candidate species. The State of Alaska has an Endangered Species Law which authorizes the commissioner of the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G) to list Alaska endangered species. The Regional Forester of the Forest Service can also designate species as “Sensitive.” Sensitive species are those plant and animal species for which population viability is a concern, as evidenced by significant current or predicted downward trends in population numbers or density, or significant current or predicted downward trends in habitat capability that would reduce a species’ extinct distribution.

### Fish

No threatened, endangered, species of concern, or sensitive fish species are known to occur in the Chasina Project Area. The bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) is on the USF&WS species of concern list.

### Plants

The policy of the Tongass National Forest is to “manage plants in order to maintain viable populations and to avoid actions that may cause a plant to become listed as threatened or endangered” (TLMP 1991a). Plants of concern are listed by the USF&WS as endangered or threatened under ESA of 1973, or species are identified as sensitive by the Regional Forester. Under the ESA of 1973, an endangered species is defined as one that is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range. A threatened species is defined as one that is likely to become endangered in the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range. Currently, no plant species native to Southeast Alaska are Federally listed as endangered or threatened. However, four species are currently considered species of concern. These species have evidence supporting formal listing as threatened or

endangered but adequate information is not yet available on biological vulnerability or threats to justify final listing.

No plant species known to occur in the project area have been determined threatened or endangered. The two species of plants which are listed as species of concern with USF&WS have the potential to be found within the project area. Two other species, not expected to occur in the project area, are on the list with USF&WS and are discussed in the Biological Evaluation. The Forest Service in Region 10 has developed a list of 22 sensitive plants. Populations of species on the Forest Service sensitive plant list were discovered during botanical surveys of the project area.

## Wildlife

Two federally endangered wildlife species, the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*), and Eskimo curlew (*Numenius borealis*), potentially migrate through the area, and three Federally threatened species, the Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*), Aleutian Canada goose (*Branta canadensis leucopareia*), and American peregrine falcon (*Falco peregrinus anatum*) potentially migrate through or occur in the project area.

### Humpback Whale

Humpback whales are found in coastal areas or near oceanic islands and appear to have a preference for near shore waters, especially the highly productive fiords of Southeast Alaska and Prince William Sound (Calkins 1986). The population of humpback whales are more numerous in Southeast Alaska than any other endangered whale and have been observed in every month of the year. The local distribution of humpbacks (listed by NMFS as Endangered) in Southeast Alaska appears to be correlated with the density and seasonal availability of prey, particularly herring (*Clupea harengus*) and euphausiids (shrimp-like crustaceans). A total of 13 fish species and 57 invertebrate species have been identified as potential prey of the humpback whale in Southeast Alaska (Wing and Krieger 1982). Important feeding areas for humpback whales in Southeast Alaska include Cape Fairweather, Lynn Canal, Sumner Strait, Dixon Entrance, the west coast of Prince of Wales Island, and offshore banks such as the Fairweather Grounds; none of which are within the project area. Because the humpback whale occupies near shore waters, it is especially vulnerable to environmental degradation and human disturbances associated with off shore petroleum exploration and production, ocean dumping, toxic chemical pollution, coastal logging, mining and manufacturing, fishing, resort development, and pleasure boat and cruise ship traffic (Johnson and Wolman 1984). Such activities may disrupt whale feeding or result in damage to important habitat areas (Johnson and Wolman 1984). Critical habitat has not been designated for humpback whales; however, summer and fall concentrations of humpback whales have been observed in Southeast Alaska at Fredrick Sound, Salisbury Sound, Stephens Passage, and Glacier Bay (Baker et al. 1985, Calkins 1986). Humpbacks may occur throughout Southeast Alaska, including the waters around the project area.

### Eskimo Curlew

Eskimo curlews once ranged from arctic North America to southern South America, migrating seasonally by way of the Atlantic and Central flyways (Gollop 1988). The species formerly occupied western and northern Alaska, but is now considered an accidental in Alaska (Armstrong 1991) and one of the rarest birds in North America (Gollop 1988). Eskimo curlews migrate along the Alaska interior and any occurrences along coastal regions are highly unlikely (Armstrong 1991). This species has not been sighted in Alaska since 1986 (Armstrong 1988).

### Steller Sea Lion

The Steller sea lion (listed by NMFS as Threatened) ranges from Hokkaido, Japan, through the Kuril Islands and Okhotsk Sea, Aleutian Islands and central Bering Sea, Gulf of Alaska, Southeast Alaska, and south to central California. The Steller sea lion species has been split



### 3 Environment and Effects

in two, now having a north and south population. Currently, information on Steller sea lion population trends in Southeast Alaska is limited. However, available information suggests that Steller sea lion populations are stable or slightly decreasing in Southeast Alaska. The most significant factors affecting Steller sea lion populations include: (1) reductions in availability of food; (2) commercial harvest of pups; (3) subsistence harvest of sea lions; (4) harvest for public display and scientific research purposes; (5) predation by sharks, killer whales (*Orcinus orca*), and brown bears (*Ursus arctos*); (6) disease; (7) inadequate regulatory mechanisms such as quotas on incidental harvest during commercial fishing operations; and (8) other natural or human factors such as illegal shooting of adult sea lions at rookeries, haul-out sites, and in the water near boats (TLMP 1997). None of these factors are regulated by or are within the jurisdiction of the Forest Service, and critical habitat for Steller sea lions has not been designated. The closest sea lion haul-out to the Chasina Project Area has been located by NMFS on the southern point of Grindall Island just south of Kasaan Peninsula at Baker Point (letter from S. Pennoyer, National Marine Fisheries Service, Anchorage, Alaska, February 6, 1992). The nearest log transfer facility (LTF) associated with the project occurs in Lancaster Cove, approximately 15 miles south of this haul-out. The nearest sea lion rookery occurs over 50 miles southwest of the project area boundary at Forrester Island (Loughlin et al. 1984). There are no known Steller sea lion haul-out areas identified in the project area.

#### Aleutian Canada Goose

The Aleutian Canada goose nests on Buldir and Chagulak Islands in the Aleutian Archipelago, and winters primarily in the San Joaquin Valley of California (Amaral 1985). The species sometimes stops along the Oregon coast and occasionally is reported along the Washington coast while on the way to wintering grounds in California (Amaral 1985). Aleutian Canada geese are believed to have historically wintered from British Columbia to California (Amaral 1985). Although there are no records of Aleutian Canada geese on Prince of Wales Island, the area is within their migratory route (personal communication, J. Lindell, Endangered Species Coordinator, USF&WS, Anchorage, Alaska, September 18, 1992). Any migrating geese stopping over on Prince of Wales Island would likely be found resting in the central wetland areas.

#### American Peregrine Falcon

The threatened American peregrine falcon may migrate through the Chasina Project Area, however, it is primarily associated with the boreal forest region of interior Alaska (USF&WS 1982, Craig 1986). Population declines in peregrine falcons occurred after World War II and were due primarily to reductions in breeding habitat and contamination by organochloride pesticides (USF&WS 1982). However, this subspecies has recently experienced increases in population and reproduction. Actual migration routes and foraging areas of peregrine falcons in Southeast Alaska have not been identified and specific use of the project area is unknown. However, the project area is within the migratory pathway of the American peregrine falcon (Anderson et al. 1988). However, most coastal migrants are apparently the non-listed Peale's peregrine falcon (*F.p. pealei*) subspecies, and most American peregrines migrate inland. Peregrines potentially migrating through the area probably forage on prey species that they are known to use elsewhere, including shorebirds, waterfowl, and songbirds (Anderson et al. 1980). Marshes and riparian areas are particularly important peregrine feeding areas, since they attract and concentrate prey species (Craig 1986).

#### Species of Concern and Sensitive Species

Federally listed species of concern or sensitive species of fish and wildlife occurring in Southeast Alaska include Alexander Archipelago wolf (*Canis lupus ligoni*), marbled murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*), Kittlitz's murrelet (*Brachyramphus brevirostris*), Queen Charlotte goshawk (*Accipiter gentilis laingi*), Arctic peregrine falcon (*Falco peregrinus tundris*), harlequin duck (*Histrionicus histrionicus*), olive-sided flycatcher (*Contopus borealis*), spotted frog (*Rana pretiosa*), and bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*).



There are two plant species which are classified by the USF&WS as species of concern, thickglum reedgrass (*Calamagrostis crassiglumis*) and goose-grass sedge (*Carex lenticularis* var. *dolia*), which are known or suspected to occur in the Ketchikan Area of the Tongass National Forest. The thickglum reedgrass is currently listed as a species of concern, however, the Fish and Wildlife Service has recently requested that the species not be considered at this time. This is due to a recently published taxonomic work which “lumped” this taxa with the more common *C. stricta*. *Carex lenticularis* var. *dolis* has been added to the taxon *C. erancher*. This new taxon is more common, but still rare. Of the 22 Forest Service listed sensitive plant species, only 11 are known or suspected to occur in the Ketchikan Area of the Tongass National Forest: Goose-grass sedge (*Carex lenticularis* var. *dolia*), edible thistle (*Cirsium edule*), Davy mannagrass (*Glyceria leptostachya*), Wright filmy fern (*Hymenophyllum wrightii*), Truncate quillwort (*Isetes truncata*), Calder lovage (*Ligusticum calderi*), Choris bog orchid (*Plantanthera chorisana*), bog orchid (*Plantanthera gracilis*), loose-flowered bluegrass (*Poa laxiflora*), straight-beak buttercup (*Ranunculus orthorhynchos* var. *alascensis*), and Queen Charlotte butterweed (*Senecio moresbiensis*).

The Trumpeter swan (*Cygnus buccinator*), osprey (*Pandion haliaetus*), and Peale’s peregrine falcon (*Falco peregrinus pealei*) are on the Forest Service sensitive species list. The Queen Charlotte goshawk (*Accipiter gentilis laing*), is also on this list. These species may or do occur in the project area. The Prince of Wales spruce grouse (*Falcipenni canachersis isleibi*) is addressed in this section even though it is not a threatened, endangered, sensitive species, or a species of concern, because of the concern expressed by the Alaska Department of Fish and Game.

## Alexander Archipelago Wolf

The Alexander Archipelago wolf is a small subspecies of the gray wolf (Goldman 1937, Pederson 1982).

Wolves are wide ranging, opportunistic predators that do not exhibit a preference for specific habitats or habitat characteristics (Paradiso and Nowak 1982). The presence of wolves in an area appears to be dictated by the availability of habitat for prey species, rather than land form, climate, or vegetation. The primary food of most Southeast Alaskan wolves is deer (Wood 1990, Person 1993). Beaver, and spawning salmon may also be utilized as prey when available (Wood 1990). Availability of suitable denning habitat is of secondary importance to wolves. In forested areas, dens are usually located on elevated knolls within 1,600 feet of water (Carbyn 1987). Dens located on Prince of Wales Island have been in old-growth stands within 100 meters of freshwater (Person and Ingle 1995).

The construction of road systems and timber harvest on Prince of Wales Island alters the habitat of wolves and their prey. The primary threat of high road densities comes from the accessibility they allow humans who deliberately, accidentally, or incidentally kill wolves by shooting, snaring, or trapping (Suring et al. 1992). There have been many studies which have shown that wolf abundance may be correlated with road density (Theil 1985, Jensen et al. 1986, Mech et al. 1988, Fuller 1989). In one study, wolves generally were not present where the density of roads used by humans exceeded 0.93 mi./sq. mi. (0.58 km/sq. km) (Mech et al. 1988). However, other work has suggested that wolves could exist in areas with higher road densities if these areas are adjacent to roadless areas (Mech et al. 1988). Suring et al. (1992) recommends that road densities be maintained below this level within each Wildlife Analysis Area (WAA). The TLMP (1997) recommends that sufficient habitat should be maintained to support at least 13 deer per square mile in areas where deer are the primary prey species. Based on the Sitka Black-tailed Deer Habitat Capability Model, the project area supports approximately 25 deer per square mile with patch-size effects taken into consideration.

The USF&WS was petitioned to list the Alexander Archipelago wolf as threatened under the Endangered Species Act. The petition was based on several factors: present and threatened

### 3 Environment and Effects

destruction, modification, and curtailment of habitat from the reduction and long-term degradation of habitat for Sitka black-tailed deer by clearcut logging; inadequate regulation of road access leading to increased shooting and trapping of wolves; and other factors including inbreeding with insular populations that may reduce genetic fitness, adaptability, and long-term viability. The USF&WS undertook a status review of the Alexander Archipelago wolf and found that listing was not warranted at this time (USF&WS 1997). The wolf is considered a species of concern.

A study has been done on north-central Prince of Wales and adjacent islands to determine distribution and abundance, home range, movements, habitat use, and the feeding ecology of the wolf. Information to date indicates that within Game Management Unit 2 (GMU-2), only Prince of Wales Island is sufficiently large to maintain a permanent wolf population in the absence of immigration from some other source. An average pack home range on north Prince of Wales is 264 square kilometers. This appears to be larger than home ranges reported for wolf packs in other studies where the primary prey is deer. An analysis of habitat use versus availability for three packs, based on radio locations, showed that the wolves use high volume old growth in proportion to its availability; two packs used low volume stands more than expected and one pack used noncommercial habitat more than expected; all three packs used second-growth habitat significantly less than expected (Person and Ingle 1995).

Based on application of the Tongass Habitat Capability Model for the gray wolf, habitat capability declined about 14 percent in the project area between pre-logging and existing conditions. This decline is directly related to a reduction in deer habitat capability associated with conversion of old-growth forest to young second growth. The habitat capability model for wolves is tied directly to the habitat capability model for Sitka black-tailed deer. This is based on the assumption that wolves will first select large ungulates as prey and will utilize beaver and other prey species as maintenance prey when deer are not as plentiful (Suring et al. 1992). Accompanying this decline has been an increase in road density associated with logging activities. Road density is currently approximately 1.6 mi./sq. mi. across the project area when including Native and State ownership, and .32 mi./sq. mi. when only considering National Forest Lands.

#### **Marbled Murrelet**

The marbled murrelet was recently listed as threatened in California, Oregon, and Washington. Marbled murrelets, however, are still abundant in Alaska where they are currently considered as a species of concern. Recent estimates by the USF&WS (1995) place Southeast Alaska populations of marbled murrelets at between 267,000 and 600,000.

The marbled murrelet is a robin-sized seabird belonging to the family Alcidae. This species is found throughout the North Pacific; the North American subspecies ranges from Alaska's Aleutian Islands to central and occasionally southern California. The marbled murrelet feeds in near-shore ocean feeding areas, inland salt waters, and occasionally inland freshwater lakes. The bird feeds below the water's surface on small fish and invertebrates.

Nests sites have been located in mature and old-growth forests comprised of Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*), coast redwood (*Sequoia sempervirens*), western red cedar (*Thuja plicata*), mountain hemlock (*Tsuga mertensiana*), Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis*), and western hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla*), (Ralph and Nelson 1992). One nest has been located on south Prince Wales Island. In addition, during the field season in 1995, eggshell fragments were found in two locations in the Chasina Project Area.

The limited data on marbled murrelet nesting behavior is inconclusive regarding nest-site fidelity. Marshall (1988) observed a murrelet nest in California in a tree that appeared to be used over a period of several years. However, Ralph and Nelson (1992) indicate that murrelets (no location given) are not known to reuse nest trees. Based on high nest-site fidelity observed in other alcid species, it is highly probable that marbled murrelets at least

have strong fidelity to certain forest stands that have been used for nesting (personal communication, T. Hamer, Hamer Environmental, Sedro Woolley, Washington, September 24, 1992). This is supported by recent work on murrelet nesting behavior in California where murrelets have been observed repeatedly nesting in loose colonies in different portions of the same forest stand (Marshall 1988, Ralph and Nelson 1992).

Three primary factors that may limit marbled murrelet reproduction or survival include removal of old-growth habitat, mortality from gill-net fisheries, and oil pollution (Marshall 1988). Information on murrelet nesting mortality indicates that this species is highly susceptible to nest-site predation from avian predators that are associated with forest edges and fragmentation. Consequently, fragmentation of contiguous old-growth areas by logging and associated predator concentrations along forest edges have the potential to adversely affect murrelet nesting success within an area (personal communication, T. Hamer, Hamer Environmental, Sedro Woolley, Washington, September 25, 1992).

The marbled murrelet is currently listed as a species of concern in Alaska. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service has listed the marbled murrelet as threatened in Washington, Oregon, and northern California. In the Pacific Northwest and Southeast Alaska, the bird normally nests in trees in old-growth forests, however, a ground nesting marbled murrelet has been discovered on Prince of Wales Island (Thorne Bay Ranger District 1993). Population centers for marbled murrelets appear to be restricted to mature or old-growth forests. Actual nest sites are frequently on large, flat, often moss covered limbs high above the forest floor. Common use of moss for the nest substrate may be significant because lush moss does not appear on the conifers of the northwest until the forest is 150 or more years old (Marshall 1988). Three nest trees have been found in Southeast Alaska, two on Prince of Wales Island. Although nest data suggests that murrelets in Southeast Alaska may use mature or old-growth forests exclusively (Nelson and Hamer 1992), use of second-growth forest apparently has not been thoroughly researched in Alaska.

In the summer of 1995, murrelets were seen on the water near the project area. During field reconnaissance in 1995, two murrelet eggshells were found. One was on the southwest corner of Unit 679-409. This unit is located just east of Lancaster Cove. The eggshell was found at the base of a western hemlock tree. There was a mistletoe and moss platform directly above the eggshell about 100 feet up in the tree. The stand of timber in which the eggshell was found is predominantly western hemlock with a few large Sitka spruce trees scattered throughout. The second one was within Unit 681-373, at the base of a large western red cedar. It was located in the southwest corner of the unit which is located in the Port Johnson area. The timber in the surrounding area was predominately a mixed conifer and salal plant association.

Marbled murrelet at-sea surveys were done in the project area in the summer of 1992. One transect each was run in Lancaster Cove, Dora Bay and Kitkun Bay. In Lancaster Cove 255 marbled murrelets were seen. Dora Bay and Kitkun Bay had 80 and 31 respectively.

Marbled murrelet habitat requirements are not well established for Southeast Alaska, and there is a need for research on both nesting and foraging habitat requirements as well as mortality factors such as oil spills, fishing nets, and predation. However, the available information indicates that habitat for regional marbled murrelet populations is probably adequate.

Interim Standards and Guidelines for marbled murrelets call for leaving a minimum 30-acre windfirm buffer around all nests discovered, so that the nesting site can be studied in order to gain a better understanding of the nesting habitat requirements of marbled murrelets in Southeast Alaska.



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Kittlitz's Murrelet

Kittlitz's murrelet is a small seabird belonging to the Alcidae family. Information is limited on the natural history of this species. Kittlitz's murrelet is distributed from Point Barrow south to at least Glacier Bay, most commonly from Cape Prince of Wales south to Glacier Bay from spring through fall (Robbins et al. 1983, Peterson 1990). Winters are spent feeding in offshore pelagic waters. Kittlitz's murrelet forages on crustaceans in inshore marine waters during the breeding and nesting season in Alaska. Nests are generally located inland on the ground above the timberline in coastal mountains at the base of north-facing slopes. One egg per clutch is laid on the bare ground amid lichen-covered rocks. Kittlitz's murrelet does not occur as far south as the Chasina Project Area.

## Northern Goshawk/Queen Charlotte Goshawk

The goshawk is a raven-sized raptor associated with forests having tall trees and dense canopies. These features allow goshawks to hunt beneath the tree canopy, and to capture prey before the prey escapes into the trees or shrub layer. The dense canopy in tall trees fosters a more abundant prey species population and provides a microclimate suitable for nesting. Goshawks forage over home ranges that are typically 6,000 to 8,000 acres, though home range may be twice that size in fragmented forests (C. Crocker-Bedford 1991). Titus (et al. 1994) reported breeding period home ranges for 16 adult goshawks in Southeast Alaska as large as 48,464 acres and year-round home ranges as large as 283,493 acres. The Queen Charlotte goshawk is one of three Federally recognized subspecies of the northern goshawk (Johnsgard 1990). It is endemic to Southeast Alaska and coastal British Columbia and is probably a resident throughout its range (Taverner 1940).

The northern goshawks prey on both birds and mammals. The prey of the Queen Charlotte goshawk include the northwestern crow (*Corvus caurinus*), Steller's jay (*Cyanocitta stelleri*), varied thrush, (*Ixoreus naevius*), and the Prince of Wales spruce grouse (*Falcipennis canadensis isleibi*).

The primary breeding habitats of the northern goshawk are dense, older age stands of deciduous, coniferous, or mixed forests. Large trees provide important nesting and perching sites, and the closed canopy provide a favorable microclimate for nesting. Closed canopies may also inhibit the growth of small trees and shrubs which could interfere with goshawk flight and prey capture, and may reduce competition and predation by raptors more closely associated with forest edges (Crocker-Bedford 1992). Important prey species may also be more abundant in old-growth forests.

There have been several confirmed goshawk sightings in Southeast Alaska, however none have occurred within the project area. There has been one reported but unconfirmed sighting within the project area. This occurred at the mouth of Cannery Creek in the South Arm portion of the Chasina Project Area. Surveys were conducted in this area in 1995, but no goshawks were seen or heard. An unidentified hawk species was seen in this area during the 1995 field season and this will be followed up with more surveys in the area next year.

During the 1995 field season 326 stations were surveyed in 68 units within the project area, for a total of 8,150 acres. There were no detections during the survey protocol time limits, however, an unidentified hawk was heard in the same area on two consecutive days and seen on the third day in late October within the project area. There were follow-up surveys done in this area in 1996. This a different sighting than the one reported in Cannery Creek. In the 1996 field season, 66 units were surveyed, with 255 call stations, for a total of 6,357 acres. Follow-up surveys for the unidentified hawk species seen in October 1995, were unsuccessful in locating anything.

The northern goshawk has been listed as a species of concern for all of its range, including the Queen Charlotte subspecies which is present in Southeast Alaska. A status review was



completed and a decision was made that listing the species as threatened or endangered at this time is not warranted (USF&WS News Release 1997)

The current guidelines for Northern Goshawk Management Areas consist of two components:

- **Nest Stand**—Maintain an area of at least 25 acres around the confirmed nest tree (and probable nest tree if identified) and attempt to include prey handling areas, perches, and roosts. Vegetative structure objectives generally include a multi-layered, closed (over 60 percent) forest canopy and a relatively open understory with large trees (usually 20+ inches DBH) and low ground vegetation. These structural characteristics generally equate to Volume Class 5 and higher in the timber resource inventory.

Management: No vegetative manipulation or new road construction is permitted. Existing roads may be maintained. Permit no continuous disturbance, likely to result in nest abandonment within the surrounding 600 feet, from March 15 to August 15. Activity restrictions are removed for active nests that become inactive or unsuccessful.

- **Nesting Habitat**—Maintain an area of not less than 75 acres surrounding the Nest Stand (total management area of 100 acres). Include inactive nest stands, hiding cover, and foraging opportunities for young goshawks. Vegetative structure is similar to the Nest Stand but may include some intermediate canopy (e.g., Volume Class 4).

Management: No commercial timber harvest is permitted within the Nesting Habitat. New road construction is permitted (outside the Nest Stand) if no other reasonable roading alternatives outside the mapped Nesting Habitat exist. Other management activities which maintain the integrity of the forest stand structure are consistent with the objectives for this area.

In compliance with the 1995 Recession Bill, Section 502, and the 1996 Appropriations Bill, interim nest protection zones for active goshawk nests will not exceed 300 acres. Due to the controversial and ever changing nature of goshawk guidelines, current guidelines at the time of project implementation will be utilized.

## **Arctic Peregrine Falcon**

The Arctic peregrine falcon is primarily associated with the area north of the Brooks Range and Seward Peninsula; it is highly migratory, wintering as far south as Argentina (Ambrose et al. 1988). It occurs in Southeast Alaska only during migration periods. Population numbers have increased three-fold in Alaska (ADF&G letter Feb. 6, 1987; Ambrose et al. 1988; minutes of Interagency Wildlife Technical Committee Meeting of March 20, 1991). Effective November 4, 1994 the USF&WS removed the species from the threatened list. It is now considered a species of concern.

## **Harlequin Duck**

The harlequin duck's range is divided into two distinct regions: eastern and western. The western range includes northeast Siberia west to the Lena River, east to the Kamchatka Peninsula and the Commander Islands, and north to the Arctic Circle, then across the Bering Sea to the Aleutian Islands, much of the interior Alaska, south to northwest Wyoming, and central California (Bellrose 1980). In Alaska, the harlequin duck has been reported as a fairly common year-round resident, and at one season or another, has been recorded over much of the State except the Arctic coast (Gabrielson and Lincoln 1959).

Available evidence indicates that the species breeds locally over much of southern Alaska, probably the Aleutians, and north to Anaktuvuk Pass. Ornithologists who have worked during the spring and summer months in the Alexander Archipelago and other parts of Southeast Alaska have commented upon the numbers of these ducks, frequently summarizing

### 3 Environment and Effects

their observations by stating that they were common or abundant (Gabrielson and Lincoln 1959).

Harlequins nest along inland fast-moving rivers and streams, usually within 6 feet (but up to 60 feet) of water (DeGraaf et al. 1991). The nest site generally has shelter overhead: a recess in a stream bank or among rocks, or under shrubs, trees, or stranded debris. Occasionally the nest is in an open area or even on a stream bar, but under shrubbery or other low vegetation. During the winter the harlequin duck is common to abundant in the coastal waters of Southeast Alaska, Prince William Sound, Cook Inlet, the bays of the Alaska Peninsula, the Aleutians, and the Pribilofs (Gabrielson and Lincoln 1959). Preferred winter habitat is reported to be areas along surf-pounded rocky coasts, rather than sheltered bays and fiords, where water is one to two fathoms deep and turbulent, and where bottom fauna abounds (Palmer 1975). Harlequins feed on molluscs, crustaceans, insects, fish, and echinoderms (Bellrose 1980).

There is no information available on the breeding biology of the harlequin duck in the project area. Five harlequin ducks were seen in South Arm on October 11, 1995.

#### **Olive-sided Flycatcher**

The olive-sided flycatcher breeds in wooded regions from central Alaska east to Newfoundland and south to northern Baja California and central Arizona in the west, central Minnesota and northern Michigan in the central states, and North Carolina and Tennessee in the east. The species winters in South America.

It inhabits open coniferous forests and forest edges along lakes, streams, and muskegs (Bent 1942). Godfrey (1979) described the habitat of the species as "burnt lands with standing dead trees, bogs. Lakeshore with water-killed trees, lumbered areas, and other clearings in woodlands." DellaSala et al. (1994) noted that the species was often observed using habitats associated with lakes and muskegs during a breeding bird study on central Prince of Wales Island.

#### **Spotted Frog**

This species is believed to range from south of the Taku River to other transboundary rivers and some islands of Southeast Alaska and British Columbia (Holmberg 1992). Distribution of spotted frogs in Southeast Alaska is confined to coastal forests where it breeds in association with permanent bodies of water, including grassy margins of lakes, rivers, and streams (Hodge 1976, Broderson 1982, Nussbaum et al. 1983). Although the species is primarily aquatic (Hodge 1976, Broderson 1982, Nussbaum et al. 1983), spotted frogs have been reported moving overland in spring and summer (Behler and King 1979).

Declines in the distribution and abundance of spotted frogs have been noted in western Canada and the Pacific Northwest (McAllister and Leonard 1991), and these declines are apparently related to the destruction of terrestrial and aquatic habitats and predation by bull frogs (*Rana catesbeiana*) (Nussbaum et al. 1983, McAllister and Leonard 1991b). Spotted frogs have been documented in the Stikine River basin (Waters 1992), and most recently have been observed by USF&WS in the Unuk River. Although its status in the project area is unknown, literature records indicate that it may occur on or near Prince of Wales Island (Hodge 1976). Several spotted frog surveys have been conducted on Prince of Wales Island, although none were within the project area; no spotted frogs were found, only numerous rough-skinned newts (*Taricha granulosa*) and western toads (*Bufo boreas*).

#### **Bull Trout**

Although the range of bull trout in the contiguous United States has become greatly restricted in recent times (Goetz as cited in Hass and McPhail 1991), it still exists as far south as the Oregon-California border, north through Canada, and in the Yukon River system in Alaska (Hass and McPhail 1991). Bull trout are largely confined to interior regions throughout their

- distribution, only reaching the Pacific coast in the Puget Sound area of Washington and in the Fraser River drainage in British Columbia (Hass and McPhail 1991). Since bull trout have only been observed in the drainages of major interior river systems, it is not likely that bull trout occur in the streams of the Chasina Project Area.

## **Trumpeter Swan**

Trumpeter swans winter in specific ice-free areas throughout Southeast Alaska (letter from J.N. West, Forest Service, Ketchikan, Alaska, to C. Crocker-Bedford, Forest Service, Ketchikan, Alaska, July 2, 1991). However, swans appear to show extreme fidelity to specific wintering areas (Gale 1989). Although information on wintering habitats and populations of trumpeter swans in Southeast Alaska is limited, in general swans winter along estuaries, intertidal lakes, streams, and muskegs (letter from C. Crocker-Bedford, Forest Service, Ketchikan, Alaska, July 2, 1991). Wintering locations include open areas with adjoining grassflats with level terrain that allow swans to rest, feed, and fly without restricting visibility or movement. Swans wintering on Prince of Wales Island tend to use areas with good winter sun exposure and protection from prevailing southeasterly winds (letter from C. Crocker-Bedford, Forest Service, Ketchikan, Alaska, July 2, 1991). Trumpeter swans breeding in Alaska spend the winter along the Pacific Coast from the Alaska Peninsula to the mouth of the Columbia River, where they take advantage of open waters of saltwater estuaries and freshwater lakes and rivers.

Breeding habitat includes wetland areas with reeds, sedges, or similar emergent vegetation, primarily on fresh water but occasionally in brackish situations. In Alaska, horsetails and sedges are frequently used for nests (Bellrose 1980). The nests are placed in water 1-3 feet deep, and the same nest site may be used for several years (Bellrose 1980).

Trumpeter swans are present in the project area primarily during the fall and early spring migration periods and during winter. In Southeast Alaska, breeding is restricted to the Chilkat River Valley. There are no records of trumpeter swans nesting in the project area, however, swans are known to winter on the fresh water lakes of Prince of Wales Island. Winter surveys have been conducted on the project area and three swans were sighted in Dora Bay in February 1995.

## **Osprey**

Osprey occur in low numbers in Southeast Alaska during the spring/summer nesting period from late April through August. They are believed to overwinter in Mexico and Central America. Osprey have been observed on Prince of Wales Island in the Old Franks Creek drainage, as well as one sighting within the project area. This sighting took place in the summer of 1997. The bird was seen just south of Lancaster Cove. Historically, the Southeast Alaska population has remained stable but low. It is unknown why osprey occur in relatively low numbers in this region, but available nest sites and foraging areas do not appear to be limiting factors.

## **Peale's Peregrine Falcon**

The Peale's subspecies of the peregrine falcon (*F. p. pealei*) nests on the outer islands west of the project area (Schempf 1981, 1982). This subspecies is not listed as endangered or threatened, but is covered by a provision "similarity of appearance" which broadens the scope of protection for all peregrine falcons. The nest distribution of this subspecies is closely associated with large seabird colonies, and seabirds are believed to be major prey of the falcon.

Actual migration routes and foraging areas of the peregrine falcon in Southeast Alaska have not been identified and specific use of the project area is unknown. However, the project area is within the migratory pathway of the American peregrine falcons (Anderson et al. 1988), although most coastal migrants are apparently the non-listed Peale's subspecies and most American peregrines migrate inland. Peregrines potentially migrate through the area and



### 3 Environment and Effects

probably forage on prey species that they are known to use elsewhere, including shorebirds, waterfowl, and songbirds (Anderson et al. 1988). Marshes and riparian areas are particularly important peregrine feeding areas, since they attract and concentrate prey species (Craig 1986).

#### **Prince of Wales Flying Squirrel**

The Prince of Wales flying squirrel (*Glaucomys sabrinus griseifrons*) is one of 25 subspecies of northern flying squirrels that occur in forested regions throughout most of North America (Suring 1992). It is found only on Prince of Wales Island. Although little is known about its population status or distribution, flying squirrels are "frequently" seen on Prince of Wales Island by trappers (Alaska Natural Heritage Program 1992). However there are no recent observations in the project area.

The natural history of flying squirrels in Southeast Alaska is poorly understood. Although several studies have been conducted in eastern North America, the Pacific Northwest, and interior Alaska, it may not be possible to accurately infer interrelationships between these flying squirrels and their habitat and the flying squirrels on Prince of Wales Island. Nevertheless, information from such studies may facilitate the identification of habitat characteristics considered important to the Prince of Wales flying squirrel (Suring 1992).

The association of northern flying squirrels with old-growth forests throughout their range is well documented (Suring 1992). The attributes of old-growth forests that have been identified as important to flying squirrels are: (1) availability of denning habitat (natural tree cavities and woodpecker excavations are used to a large extent as den sites); (2) foraging habitat (studies indicate that fungi and lichens, which are commonly available only in old-growth forests, are major food sources for northern flying squirrels); and (3) protection from predators. It has been suggested that flying squirrels prefer forests characterized by well defined shrub understory that provides protection from predators while squirrels are foraging (Suring 1992).

#### **Prince of Wales Spruce Grouse**

The Prince of Wales spruce grouse (*Falcapennis canadensis isleibi*) is another species of interest in Southeast Alaska, although it is not listed as threatened, endangered, sensitive, or a species of concern. This species occurs in low densities on and near Prince of Wales Island (Gustafson 1994). A nest was observed near the head of Twelvemile Arm in 1903 (Osgood 1905). An observation of a female with chicks was made in the same area in 1992 (Gustafson 1994). There have been several more recorded sightings on Prince of Wales in recent years. A study is currently underway on the north end of Prince of Wales on the spruce grouse. The species uses old-growth forests, especially those containing spruce, young second growth prior to canopy closure, as well as other habitats.

#### **Thickglum Reedgrass**

This grass occurs in marshy wet areas, but not in muskegs. It is not known to occur on Prince of Wales Island.

#### **Goose-grass Sedge**

This sedge is known to occur in the coastal mountains of Alaska and British Columbia and the Rocky Mountains from Jasper B.C., south to Glacier National Park, Montana. Its range in Alaska is limited to the alpine of coastal Southcentral and Southeast Alaska and the Aleutian Islands. There are nine documented occurrences in Alaska (Forest Service 1994); in Southeast, at Mendenhall Glacier, Bailey Bay on Cleveland Peninsula, and the Chickamin Glacier. This species is not known to occur in the project area. Its habitat is wet alpine meadows and bare edges of snowbeds. It is not known to occur in forested areas, so it is not expected to be impacted by this project, even if it did occur here.



## **Edible Thistle**

This regionally endemic thistle species is distributed primarily along coastal Oregon, Washington, and British Columbia, and barely reaches southern most Southeast Alaska. The only documented occurrence is near Hyder, Alaska near the border of Canada (Forest Service 1994). It is unknown whether this species occurs in the project area. Its habitat in Alaska is characterized as wet meadows and open woods along glacial streams so it is not expected to be impacted by this project.

## **Davy Mannagrass**

This grass species is distributed from Southeast Alaska to central California. Its distribution in Alaska is limited to central and southern Southeast Alaska. It is known to occur in only two documented locations; near Wrangell, Alaska and on Prince of Wales Island. However, it is easily overlooked and likely to be more widespread in Southeast (Forest Service 1994). It occurs in wet lowland habitats including swamps, and lake and stream margins. Due to the protection that these areas already receive it is unlikely that this species will be impacted by the Chasina Project.

## **Wright Filmy Fern**

This fern species occurs in coastal areas of Southeast Alaska and British Columbia. Three sightings have been documented in Alaska and are limited to Biorka and Mitkof Islands (Forest Service 1994). It is unknown if the species occurs in the project area. This species appears to prefer humid shaded boulders, cliffs, tree trunks, and damp woods in the wettest maritime regions. In Alaska, it has been found in small populations on the base of trees and rock outcrops in damp woods.

## **Truncate Quillwort**

This rooted aquatic species is known from a few widely isolated populations on Vancouver Island and southcentral Alaska on the Copper River Delta (Forest Service 1994). It is unknown if this species occurs in the project area. Truncate quillwort occurs in shallow water of lakes and streams. Since this species is a rooted aquatic it will not likely be affected by this project.

Recent reevaluations of *Isoetes truncata* reveal that the ones identified from the Sitka Ranger District were misidentifications of *Isoetes occidentalis*, which was not previously known to occur in Alaska. It is suspected to occur from Prince of William Sound through the Tongass National Forest.

## **Calder Lovage**

This plant species occurs in British Columbia and Southcentral and Southeast Alaska. Documented occurrences in Alaska are limited to two disparate areas on Kodiak Island and Dall Island (just west of Prince of Wales Island) in Pleistocene refugia on limestone substrate (Forest Service 1994). It is unknown if this species occurs in the project area. Calder lovage occurs on rocky cliffs, open boggy or rocky slopes, and edges of coniferous forests. In Alaska it is known from alpine meadow habitats and edges of subalpine mixed coniferous forest.

## **Choris Bog Orchid**

In Alaska, this bog orchid species is limited to the Aleutian Islands and southern coastal areas (Forest Service 1994). Eight occurrences have been documented in Alaska, primarily from the Aleutians. Elsewhere in Alaska, reported sightings are disjunct and infrequent and are limited to areas near Juneau (primarily Chichagof Island) and Prince William Sound. Recent botanical surveys have revealed specimens of this species within the Chasina Project Area.

## **Bog Orchid**

This species of bog orchid is limited to a small geographic range in southern most Southeast Alaska and adjacent British Columbia (Forest Service 1994). Two documented sightings have been made in Alaska near Pearse Canal and on Dall Island. It is unknown if this species

# 3 Environment and Effects

occurs in the project area. This plant occurs in wet open meadow habitat. It is undetermined whether the taxon of this species is distinct; if it is not, it may be more common than previously believed (Forest Service 1994).

## **Loose-flowered Bluegrass**

The distribution of this grass species is scattered between Southeast Alaska and Oregon. Seven sightings have been documented in Southeast Alaska near Hoonah, Sandborn Canal at Port Houghton, and Admiralty Island (Forest Service 1994). It is not known if this species occurs in the project area. Loose-flowered bluegrass is associated with moist, open lowland woods and open-forest meadows.

## **Straight-beak Buttercup**

This species of buttercup is distributed from coastal southern Southeast Alaska to adjacent British Columbia and Vancouver Island (Forest Service 1994). It occurs in moist, open, lowland meadows and other moist open habitats. This species was found within the Chasina Project Area during the 1996 field season.

The most recent treatment of the genus (*Ranunculus*) does not recognize this variety as distinct from the more common (*Ranunculus orthorhynchus* var. *orthorhynchus*). The variety (*Alaschersis*) was considered a regional endemic ranging from the Central Panhandle south to Vancouver Island.

## **Queen Charlotte Butterweed**

This species of butterweed is limited to the Queen Charlotte Islands of British Columbia and to disjunct populations in southeastern Alaska and northwestern Vancouver Island (Forest Service 1994). Five occurrences have been documented in Alaska on Prince of Wales, Coronation, Baker and Dall Islands. It is not known if this species occurs in the project area. Queen Charlotte butterweed occurs in shady, wet areas and bogs of montane to alpine habitats, to open, rocky or boggy slopes, and in open, rocky heath or grass communities (Douglas 1982 in Forest Service 1994).

# Effects of the Alternatives

## **Threatened or Endangered Wildlife Species**

Proposed actions in each of the alternatives are not anticipated to adversely affect directly, indirectly, or cumulatively the Eskimo curlew, Kittlitz's murrelet, Aleutian Canada goose, American peregrine falcon, or the Arctic peregrine falcon. A biological assessment is included in Appendix D and these species are discussed there. Kittlitz's murrelet is included here in this section.

## **Humpback Whale**

Two types of boat activity associated with LTFs, log raft towing and recreational boating by workers, may have an effect on whales. Log raft towing frequency would vary between camps, seasons, and years; a general average may be about once a week during the working season (U.S. Forest Service 1989-94 Operating Period for the KPC Long-term Contract). The speed and direction of tugs and recreational boats may affect whale behavior; however, log raft towing routes are generally well established, and adverse effects from log raft towing have not been documented.

Recreational boating activity would vary between seasons and years. The effect of such recreational activity on whales would depend on factors such as size of the bay, depth of the water in the bay, number of boats, and individual behavior responses of the whales. There currently is not a quantifiable way to estimate these possible effects.

No direct or indirect effects on whales from implementation of forest management activities are anticipated. Forest-wide standards and guidelines have been developed to prevent and/or reduce indirect effects due to Forest Service permitted or approved activities. The following standards and guidelines have been developed for application on all Forest Service permitted or approved activities to provide for the protection and maintenance of whale habitats.

1. Avoid intentional aircraft flights below 500 feet above-ground level in the known vicinity of whales on Forest Service permitted or approved activities when weather ceilings permit.
2. Avoid intentional approach in a vessel of 100 feet or more in length to within 0.25 mile of whales on Forest Service permitted or approved activities when safe passage exists.
3. Avoid intentional approach in a vessel of less than 100 feet in length to within 100 yards of whales on Forest Service permitted or approved activities when safe passage exists.

## **Steller Sea Lion**

No areas within the project area have been listed by NMFS as critical sea lion habitat.

Forest-wide standards and guidelines have been developed to prevent and/or reduce indirect effects of harassment or displacement of marine mammals due to Forest management activities. These guidelines will be followed.

## **Alexander Archipelago Wolf**

Implementing any of the Chasina Project action alternatives will result in a reduction in deer habitat capability. Wolf habitat capability is predicted to be reduced in proportion to the reduction in deer habitat capability.

Road density will increase in the project area as a result of implementation of any of the action alternatives. Total road density on Forest Service land would range from .5 mi./sq. mi. after implementation of Alternative 2, to 1.3 mi./sq. mi. after implementation of Alternative 6. However, the effect of increased road density would be mitigated by access management and the fact that roads in the project area are not connected to any major human population centers.

Because of the reduction in deer habitat capability and the increase in road density associated with implementation of any one of the action alternatives, the Chasina Project may affect the Alexander Archipelago wolf. However, the effects of this project are expected to be less for Alternatives 2 and 4 which do not involve extensive roading into previously unroaded areas.

## **Marbled Murrelet**

All action alternatives will harvest stands capable of providing nesting habitat (old-growth forests) for marbled murrelets. Table WIL-6 in the Wildlife section of this chapter shows that Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 harvest 4, 7, 7, 6, and 10 percent, respectively, of the commercial old-growth forest in the project area.

Based on current information, a reduction in available nesting habitat may occur; therefore, marbled murrelets may be affected. Any nests located during field reconnaissance or unit layout will be protected from timber harvest and blowdown with a minimum 30 acre buffer, so that the nesting site can be studied in order to gain a better understanding of the nesting habitat requirements of marbled murrelets.

## **Kittlitz's Murrelet**

No observations have been made of this species in the Chasina Project Area and it does not appear that this species is dependent on old-growth forests for nesting habitat; therefore, no effects are anticipated for Kittlitz's murrelet.

## **Species of Concern**



# 3 Environment and Effects

## **Northern Goshawk/Queen Charlotte Goshawk**

Goshawks are extremely difficult to locate, so it is possible that there could be a breeding territory in the Chasina Project Area. All action alternatives will harvest stands capable of providing nesting habitat (old-growth forests) for goshawks. Table WIL-6 in the Wildlife section of this chapter shows that Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 harvest 4, 7, 7, 6, and 10 percent, respectively, of the commercial forest in the project area; therefore, goshawks may be affected.

Any goshawk nests found during field reconnaissance or unit layout will be protected from harvest, following the current Forest Guidelines for Goshawk Management. As specified in Public Law 104-19, Sec 502(a), an interim Goshawk Habitat Conservation Area not to exceed 300 acres may be established around each active nest.

## **Harlequin Duck**

Nesting habitat for the harlequin duck occurs along in-land rivers and streams. Riparian habitats along all rivers and streams in the project area will be managed according to Stream and Lake Protection management prescriptions. As a result, nesting habitat requirements are expected to be maintained.

Since winter habitat occurs in the marine environment, in areas of high surf and rocky beaches, no effect on harlequin ducks is anticipated with any of the alternatives of the Chasina Project.

## **Olive-sided Flycatcher**

Since this species prefers open forest or forest edges, upland habitat value may be improved. Created openings will produce greater edge, and if reserve trees and snags are retained, flycatcher habitat could be improved. Therefore, this project may positively affect olive-sided flycatcher habitat.

## **Spotted Frog**

Riparian habitats along all lakes, rivers, and streams will be managed according to the Stream and Lake Protection management prescription. With implementation of these measures, no effect on the spotted frog is anticipated by the Chasina Project, even if it was found to occur within the project area.

## **Bull Trout**

Due to the distribution patterns of this species, it is not expected to occur in the Chasina Project Area. Riparian habitats along all lakes and streams will be managed according to the Stream and Lake Protection management prescription. With the implementation of these measures, no effect on the bull trout is anticipated, even if it was found to occur within the project area.

## **Thickglum Reedgrass**

This grass occurs in wet, marshy areas but not muskegs. It is not known to occur on Prince of Wales Island. The USF&WS has requested that this species not be considered at this time due to the recent taxonomic "lumping" of this species with the more common *C. stricta*.

## **Goose-grass Sedge**

Goose-grass sedge has been added to the taxon (*Corex eranderi*). This new taxon is more common, but still rare. No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance of harvest units. This species is not known to occur in forested areas; therefore, no effects are anticipated from timber harvest.

## **Sensitive Species**

### **Trumpeter Swan**

Most timber harvest activity will not be in conflict with the TLMP 1997 standards and guidelines for trumpeter swans, since swans are not present in the project area when most of



the timber harvest activity occurs. There is a potential for conflict when swans are migrating through or returning to wintering areas. Noise from road construction, timber harvest, and hauling of logs could frighten swans away from their preferred resting and feeding areas. However, limiting timber harvest operations to periods when swans are not present (April 1 through November 1) will mitigate these potential impacts (see Mitigation Measures, Chapter 2); therefore, no effect on trumpeter swans is anticipated.

## **Osprey**

Most timber harvest should not effect ospreys since they are not known to occur in the project area. They occur in low numbers throughout Southeast Alaska. There has been one recorded sighting in the project area. No nest was found. Osprey Standard and Guidelines are in the Forest Management Plan in the Threatened Endangered and Sensitive Species section. If a nest is found to occur within the project area, it will be protected according to those standards and guidelines.

## **Peale's Peregrine Falcon**

The Peale's subspecies nests on the outer islands to the west of the project area (Schempf 1981, 1982), and is not likely to be effected by this timber sale. The nest distribution of this subspecies is closely tied with large seabird colonies, which are believed to be their main prey. This subspecies is not listed as threatened, endangered, sensitive, or a species of concern but is covered by a provision "similarity of appearance" which broadens the scope of protection for all peregrine falcons.

## **Prince of Wales Flying Squirrel**

The Prince of Wales flying squirrel, which is found only on Prince of Wales Island, is one of 25 subspecies of flying squirrel. Although little is known about its population status or distribution, flying squirrels are "frequently" seen on Prince of Wales (Alaska Natural Heritage Program 1992). Since flying squirrels utilize old growth, the Chasina Project may affect the Prince of Wales Flying Squirrel.

## **Prince of Wales Spruce Grouse**

The Prince of Wales spruce grouse is not listed as threatened, endangered, sensitive, or a species of concern but is discussed due to the concern expressed by ADF&G. It occurs in low densities on and near Prince of Wales Island but has never been observed in the project area; therefore, the project is not expected to affect Franklin's spruce grouse.

## **Edible Thistle**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance. Since timber harvest activities generally avoid wet meadows and stream margins where this species would be expected to be found, no direct effects from timber harvest are anticipated even if the species were to occur in the project area.

## **Davy Mannagrass**

No impacts to this population as a result of road construction and timber harvest are anticipated because stream and lake shore buffers should provide adequate protection for this plant.

## **Wright Filmy Fern**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance and no sightings have been documented in the project area. Since Wright filmy fern is not known to occur in the project area, no effects are anticipated from Chasina timber harvest activities. However, potentially undetected specimens could be affected by the removal of trees from damp woods of the project area.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## **Truncate Quillwort**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance and no sightings have been documented in the project area. Furthermore, due to its rooted aquatic nature, this species does not occur in forested areas; therefore, no direct effects from the Chasina Project are anticipated. Even if the species does exist in the project area, stream and lake shore buffers should provide adequate protection for this plant.

## **Calder Lovage**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance and no sightings have been documented in the project area. Since Calder lovage is not known to occur in the project area, no effects are anticipated from Chasina timber harvest activities. However, potentially undetected specimens could be affected by the removal of timber along subalpine coniferous forest edges.

## **Choris Bog Orchid**

Botanical surveys have located populations of this species within the project area. This species has also been found in a number of other locations on Prince of Wales Island during 1996 and 1997. With the increasing number of observations, it is possible that this species is not as rare as previously thought. It is also possible that timber harvest and road construction activities may affect Choris bog orchid by destroying some individual plants. Attempts will be made to reroute roads during layout to avoid populations of sensitive species.

## **Bog Orchid**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance of harvest units and roads. This species is not known to occur in forested areas; therefore, there are no effects anticipated from timber harvest. Road construction activities may affect the bog orchid by destroying individual plants.

## **Loose-flowered Bluegrass**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance and no sightings have been documented in the project area. Since loose-flowered bluegrass is not known to occur in the project area, no effects are anticipated from Chasina timber harvest activities. However, potentially undetected specimens could be affected by the removal of timber from harvest units encompassing open lowland woods and open-forested meadows.

## **Straight-beak Buttercup**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance and no sightings have been documented in the project area. Since straight-beak buttercup is not known to occur in the project area, no effects are anticipated from Chasina timber harvest activities. Even if this species does occur in the project area, direct effects due to removal of timber from Chasina harvest units are not anticipated to be significant as the open and moist habitats in which these plants are known to occur are generally avoided for timber harvest, but may be affected by road construction.

## **Queen Charlotte Butterweed**

No observations of this species were made during field reconnaissance and no sightings have been documented in the project area. Since Queen Charlotte butterweed is not known to occur in the project area, no effects are anticipated from Chasina timber harvest activities. Even if this species does occur in the project area, direct effects due to removal of timber from Chasina harvest units are not anticipated to be significant as the species preferred habitats are generally avoided for timber harvest.

## Forest Health

### Key Terms

**Endemic**—peculiar to a particular locality; indigenous.

**Epidemic**—rapid spread or sudden prevalence of a disease.

**Phloem**—the tissue in plants that conducts foods such as sugar.

**Xylem**—the tissue in plants that conducts water and substances in solution.

**Sapwood**—the softer part of wood, between the inner bark and the heartwood.

## Affected Environment

Forest insects and diseases are normal components of the forested sites in the Chasina Project Area. Some of them exist, and will continue to exist, at endemic levels. Even at low levels of infestation or infection, forest insects and diseases have considerable effects on forest dynamics and resource management values. When they proliferate and become epidemic, the consequences to the forest can be dramatic. Currently there is no indication that insects or diseases are a potential problem in the Chasina Project Area.

### Insects

The two most common types of destructive insects found in the Chasina Project Area are defoliators and bark beetles.

#### Forest Defoliators

Forest defoliators eat the leaves or needles of forest trees. Unlike bark beetles, defoliators usually do not kill trees, but slow down tree growth and increase susceptibility to secondary attack by other insects and diseases. All species of trees are not equally susceptible to injury from defoliation. Hardwood species can usually withstand several years of defoliation because they store large food supplies and can refoliate in the same year. Conifers, on the other hand, may be killed by a single defoliation if it occurs prior to bud formation in midsummer.

The two most common forest defoliating insects that occur within the project area at endemic levels include the following:

#### Black-headed budworm

The black-headed budworm, *Acleris gloverana* (Wals), is one of the most destructive forest insects in coastal Southeast Alaska. In the 1950s, almost one third of the net timber volume was lost on some hemlock sites due to budworm defoliation. Larvae usually confine their feeding to new growth. In large concentrations, the larger larvae will feed on older needles. Budworm defoliation can result in growth reduction, top-kill, and, at times, tree mortality. Budworm populations are characterized by sporadic spectacular increases followed two to three years later by equally rapid declines.

#### Hemlock sawfly

The hemlock sawfly, *Neodiprion tsugae* (Middleton), is a serious defoliator of western hemlock throughout Southeast Alaska. Outbreaks tend to be more severe and of longer duration in the area south of Frederick Sound, especially along Clarence Strait. Larvae feed on mature foliage rather than the current year's foliage. Most sawfly outbreaks do not cause tree mortality, but some trees are top-killed and radial growth may be reduced. Tree mortality becomes more likely when sawfly and black-headed budworm populations coincide. This is



# 3 Environment and Effects

due to the feeding habits of the two defoliators; the budworm feeds on the current year's foliage, whereas sawflies consume previous year's foliage. Natural controls usually reduce epidemic sawfly populations within a few years. Wetter than normal summers help reduce sawfly populations by favoring conditions for fungal growth. Fungi readily infect and kill sawfly larvae under warm, damp conditions. Low summer temperatures can also delay sawfly development and reduce the opportunities for successful egg laying. Eventually starvation and poor nutrition brought about by depletion of the host foliage will also contribute to the population collapse.

## Bark Beetles

Bark beetles are probably the most destructive forest insect in Alaska. Bark beetles prefer to breed in weakened host material. However, during favorable climatic periods for beetle development, populations may build up rapidly and healthy trees are successfully attacked. Bark beetles girdle the phloem which, in turn, disrupts the downward movement of nutrients. Some bark beetles, notably those of the genus *Dendroctonus*, have a symbiotic relationship with blue-stain fungi. The blue-stain fungi can completely penetrate the sapwood within a year. The fungi plug up the outer conducting tissues in the xylem which halts upward water movement. This action, plus that of the bark beetles, can cause the death of a host tree.

## Spruce Beetle

Spruce Beetle, *Dendroctonus rufipennis* (Kirby), outbreaks have been noted across the Tongass National Forest and adjacent lands in previous years. The spruce beetle life cycle is 2 years, with adult beetles emerging in late May to early June in search of susceptible host material (spruce logs). Dispersing adults can fly for long distances, over 7 miles nonstop. Adult mortality during dispersal is quite high. Female beetles are attracted to windthrow and other downed material. Beetles prefer to attack the sides and bottoms of downed material because of favorable temperature and moisture regimes for brood development. Males are attracted to the site via airborne chemicals produced by the female beetles.

Most outbreaks originate in blowdown or logging residuals (cull logs) and spread to adjacent standing timber. Mortality in unmanaged Sitka spruce stands varies and can be as high as 75 percent.

## Diseases

Some of the more common diseases and other forms of damage are discussed below.

### Hemlock Dwarf Mistletoe

Hemlock Dwarf Mistletoe, *Arceuthobium tsugense* (Rosendhal, G. N. Jones), is a destructive disease of western hemlock throughout the project area. Infestation levels vary in old-growth hemlock stands. Dwarf-mistletoe is absent in some stands and in other stands almost every hemlock is infected. The volume of western hemlock trees heavily infected with dwarf-mistletoe can be reduced as much as 50 percent over a 100-year period. Dwarf-mistletoe is species specific and rarely infects Sitka spruce and mountain hemlock.

The spread of dwarf-mistletoe in young hemlock stands is often the result of leaving standing infected hemlock in cut-over areas (TLMP 1997). Dwarf-mistletoe responds to light with increased seed production. Rates of spread to adjacent and lower canopy trees will increase in partial cuts where infected hemlocks remain.

## Other

### Alaska Yellowcedar Decline

Alaska yellowcedar decline leads to reduced growth and eventual death of Alaska yellowcedar, and is a widespread problem throughout the project area. This decline is associated with wet, poorly drained sites, and recent research has demonstrated that the primary cause of decline cannot be attributed to any contagious organism. Since it is not contagious, Alaska yellowcedar decline will not spread to sites where it is not found now (TLMP 1997). Because Alaska yellowcedar has high timber value, this annual mortality represents a significant loss in timber value. In addition, substantial acres of old-growth cedar



forests have been harvested and are regenerating to other species. The regeneration of Alaska yellowcedar will be specifically considered where it forms a significant component of a site proposed for harvest.

## **Hemlock Fluting**

Hemlock fluting results in deeply incised grooves and ridges that extend vertically along the trunk of the tree. This condition reduces the value of hemlock logs because they yield less sawlog volume and because some of the milled wood contains bark. The cause of hemlock fluting is a mechanical response to wind and is generally found at low elevations near the coast. Some sites are heavily affected, to the point of making the stand unsellable, while other sites have relatively light or no damage.

## **Decays**

Decays that affect the stem and root systems are probably the major cause of volume loss within the project area. Many decay fungi enter through tree wounds. The accidental wounding of trees during partial cuts and commercial thinnings will increase the impact from decay organisms in managed stands.

Trees are susceptible to a sequence of diseases at different stages of their growth. Early susceptibility thins a forest stand resulting in more vigorous crop trees. In turn, late susceptibility removes the older and more decadent trees, making room and preparing the way for new trees.

# **Effects of the Alternatives**

Specific pests will be affected differently by each of the alternatives. In general, increasing timber harvest will decrease the impacts of the spruce beetle and timber volume loss by pests such as wood decay fungi and hemlock dwarf mistletoe. From the perspective of timber management, the health of the forest is increased through timber harvesting. However, many of these pests also contribute significantly to ecosystem diversity and long-term stability in old-growth stands by providing increased canopy diversity and animal habitat, and by causing the formation of small scale gaps.

In general, endemic levels of insect and disease activity in mature and over mature forests will be allowed to run their course. Tree losses will be accepted. Salvage logging that exceeds the intent of “minor changes” as defined under the timber sale contract and/or direct control measures will require additional NEPA analysis prior to implementation. The action alternatives all have the same relative environmental consequences from a pest management standpoint regardless of whether viewed from a timber production or a biodiversity perspective.

The previous statement is true as long as the range of silvicultural systems applied remains constant across all alternatives. Partial cuts that retain overstory trees can result in western hemlock (the most tolerant species) forming a much larger percentage of the future stand composition. Sitka spruce, western redcedar, and Alaska yellowcedar occurrence in these sites would be greatly reduced. Partial cutting would increase dwarf-mistletoe infection. Unless a large investment were made to sanitize the stand (remove infected trees) periodically, the future value of the site for timber production could be reduced or even eliminated from an economic standpoint.

## Silviculture and Timber

### Key Terms

**Advanced Regeneration** — natural conifer reproduction established beneath an existing forest canopy; comprised of trees ranging from 5-20 feet in height.

**Alternatives to Clearcutting (ATC)** - joint study applying a range of nine different silvicultural treatments to units in the Chasina Project Area.

**Allowable Sale Quantity (ASQ)** — the maximum quantity of timber that may be sold in each decade from suitable scheduled lands covered by the Forest Plan.

**Basal area (BA)** — the area of the cross section of a tree stem, or group of trees, measured at 4.5 feet above ground; usually presented as total square feet per acre.

**Blind lead** — an area within a harvest unit that is difficult to yard (remove felled timber) with conventional cable logging systems on convex slopes.

**Climax plant community** — the final or stable biotic community in a successional series which is self-perpetuating and in dynamic equilibrium with the physical habitat; the assumed end point in succession.

**Commercial Forest Land (CFL)** — land that is capable of producing continuous crops of timber (20 cubic feet of tree growth annually, or at least 8 MBF/acre).

**Desired Future Condition or Goal** — a concise statement that describes a desired future condition normally expressed in broad, general terms that are timeless, in that there is no specific date by which the goal is to be achieved (36 CFR 219.3).

**Duff layer** — vegetative material covering the mineral soils in forests including the fresh litter and well-decomposed organic material and humus.

**Ecosystem** — all of the organisms in a given area interacting with the physical environment so that the flow of energy leads to an exchange of materials between living and nonliving parts within the system.

**Even-aged system** — a planned sequence of treatments designed to maintain and regenerate a stand with one age class. The range of tree ages is usually less than 20 percent of the rotation age.

**Falldown** — the difference between planned or scheduled harvest and that which is attained after implementation.

**Forestland** — land at least 10 percent occupied by forest trees of any size, or formerly having had such tree cover and not currently developed for non-forest use.

**Managed stand** — a stand of trees in which stocking level control is applied to achieve maximum growth.

**MBF** — thousand board feet.

**Logging System Transportation Analysis Plan (LSTA)** — interdisciplinary design and mapping of all potential timber harvest units, including associated logging and transportation systems, within a project area.

**Mid-market analysis** — the value and product mix represented at the quarter in which the pond log value (end-product selling price less manufacturing cost) for the species and product mix most closely matches the point between the ranked quarters of the Alaska Index Operation pond value, adjusted to Common Year Dollars, where one half of the harvest of timber from the Tongass National Forest has been removed at higher values and one half of the timber has been removed at lower values, during the period from 1979 to the current quarter (FSH 2409.22 R10 Chapter 531.1-2).

**MMBF** — million board feet.

**Partial cut** — method of harvesting trees where any number of live trees are left standing in any of various spatial patterns; not clear-cutting.

**Plant Association** — a basic unit of vegetation classification based on land management potential, species composition, successional patterns, and the climax plant community.

**Precommercial thinning** — the practice of removing some trees of sapling size to reduce stocking and improve tree growing space; trees will grow faster due to reduced competition for nutrients, water, and sunlight.

**Reserved** — lands that have been withdrawn from the timber base by an Act of Congress, the Secretary of Agriculture, or the Chief of the Forest Service.

**Retained structure** — merchantable or submerchantable trees and snags that are left within the harvest unit to provide biological habitat components over the next management cycle.

**Shade tolerance** — plant species physiological growth adaptation to shade conditions; shade tolerant species such as western hemlock are able to live in shaded conditions whereas shade intolerant species such as spruce are not adapted to shaded conditions.

**Silvical characteristics** — physiological and genetic characteristics of individual tree species and the ecological characteristics (biological and environmental factors) of the site which enable specific species to be adapted to a particular and unique site.

**Silvicultural practices** — management techniques used to modify, manage, and replace a forest over time. Silvicultural practices are classified according to the method of carrying out the process (shelterwood, seed tree, clear-cut, commercial thinning, etc.).

**Silviculture** — the art, science, and practice of controlling the establishment, composition, structure, and growth of trees and other vegetation in forest stands.

**Site Index** — a measure of a forest areas relative productive capacity for tree growth. Measurement of site index is based on height of dominant trees in a stand at a given age.

**Succession** — a series of dynamic changes by which one group of organisms succeeds another through stages leading to a potential natural community or climax. The process of plant community development after disturbance involves changes in species composition over time.

**Suitable Forestland** — commercial forestland identified as having the biological capability to sustain long-term timber production and administratively designated for such production.

**Uneven-aged management** — management techniques that result in the creation of stands that exhibit a range of diameter or age classes.

**Volume Class** — classification system used to differentiate timber stands into similar average volume per acre categories or strata.

**Windfirm trees** — trees that have been exposed to the wind throughout their life and have developed a strong root system or trees that are protected from the wind by terrain features.

**Windthrow** — the act of trees being uprooted by the wind. Three types of windthrow include: endemic, where individual trees are blown over; catastrophic, where a major windstorm can destroy hundreds of acres; and management related, where the clearing of trees in an area make the adjacent standing trees vulnerable to windthrow.



## Silviculture: Affected Environment

### Introduction

Ecosystem Management is a new term that emphasizes an old concept. It incorporates management by objectives with due consideration for biological, physical, social, and economic factors. The salient points are two-fold: (1) management of the forest resources must consider a full range of resource objectives that include commodity and noncommodity outputs; and (2) management must be practical and achievable. The second objective includes the physical and biological limitations which serve to restrict the range of treatments and objectives that can be achieved on a particular site. Choices are based on matching the attributes of the silvicultural systems with specific management objectives and ecological characteristics for specific stands and landscape levels.

Silviculture is the art and science of controlling the establishment, growth, health, composition, and quality of forests and woodlands to meet the diverse needs and values of landowners and society. This should be sustainable in the long run and in the context of human activity and use.

Silvicultural systems are used to tend, harvest, and re-establish forest stands. A stand is a forest community possessing sufficient uniformity in composition, age, spatial arrangement, or condition. A stand is distinguishable from adjacent stands and is capable of being mapped. A silvicultural system is a program of treatments applied throughout the life of the stand; it is the process by which the stand is grown for a specific purpose and it is the means of reaching a desired future condition. This process includes the harvest or regeneration of the stand, intermediate cuttings, and other cultural treatments necessary for the replacement and development of the forest stand. No single silvicultural system can produce all desired combinations of products and amenities from a particular stand or project area. Reconnaissance systems are applied through prescriptions. A prescription is a written record of stand examination and diagnosis, and includes treatment regimes prescribed for the stand. Prescriptions are prepared and written by a certified silviculturist.

### Forested Plant Communities

#### Plant Series

The natural vegetation of the reconnaissance project area is a mosaic of coniferous forest interspersed with alpine tundra, muskeg (bog), shrubland, estuarine, and beach fringe plant communities. The project area has been classified into forested plant associations, using the Tongass Forest Plant Association Management Guide (DeMeo 1992), which are based upon the climax plant community. The climax plant community is the result of the interaction between landform, climate, soils, and time. All forested plant associations having the same climax tree(s) are referred to as a series and are named based upon the climax tree(s). The Chasina Project Area has seven plant series. Forested plant communities, displayed by VCU in Table ST-1, are described below.

#### Sitka Spruce Series

Plant associates in this series are dominated by Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis*) in the overstory. Western hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla*), the principal co-dominant, may be common and is generally overtopped by the spruce. Red alder may also be present. This series is located primarily at low elevations in well-drained alluvial fans, riparian areas, or avalanche chutes. It is also found at mid-elevations on steep mountain slopes adjacent to channels, along snow avalanche paths, on slopes subject to mass wasting, and on sites subject to annual deposits of loss.



Soils are generally deep (more shallow soils generally occur upslope), poorly developed, and well drained, with a thin organic layer on the surface. Soil disturbances allow the spruce and shrub species, such as devil's club (*Oplopanax horridum*), blueberry (*Vaccinium* spp.), and salmonberry (*Rubus spectabilis*) to maintain dominance on these sites. Ferns and skunk cabbage are the dominant herbs.

Seedlings of both western hemlock and Sitka spruce series are present, but conditions favor spruce regeneration. This series is generally highly productive and the heights of mature spruce often exceed 150 feet. These communities seem to represent stable late-seral or climax units (Viereck et al. 1992).

## **Western Hemlock Series**

This series has comprised the majority of suitable forested sites on the project area. Plant associations in this series generally occur in the uplands on mountain, hill, and foot-slopes with moderate to well-drained soils. The predominate overstory tree species is the western hemlock, but Sitka spruce occurs in the overstory in relation to the frequency of disturbance. The shrub layer is dominated by blueberry and rusty menziesia; devil's club, however, can be a major component in some areas. Bunchberry and five-leaf bramble dominate the herb layer, but skunk cabbage can be a major component in areas with poorly drained soils. Plant productivity is generally high, with mature hemlock often exceeding heights of 125 feet.

The western hemlock series generally occurs from lowlands to the subalpine on several landforms including inactive alluvial fans and floodplains, foot-slopes, and steep mountain slopes. Soils usually are deep and well drained with a thin (4 to 6 inch) forest floor layer. These communities are usually stable (climax) (Viereck et al. 1992).

## **Mixed Conifer Series**

Mixed conifer associations designate sites with limited productivity due to poor soil drainage, shallow soil, or both. Since tree growth on these sites is low, recovery from severe disturbance would likely also be slow (Viereck et al. 1992). These plant associations generally occur in the uplands, often near muskegs. Dominant overstory tree species are mountain hemlock, western hemlock, western redcedar (*Thuja plicata*), and yellowcedar. Sitka spruce and shore pine can also occur. Blueberry and rusty menziesia are the dominant shrub species. Dominant herbs vary and include skunk cabbage, five-leaf bramble, deer cabbage, and ferns.

## **Western Hemlock-Yellowcedar Series**

This series can be considered a subset of the western hemlock series on the project area. It is most common on mountains and side-slopes around 1,000 feet elevation, but can be found from sea level to the subalpine zone. Dominant overstory tree species are western hemlock and yellowcedar; western redcedar may also be present. Hemlock seedlings are abundant while yellowcedar seedlings are uncommon. This series occurs at all elevations below the subalpine zone, but is primarily found on mountain slopes and hillsides where drainage or root growth is impeded. Blueberry is the dominant shrub, with rusty menziesia common. Dominant herbs vary and include ferns, bunchberry, dogwood, skunk cabbage, and five-leaf bramble. Site productivity is best described as moderate. These communities are thought to be climax. When sites supporting these communities are logged they tend to come back to blueberry and rusty menziesia if the soil is not seriously disturbed, and to Sitka alder (*Alnus sinuata*) and salmonberry if the soil has been seriously disturbed (Viereck et al. 1992).

## **Western Hemlock-Western Redcedar Series**

This series represents a transition from the less productive, poorly drained mixed conifer series, to the more productive, better drained western hemlock series. It occurs on a wide variety of landforms, but is most characteristic of rolling hill country, and lower side and

### 3 Environment and Effects

mountain slopes. Near the northern limit of its range, redcedar growth is limited by light and temperature. Consequently, while it may be found up to 1,000 feet above sea level, it is most common below 500 feet.

The overstory is dominated by western hemlock. Redcedar commonly occupies 10 to 25 percent of the forest canopy. Yellowcedar may also occur. Other species are incidental. The understory is characterized by blueberry, although salal may be locally common on warmer sites below 500 feet elevation. Site productivity is typically low to moderate on rolling hills and moderate to high on hill and mountain slopes. Poorer sites allow redcedar to compete with other conifers.

#### Shore Pine Series

This group of associations is on the transition line from mixed conifer to non-forest muskeg. Soils are poorly drained and productivity is very low. Understory vegetation, because of the abundant light available, is very diverse. Muskeg plants such as Labrador tea, crowberry, bog kalmia, bog blueberry, and sedges are common. Salal may occur on some sites.

The shore pine series is a low-productivity series with overstory dominated by shore pine. Scattered yellowcedar, redcedar, and mountain hemlock may also be present in the overstory. These sites are either level or gently sloping and most commonly occur on lowland plateaus with deep organic, poorly drained soils. The shore pine series are climax communities.

Table ST-1 displays the approximate percent of area occupied by each plant series found in the Chasina Project Area.

Table ST-1  
Acres of Forested Plant Communities (by VCU)

VCU	Sitka Spruce	Western Hemlock	Mixed Conifer	Shore Pine	Western Hemlock Yellow Cedar	Western Hemlock Western Redcedar	Alder Scrub-land	Sphagnum Muskeg	Rock
674	149	60	142	0	12	733	678	0	48
677	0	1,189	715	0	92	322	8	0	301
678	233	4,337	68	0	400	2,368	2,240	58	1,493
679	213	6,347	4,494	49	28	746	179	436	0
680	9	862	2,566	0	0	679	0	51	0
681	195	1,637	1,530	21	0	613	413	545	0
682	0	2,041	1,074	0	0	847	0	272	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>887</b>	<b>16,473</b>	<b>10,589</b>	<b>70</b>	<b>532</b>	<b>6,308</b>	<b>3,518</b>	<b>1,362</b>	<b>1,842</b>

SOURCE: This information derived from Ketchikan Area GIS, CLU data layer.

## Non-Forested Plant Communities

Various non-forested plant communities occur in estuaries, riparian areas, muskegs, alpine meadows, and alpine lichen rock outcrops in the Chasina Project Area. Non-forested plant communities, displayed by VCU in Table ST-2 are described below. Harvesting will not occur in these communities.

### Estuary Tidal Flats

Estuary tidal flats are inundated by high tides. Vegetation consists primarily of sedges, red fescue, and sea milkwort. Bluejoint and sedges dominate on low terraces, which are rarely inundated by tides, but have high water tables. This also includes unvegetated mud flats.

### Shrub Riparian Areas

Shrub riparian areas are found on highly active floodplains and are frequently disturbed. Soils are generally deep and well drained, but flood frequently. Salmonberry, stink currant, devil's club, and ferns are the dominant vegetation.

### Muskegs

Muskegs are most often characterized by stunted yellowcedar and shore pine, along with sedges and other bog vegetation. Muskegs dominated by sphagnum moss or tall sedge cover smaller areas. The water table is at the surface, and numerous small ponds are scattered throughout the muskeg.

### Alpine Meadows

Alpine meadows are dominated by cassiope and mixed forbs including mountain heather. These meadows are found on steep, well-drained rock outcrops at high elevation. Alpine lichen rock outcrops are found at high elevations above timberline. Plant cover does not exceed 50 percent. Species diversity is high and includes cassiope, clubmoss, and grass species.





### 3 Environment and Effects

Table ST-2 displays the acres of area occupied by each non-forest plant series found in the Chasina Project Area.

**Table ST-2**  
**Distribution of Non-Forest Plant Communities (by VCU)**

VCU	Estuary Tidal Flats	Scrub/ Shrub	Sphagnum Muskeg	Alpine Meadows	Rock	Total Non-Forested Land
674	0	0	0	109	40	149
677	4	566	27	70	322	989
678	11	1,696	260	661	1,859	4,487
679	24	76	81	462	0	643
680	7	0	3	44	0	54
681	0	0	111	100	0	211
682	13	12	3	0	0	28

SOURCE: This information derived from Ketchikan Area GIS, CLU data layer.

#### Site Class

Site class is a measure of the relative productive capacity of a parcel of land for tree growth. This measure is used to predict future timber yields and to set silvicultural priorities. Site class is a function of soil type, the productive potential of the soil, and topographic position. Estimates of site productivity in Southeast Alaska old-growth stands are best obtained by examining the soil. The soil-site relationships have been developed primarily upon depth and drainage of soil and parent material (Ruth and Harris 1979)

Soil classification mapping was conducted on Prince of Wales Island to provide broad information on soil types and their implications on management activities. Soil mapping is conducted through aerial photo interpretation of existing vegetation and correlating field verified soil/vegetation relationships. These procedures provide a high level of confidence in the soil classification over large areas, but may result in inaccurately mapped soil types at the local level. The distribution of site classes, as mapped in GIS, throughout the project area is shown in Table ST-4.



Table ST-3  
Site Class Descriptions

Site Class	Site Index (Height in ft. @ 50 yrs)
1	0 to 40
2	41 to 60
3	61 to 80
4	80 plus

Table ST-4  
Acres in Each Site Class (Productivity Group by VCU)

VCU	Site Class					Total
	Unclassified	1 Very Low	2 Low	3 Medium	4 High	
674	0	159	724	832	209	1,924
677	223	1,087	295	866	806	3,277
678	13	2,587	3,136	2,398	2,852	10,986
679	2,051	576	1,751	3,680	4,991	13,049
680	66	55	1,539	1,931	340	3,931
681	1,938	145	1,359	1,976	1,247	6,665
682	27	82	561	2,304	1,445	4,419
<b>Total</b>	<b>4,318</b>	<b>4,691</b>	<b>9,365</b>	<b>13,987</b>	<b>11,890</b>	<b>44,251</b>

SOURCE: Forest Service, Ketchikan Area, Data Base.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Silvicultural Systems

Silvicultural systems are a planned process whereby a stand is tended, harvested, and re-established (Silviculture Terminology 1994). The system name is based on the number of age classes present. They can be grouped into even-aged and uneven-aged systems, depending on the type of age structure that is created. Even-aged systems produce stands that consist of trees of the same or nearly the same age. A stand is considered even-aged if the range in tree ages normally does not exceed 20 percent of the rotation age (the age at which the stand is harvested). Seed tree cutting, shelterwood cutting, and clear-cutting will produce even-aged stands. Even-aged stands have a beginning and an end point in time. Uneven-aged systems create stands that include three or more distinctly different age classes, with no overall beginning or end point in time. Both even- and uneven-aged silvicultural systems are approved for the Chasina Project Area.

The selection of the appropriate silvicultural system is dependent upon the feasibility of achieving sound silvicultural objectives. These include such objectives as species composition, stand density, growth rate, insect and disease control, and overstory condition and development.

The next step is to use the Forest Plan, management concerns, and public issues to refine site specific objectives. It is possible that more than one silvicultural system may be prescribed for the same site, depending upon the alternative in question.

### Even-Aged Systems

Even-aged systems produce distinct successional stages and there are even-aged stands of various ages and sizes distributed throughout the managed forest. Therefore, even-aged forests have relatively low vertical diversity, but have a high degree of horizontal diversity as the forest is a mosaic of forest and openings. The low vertical diversity is a result of the comparatively simple structure of the even-aged stand.

### Clearcutting Method

This method involves the removal of the entire stand in one cutting, and reproduction is obtained artificially or by natural seeding from adjacent stands. In the narrowest sense, the cutting operation includes all standing woody vegetation. A variant of this method includes felling only merchantable trees, and with careful harvest technique, retaining the existing advance regeneration. This method is similar to large scale disturbances such as wildfire or windstorms. The primary objective of this method is to reestablish an even-aged stand by removing the mature one. Decisions to clearcut are usually based on a number of factors such as insect epidemics, disease, fire, decadent stand conditions, desire to change species, desire to introduce genetically superior trees, windfirmness, soil conditions, or desire to meet the needs for regulating volume production through area control.

The clearcutting method with natural regeneration is the most commonly used system on the Tongass National Forest. The system works well, but natural regeneration is usually too abundant. The reproduction is derived partly from wind-dispersed seed, but mostly from advance reproduction that survived the logging operation.

Silvicultural advantages of the clearcutting method can be listed as follows: (1) it permits longer cable yarding distances than would be practical in partial cutting, permitting wider road spacing and reduced road costs, resulting in less soil disturbance caused by road construction; (2) exposure to the sun raises soil temperatures, which speeds decomposition of the organic forest floor, thereby improving the productivity of the forest site; (3) it favors the regeneration of Sitka spruce by destroying advance hemlock regeneration (reduces competitive advantage of the hemlock) and disturbing the forest floor, creating seed beds that are more favorable for post-logging reproduction of spruce; (4) it provides an effective means of controlling dwarf mistletoe provided the clearcut is approximately 20 acres or larger (This is because the rate of spread from adjacent infected stands will proceed at a very slow rate into a regenerated clearcut unit. In an uneven-aged system, the infected overstory trees will

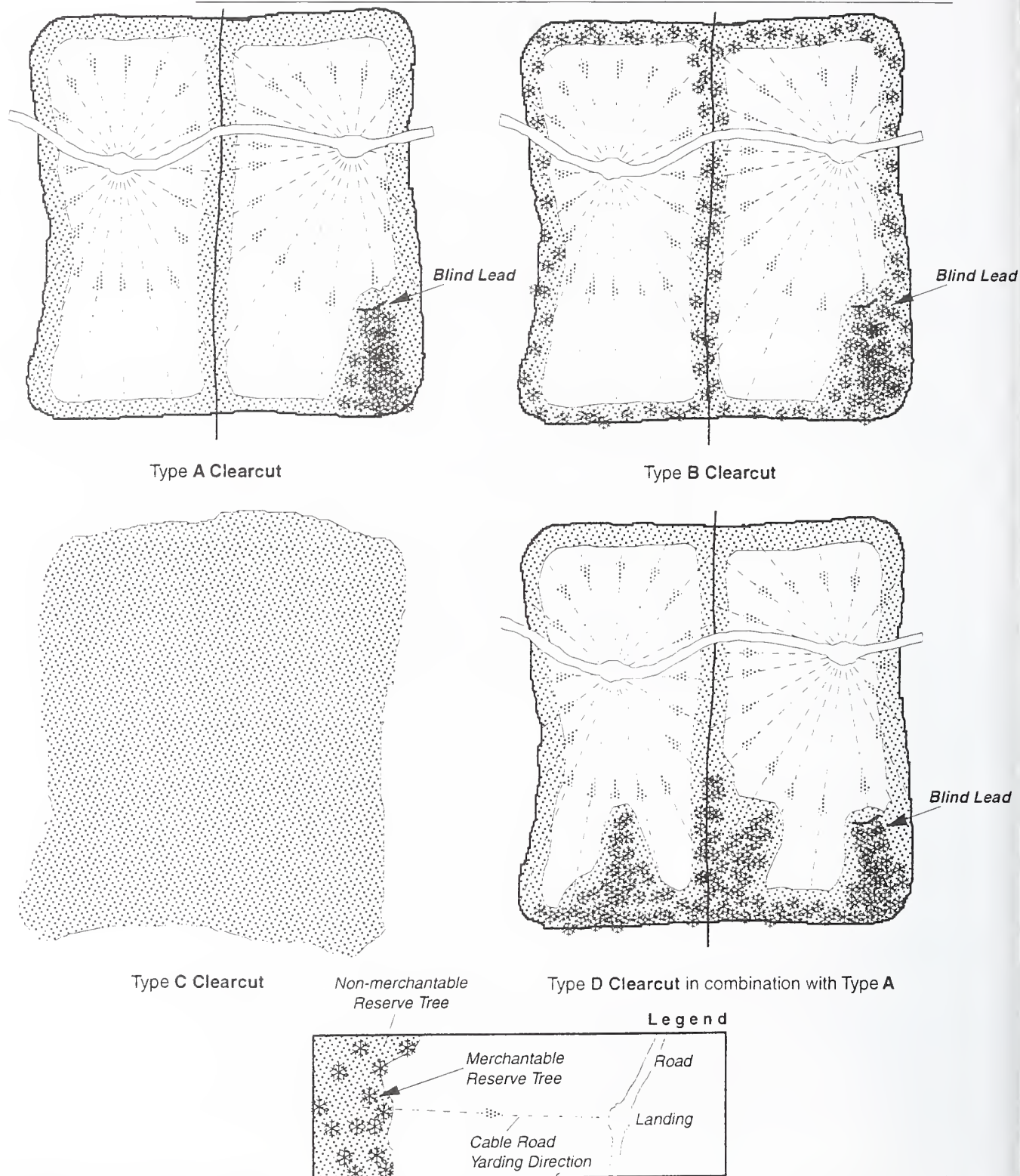
likely still remain in the stand and be present to infect the regeneration); (5) eliminates the risk of blowdown in residual stands; (6) no logging damage to adjacent standing timber and minimum damage to residual stands; and (7) logging costs are lower than with other systems and frequency site disturbance is minimized.

Silvicultural disadvantages of clearcutting are: (1) seedling distribution is uneven and parts of an area may become understocked or overstocked; (2) species control is minimal; (3) the chance of blowdown along cutting boundaries is increased, but may be reduced through proper design of cutting units; (4) it tends to reduce protection against erosion, landslides, and rapid runoff of water; (5) it is esthetically the least desirable method because of the heavily altered appearance of recently harvested areas; and (6) unmerchantable trees may be cut and utilized.

A variety of options can be employed to enhance wildlife values and visual quality associated with clearcutting. Reserve trees (green tree retention), or snags, can be retained in clumps or as individual trees throughout the unit, specifically along setting edges, in blind leads, or in other areas that are difficult to log (Forest Service 1993). These reserve trees provide for greater structural diversity and higher snag densities in the regenerated stand and lessen visual contrast between the clearcut and adjacent old growth.

Clearcuts incorporating reserve trees can be categorized into four types. Type A clearcuts leave safe snags and nonmerchantable reserve trees within a 50 to 100 foot border along harvest unit edges and nonmerchantable trees near internal setting boundaries if safety is assured. In this case, trees are directionally felled toward the landing and carefully yarded out of the buffer. Type B clearcuts are similar, except a specified number of snags and live tree replacements with minimum diameter limits are retained in the 50 to 100 foot border. Due to the flexibility of setting boundaries, the live reserve trees may only be required wherever a stream buffer is called for. Type A and B clearcuts are practical for implementation with cable yarding. Type C clearcuts would leave nonmerchantable trees and safe snags over the entire unit. This type of clearcut can be used with helicopter yarding. Type D clearcuts would provide clumps of reserve trees in islands or fingers within the unit. This type can be implemented where rock outcrops, cliffs, or blind leads make harvesting uneconomical or infeasible. In addition, clumps of reserve trees can be left in other areas if helicopter yarding or cable yarding with lateral yarding capability is the logging system to be employed. A Type D clearcut can be prescribed by itself or in combination with one of the other three types. Figure ST-1 provides a schematic diagram of these types of clearcutting.

Figure ST-1  
Schematic Diagram of Clearcut Types With Reserve Trees





Currently, the project area contains 1,545 acres of seedlings and saplings. Seedlings and saplings are trees less than or equal to 4.9 inches in diameter at breast height (DBH). There are 420 acres of poletimber and young sawtimber (5 inches to 9 inches DBH) sized stands. All of these sites were previously harvested using the clearcut silvicultural method and are planned for future even-aged management.

## Seed-tree Method

This method involves the removal of an old stand in one harvest entry, leaving a small number of trees left standing singly, in small groups, or in narrow strips, as a source of seed for natural regeneration. This method mimics a large-scale disturbance such as severe windthrow, which leaves a few mature trees per acre to serve as a seed source.

Silvicultural advantages of the seed-tree method are: (1) better distribution of seed occurs as compared with clearcutting; (2) it retains better species composition than with clearcutting; (3) it can regenerate extensive areas of timber in areas too large to be seeded naturally from adjacent stands; (4) logging costs are low; (5) it achieves slightly better aesthetics than clearcutting; and (6) seed trees add some vertical diversity.

Silvicultural disadvantages of the seed-tree method are: (1) it is limited to windfirm trees and it is not feasible where seedtrees will be blown over by wind; (2) control of spacing and the timing of the new crop is difficult; (3) it is costly to harvest seed trees, and damage occurs to regeneration; (4) soil protection is not much different than clearcutting; (5) it is commonly limited to light-weight-seeded species; and (6) it is inappropriate when the seed trees have infestations of hemlock dwarf mistletoe (a parasitic plant).

The seed tree method could be used in Southeast Alaska on a very limited basis where small areas of understocking may occur, or where cedar stocking is to be maintained.

## Shelterwood Method

This method involves the establishment of a new stand under the canopy of the old stand. Shelterwood cuttings mimic large-scale natural disturbances in which many trees are lost and the residual large trees may provide seed and may shelter the natural regeneration from extreme heat and cold. Hemlock and spruce lend themselves to shelterwood cutting because both species can become established under a forest canopy.

Silvicultural advantages of the shelterwood method are: (1) it allows ultimate control of site conditions for the regeneration of even-aged stands; (2) natural regeneration is usually more certain than the seedtree or clearcut method because there is a more abundant source of seed; (3) good soil protection is provided; (4) it is superior to all methods, except selection, with respect to protection of site and aesthetic considerations; (5) it can be applied to large areas; (6) it provides the best control over species composition, amount, and distribution; and (7) sheltering trees add some vertical diversity.

Silvicultural disadvantages of the shelterwood method are: (1) logging costs are increased because of the returns to the same area for smaller volumes and the care exercised to prevent excessive damage; (2) it requires a fairly windfirm species and it is not feasible where the sheltering trees will be blown over; hemlock and spruce rarely exhibit windfirm characteristics; (3) unavoidable damage to the residual stand and regeneration occurs during logging, particularly on cable ground; (4) it is inappropriate when the sheltering trees have infestations of dwarf mistletoe; (5) several Oregon studies in hemlock-spruce stands suggest that overstocking of regeneration can be expected; (6) it is difficult to maintain spruce in the understory because hemlock can tolerate more shade than spruce; (7) growth rate of seedlings is slower under shade; and (8) logging safety could be compromised with leave trees in cable yarded units. Like the seed-tree method, this method has limited applicability to Southeast Alaska.

## Uneven-aged Systems

Uneven-aged silvicultural systems produce stands of much greater structural diversity than even-aged systems. The diversity is due to the numerous age classes, clumpiness of tree distribution, and generally the presence of a greater number of species within the stand. Regulation of an uneven-aged forest is based on maintaining a range of tree diameters (and ages) with the largest number of trees per acre in the youngest and smallest diameter classes. As trees increase in size and maturity, their numbers are reduced through harvest.

Uneven-aged management can be used in certain areas to meet specific visual resource needs, provide habitat for wildlife, afford additional protection to sensitive resources, and address recent public concern over the use of clearcutting. The uneven-aged system can take the form of individual tree selection, diameter cuts, and group-selection cuttings. Diameter cuts have been included in the uneven-aged system because all larger trees down to a specified diameter, unique for each species, would be harvested. This method of cutting will, over time, create stands with trees of varying ages and sizes. Uneven-aged management opens up opportunities to harvest timber where even-aged management would result in unacceptable impacts to other resources.

This system has not been tested extensively in the hemlock-spruce type of Southeast Alaska.

### Single-tree Method.

Trees are removed individually at random from a large area. This method simulates natural disturbances caused by the death of scattered trees. Regeneration occurs under the partial shade of larger trees and seedlings must be able to grow in a shaded environment. Sitka spruce and western hemlock are adapted to grow in a shaded environment. Under the selection method, the stand always has some relatively old trees. Some of the cuttings may be intermediate in immature age classes. Each tree is evaluated for its contribution to the desired characteristics of the stand.

Silvicultural advantages of the single tree selection are: (1) it is capable of maintaining an uneven-aged stand; (2) reproduction of tolerant species is easily obtained; (3) seedbed site protection is excellent with little or no exposure to insolation (exposure to sunlight) and wind; (4) stands can be readily adapted to changing market conditions; and (5) it usually has the highest aesthetic rating.

Silvicultural disadvantages of the single-tree selection method are: (1) highly skilled people are needed to practice it; (2) logging costs are much higher because of the small volume per acre, the frequent entries required to each stand, the complexity of the logging systems, and the care necessary to hold damage to an acceptable limit; (3) crop trees are scattered throughout the stand; (4) risk of wind damage within the stand increases with partial cutting; (5) a more extensive road system needs to be constructed and maintained to secure the same volume of timber as obtained by use of other systems; (6) it would not be suitable for hemlock stands infected with dwarf mistletoe; (7) frequent light entries can result in accelerated stand deterioration as the stand is opened up to wind, and damage can be done to boles and roots of residual trees from felling and yarding tall, large diameter, defective trees; and (8) shade tolerant western hemlock would eventually replace spruce and cedar species within the stand.

### Group Selection Method

Trees are harvested in small groups (usually less than two acres). The openings created in the stand resemble miniature clearcuts and the uneven-aged stand is composed of a mosaic of even-aged groups; the small openings simulate small natural disturbances.

Silvicultural advantages of the group selection method are: (1) the regeneration in the small groups grows up under even-aged conditions and better stem form is obtained; (2) harvesting is more concentrated so logging costs are lower than single-tree; (3) harvesting in groups lowers damage to the residual stand; (4) it tends to increase diversity of plants and animals because of a temporary increase in shade intolerant plants in the small openings; (5) intermediate cuts may be made less frequently without sacrificing diameter class distribution although composition may be affected; (6) the small groups may be esthetically more acceptable to some people; and (7) the small openings would be more favorable for spruce and cedar regeneration, as opposed to individual tree selections.

Silvicultural disadvantages of the group selection method are the same as the single-tree method but to a lesser degree. The major limitations on its use are the operational difficulties, and high preparation costs in the steep, rugged topography found in the project area. Helicopter yarding or a pattern of small uphill yarded cable corridors may prove to be feasible in Southeast Alaska.

## Alternatives To Clearcutting

In 1992 the Chief of the Forest Service issued direction to reduce the amount of clearcutting on the National Forest System. The Tongass Land Management Plan of 1997 further defines the need to address clearcutting alternatives by listing Alternatives to Clearcutting (ATC) as a "priority research need" (# 7 in Appendix B). A project called the ATC Study has been undertaken in response to this direction and to address public concerns of the effects of clearcutting on wildlife and fisheries habitat and the visual resource. This study is a joint effort between the USDA Forest Service's Alaska Region and the Pacific Northwest Research Station. The study's experimental component has various treatments repeated on several areas of the Tongass.

The purpose of the study is to see if harvest systems other than clearcutting can be effectively and economically done in Southeast Alaska. Effects of harvest treatments on a number of resources will be studied. Included are: damage to the residual trees, amount of soil disturbance, effects on soil stability, ground water, stream sedimentation, wildlife, birds (migratory), economics, spread of insects and diseases, windthrow response, and the public's perception of the different harvest methods.

Of great concern is the damage to the residual trees because of the generally thin-barked trees of Southeast Alaska. The residual trees are the ones we are counting on to provide specific conditions or structure in the future. If damage or infection occurs, their longevity may impact planned objectives for that stand or the individual trees. Each area on the Tongass has a study block consisting of nine units at least 40 acres in size. The Chasina Project was chosen for the study on the Ketchikan Area because the NEPA process was in progress and would thus minimize district workloads.



### 3 Environment and Effects

Chasina's unit pool was reviewed for units that would meet the study criteria and were then randomly assigned treatments. The summary of treatments are as follows:

Table ST-5  
Selected Units and Random Treatment Descriptions

Unit	Treatment	Treatment Description
679-447	1	Clearcut
679-467	2	Clearcut with 5% (BA) leave trees
679-437-W	3	Uniform individual tree selection (ITS), 25% BA retention
679-425	4	Uniform ITS, 75% BA retention
679-477	5	Uncut Control
679-433	6	Reserved clumps, clearcut matrix
679-450	7	Reserved clumps, ITS in matrix to 2/3 original BA
679-437-E	8	Group selection (gaps), ITS in matrix to 1/3 original BA
679-441	9	Group selection (gaps), no harvest in matrix

Note: All units will be helicopter logged for study purposes.





Figure ST-2 is a visual interpretation of the Experimental Study Design treatments. The number in the upper left hand corner of each box corresponds to the treatment number. For example, box number 6 is what Unit 679-433 will look like (reserved clumps with matrix clearcut).

Figure ST-2  
Illustration of Experimental Study Design

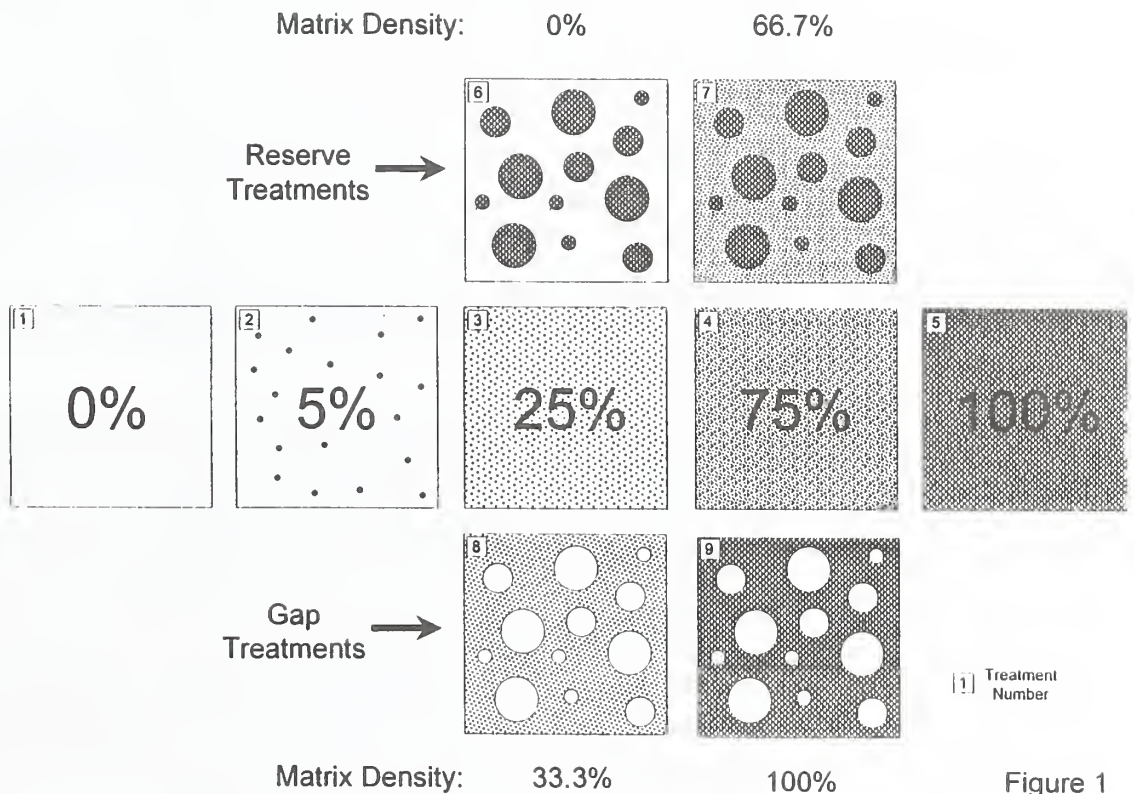


Figure 1

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Ecosystem Management

Refer to Appendix C for details of the ATC study plan and Memorandum of Understanding. Refer to individual unit cards and prescriptions for details of the individual treatments.

Ecosystem management is defined as an ecological approach to resource management at the landscape level that blends social, physical, economic, and biological processes to ensure the sustainability of healthy ecosystems while providing desired values, goods, and services (Silviculture Terminology 1994).

Under ecosystem management, new silvicultural strategies are examined, and older strategies re-evaluated, to bring about a different balance in resource production in managed forests. The basic philosophy of this concept is to mimic natural ecological processes and to maintain options for future management while more knowledge becomes available about the impacts of forest management activities on the ecosystems.

Ecosystem management looks at the forest on two levels: (1) the landscape level, which may be a VCU, watershed, or viewshed; and (2) the stand level, which addresses individual harvest units. Some concepts to be considered at the landscape level may include maintaining large tracts of undisturbed old growth by concentrating timber harvest in certain areas, minimizing the "edge effect", and using beach fringe and stream buffers for corridors between old-growth blocks. At the stand level, a variety of tools can be used within both even-aged and uneven-aged silvicultural systems. These include looking for opportunities to retain small patches of uncut timber in harvest units and leaving snags in harvest units (where safety regulations allow). Under even-aged management, the four types of clearcutting (with reserve trees) as described above, can be used. Most uneven-aged silvicultural systems fit the concept of ecosystem management well.

## Criteria for the Selection of Harvest Cutting Method

### Introduction

Criteria for the selection of harvest cutting methods to be used on National Forests in Alaska are provided in 36 CFR 219.27(b) and the Alaska Regional Guide (USFS November 1983). The selected method must meet all of the criteria, which are:

1. Capable of meeting special management and multiple-use objectives (36 CFR: Criteria 1 and 6, Regional Guide: Standard 2);
2. Permit control of vegetation to establish desired species composition, density, and rates of growth (36 CFR: Criteria 4 and 6);
3. Promote a stand structure and species composition which minimizes risks from solar radiation, disease, and windthrow (36 CFR: Criterion 4, Regional Guide: Standard 2);
4. Use available and acceptable logging methods (36 CFR: Criterion 4, Regional Guide: Standard 2);
5. Assure that lands can be adequately restocked (36 CFR: Criterion 2);
6. Be practical and economical in terms of transportation, harvesting, preparation, and administration of timber sales (36 CFR: Criterion 7, Regional Guide: Standard 2); and
7. Not be selected solely on the basis of greatest dollar return or highest output of timber, and not permanently reduce site productivity or impair conservation of water and soil resources (36 CFR: Criteria 3 and 5).

In addition to the applicable laws and regulations, on June 4, 1992, the Chief of the Forest Service issued national direction on reduced use of clearcutting (Robertson 1992). Clearcutting would be limited to areas where it is essential to meet forest plan objectives and involve one or more of the following circumstances:

1. To establish, enhance, or maintain habitat for threatened, endangered, or sensitive species;
2. To enhance wildlife habitat or water yield values, or to provide for recreation, scenic vistas, utility lines, road corridors, facility sites, reservoirs, or similar developments;
3. To rehabilitate lands adversely impacted by events such as fires, windstorms, or insect or disease infestations;
4. To preclude or minimize the occurrence of potentially adverse impacts or insect or disease infestations, windthrow, logging damage, or other factors affecting forest health;
5. To provide for the establishment and growth of desired trees or vegetative species that are shade intolerant;
6. To rehabilitate poorly stocked stands due to past management practices or natural events; and
7. To meet research needs.

## Rationale for Selection of Harvest Cutting Methods

Both even-aged and uneven-aged harvest cutting methods are available for selection within the suitable productive forest lands. Factors other than the silvicultural or ecological limitations of the species weigh heavily in the choice between uneven and even-aged management and among the several silvicultural systems that can be used to create even-aged stands. These include: economic considerations, other resource values, terrain considerations with its limitations on logging systems, and other operational environmental considerations such as the presence or absence of dwarf mistletoe, susceptibility to windthrow, and susceptibility to logging damage.

The first step in the selection of an appropriate silvicultural system for an individual site is the diagnosis or range of acceptable treatments including a deferred (no action, Alternative 1) entry. An acceptable treatment is one that is feasible and has a reasonable expectation of achieving sound silvicultural objectives. Silvicultural objectives typically include species composition, stand condition class, growth rate, density, insect and disease control, and stand development over time.

The next step is to use the Forest Plan, management concerns, and public issues to determine the objectives for the site, then select the silvicultural system that best meets the objectives. In order to meet the issues and concerns reflected in the various alternatives, one or more silvicultural systems may be selected for the same site, depending upon the alternative.

In Southeast Alaska, the range in silvicultural options is limited by numerous factors, but the most dominant is the risk of windthrow. Areas of high windthrow risk offer the option to defer entry or to clearcut. Other forms of regeneration harvest have little or no probability of success where long-term timber production is at least one of the objectives for the site. The one exception to the above statement is where cedar forms a significant component of the stand structure. Because of the extensive top kill caused by cedar decline, the tops of these trees pose little resistance to the wind and are, therefore, relatively windfirm. This is especially true at higher elevations where the soils are frozen rather than saturated during the winter months when the majority of gale-force winds occur (see Table ST-6).

Areas of moderate to low windthrow risk have a wider range of reconnaissance options available. Uneven-aged reconnaissance systems are also being prescribed in these areas in an

### 3 Environment and Effects

effort to develop alternatives to clearcut regeneration methods. Clearcutting is generally selected for these areas for the following reasons:

1. It is the most effective means of controlling dwarf mistletoe. The removal of infected trees interrupts the lifecycle of dwarf mistletoe and reduces the chance for infestation of the future stand. (36 CFR: Criterion 4, Regional Guide: Standard 2, Chief's Policy Letter: Criterion 4)
2. It lowers the risk of blowdown in the residual stands. The potential for windthrow increases along cutting boundaries but can be reduced through proper design of cutting units. (36 CFR: Criterion 4, Regional Guide: Standard 2, Chief's Policy Letter: Criterion 4)
3. It eliminates the risk of stand damage to the residual stand. The spruce-hemlock stands are composed of large trees and require large pieces of logging equipment which can cause significant damage to the residual stand. Spruce and hemlock tend to be shallow rooted, and therefore, susceptible to damage from ground based systems; clearcutting reduces these risks. (36 CFR: Criterion 4, Regional Guide: Standard 2, Chief's Policy Letter: Criterion 4)
4. It favors spruce and cedar. The logging operation will destroy some of the advance hemlock regeneration and thus take away its initial advantage. The increased sunlight also favors the spruce. (36 CFR: Criteria 4 and 6, Chief's Policy Letter: Criterion 5)
5. It can improve productivity. The cold air temperature and soil temperature do not favor decomposition of the organic forest floor. Exposing the site by clearcutting raises temperatures, which speeds the decomposition of raw humus and recycling of nutrients, particularly nitrogen. (36 CFR: Criterion 5, Chief's Policy Letter: Criterion 5)
6. It requires less road development. Less road construction is needed to remove a given amount of timber. Clearcuts favor longer spans which also allows for increased spacing between roads. (36 CFR: Criterion 5)
7. It is less costly. Fixed costs are spread over large volumes per acre and logging and road building is more concentrated. (36 CFR: Criterion 3 and 5, Regional Guide)
8. Natural regeneration is generally adequate. Experience with clearcutting since the 1950s, has shown that, except for certain situations, attaining natural regeneration is not a serious problem in the project area. Natural regeneration is abundant and generally averages 3,000 to 5,000 stems per acre 10 years after harvest. Competition among seedlings for growing space and nutrients results in reduced growth rates at about age 15 to 20. Stocking control is intended to increase the rate of diameter growth of the remaining trees; tree size has a significant impact on log values, improves crown ratios, favors commercially valuable trees (spruce), favors species (forage) or age classes which are most valuable for wildlife, windfirmness may be increased with early thinnings, or achieve other multiple-use objectives. (36 CFR: Criterion 2, Chief's Policy Letter: Criterion 4 & 5)

Those units that are prescribed for other than even-aged management have one of several objectives in mind: (1) structural diversity may be considered for a unit or landscape area (an example would be in wildlife corridors where a certain stand structure would be maintained); (2) another objective would be to attempt regeneration methods other than clearcutting to test whether they are feasible in lessor windthrow-risk areas of Southeast Alaska; (3) in areas



where resource protection would be more difficult to achieve under even-aged methods, a lesser resource impact may occur where helicopter yarding could be used with a partial cut or group selection methods; or (4) in LUD III areas, uneven-aged methods could be used to maintain or enhance values other than timber resource values such as creating horizontal and/or vertical diversity in lower volume areas.

In addition, other forms of even-aged regeneration methods may be used. Seed cuts with cedar seed trees could be used to maintain the cedar percentage in the regenerated stand.

The seed cut is followed (usually 10 to 20 years later) by an overstory removal that removes the trees left as seed and shelter during the first entry. Economically this second entry may not be feasible. The few remaining standing trees could be used for wildlife snag recruitment. The purpose of this prescription is to respond to an issue raised during public scoping and an internal concern that following clearcutting, natural regeneration of yellowcedar is generally lacking.

The yellowcedar sites will regenerate naturally if clearcut, but the species composition is primarily western hemlock, mountain hemlock, Sitka spruce, or western redcedar, depending upon the elevation. Yellowcedar will usually not be represented and must be planted to re-establish the species. Sites that are clearcut harvested using a helicopter would require a helicopter to move people and planting stock to and from the unit. The quality or grade of yellowcedar declines with increasing elevation. At lower elevations, sawlog quality cedar is of the highest value, while at higher elevations, yellowcedar is primarily utility grade. Helicopter logging of utility grade yellowcedar followed by expensive artificial regeneration efforts make it more expensive to retain the yellowcedar on high elevation, helicopter logging sites.

Table ST-6 displays the approximate acreage of identified partial removal or seed tree cut opportunities for this project by VCU and alternative. Acreages of partial cuts appear to be inflated due to instances where a partial cut is prescribed for an entire unit but actual treatment this entry would only be on a portion of the unit. For example, uneven-aged management of group selection would prescribe four entries over the length of the rotation, however, only 25 percent of the acreage would be treated this entry. See the section on Alternatives to Clearcutting under Silvicultural Systems earlier in this section for a discussion on what forms partial cutting take under that study. Other forms of partial cutting being attempted are shelterwood harvest, in which the trees below a specified diameter will be retained on the site to provide seed and shelter for future crop trees of desirable species, or group selections, which are small cuts of only a few acres in size. These small cuts can be spread across a cutting unit in round, irregular, or strip patterns which are determined by logging feasibility and management objectives. Future entries would continue this cutting practice until the entire stand is regenerated over the course of the rotation. Alternative 1, the no-action alternative, proposes no harvest activities and is not displayed. Refer to Appendix J, Unit Design Cards, for a specific description of the silvicultural system recommended for each harvest unit.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table ST-6  
Preliminary Acreage of Partial or Seed Tree Cut Opportunities Identified for the Project by VCU and Alternative

VCU	Alternative				
	2	3	4	5	6
674	0	24	0	24	24
677	0	0	0	0	19
678	0	27	173	146	287
679	354	599	562	625	667
680	0	0	0	0	0
681	16	16	16	0	16
682	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>370</b>	<b>666</b>	<b>751</b>	<b>795</b>	<b>1,013</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS, Craig Ranger District Silviculture Files.

Silvicultural systems other than clearcutting have not been applied on a large-scale basis in Southeast Alaska. The anticipated results are based primarily on research and experience from other parts of the country. Because of the experimental nature of these proposed harvest systems, each unit is considered to be a clearcut for the purposes of analyzing the direct effects on the visual and wildlife resources.

The variety of clearcutting options that would be employed to enhance wildlife and visual values associated with clearcutting are shown in the Silvicultural Systems section in this section. These are basically clearcuts with reserves and vary with yarding method and logging feasibility.

#### Factors Influencing the Choice of Silvicultural Systems

The choice of silvicultural systems will depend on the silvical characteristics, that is, the reproductive habits and growth requirements of the tree species, the operational environment (physical and biological setting), the management objectives that are to be achieved, and the operational feasibility of all logging systems (e.g., highlead, skyline, tractor, helicopter, etc.).

#### Silvical Characteristics—Commercial Species

##### Sitka Spruce

Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis*) is the largest and one of the most valuable trees—both biologically and economically. This species is classified as intermediate in tolerance (“tolerance” is defined as the ability to grow and prosper in the understory; light, moisture, or other environmental variables may be the limiting factor) and demands more light than its associate western hemlock (Harris and Farr 1974). Sitka spruce is a prolific seed producer with large crops every 2 to 3 years. Advance regeneration is prevalent in old-growth stands in Southeast Alaska. It produces small seed that can be carried long distances. Sitka spruce seed will germinate on almost any kind of seedbed if moisture is abundant. Natural regeneration can, consequently, be obtained through various reproduction methods.

Establishment is best on mineral soil with organic matter and with side shade and overhead light. Spruce has an advantage over hemlock on bare soil. The percentage of spruce reproduction often can be increased by clearcutting and exposing more mineral soil during the logging operation (Fowells 1965). The rooting characteristics of Sitka spruce show great variability, but in Southeast Alaska, the species tends to be shallow rooted. Consequently, the species is vulnerable to compaction and blowdown. The bark is relatively thin which makes it susceptible to logging injury and subsequent decay. Windthrow is the most serious damaging agent to Sitka spruce.

## Western Hemlock

Western hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla*) is also a major component of the Tongass National Forest. Western hemlock is classified as very tolerant and dominates the reproduction of the old-growth forests (Fowell 1965), which makes it an ideal species for management that includes partial cutting. Other associated conifers include western redcedar, Alaska yellowcedar, shore pine, lodgepole pine, Pacific silver fir, subalpine fir, and mountain hemlock. Western hemlock is a prolific seed producer. It produces seed almost every year, with heavy crops every 5 to 8 years; the seed is small and can be carried long distances in strong winds. The species can thrive on a wide variety of seedbeds; consequently, natural reproduction can be obtained through various reproduction methods from single tree to clearcutting. Most stands contain advanced regeneration and are often adequately stocked or overstocked. Hemlock does not develop a taproot and is a shallow-rooted species, thus is susceptible to windthrow. Most of the roots, particularly the fine roots, are near the surface and are susceptible to damage from compaction. Like spruce, this species also has thin bark and is susceptible to logging injury and subsequent decay.

## Western Redcedar

Western redcedar (*Thuja plicata*) is an important tree species both economically and from a cultural perspective as well. Southeast Alaska Natives use this species for totem poles, clan houses, canoes, etc., because of its straight grain, size, light weight, and workable texture. The stringy bark was used for making mats, baskets, and ropes. Western redcedar is commonly found in association with Alaska yellowcedar, western hemlock, lodgepole pine, and Sitka spruce.

Western redcedar is less tolerant than western hemlock and Sitka spruce. Western redcedar is a prodigious seed producer, but because of the small surface area of the seed wing, the seed does not travel far from the source. Although the germination percentage is often quite good, the seedling mortality rates are usually quite high, particularly when exposed to full light. A light shade favors seedling development. Western redcedar is near the northern edge of its range in the project area and is typically found on poorly drained organic soils in combination with Alaska yellowcedar, lodgepole pine, western hemlock, and Sitka spruce. It is rarely found in pure stands. The best growth is achieved on better sites, where it forms a minor component of the stand with hemlock and spruce dominating. Regeneration is best established on sites that have exposed mineral soil and full light. Like most cedars, the tree is long lived and highly resistant to insect and disease attacks. The shallow water table on most organic soils makes western redcedar susceptible to windthrow. It is considered less windfirm than either spruce or hemlock and is used only as a last resort for either tailholds or guyline anchors.

## Alaska Yellowcedar

Alaska yellowcedar (*Chamaecyparis nootkatensis*) is a minor, but valuable, commercial tree species found within the project area. At lower elevations it is commonly found on poorly drained organic soils in association with western redcedar, western hemlock, lodgepole pine, and Sitka spruce. At elevations above 1,000 to 1,500 feet western redcedar is no longer a stand component and mountain hemlock replaces western hemlock. At elevations above 1,200 to 1,500 feet Alaska yellowcedar may only be of firewood quality. Good cone crops



are irregular, occurring only one out of every 4 to 7 years. The seed is heavy and will disperse 132 to 264 feet (2 to 4 chains). Alaska yellowcedar is classified as an intolerant species like western redcedar, and as such, it is less shade tolerant than hemlock or spruce. Growth is generally slow. Alaska yellowcedar is especially susceptible to winter drying where warm, sunny weather, in combination with frozen soils, causes top kill. Warm weather in the winter of 1956 resulted in extensive top kill that is still evident today. Yellowcedar decline is another problem (possibly the same as winter drying) that is resulting in dead tops and mortality. The upper third of the crown is the most productive for cone production and seed viability. The harvesting of old-growth cedar forests through large clearcuts has resulted in regeneration to other species. Whether this is due to the periodicity of the seed crops, the heavy seed with limited dispersal distance, cedar decline, or some other cause, is not known. Artificial regeneration or some form of partial cutting may be needed to ensure the continued presence of yellowcedar. Alaska yellowcedar is not particularly windfirm, but trees with dead tops provide much less resistance to the wind and may therefore be more windfirm.

## Silvical Characteristics – Noncommercial Species

### Pacific Yew

Pacific yew (*Taxus brevifolia* nutt.) is a small tree or shrub that is scattered on the eastern end of the project area. Pacific yew is at the very northernmost portion of its range. It is typically found within 500 feet of saltwater as it depends upon the warm maritime climate to exist at this latitude. The bark from Pacific yew is high in taxol, which has been shown to have medicinal value for the treatment of cancer. The bark from Pacific yew trees located across the country is currently being tested for its taxol content. Cancer treatments are currently using taxol on an experimental basis. Due to the scattered nature of Pacific yew trees, it is envisioned that plantations will be developed from the seeds of trees that have the highest taxol content in order for the medicine to be affordable. Pharmaceutical companies are currently attempting to develop a synthetic version of taxol.

Pacific yew is not considered as having any commercial timber value. It is very tolerant to shade and requires it for establishment (Pacific Yew Act 1992).

An inventory of Pacific Yew was conducted on the project area in 1992 by Tom DeMeo. The study concluded that tree populations were very low, with an estimated six trees per mile of shoreline.

Most sitings on the project area have been on very low sites or within 500 feet of the shoreline. It is anticipated that project treatments would have little impact on Pacific Yew.

### Alder

Both red and Sitka alder (*Alnus species*) are found throughout the project area. Sitka alder tends to be shrub-like in form, with multiple stems, and rarely exceeds 30 feet in height. In contrast, red alder usually has a single, well-defined stem and can reach heights of up to 50 feet in the project area. Alder is commonly found along beaches and streams, and on avalanche tracks and landslide chutes. Alders are also common on roadsides, landings, and wherever soil has been highly disturbed. Alder is a primary succession species (one of the first to recolonize highly disturbed sites) and is usually shaded out 40 to 50 years after first being overtopped by Sitka spruce. Red alder is rarely found above 1,000 feet in elevation, but Sitka alder may grow above 2,500 feet in the project area. Alder seed is extremely light and can be spread great distances by the wind. A mineral soil seedbed is required and both species of alder are extremely shade intolerant. During its maximum growing period, alder can achieve 5 feet of height per year. Both species have the ability to fix nitrogen from the air. Because of this ability to fix nitrogen, and from abundant leaf fall which adds needed humus, alder is important for stabilizing or improving disturbed forest soils. Mixed stands of



## Operational Environment Climate

Sitka spruce and alder can be very productive. Red alder is used for smoking fish and for carving, but neither species is used commercially.

The forest has a maritime climate with abundant moisture throughout the year and has relatively mild winter temperatures and cool summers. Lack of a pronounced drought is probably the most important factor in affecting vegetation. The combination of warm water from the Japanese currents and prevailing westerly onshore winds result in cool, humid conditions throughout the project area. The weather patterns of Southeast Alaska develop strong wind patterns and winter storms tend to be very intense. Gale force winds may occur during any month, however, the strongest winds are most likely to occur in fall and winter months. The strong winds are usually accompanied by rainfall and saturated soils that contribute to blowdown.

The management implications are: (1) moisture is not a limiting factor in tree regeneration; (2) wildfire is not a major problem; (3) high winds can cause heavy losses of timber by windthrow; (4) the relative risk of windthrow limits the range of silvicultural options available to meet the management objectives for a given site; and (5) the strong fall winds favor natural regeneration.

The rooting habits of western hemlock and Sitka spruce make these species susceptible to windthrow; both species are shallow rooted and depend on mutual support for wind resistance. Western hemlock does not develop a tap root. In addition, both species have thin bark, which makes them susceptible to logging damage to the tree bole and subsequent wood decay. Trees with stem or root rots are more susceptible to damage from the wind. Wind is a major disturbance factor in Southeast Alaska, altering the structure of the forest. Scattered windthrow of large overmature trees is a prime cause of mortality and it creates small openings in which the advance growth in the understory may develop (group selection would mimic this effect). Spruce is able to maintain itself as a stand component because of these small openings created by windthrow. Stands covering many acres can also be blown down and many existing young-growth stands originated following the blowdown of the previous stand. This windthrow plays a major role in determining the structure of the old-growth forests in Southeast Alaska. The resulting diversity has impacts on fish and wildlife populations.

Undisturbed forest watersheds are generally less likely to suffer windthrow damage than watersheds in which harvesting has taken place. Undisturbed timber stands have reached a certain degree of wind stability and tend to rely on each other to keep the main force of the wind above the forest canopy. However, once the stand structure is altered through harvesting or natural factors, wind is able to exert its full force against an edge of the stand and the stand becomes more susceptible to damage. Although there are probably no stands that are immune from windthrow damage, some are more susceptible than others. Although forest managers probably will never be able to eliminate wind damage completely, much can be done to reduce or minimize damage (Harris 1989). An important consideration in the planning process is what the effect of harvesting a particular unit will have on the windfirmness of adjacent stands. Common traits of windfirm stands and windthrow-susceptible stands have been documented by (Harris 1989). These are outlined in Table ST-7.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Topographic features also influence windthrow probability. The following features may result in decreased windfirmness:

- Westerly or easterly aspects where storm winds are accelerated around ridges;
- Southerly aspects exposed to onshore winds;
- Sideslopes or flats parallel to water channels oriented in a general northwest-southeast direction, especially along the west side of channel-flats and valley bottoms of heads of inlets or bays exposed to southerly winds;
- Small islands, promontories, or slopes at constrictions of channels with open water to windward; and
- Low ridges or upper leeward slopes.

A windthrow risk rating system based on aspect (topography), existing blowdown (history), stand density (stocking), and other factors (defect, topography, etc.), was applied during field reconnaissance on harvest units in the project area. During the timberstand examination and walk through, information was gathered to rate potential harvest units as high or low windthrow risks. These ratings are documented in the silvicultural prescriptions developed for each harvest unit. Of rated potential harvest units, 60 percent were given a high windthrow-risk rating and 40 percent were given a lower rating.

Table ST-7  
**Traits of Windfirm Stands and Traits of Stands Susceptible to Windthrow**

<b>Trait</b>	<b>Windfirm Stands</b>	<b>Susceptible Stands</b>
Age	Young	Old
Age Structure	Even-aged	Uneven-aged
Defect	Little defect	Large amounts of defect
Height	Short	Tall
Stocking	Open stocking on less productive sites, muskeg or scrub stands	Dense stocking on productive sites
Species Composition	Have a high percentage of cedar and hardwoods	Predominately spruce and hemlock
History	Intact with little evidence of recent openings	Previously damaged by blowdown  Even-aged pole or young sawtimber opened by thinning or partial cutting

SOURCE: Wind in the Forests of Southeast Alaska and Guides for Reducing Damage, A.S. Harris, PNW-GTR-244.

## Silviculture: Effects of the Alternatives

### Size of Harvest Units

The National Forest Management Act of 1976 (NFMA) specifies a limit on the size of a forest opening which may be created based on the forest type. For the western hemlock/Sitka spruce forest type associated with Southeast Alaska, this maximum opening size is 100 acres. The NFMA provides leeway for extending this opening size to 150 acres under certain conditions (e.g., timber economics, regeneration requirements, wildlife or fisheries habitat needs, transportation or harvest system requirements, etc.) and for exceeding 200 acres under extreme circumstances (major insect and disease outbreak, fire, windthrow, or other form of catastrophic damage).

No action alternatives propose harvest units which exceed 100 acres. Units exceeding 100 acres include several adjacent units to be treated in the ATC study. However, treatments call for varying levels of reserve trees and are not considered continuous created openings or clearcuts.

Because some site classes are more productive than others, they are rated by a site index and are assigned a class of low, medium, or high. The site index is based on the expected height to which a tree will grow on that site within a given number of years (in this case, 50 years). On low sites, trees would be expected to grow between 45 and 56 feet in height in 50 years. On medium sites, trees would be expected to grow between 57 and 66 feet in height in 50 years, and on high sites, trees would be expected to grow more than 77 feet high in 50 years. In general, more timber can be grown at less cost on a high site than on a medium or low site, and more timber can be grown at less cost on a medium site than on a low site (Davis 1966). However, by mixing high, medium, and low sites, average logging costs for low sites can be reduced and more land is available for timber management over the rotation.

Table ST-8 displays the acres of proposed harvest for each alternative by site class.

Table ST-8  
**Acres of Proposed Harvest by Site Class (Productivity)**

Alt.	Low (2)		Medium (3)		High (4)		Total	
	Acres	%	Acres	%	Acres	%	Acres	%
2	272	28	317	32	397	40	986	100
3	318	19	735	43	657	38	1,710	100
4	221	14	667	41	731	45	1,619	100
5	303	20	588	39	607	40	1,498	100
6	532	21	1,037	41	951	38	2,520	100

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Craig Ranger District Silvicultural Files.

Alternative 6 proposes to bring the highest number of acres in medium and high site classes under management (1,988 acres or 79 percent of the acres proposed for harvest). Alternatives 3 and 4 propose to bring the second highest number of acres in medium and high site classes under management (1,392, and 1,398 acres respectively or 81 and 86 percent of the acres

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Indirect and Cumulative Effects

proposed for harvest), followed by Alternative 5 (1,195 acres or 79 percent of the acres proposed for harvest). Alternative 1 proposes no timber harvest at this time and therefore does not provide an opportunity to bring medium and high sites under management.

### Regeneration

All of the areas proposed for timber harvest will be restocked within 5 years as required under the National Forest Management Act of 1976 (NFMA). A combination of natural regeneration (vast majority) and artificial regeneration (tree planting) could be utilized to restock harvested areas. Prescribed fire for site preparation is not being proposed for any of the alternatives.

Harvested sites must contain a minimum of 300 well dispersed trees per acre by the fifth year following harvest to be considered successfully regenerated. Survival (staked tree) surveys will be conducted on all planted sites the first and third full growing seasons after being planted. Regeneration (stocking) surveys must be conducted on all harvest units the third and fifth full growing season after yarding is complete. The third year survey is used to determine whether, if any, additional reforestation efforts are required. The fifth year survey is used primarily to certify that the regeneration needs process has been successful. Table ST-9 shows the acres of essential reforestation treatments to be performed by alternative. It should be recognized that areas requiring artificial regeneration cannot be accurately identified until after harvest when the third year stocking surveys indicate inadequate natural regeneration. Thus, these acreage figures may change at the time planting would occur.

Partial cuts and the ATC study regeneration will be monitored with a survey called Post Harvest Evaluation. Surveys will evaluate the effectiveness of the treatment called for in the Silvicultural Prescription. They are planned on areas where large amounts of basal area (cross section of the tree at breast height expressed in square feet per acre) are planned as residual leave trees in the unit or in a portion of the unit. The ATC study will have a combination of regeneration and harvest evaluation surveys depending on the acreage of clearcut or group selections verses acreage of individual tree marking which leaves various amounts of basal area standing.

In order to study the impacts of ATC on a variety of resources we anticipate some answers in several years but major results won't be available for quite some time. Due to the range of treatments attempted there will be a variety of effects across the nine units. The effects of ATC on the various analysis alternatives (1-6) will not vary because the ATC will be applied to any action alternatives chosen.



Table ST-9

**Anticipated Essential Reforestation Treatments (by Alternative) in Acres**

Alt.	Clearcut Natural Regeneration Surveys at 3 & 5 Years	Partial Cut Regeneration Surveys at Harvest Evaluation	Plantation Stocking Surveys 1 & 3 Years	Prescribed Tree Planting
1	0	0	0	0
2	651	114	43	43
3	1,536	108	90	90
4	2,156	205	135	174
5	1,851	133	174	226
6	3,364	205	237	237

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Craig Ranger District Silviculture Files.

**Long-term Timber Productivity (Yield)**

The effects of all action alternatives on long-term yield would be the conversion of unmanaged, slow-growing, overmature stands to managed, faster growing, early seral, even-aged stands. Overmature stands have lower forest floor temperatures than even-aged stands; thus reducing biological activity. Organic decomposition slows, and as a result, the supply of available nutrients is reduced. With decreased biological activity, less nitrogen is available for tree growth and nutritional status is lowered. While overmature stand growth and vigor remain nearly constant, they are at a level below that of young even-aged stands (Harris et al. 1974). Table ST-10 displays the average structural characteristics of managed stands by site classification (low, medium, and high).

The magnitude of the effect of converting unmanaged, overmature, uneven-aged stands to managed, even-aged stands will vary depending upon the number of acres of clearcuts harvested in each site class. Alternative 6 converts the most acres to managed even-aged condition (1,507), followed by Alternative 3 (1,044 acres), Alternative 4 (868 acres), Alternative 5 (703), and Alternative 2 (616 acres). Alternative 1 proposes no timber harvest and will not convert any stands to a managed condition.

All stands proposed for harvest are overmature and well beyond the age of maximum average annual growth of the stand. They are representative of uneven-aged western hemlock stands that commonly take hundreds of years to develop under natural conditions (unless they are changed by natural events such as windthrow).

The open conditions created by clearcutting allow both Sitka spruce and western hemlock to regenerate rapidly. Even-aged stands are generally comprised of 10 to 75 percent spruce, depending on the soil type and age of the stand. On average, the volume of spruce in even-aged stands 75 to 100 years after harvest is about 50 percent (Taylor 1934) compared to 28 percent in existing overmature stands. With the use of precommercial thinning, an additional 10-20 percent increase in the spruce component is attained.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Second-growth log characteristics are being studied intensively recently in Southeast Alaska. The fast growing second-growth will produce wider growth rings and associated characteristics before stand closure simulates more old-growth growing conditions.

Although log size in second-growth stands is expected to be less than in existing overmature stands, even on sites that have been precommercially thinned, total yield per acre will be higher in second-growth stands. Future log quality will be reflected in the log grades, with second-growth timber stands having fewer top grade logs than existing overmature stands. This is mainly due to trees not having time to lay down clear wood where occlusion has occurred. In addition, second-growth stands will have less volume in the larger diameter classes. Nevertheless, total yield will be significantly greater in second-growth stands than in over-mature stands. The long-term result of precommercial thinning is more usable wood fiber and depending on the length of rotation, better sawlog material. Precommercial thinning also allows the option of reducing the economic rotation age. This is because merchantable size logs are produced at an earlier age if the site is thinned.

Most second-growth even-aged stands will exhibit less variation in tree diameter and height than the overmature stands they replace. At 100 years of age, average diameters for unmanaged second-growth stands will range from 13 inches on medium sites to 15 inches on high sites. With precommercial thinning, it is possible to produce average stand diameters that approximate old-growth averages. At age 100, diameters can range from 16 inches on medium sites to more than 18 inches on high sites (Forest Service 1990a). Recent harvests on private lands are experiencing even greater diameters.

**Table ST-10**  
**Average Structural Characteristics of Managed Stands (by Site Classification)**

Stand Age (years)	Height (feet)	DBH (inches)*	Volume/Acre (board feet)**
Low Site			
5-20	26	1.4	0
20-50	56	4.9	1,900
50-80	82	8.5	14,100
80-100	96	10.8	25,500
100-120	107	12.8	37,100
120-160	122	16.4	56,800
Medium Site			
5-20	29	3.5	0
20-50	66	9.8	7,400
50-80	98	13.6	29,800
80-100	114	15.4	46,100
100-120	126	17.8	61,400
120-160	144	21.3	81,900
High Site			
5-20	31	4.0	100
20-50	77	11.0	13,900
50-80	111	15.2	43,400
80-100	127	17.5	62,400
100-120	139	20.1	78,000
120-160	157	24.1	100,300

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service 1991

\* Diameter at breast height

\*\* Net Sawlog

## Precommercial Thinning

Regeneration of naturally disturbed or harvested areas may result in stocking levels of seedlings/saplings on many upland sites with an average of 4,000 stems per acre. Although these stands will eventually thin naturally, production of usable wood fiber would be hastened if stocking were less dense through the use of precommercial thinning (Harris and Farr 1974). Growth and yield models indicate that for every acre precommercially thinned, timber yield increases by 6.9 MBF on medium and 8.9 MBF on high sites, over a 100-year rotation. Precommercial thinning reduces the competition for sunlight, moisture, and nutrients for what is often referred to as growing space. This additional growing space results in the understory plants and remaining conifers growing at accelerated rates for longer time periods than unthinned, second-growth stands. Precommercial thinning can also be used to change species composition and windfirmness of the stand. Cedar and spruce will be favored during the thinning process. Where necessary, release (felling submerchantable whips infected with dwarf mistletoe) will occur at the same time as the precommercial thinning to prevent the reinfection of the new crop of trees. It should be recognized that precommercial thinning is performed approximately 15-20 years after harvest and is dependent upon site, stocking, and other resource needs.

Recent trends in forestry have moved toward lower density/wider-spaced stands. With wider spacing, more light can penetrate to the forest floor for shrub and herb development, providing wildlife forage. As stands develop, they reach the stand exclusion stage where tree density blocks light to the floor. This “stem exclusion stage” provides thermal and hiding cover, but provides little browse opportunities. Thinning before canopy closure would promote understory growth, enhance biodiversity, and increase diameter growth. However, at the wider spacings, lower branches receive more light and become larger and more persistent.

The timing of precommercial thinning will be determined by the quality or productivity of the site, the limitations of terrain, and accessibility. In lower quality sites, where trees take longer to express dominance in height characteristics, precommercial thinning is planned between 20-25 years after harvest. On highly productive sites where competition slows growth earlier, the best payoff for thinning occurs when the treatment occurs between 15-20 years after harvest. The Southeast Alaska Prognosis (SEAPROG) model runs show that thinning to 12 by 12 spacing yielded the greatest volume increase, nine percent over no thinning, and ranged to a nine percent loss in volume for 18 by 18 foot spacing. Table ST-11 shows the number of acres that have been identified for potential precommercial thinning in the future by alternative.

Due to steep terrain, accessibility, safety considerations, resource protection needs, and budget constraints, some acres will not be thinned. Areas of extreme slopes will be left unthinned for reasons of soil protection, high costs, and safety considerations. High elevation stands, usually containing a mix of mountain hemlock and yellowcedar, will generally have silvicultural treatments retaining mature seed sources, resulting in an uneven-aged stand where precommercial thinning would not be necessary. Restocking of these high elevation sites tends to be sparse, also delaying the need for thinning, and possibly requiring an extended rotation. Some of the high elevation sites having access may be precommercially thinned at greater than 25 years of age.

## Pruning

Pruning can be used to improve wood quality and increase value by minimizing the defect core and maximizing the clear wood. Occlusion (healing over with clear wood) is rapid when pruning is accomplished early in the rotation when branches are small and bark is thin. Pruning can also be used to improve aesthetics, increase microbial activity and nutrient recycling, and stimulate the growth of understory vegetation for wildlife



forage. Pruning of second-growth stands may be an optional strategy in the future, assuming it can be made to be cost effective.

## Commercial Thinning

Some commercial thinning has been done on the Tongass National Forest in the past, although not on a widespread basis. It is expensive to perform commercial thinning with cable yarding systems. Currently the economics of commercial thinning in Southeast Alaska are marginal due to the limited demand for small diameter logs and logging expense. Access, topography, equipment limitations, and markets will determine the extent of commercial thinning in the future.

## The Silviculture Diagnosis

Appendix H presents a detailed listing of the sites by alternative where precommercial thinning is proposed when the stand reaches 15 years old.

Table ST-11  
Precommercial Thinning and Release (Acres by Alternative)

Alternative	Release	Potential PCT 15-20 Years after Harvest High Sites	Potential PCT 20-25 Years after Harvest Moderate Sites	Potential PCT 25+ Years after Harvest Poor Sites
1	0	0	0	0
2	31	97	161	315
3	82	315	444	405
4	70	546	670	256
5	62	471	522	348
6	132	673	905	663

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS, Craig Ranger District Silviculture Files.

## Second-Growth Management for Other Resource Values

### Fisheries Rehabilitation

A small percent of riparian management areas within the project area were harvested between 1954 and 1990. Most of this timber harvest occurred within recently designated buffers before any significant stream protection measures were implemented. As a result, several Class I and Class II streams, that would receive stream or beach buffers today, were harvested up to the bank.

Riparian management areas previously harvested for timber are now in various stages of secondary plant succession. Except where the ground was highly disturbed, the stand composition on the secondary successional riparian areas is similar to riparian vegetation prior to timber harvest, with Sitka spruce typically forming the canopy. On the more disturbed sites where mineral soil was exposed during timber harvest activities, the vegetation is often composed of early successional species, such as red alder and salmonberry.

Many studies have established the need for large woody debris (LWD) material in streams. It is an important component to bedload dynamics as well as providing structure, habitat, and

### 3 Environment and Effects

nutrients. Existing riparian stands of extremely dense conifers or alder, for example, will require a long period of time (greater than 100 years) to develop large material for recruitment. Management of these existing riparian stands could produce the same size material for recruitment much sooner. On a high site index stand (most riparian sites are very productive), a precommercial thinning at age 15 (maintain growth rates and promote windfirmness), followed by a second precommercial/commercial thinning at age 40 to 50 (variable spaced thinning from below) could produce snags over 15 inches in diameter (USDA Technical Bulletin No. 544). This would also promote the initial development of a two-storied stand. The objective of this type of treatment would be to promote a multi-storied canopy layer over time, promote habitat for snag dependent wildlife, and as the snags fall over, begin to provide LWD to the streams much sooner than would occur naturally. A site-specific silvicultural prescription that incorporates the concepts listed above could be prepared if funding is available for fisheries rehabilitation work.

#### Wildlife Management

The structure and composition of second-growth stands are dramatically different than that of old growth. Second-growth management is not intended to mimic or replace the need for old growth (see Chapter 3, Biodiversity section). It is possible to achieve commodity production objectives in a way that lessens the negative impacts upon certain wildlife habitat needs through the application of ecosystem management principles. Most existing older second-growth stands are relatively small stands with beach access. These are dense, single-storied stands with little understory forage and few standing snags. The prevailing theory on second-growth management for wildlife would say that, in general, these stands are too old to thin for forage enhancement (over 25 years of age). However, uneven-aged management could be used to cut openings or enlarge existing openings for forage enhancement.

One key would be to enter second growth often enough (10-25 years) to insure that existing forage would not be entirely shaded out before treatment occurs. Variable spaced or more widely spaced precommercial thinning could help promote continuous forage.

A site-specific silvicultural prescription that incorporates these concepts would be prepared in coordination with a wildlife biologist prior to implementation, should funding be available. Due to the fact that most second-growth management prescriptions to promote other resource values are somewhat experimental, very few examples of managed older second growth exist; the potential benefits were not used in modeling future wildlife/fisheries or other resource values.

#### Plant Community Successional Stages Including Old Growth

After reforestation, managed forests grow through several distinctive successional stages which generally are applicable to all even-aged cutting units proposed for harvest under the action alternatives. Characteristics such as height, diameter, and productivity vary according to site class (discussed previously in this section). Different components dominate the stand at different stages, and the overall forest structure changes over time.

##### Seedling/Sapling Stage

The first 20 years following harvest is referred to as the seedling/sapling understory colonization stage. During the first 5 years of this stage, the young stand receives maximum sunlight, resulting in the rapid establishment of a variety of shrubs, forbs, and grasses. There is little incidence of damage or mortality from disease or infestation at this stage. The changed structure of the young stand affects the structure of adjacent stands. Windthrow potential increases with greater wind exposure and understory development accelerates due to increased sunlight into the newly developing stand.

In years 5 to 20, seedlings grow into a vigorous new forest of trees, ranging from 20 to 30 feet in height and 1 to 8 inches diameter at breast height (DBH), depending on the advance

regeneration present. Understory production of woody-stemmed species is at its highest at this stage, especially in blueberry dominated sites. Larger dead materials from the original stand begin to decompose, and the stand edge is stabilized—resulting in less windthrow to the adjacent stand. At the end of this successional stage, the stand can be considered for precommercial thinning, leaving a species composition of about 60 percent western hemlock, 40 percent Sitka spruce, and a small cedar component. There will be a slightly higher spruce and cedar composition after thinning.

Table ST-12 tracks the cumulative acres in the seedling/sapling stage from the present condition, through implementation of each alternative, to 2004. The seedling/sapling stage on these high sites were stands cut after 1970. These figures represent the current condition and the changes that occur over time as the stands grow from one stage to the next. Alternative 6 projects the highest number of acres in the seedling/sapling stage (2,741 acres), followed by Alternative 3 (2,263 acres), Alternative 4 (2,102 acres), Alternative 5 (1,920 acres), and Alternative 2 (1,847 acres). Alternative 1, the no-action alternative, projects the lowest number of acres in this successional stage.

Future harvest through 2004, will add to the acreage in this stage.

Table ST-12  
**Direct and Indirect Effects in Acres on the Seedling/Sapling Stage (by VCU and Alternative)\***

VCU	Alt. 1 (Existing Condition)		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6	
	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004
674	0	0	0	0	52	52	0	0	52	52	52	52
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	13	13
678	290	0	290	0	423	130	409	116	423	130	490	197
679	1,203	1,162	1,425	1,384	1,591	1,547	1,672	1,629	1,616	1,573	1,792	1,748
680	17	17	97	97	154	152	17	17	72	72	154	152
681	2	2	334	333	273	271	164	162	57	57	403	401
682	33	33	33	33	124	123	176	175	33	33	176	175
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,545</b>	<b>1,214</b>	<b>2,179</b>	<b>1,847</b>	<b>2,617</b>	<b>2,263</b>	<b>2,438</b>	<b>2,102</b>	<b>2,253</b>	<b>1,920</b>	<b>3,080</b>	<b>2,741</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS database, SIS data layer.

\* Does not include projected partial cut units. Existing seedling/sapling stage plus additional regeneration harvests minus acres growing out of seedling/sapling stage.

## Pole/Young Sawtimber Stage

The next successional stage occurs during years 20 to 50 following harvest and is referred to as the understory exclusion stage. It is characterized by accelerated tree growth (approximately 1 foot per year) and a rapidly closing tree crown canopy. At age 50, tree heights range from 48 to 72 feet and diameters range from 5 to 10 inches, depending on the site class. Tree crowns begin to grow closer together, causing the understory to change from a dense shrub, herb, and seedling-dominated structure to one of dense moss. Stands which

### 3 Environment and Effects

have been precommercially thinned will have a two-layered canopy with western hemlock in the lower story. Canopy closure will occur more slowly in precommercially thinned sites. As any proposed harvest would probably not begin until 1998, and is expected to be completely offered by 1998, none of the units proposed for harvest at this time would grow into this successional stage by 2004. The only change that occurs is the growth of some of the existing harvest units into the understory exclusion stage. Several stands will continue to progress within the understory exclusion stage.

In years 50 to 80, the stand remains closed. At age 80, tree heights range from 74 to 107 feet and diameters range from 8 to 13 inches, depending on site class. Little sunlight reaches the forest floor, and the understory continues to be dominated by moss. Tree diameter growth slows to about 1 inch every 10 years, as competition between trees increases. It is not currently economically feasible to commercially thin trees at this stage, but thinning would increase growth and diversity of the shrub layer, as well as increase diameter growth of the remaining trees.

Table ST-13 tracks the cumulative acres in the pole/young sawtimber stage from the present condition, through implementation of each alternative, to 2004. These figures represent the current condition and the changes that occur over time as the stands grow from one stage to the next.

Table ST-13

#### Direct and Indirect Effects in Acres on the Pole/Young Sawtimber Stage by VCU and Alternative

VCU	Existing Condition (1996)	Alt. 1 1998	Alt. 2 1998	Alt. 3 1998	Alt. 4 1998	Alt. 5 1998	Alt. 6 1998
674	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
677	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
678	171	171	171	171	171	171	171
679	58	58	58	58	58	58	58
680	104	104	104	104	104	104	104
681	87	87	87	87	87	87	87
682	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS database, SIS data layer.

As the proposed harvest would probably not begin until 1998, and is expected to be completely offered by the year 1998, none of the acres proposed for harvest in this entry would grow into this successional stage by 2004. Likewise, none of the projected harvest through 2004 would have grown into this successional stage. The only change that occurs is the growth of some of the existing harvest units into the pole/young sawtimber stage. Thus each alternative shows the same number of acres in this successional stage after implementation and in 2004.



## Mature Sawtimber Stage

Between the years 80 and 100, the mature, even-aged forest and understory re-initiation stage, the stand becomes mature. At age 100, tree heights range from 88 to 123 feet and average stand diameters range from 10 to 18 inches, depending on site class. Some trees may die, while others become clearly dominant in size. Diameter growth remains at less than 1 inch every 10 years. Moss continues to dominate the understory, except in places where the canopy has opened and allowed sufficient light for herbaceous plants. These structural characteristics continue into the later stages of the stand (approximately 100 to 160 years) with continued slow growth and occasional openings in the canopy (Forest Service 1989b).

## Old-growth Stage

The final successional stage for a forest is the old-growth stage, which would pertain to stands that are prescribed to be managed for old-growth conditions or stands that have been deferred for harvest. This stage is characterized by a multi-storied stand with a large over-mature overstory composed of live and dead trees and an understory of mostly shade-tolerant western hemlock. There would be a substantial component of downed large trees and occasional openings in the forest canopy. Patches of shrubs, tree saplings, and herbs alternate with patches of overmature timber, creating a complex, multi-layered mosaic. The stand declines in growth and has the highest degree of variation and most structurally diverse understory of any successional stage.

Table ST-14 presents the acres of commercial old growth that existed prior to the EIS implementation, the acres that are projected to remain following implementation of each alternative, and the acres of commercial old growth expected to remain at the year (2004). It is assumed that all types of applied silvicultural systems result in a managed stand and therefore are subtracted from the old growth.



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table ST-14

**Projected Acres of Remaining Commercial Old-Growth Sawtimber by VCU and Alternative**

VCU	Existing Condition	Alt. 1		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6	
	(1996)	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004	1998	2004
674	1,403	1,403	1,403	1,403	1,403	1,403	1,325	1,403	1,403	1,403	1,321	1,403	1,325
677	911	911	911	911	911	911	911	911	911	911	911	911	879
678	5,512	5,512	5,512	5,512	5,209	5,270	5,349	5,512	5,217	5,512	5,230	5,512	5,022
679	8,429	8,429	8,429	8,429	7,853	8,429	7,433	8,429	7,394	8,429	7,385	8,429	7,164
680	1,587	1,587	1,587	1,587	1,507	1,587	1,448	1,587	1,587	1,587	1,532	1,587	1,448
681	3,883	3,883	3,883	3,883	3,549	3,883	3,609	3,883	3,718	3,883	3,828	3,883	3,479
682	2,453	2,453	2,453	2,453	2,453	2,453	2,362	2,453	2,310	2,453	2,453	2,453	2,310
<b>Total</b>	<b>24,178</b>	<b>24,178</b>		<b>23,188</b>		<b>22,437</b>		<b>22,540</b>		<b>22,664</b>		<b>21,627</b>	

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base and Craig Ranger District Silviculture Files.

The cumulative effects of harvesting old growth will result in the conversion of areas to a mosaic of second-growth sites of differing age classes and structures. By the year 2004, 90 to 100 percent of the existing commercial acres will remain after projected harvest under the alternatives. Alternative 6 leaves the least old growth with 89 percent remaining while Alternative 2 leaves the most of the action alternatives at 96 percent.

**Forest  
Classification****Timber: Affected Environment**

The 65,307 acres of land within the Chasina Project Area are defined by their ownership and vegetative cover. This land has been categorized as forest land, non-forest land, or other ownership.

**Other Ownership**

Other ownership refers to lands owned by private individuals, by the State of Alaska, or by Alaska Native corporations. About 32 percent (approximately 21,946 acres) of the project area is in other ownership.

**Nonforested**

Nonforested means National Forest System land that is biologically unable to support a cover of predominantly timbered vegetation. This includes muskeg, rock out-crops, talus slopes, and water bodies, among others. About 10 percent (approximately 7,047 acres) of the project area falls into this category.

**Forested**

Forested land refers to National Forest System land that consists largely of timbered vegetation and is further categorized as commercial forest land (CFL) or noncommercial forest land. About 37,431 acres, or 54 percent, of the project area falls into this category.

**Noncommercial Forest Land**

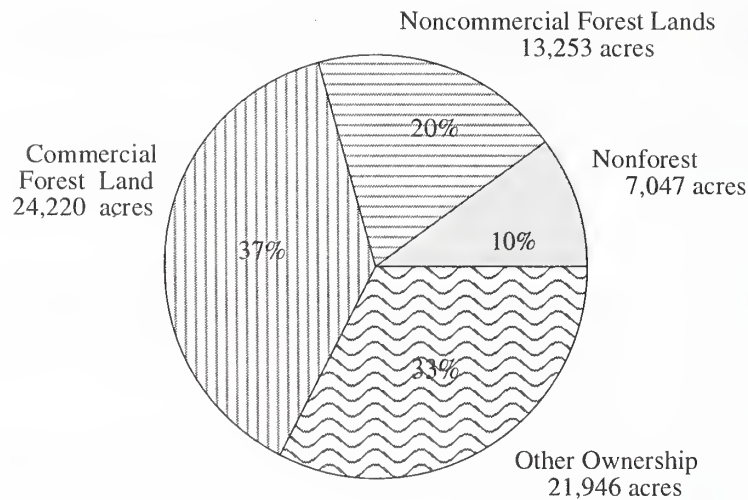
Noncommercial forest land does not support enough timber volume to meet the criteria for CFL. The project area forested land area contains about 19 percent (13,253 acres) of noncommercial forest land.

**Commercial Forest Land**

Commercial forest land (CFL) is capable of producing continuous crops of timber. The Forest Service has specified that each acre of CFL must be capable of producing 20 cubic feet of tree growth annually or must contain at least 8,000 board feet (MBF) of net timber volume (USDA Forest Service 1977a). Old-growth and second-growth stands (younger, even-aged stands that grew after the previous stand was harvested or destroyed by agents such as wind, fire, or insects) may qualify as CFL. The Chasina Project Area is composed of about 38 percent (26,498 acres) CFL.

Figure ST-3 displays the breakdown of the various Forest Land Classifications within the project area.

Figure ST-3  
Forest Land Classifications



SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area, Data Base.

## Tentatively Suitable Forest Lands

CFL is further defined as to its suitability as identified in the TLMP (1997). To be considered Tentatively Suitable, the CFL must:

- be forested lands that have both the biological capability and availability to produce crops of industrial wood;
- not be developed for non-forest uses;
- be capable of harvest with available technology to ensure timber production without irreversible resource damage to soil productivity or watershed conditions;
- be capable of restocking within 5 years after final harvest;
- have adequate information available to project response to timber management practices; and
- have not been withdrawn legislatively from a timber production classification.

## Suitable Forest Lands

Tentatively Suitable is further refined as Suitable Forest Lands. For the purposes of this analysis, all lands which have a Management Prescription or proposed Management Prescription that precludes timber harvest are eliminated from the tentatively suitable base. The remainder are classified as suitable.

To be considered suitable for harvest, these forested lands must have a LUD that allows commercial timber harvest.

For this process, project area lands have also been deferred from the suitable base if they have a LUD prescription that does not permit commercial timber harvest, i.e. old-growth habitat



areas (large, medium, and small ). One thousand two hundred and nine acres of the unit pool were dropped.

About 52.0 percent of the project area (approximately 20,300 acres) is non-CFL. This leaves approximately 24,220 acres of CFL. Lands withdrawn from the Tentatively Suitable, not contributing to the suitable base considered for this project, include lands allocated to Primitive Recreation (see Chapter 1), buffers mandated by the Tongass Timber Reform Act on certain fish-bearing streams, 100-foot buffers around all lakes greater than five acres in size, 1,000-foot buffers around the saltwater shoreline, 1,000-foot buffers around estuaries, and 330-foot buffers around all known eagle nests. These acres of all types of stream, lake and estuary buffers contributed to the non-CFL tally. The original unit pool included 464 acres of whole units or portions of units that were dropped for buffer reasons and 1,026 acres of very high MMI soils. In addition, 1,824 acres of land were conveyed to private ownership. Also withdrawn from the suitable base were 55 acres of wetlands, 599 acres which were too low in volume, and 54 acres for karst protection purposes. See Appendix G for lists of dropped units. Table ST-15 displays the type and amount of adjustments made to the CFL, which lead to the suitable base.

**Table ST-15**  
**Adjustments to the CFL, Leading to Suitable Available Acreage**

	VCU							
	674	677	678	679	680	681	682	Totals
CFL (acres)	1,402	1,157	5,789	7,968	1,585	3,813	2,507	24,220
Non-timber Prod. Lands	(0)	(638)	(1,345)	(3,016)	(540)	(1,400)	(1,221)	(8,160)
Soils	(425)	(56)	(1,196)	(58)	-	(259)	(0)	(1,994)
Wilderness	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
TTRA/RP Zone	(140)	(41)	(217)	(315)	(60)	(118)	(41)	(5932)
Previously Harvested	-	(1)	(461)	(1,258)	(121)	(89)	(33)	(1,963)
Estuary and Beach buffers	(98)	(50)	(928)	(908)	(371)	(751)	(631)	(3,737)
Eagle buffers			(9)					(59)
Available Suitable (acres)	739	371	1,633	2,413	493	1,196	581	7,436

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, GIS Data Base, based on the TLMP (1997).

### Suitable Base

Previous harvest within the project area has largely used clearcut logging methods. Previous timber harvests have occurred within the project area for the independent sale program. Previously harvested timber stands (second growth) were considered unavailable for timber harvest for this project analysis. About 7.4 percent of the CFL (approximately 1,963 acres) has been previously harvested from the Chasina Project Area excluding lands that have been conveyed.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Volume Strata

Statistical analysis indicates that three classes of productive old-growth forest can be distinguished using the existing timber inventory with additional information on soils and slope—the relative measure still being the size and number of trees an area is able to grow (usually expressed as timber volume). Soils are divided into two groups, hydric and non-hydric. The soils inventory consists of "soil mapping units," with hydric soils being those units containing greater than 50 percent wetland soils. The three classes of productive old growth are:

High Volume strata. Areas within timber inventory Volume Classes 5, 6, and 7 on non-hydric soils, and on hydric soils with slopes greater than 55 percent.

Medium Volume strata. Areas within timber inventory Volume Classes 5, 6, and 7 on hydric soils with slopes less than or equal to 55 percent; and areas within timber inventory Volume Class 4 that are either on non-hydric soils, or are on hydric soils with slopes greater than 55 percent.

Low Volume strata. Areas within timber inventory Volume Class 4 on hydric soils with slopes less than or equal to 55 percent.

Some general and approximated characteristics of these three productive old-growth classes, and of "unproductive" or other old-growth forest, follow. All classes of productive old growth are capable of growing trees at a rate of more than 20 cubic feet per acre per year.

Table ST-16  
Ketchikan Area Strata Characteristics—Available Timberlands

Strata	Trees /Acre	Quad Mean Diameter <sup>1</sup> (inches)	Dominant Tree Height (feet)	Basal Area (sq. ft/acre)	Percent Defect	Three-strata Volume/Acre <sup>2</sup>	
						Cubic Feet	Board Feet
Low	128	16.8	72	195	32.0	4.0	13.9
Medium	111	19.1	88	208	22.1	5.7	23.3
High	89	21.9	97	218	18.5	7.1	29.9

<sup>1</sup> Diameter of average basal area (quadratic mean diameter)

<sup>2</sup> Bureau Long Log Scale

#### High Volume Old-growth Forest

These areas have an average timber volume of 35 thousand board feet (MBF) per acre. The average height of co-dominant trees is greater than 100 feet. Canopy cover is 65-95 percent, with western hemlock and/or Sitka spruce dominating most sites. Stands are typically uneven-aged with small gaps in the overhead canopy. Understory production is moderate, but snow interception is high, making forage (for deer) more readily available during the winter. Vaccinium is the dominant shrub; herb cover is 20-30 percent, and fern cover is 15-30 percent. Winter thermal cover for wildlife is good. Outside designated Wilderness the Tongass has about 1.4 million acres in this class.

## **Medium Volume Old-growth Forest**

In these areas the average volume is 25 MBF per acre. Compared to the higher volume class, these stands have shorter trees (70-100 feet) and a more open canopy (40-75 percent). Western hemlock and/or Sitka spruce still dominate, but cedars can be a significant component in more southerly areas, and mountain hemlock at higher elevations. The stands are uneven-aged, with numerous gaps in the overhead canopy. The more open canopy results in a more abundant understory, but it is subject to burial by snow in the winter. *Vaccinium* is more abundant on these sites. Ferns are less common, forbs generally more so. Winter thermal cover for wildlife is moderate. Outside designated Wilderness the Tongass has about 1.4 million acres in this class.

## **Low Volume Old-growth Forest**

The average volume is 16 MBF per acre. The overstory is relatively open, with 20-50 percent canopy closure, and tree height is typically less than 60 feet. Western hemlock and cedars are predominate. The understory is very brushy, dominated by tall thickets of *Vaccinium* and *Menziesia* which tend to diminish the production of herbs, ferns, half-shrubs, and forbs. Lichens are relatively abundant. Thermal cover for wildlife is poor. Outside designated Wilderness the Tongass has about 0.6 million acres in this class.

## **Other Forest Lands**

These are classified as unproductive forest in the timber inventory. These lands have at least 10 percent tree cover, but are not capable of producing 20 cubic feet per acre per year. Many of these stands are consistent with old-growth definitions, but the trees are typically small and stunted (under 40 feet in height) and the canopy is open (10-40 percent cover). Hemlock, cedar, and lodgepole pine are the most common trees; *Vaccinium* and *Menziesia* the most common shrubs. Near wet bogs, or muskegs, heath family plants and grasses assume increasing dominance. Thermal cover for wildlife is poor. The Tongass has about 3.6 million acres in this class.

## Timber: Effects of the Alternatives

Based on the TIM-Type layer in GIS, approximately 61 percent of the acres in the harvest units in the project area is high volume strata; 21 percent is medium volume strata; 12 percent is low volume strata, and 5 percent identified as not being assigned to a volume strata (small inclusion etc.).

Table ST-17  
Proposed Harvest Volume by VCU and Alternative

VCU	Total MBF Volume					
	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
674	0	0	2,285	0	2,258	2,285
677	0	0	0	0	0	1,045
678	0	0	5,093	8,113	8,208	14,641
679	0	16,239	23,628	29,593	25,706	33,220
680	0	1,548	2,355	0	720	2,355
681	0	7,797	6,403	3,903	669	9,422
682	0	0	2,701	3,765	0	3,765
<b>Total Unit Volume</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>25,584</b>	<b>42,465</b>	<b>45,374</b>	<b>37,588</b>	<b>66,733</b>
Right-of-way Vol.*	0	200	500	100	400	1,100
<b>Total Volume</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>25,784</b>	<b>42,965</b>	<b>45,474</b>	<b>37,988</b>	<b>67,833</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS.

\* Right-of-way volume calculated using average volumes per acre by alternative and adjusting for right-of-way through muskegs and low volume timber stands.

A result of the harvest of timber, as identified in designed harvest units, is the harvest of timber within designated right-of-ways (ROW). ROWs are designed to be the most economical access to the present and future timber resource, in line with protecting and serving other resource needs and meeting Forest Service Standards and Guidelines. Consequently, the volume and type of timber harvested within ROWs is considered incidental to the proposed timber harvest. Table ST-19 displays the estimated volumes of ROW timber proposed for incidental harvest with each alternative. These estimates were generated electronically, from the Ketchikan Area's Geographic Information System (GIS). Actual area and volume will be established prior to the offering. For more ROW information see the Roads and Facilities section of this chapter

### Cumulative Effects

Cumulative effects result from the incremental effect of an action when added to the past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions. Cumulative effects can result from individually minor, but collectively significant actions taking place over a period of time. This section summarizes the effects of the proposed Chasina harvest upon the environment in combination with the effects of past and proposed future actions.



The earliest commercial timber harvest within the project area was limited to easily accessible coastal shorelines located at various locations in South Arm, Kitkun Bay, and along Clarence Strait. These areas were harvested by dozer and early cable systems between the late 1950s and mid-1960s.

The logging of lands conveyed to Alaska Native corporations commenced in the 1980s through present day, with harvest off of Kootznoowoo Native Corporation lands in Dora Bay, East Dolomi, and South Arm.

The suitability analysis performed for this project identified a total of 26,137 acres of suitable forest land, with 1,963 acres previously harvested and available for future harvest.

Table ST-18 displays the acres and percentage of each volume strata proposed for harvest, by alternative.

**Table ST-18**  
**Distribution Percent and Acres, for Proposed Harvest Units by Volume Strata and Alternative**

Alt.	Volume Strata								Total Acres
	0 Acres	%	Low Acres	%	Medium Acres	%	High Acres	%	
2	89	9	64	6	161	16	674	68	988
3	103	6	275	16	429	25	926	53	1,733
4	82	5	169	10	350	21	1,034	63	1,635
5	92	6	186	12	353	23	874	58	1,505
6	128	5	315	12	544	21	1,556	61	2,543

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan area GIS, Silviculture Coverage.

## Falldown

Falldown refers to the difference between planned or scheduled harvest and that which is attained after implementation. Falldown can be categorized in terms of hard falldown and soft falldown (short-term deferral of harvest), and can be further grouped into four types of falldown factors. Most falldown is encountered during field verification of proposed units and roads. Therefore, by conducting field verification prior to sale layout, most falldown can be determined and accounted for early in the planning process. See Appendix G for the list of units.

### Hard Falldown (Suitability Factors)

Hard falldown occurs during harvest unit planning/design, layout, and at the time of harvesting and results in changes to the suitable timber base. Examples of hard falldown include local areas of poor soil stability, wetlands, rock outcrops, v-notches, noncommercial forest sites, obvious topographic features that preclude logging, and sites that cannot be reforested in 5 years. Hard falldown also includes lands required for buffers along previously unmapped streams and lands selected by the State or Alaska Native corporations that have been conveyed to their ownership.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Areas that create hard falldown are mapped and entered into the appropriate databases that are used to adjust the suitable acreage for the Forest. These adjustments ultimately affect the Forest database from which the Forest Plan allowable sale quantity (ASQ) is calculated. It should be noted that field verification and office analysis also identify some areas mapped as unsuitable that qualify to be included in the suitable timber base. These areas are mapped and entered back into the database. Recent project experience indicates that the total acres added back to the suitable base tend to be small in proportion to the areas removed.

#### **Soft Falldown (Standards and Guidelines Deferral, Harvest Type, and Economic Factors)**

Soft falldown occurs during harvest unit planning/design, layout, and occasionally at the time of harvesting. Areas that create soft falldown are generally short-term deferrals (5-10 years) and typically do not affect the Forest Plan ASQ database.

Forest-wide standards and guidelines and Federal regulations are a primary cause of soft falldown. Examples of soft falldown caused by land use factors include: deferring potential harvest units adjacent to previous harvest areas that have not reached sufficient new tree growth to meet NFMA created opening requirements, deferring potential harvest units in areas/watersheds that have exceeded Forest Plan cumulative effects thresholds, and deferral of potential harvest units to meet TTRA proportional harvest requirements.

Selection of harvest types other than clearcut also leads to soft falldown. Harvest types other than clearcut are sometimes prescribed for protection of natural resources and amenity values. This results in timber volume being retained in the unit for either the short term (e.g., overstory removal with subsequent entries) or the long term (e.g., snag, green tree, or seed tree retention).

Soft falldown due to economic factors occurs when suitable lands are deferred from harvest due to low cost effectiveness. Lands that require many miles of new road construction or expensive yarding systems (i.e., helicopter) are included in this group. These areas remain available for harvest in the future, when economic conditions permit.

Soft falldown could result in lower harvest figures than those shown in previous projects.

Soft falldown occurs in the unit layout process as units are examined more closely through measurements such as profiles. Difficult to reach blind leads will be identified as well as other soft falldown reasons. Broad volume/acre figures from TIM-Type maps will be refined by cruising standing timber and this will most likely lead to some falldown as will GIS (Geographic Information System) inaccuracies.

In conclusion, planning from general reconnaissance will not result in perfectly accurate volumes/acre because of the difficult topography, mapping error, and photo interpretation. Only as more time is spent in the field during the layout phase, can greater accuracy be guaranteed.

#### **Chasina Project Logging System Transportation Analysis (LSTA)**

The original LSTA for the Chasina Project Area identified approximately 13,760 acres of potential units in Management Area K24. From this pool of units the IDT selected 5,410 acres of units that appear to meet current Forest Standards and Guidelines. Additional units were also added from VCUs 674 and 682 for analysis. For a list of units not in the current Chasina unit pool and the reason why not, see Appendix G.

During field reconnaissance, suitable lands were reviewed and more acres were identified as being unsuitable: 422 acres, including portions of and total units, were deemed unsuitable because of low volume and incapable of producing industrial wood; 606 acres were dropped due to irreversible resource damage expected with the logging technology

available; 354 acres were dropped due to topography limiting its log ability; and 222 acres of additional TTRA buffers were dropped along with 90 acres of recent state selections.

## Acreages

The database will not show changes in suitable acreage for very small portions of unsuitable land within suitable stands. Only whole stands coded “unsuitable” will be shown as such in the database.

The Alternatives to Clearcut (ATC) study was not affected by the various alternatives because it will not vary per alternative. Several planned units were adjusted to conform to the study criteria. Unit 679-425 was brought back into the unit pool after being dropped for watershed protection reasons. Because 75% of the basal area of this unit will remain standing the treatment is believed to have little impact on the watershed. Units 679-447, 467, 437E, 450, and 441 all increased in size, while 679-433 and 437W decreased in size. Overall the acreage increased by 180 acres. Impacts of these units will be minimized by the fact that 73 percent of the unit acreage will have greater than 25 percent of the basal area retained in standing volume, while 62 percent of the unit acreage has greater than 66 percent of the basal area retained.

Estimating volume to be removed in the ATC units is difficult with only TIM-Type maps and walkthrough exams to estimate volumes before marking and cruising produce more accurate numbers. Comparing the original planned cut volume of the unexpanded units to the final ATC unit pool planned volume there was a soft falldown of 786 MBF. The ATC matrix of cutting and retention reduced the volume taken to 41 percent of the original volume as compared to conventional cutting reducing the volume by 13 percent of the standing volume.

## Factors affecting the Allowable Sale Quantity (ASQ).

An ASQ is calculated using Forest, Area, and VCU-wide information. The level of accuracy and spatial specificity of these inputs vary based on the amount of information available and experience in field measurement. The inputs to models and anticipated effects are often estimates and averages of what is likely to be encountered during Plan implementation. Given the variability in these field estimates and the knowledge that reduction to estimates sale quantities are likely due to unforeseen land characteristics, factors have been established to adjust the ASQ estimates to a level more in tune with what is likely to be found during implementation. These factors are referred to as Modeled Implementation Reduction Factors, or MIRF. These factors are included in each model for each alternative.. They are applied in order to address the reductions in lands available for timber harvest due to:

- Land selection (transfer to State and native Corporations)
- Larst/caves (moderate vulnerability)
- Unmapped Class III streams
- Deer Standards and Guides
- Unmapped Bald Eagle/Osprey Nests
- 600-foot landscape linkages
- Goshawk nests
- Murrelet nests (660 feet)
- 600-foot buffer around active wolf dens
- Important mountain goat winter habitat and travel corridors
- Cost efficiency (low vol, difficult operability, isolated operability)

## Estimated Effects on Ketchikan Area Timber Supply

# 3 Environment and Effects

- Unmapped Class I and II stream buffers
- Unproductive Forestland (mapped as productive)
- Unmapped extreme high hazard soils
- Inoperable isolated stands created by Class III stream buffers

There are other factors that may also contribute to difference between ASQ and actual timber sale volume that are not included in the MIRF development. Some of these may include market fluctuations, timber demand, Forest Service budgets, timber planner preferences, and legal challenges.

In order to calculate the MIRF's for each alternative FORPLAN outputs and on-the-ground sale layout plans were compared. This process identified the key factors resulting in ASQ and implementation differences and the extent of each.

## Logging Systems

Yarding is the process of conveying logs from the stump to the landing. This can be done using ground-based equipment, cable logging systems, or helicopters. The method used depends upon many factors including access, topography, slope, and resource protection needs (log suspension requirements).

### Ground Based Yarding

Moist, soft soil conditions in relation with steep slopes found in the project area prove difficult for ground-based equipment operation. Except for a limited amount of shovel logging with track mounted log loaders, there has been little opportunity for this type of equipment. Recently, shovel logging with hydraulic log loaders has added a new dimension to ground based yarding systems. Larger tracks and a lower center of gravity make these machines more stable, lighter, and agile. They also produce a lighter footprint or ground pressure. The objective is to walk a shovel yarder into and through a unit, using the swing boom motion of the loader to swing logs into windrows. This swing procedure is repeated until the logs are moved ultimately to a road or landing. While the project area LSTA process classified units as either cable or helicopter yarded, certain portions of cable units, especially along ROWs, may be suitable for shovel yarding. The decision to actually specify shovel yarding within a given unit is made at the time of unit layout.

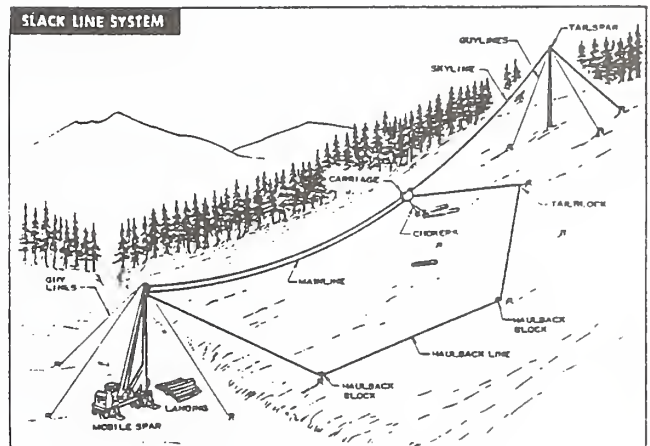
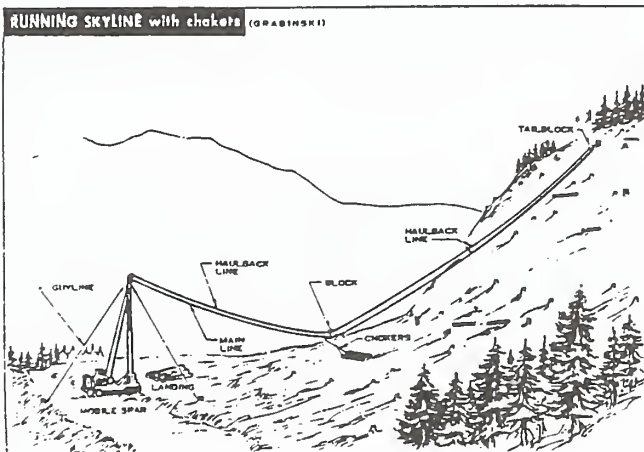
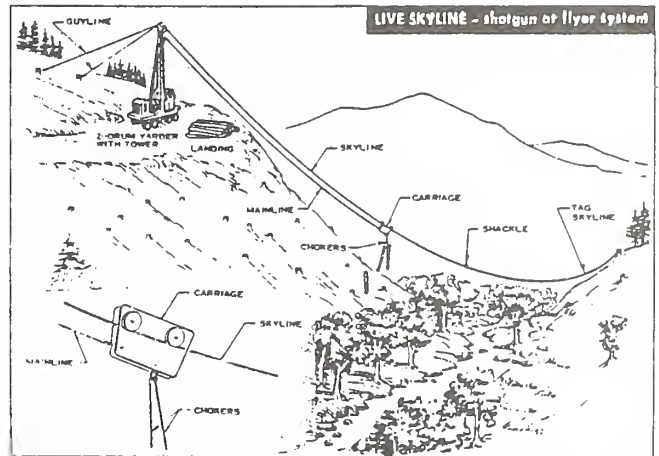
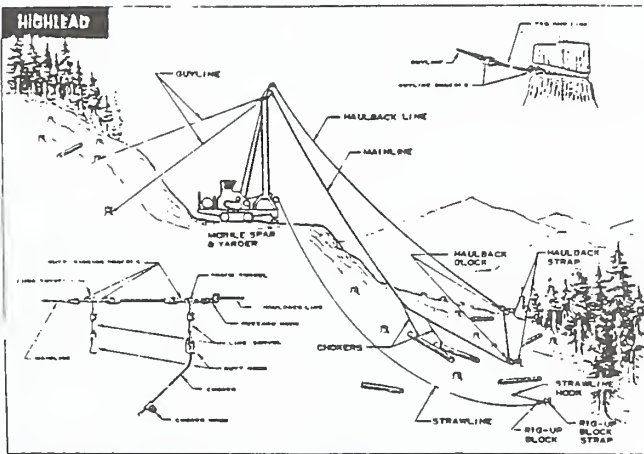
### Cable Yarding

Cable yarding throughout the Ketchikan Area is comprised of approximately 20 percent slackline yarding, 30 percent running skyline, and 35 percent highlead (Marks 1992). On the project area, running skyline accounts for the majority of the timber harvest methods proposed in each alternative. These yarding systems inherently provide partial suspension or log lift in a majority of uses, but when required, a system capable of providing increased log suspension is identified to meet required management objectives. Figure ST-5 illustrates four systems of cable yarding.

The Forest Service plans and appraises for the most economical yarding system feasible for a particular harvest setting provided it meets management objectives and suspension requirements for the unit. Within the planning process, the running skyline yarding system is used in place of highlead yarding because it is more economical. If at the time of actual unit layout there are no management objectives that require partial suspension (increased log suspension), the highlead yarding system may be utilized.



Figure ST-4  
Cable Yarding Systems



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Highlead Systems

Highlead systems (including Grabinsky or rider block) were previously used more than any other cable system. A two-drum yarder is used. These yarders are typically 90 to 110 foot towers which have telescoping tubes and are tied down with six or eight cables or guywires. One drum holds the mainline which attaches to butt rigging with chokers. The other drum holds the haulback line which supports the rider or bull block. The haulback also continues on through a block (pulley) and attaches to the other side of the butt rigging. The mainline and haulback control the inhaul and outhaul of the butt rigging. The term highlead refers to the location of the mainline block which is elevated above the ground by the spar. The mainline block (bull or rider block) provides some vertical lift enabling logs to override obstacles, thus minimizing soil disturbance as a “turn” of logs is inhailed to the landing. This system provides minimal partial suspension and is usually designated in areas that have minimal risk of soil disturbance. This system’s maximum yarding distance is 1,500 feet uphill, 600 feet downhill. Additional suspension requirements, as well as entry into more difficult terrain requiring longer reaches, favors other systems with expanded capabilities.

## Running Skyline Systems

Running skyline systems require a three-drum “swing” or tower yarder which include a mainline, haulback, and slackpulling lines with hydraulic interlocking capabilities. These yarders are typically shorter (50 to 70 feet) and in the case of a swing yarder, are usually a leaning-lattice type tower that can swing to either side allowing a turn of logs to swing toward a log loader. The interlock system hydraulically ties all three drums together (which rotate at different speeds) to increase overall lifting capability, especially when rigged in a downhill yarding configuration (where braking the haulback line provides the actual log lift or suspension). This system can utilize either a mechanical slack pulling carriage or a mechanical grapple. Both are directly supported by the haulback line. When a grapple is utilized, the slackline and mainline drums control the operation of the grapple which open and close around selected logs which in turn, are yarded to the landing. When a mechanical slack pulling carriage is utilized, the same two drums are used to control the inhaul or outhaul of the skidding line/chokers. While each type of carriage is in common use and provide distinct production advantages, they both provide partial suspension capabilities required to meet most soil management objectives. This system inherently provides increased log lift due to its hydraulic interlocking capabilities. Maximum yarding distance is 1,000 feet uphill, 600 feet downhill.

## Live Skyline (Shotgun/Flyer) Systems

Live skyline (shotgun/flyer) systems feature a moving skyline cable which raises and lowers a simple carriage with chokers to a turn of logs. The mainline on a highlead yarder (two drum tower) is used as the skyline and the haulback is used as the mainline, to control carriage inhaul/outhaul. The carriage is gravity outhauled with the mainline controlling both inhaul and outhaul. The term shotgun refers to the high speed that the carriage reaches while outhauling to a turn of logs. The skyline/carriage is then lowered to allow the logs to be choked for inhaul to the landing. This system provides good suspension or log lift to meet partial or some full suspension requirements to meet management objectives. Maximum yarding distance is 1,500 to 2,000 feet uphill.

## Slackline Systems

Slackline systems are a configuration of a live skyline systems. A three-drum yarder (tower) includes a skyline, mainline, and a haulback for the inhaul/outhaul of a simple carriage with chokers attached. The main difference is that a haulback line rather than gravity is used to outhaul the carriage. Slackline systems provide excellent lifting capabilities and are employed when management objectives require full or large areas of partial suspension to avoid soil disturbance. Maximum yarding distance is 2,000 to 2,500 feet uphill or 1,000 feet downhill.

## **Standing Skyline (Long Span) Systems**

Standing skyline (long span) systems are similar to a live skyline system. Long-span skyline is the most common and has two main differences. The first is a non-moving skyline, and the second is the use of a radio controlled carriage. A radio-controlled carriage is used with a two-drum yarder (large towers 90 feet or greater) which employs the use of a skyline and a mainline to support the carriage and to provide inhaul. The radio-controlled carriage has an internal engine which provides the pulling power to skid or inhaul the logs to it. Outhaul of the carriage is by gravity. Skidding line outhaul is controlled by radio; the carriage is stopped and clamped above a turn of logs where the skidding line is dropped to choke the logs. The carriage is then commanded to skid or inhaul the logs up to it where the yarder's mainline inhauls the carriage with the suspended logs to the yarder. This system is used when yarding distances of up to 5,000 feet are required. Shorter span versions of this system include the use of three-drum yarder-controlled carriage or a more simple falling block type carriage which utilizes a two-drum yarder. These include the North Bend (uphill yarding), South Bend (downhill yarding), and the multi-span system (uphill yarding). The multi-span system utilizes intermediate skyline support jacks similar to those found in ski lodge chair lifts. These enable the carriage to carry a load of logs over a topographic break in slope which would otherwise be a blind lead (the skyline bites into the ground). These systems provide excellent lift and log suspension in areas that require full or partial suspension to meet management objectives.

## **Helicopter Yarding**

Helicopter yarding is proposed in all alternatives. Helicopter yarding has been successfully used on all areas of the Tongass National Forest within recent years. On the Ketchikan Administrative Area, Revillagigedo (Revilla) Island, the Painted Peak Timber Sale (4 MMBF), certain portions of the Brown Mountain Timber Sale, and large portions of the North Revilla Project Area were helicopter yarded. With this system, logs are lifted off the ground (fully suspended) and flown to a specially prepared landing. This yarding system causes the least amount of ground disturbance of all the yarding systems, but has the highest yarding cost. The economic feasibility of helicopter yarding is more closely affected by market values than cable yarding. Maximum yarding distance is regulated by economics. Helicopter flight time costs between \$2,000 and \$5,000 per hour. Maximum flight time between loads or turns of logs is approximately 3 minutes. Factors that affect flight time and economic feasibility include elevational differences between stump and landing, logs/volume per acre, species mix and subsequent value, and payload capabilities of the aircraft.

## **Helicopter Analysis**

A cost comparison analysis for cable versus helicopter yarding was completed on twelve planned units in the South Arm subdivision and eighteen units in the Port Johnson subdivision. The objective was to economically compare cable with road-building costs versus helicopter yarding without road building for the two subdivisions. Both areas are isolated in themselves and have no existing roads.

When lumping all the analyzed units together, the results showed that cable with roads cost the same as helicopter logging without road building. Another comparison was run separating the two subdivisions. In South Arm, comparing all twelve units in cable versus helicopter, cable yarding with roads was 24 percent less than helicopter logging without road building. In Port Johnson 18 units were analyzed along the isthmus and the peninsula. The assumption was that 18.3 miles of new road construction would be required for log haul to the Lancaster dump versus helicopter logging with no road

### 3 Environment and Effects

construction. The result was that helicopter logging was shown to be approximately 24 percent less costly than cable when harvesting the entire unit pool in this area in one entry.

In conclusion, considering the lower cost of cable, road building now in South Arm would leave more options available for harvesting the remaining volume, while keeping salvage opportunities more available. Port Johnson presents a different situation due to its high roading costs, the lack of residual volume outside of the unit pool, and other resource concerns. One entry on the north side and possibly a second helicopter entry on the south side in the future could be justified economically while eliminating adverse effects of roading on wildlife.

Helicopter logging costs may run twice that of cable logging; however, high roading costs can be eliminated. Helicopter logging may be prescribed where road building is economically infeasible or where uneven-aged management (partial cuts or group selections) may be preferred.

Table ST-19  
Distribution Percent of Proposed Yarding System by Acres per Alternative

Yarding Type	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6	Total Unit Pool (Total Operable)
Running Skyline (RS)	23	35	30	32	32	798
Slackline (SL)	23	18	15	8	13	328
Helicopter (HE)*	54	44	55	56	53	1,344
Live Skyline (LS)	1	3	0	3	2	45
Shovel (SH)	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1	5

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Craig Silvicultural Files

\* Alternatives 2 and 4 helicopter harvest some settings that were designed for cable yarding.

#### Effects of Proposed Yarding Systems

All yarding is proposed in conformance with national and regional standards and guidelines. Yarding systems were assigned to settings in an interdisciplinary process to minimize any potential or foreseen effects. On-site ground reconnaissance and actual field evaluations during the EIS and layout process will ensure the yarding system assigned will provide the required suspension to meet management objectives as specified by reviewing specialists. For effects analysis see the Soils section of this chapter.



## Timber Economics Economic Efficiency Analysis

Current Forest Service Handbook direction (FSH 2409.18; Amdmt. 90-1 and Supp. 6) requires an economic efficiency analysis to compare benefits and costs of a project. Values used in the analysis must reflect middle market timber value estimates that are based on median or middle-level timber market values. In order to account for market fluctuations, weighted average timber values over the past 10 years are used in this analysis.

Forest Service Handbook direction also stipulates that timber harvest projects provide at least 60 percent of normal profit, which must be included when calculating costs. This economic-efficiency analysis is performed by comparing expected gross revenues against estimated costs and arriving at an estimate of net revenues.

Pond log values represent the delivered price of logs at the mill minus the cost to manufacture them into usable products. Pond log values are closely related to volume class data which incorporates log size, grade, and species. On the Ketchikan Administrative Area, the lower volume classes generally have a higher yellowcedar component, which has the highest selling value. On the project area, this results in a disproportionately high pond log value for the lower volume classes instead of lower, which would reflect the true value of the high elevation (small diameter, low grade) yellowcedar timber.

Stump-to-truck logging costs are subtracted from the pond log values to arrive at a delivered price to the mill. Stump-to-truck logging costs include felling, bucking, yarding, loading, and administrative costs. Logging costs are closely tied to volume per acre (represented by volume class data). Generally, the higher the volume per acre the lower the logging cost. Table ST-20 shows the stump-to-truck logging costs and associated pond values for each volume class.

**Table ST-20**  
**Summary of Mid-market Logging Costs and Volume Class Strata**

	Volume Class (Dollar Amount per MBF)				
	MBF/Acres	8-20	20-30	30-50	>50
Highlead - Uphill		\$224.14	\$162.98	\$149.44	\$131.60
Highlead- Downhill		\$225.85	\$183.56	\$168.20	\$147.15
Skyline - Running		\$207.26	\$158.35	\$145.39	\$130.32
Skyline - Live		\$214.48	\$157.69	\$145.05	\$127.72
Skyline - Standing (long span)		\$219.59	\$161.42	\$148.48	\$130.69
Slackline		\$242.84	\$177.06	\$162.78	\$143.66
Shovel		\$199.83	\$145.43	\$134.66	\$118.47
Helicopter - Water Drop		\$343.33	\$317.33	\$308.97	\$298.31
Helicopter - Land Drop		\$323.78	\$297.78	\$289.42	\$287.76
Helicopter - Isolated Water		\$514.95	\$476.00	\$463.46	\$447.47

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service

### 3 Environment and Effects

In addition to logging costs, other costs related to truck haul, dump, tow, raft, specified road construction and reconstruction, temporary road construction, LTF construction, camp development, and camp mobilization costs need to be considered when determining the economics of timber sales. For the purposes of this analysis, logging costs plus haul, dump, tow, and raft costs, etc., were all combined into a total transportation cost center. All capital investment costs, such as road, bridge, and LTF construction were combined into a total construction cost center. Table ST-21 summarizes these costs by alternative. Because Alternative 1 does not propose any timber harvest, it is not displayed in the table.

**Table ST-21**  
**Summary of Total Transportation and Construction Costs, in Dollars**

Alternative	Transportation Costs* (\$MM)	Construction Costs* (\$MM)	Total Costs* (\$MM)	Ave. Cost/MBF
2	8.734	1.028	9.762	330.97
3	14.274	2.868	17.142	318.92
4	15.698	.647	16.992	335.51
5	13.273	2.405	15.678	342.61
6	22.054	5.312	27.366	320.02

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service

\* Rounded to the nearest thousand

The results of this analysis indicate that :

- Costs per MBF are lowest for Alternatives 3 and 6.
- Total costs per MBF were highest for Alternative 5 (\$342.61/MBF), since that alternative would need substantial amounts of road to reach smaller and more isolated units, also resulting in the highest construction costs per MBF (see Table ST-21).
- Transportation and construction costs per MBF are lowest for Alternative 3 because less road construction would be required and fewer units will be helicopter yarded. The logging costs of successive entries can be expected to increase, due to the projected increase in the proportion of isolated volume within the project area.
- The high costs associated with Alternative 5 reflect the higher costs of having to access more marginal timber. This essentially depicts the higher costs that may be associated with any future entry where timber is harvested in areas increasingly more difficult to road. A future entry, without the volumes of Alternative 2 to carry it, could have a net value lower than this entry for Alternative 2.

- Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 include helicopter logging, which is a more expensive yarding system than cable logging. Helicopter costs were derived by using average cost/MBF from the Polk Inlet Project Area offers. These costs were adjusted based on unit location (elevation) and flight distance the logs had to be flown to the nearest landing. These costs were further adjusted for the appropriate mid-market base period by volume class.

Estimated net timber value (stumpage) is arrived at by subtracting all associated costs from the pond value for all proposed harvest units in each action alternative. Consequently, individual units which may be uneconomical to harvest by themselves are offset by combining them with other units which are more economical to harvest. This results in less productive land or land where the timber is highly defective being made more economically viable for timber harvest. These lands are then brought under management, thereby increasing future timber yields and postponing entry into more environmentally sensitive areas.

These projected construction costs, transportation costs, and pond log values are estimates, not actual costs, which form a constant by which all alternatives may be compared. Before the timber is sold, the volume within the units and ROWs will be cruised and appraised to determine the actual volume and value of the timber. Because all action alternatives are measured against the same yardstick of estimated costs, it is appropriate to rank the alternatives in order by net value. Table ST-22 shows the estimated value and ranking of each alternative based upon the net value. Net values are shown rounded since the figures are based on estimates. Because Alternative 1 has no timber harvest costs or values, it is not listed.

Table ST-22

**Summary of Harvest Unit Estimated Stumpage Values by Alternative, per MBF (based on Mid-market Analysis)**

Alt.	Estimated Total Volume (MBF)	Total Pond Value*	Total Trans. Costs** (\$Millions)	Total Const. Costs*** (\$Millions)	Estimated Net Value@ Mid-market	Estimated Net Value@ Current-market	Rank Order
2	25,580	\$332.22	\$8.734	\$1.088	-\$57.85	+\$138.93	3
3	42,470	\$332.22	\$14.279	\$2.868	-\$43.06	+\$153.72	2
4	45,370	\$332.22	\$15.698	\$.647	-\$64.98	+\$131.20	4
5	37,590	\$332.22	\$13.273	\$2.405	-\$67.11	+\$129.67	5
6	66,730	\$332.22	\$22.054	\$5.312	-\$42.96	+\$153.82	1

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service

\* Values are meant for comparative purposes only.

\*\* Transportation costs include all costs not associated with capital investments or costs normally connected to road construction, such as: fall, buck, yard sort, load, haul, dump, raft, and tow.

\*\*\* Construction costs include costs associated with LTF development, road construction and reconstruction, such as: pit development, clearing, grubbing, embankment, haul, excavation, and related material, such as bulkheads, bridges, and culverts.



# 3 Environment and Effects

Based on this analysis, not all mid-market values for each alternative show a positive net stumpage. However, costs for temporary road construction and specified road reconstruction may fluctuate when updated for the offering appraisal. Changes in logging costs and selling values can also have an undetermined effect on overall stumpage values; however, these changed values will not alter the order without modifying the alternative. Alternative 6 shows the highest relative net stumpage (-\$42.96/MBF), while Alternative 5 shows the lowest (-\$67.11/MBF). Further analysis for current-market values indicate a positive return for all alternatives (See Table ST-22). However, fluctuations in pond log values or logging/road construction costs may cause net values to change. Alternative 5 has the least threshold before becoming a negative net value. At current rates, with predicted higher pond values, all alternatives will be expected to have a net value which exceeds preparation and administration costs to the Forest Service.





## Socioeconomic Environment

### Key Terms

**Cant**—a log partly or wholly cut and destined for further processing.

**Direct Effects for Employment and Income**  $\frac{3}{4}$  those effects that impact sectors either exporting goods and services from the primary zone of influence or selling those products to final consumers within the zone. An example of direct employment would be people working in a sawmill.

**Extended Primary Region of Influence (ROI)**—the area that would sustain the largest indirect economic impact from socioeconomic changes in the Primary ROI.

**Indirect Effects for Employment and Income**—those effects that are linked to the direct effects by providing goods and services to the directly affected sectors. An example of indirect employment would be people who work in a generating plant that sells electricity to a sawmill.

**Induced Effects for Employment and Income**—the effects that are linked through the direct and indirect effects income that consumers spend within the area. An example of induced employment would be grocery store employees who sell products to the people working in a sawmill or generating plant.

**Mid-market**—an economic estimate of timber value at a point in time when half of the timber was harvested at a higher value and half was harvested at a lower value.

**Present Net Value**—the difference between benefits and costs associated with the alternatives.

**Primary ROI**—the area whose population would sustain the largest socioeconomic impact resulting from the implementation of any of the proposed timber harvest alternatives in the Chasina Project Area.

**Public Net Benefits**—a measurement of economic efficiency. PNB are the sum of present net value and non-priced commodities (such as scenic quality and community stability).

**Secondary ROI**—includes the entire State of Alaska, other Pacific Northwest states, and countries having direct trade with the Primary and Extended Primary ROIs.

## Affected Environment

### Introduction

Nearly 80 percent of Southeast Alaska is located within the Tongass National Forest, an area larger than the State of West Virginia. This area stretches roughly 500 miles from Ketchikan in the southeast to Yakutat in the northwest, and is mainly unpopulated wild country. Approximately 73,000 people live in 32 towns, communities, and villages located in or very near the boundaries of the Tongass, which is the largest forest in the National Forest System.

The economies of most communities in Southeast Alaska depend almost exclusively on the Tongass National Forest to provide natural resources for uses such as fishing, tourism, recreation, timber harvesting, mining, and subsistence uses. There is very little private land to provide these resources. Consequently, maintaining the abundant natural resources found on the Tongass is a major concern of those who make their living here.

In addition to economic activity, the quality of life is greatly enhanced by the physical environment associated with the Tongass. Southeast Alaska is regarded as a wild and magnificent place, a vast expanse of seemingly limitless scenery and vast natural resources.

# 3 Environment and Effects

Many Southeast Alaskans want to preserve their local environment while maintaining their economic livelihood. With a limited resource base, resolution of this conflict is becoming increasingly difficult.

## Southeast Alaska Regional Economy

The output of the Alaskan economy is dominated by the export of fishery and forestry products, the sale of North Slope oil, and the accommodation of out-of-state tourists. Because it is largely an export-oriented economy, it is heavily dependent on global macroeconomic conditions, particularly those besetting Japan and the other Pacific Rim countries.

The public sector has a significant presence in the region. State and local government employment is heavily influenced by the level of oil royalties returned to the State from Federal leases of off-shore tracts. Based on 1986 figures, Alaska's trade was led by fishery products (38.4 percent), oil and gas (22.6 percent), and wood products (9.9 percent). Historically, the rise in world oil prices from 1978 to 1982 resulted in a high growth of Alaska's economic output. This growth was faster than the United States as a whole during the same period. In 1983, the sharp rise in the value of the dollar began cutting deeply into the competitiveness of Alaskan exports. By 1985, the precipitous fall in the price of crude oil and the rise in the value of the dollar decimated Alaskan exports, and the Gross State Product contracted was substantially reduced (Forest Service 1990b).

The sensitivity of the Alaskan economy to foreign markets is reaffirmed through the observed congruence between the quantity of Alaskan exports of forest products and the economic indicators of the Japanese economy. Japan is the principal destination for Alaska's exports of forest products. As such, Alaskan exports of timber and wood products are highly dependent on wood product demand within the Japanese economy as well as the relative strength of the yen with respect to the dollar.

The dependence of the region's economy on foreign demand is widely understood in the local communities. This economic vulnerability heightens the desire to both broaden the base of economic activity and stabilize the existing job market through establishing continuity in resource supply. Although employment fluctuations over the business cycle are unavoidable, economic diversification reduces fluctuations driven by outside forces that are largely beyond direct fiscal and monetary influence of local and national policy makers.

## Region of Influence (ROI)

The Primary ROI is the area whose population would sustain the largest socioeconomic impact resulting from the implementation of any of the proposed timber harvest alternatives in the Chasina Project Area. For purposes of this analysis and based on regional expenditure, consumption, and residential characteristics, Prince of Wales Island has been designated as the Primary ROI. The major economic resources of the Primary ROI include recreation, fish, wildlife, and timber. Each resource is used, processed, or consumed by overlapping segments of the population located in varying proximity to the project area.

Within the Primary ROI, the four most populated communities are the cities of Craig, Hydaburg, Klawock, and Thorne Bay. These four communities have a combined total population of approximately 3,750 (U.S. Department of Labor 1995). Because of their proximity to the project area, the demographic and socioeconomic characteristics of the towns of Coffman Cove, Kassan, Metlakatla, and Hollis will also be discussed.

The Extended Primary ROI is the area that would sustain the largest indirect economic impact from socioeconomic changes in the Primary ROI. Based on regional consumption and employment patterns, it was determined that the Ketchikan Gateway Borough, primarily the City of Ketchikan which is the largest regional distribution center of consumer goods and services in proximity to the Primary ROI, would sustain the largest concentrated indirect economic impact resulting from implementation of any of the proposed timber harvest alternatives.

## Demographic and Income Characteristics

The Secondary ROI includes the entire state of Alaska, other Pacific Northwest states, and countries having direct trade with the Primary and Extended Primary ROIs. Because any economic impacts on the Secondary ROI, caused by implementation of any of the timber harvesting alternatives in the Chasina Project Area, are expected to be negligible, its further discussion is considered moot.

### State of Alaska

Between 1960 and 1990, the population of the State of Alaska grew from 230,400 to 550,000, an increase of nearly 139 percent. By and large, population growth has been relatively consistent throughout the 30-year period. According to 1990 Census data, population growth in the State of Alaska seems to have slowed down. Two of the primary factors in the slowdown appear to be the crude oil glut of the late 1980s, which resulted in production stabilization, as well as a reduced demand for Alaska timber. In both cases, demand for labor was not as high as initially projected, producing a lower than projected population influx.

Proportionately, the State of Alaska has a higher percentage of its population living below the poverty line than the rest of the nation. The national average is approximately 12.4 percent, while the State of Alaska's is 14.4 percent. The national population classified as living in poverty has a larger average proportion of singles and single parent households than the State of Alaska. The demographic makeup of those classified as living beneath the poverty line in the State of Alaska includes a greater proportion of two-parent households.

The reason for the proportionally higher ratio of entire families living beneath the poverty line may partly be attributable to the heavy reliance on subsistence by many of Alaska's residents, particularly those of Southeast Alaska. Reliance on subsistence fishing and hunting results in the accumulation of goods without the transfer of money. This, in turn, makes any accounting of such activity difficult and highly inaccurate. The social and economic system established among many who rely on subsistence includes unofficial parallel market driven by a "complementary" barter system. In other words, a hunter will give his neighbor part of the game he caught as a gift. His neighbor the fisherman will return the favor sometime in the future with the delivery of some catch. The current measure of accounting used in establishing social and demographic statistics makes it difficult to accurately account for such transactions, and therefore, does not give a complete picture of the welfare of many of the residents of the state, particularly those of Southeast Alaska.

### Southeast Alaska—Tongass National Forest

The majority of communities in Southeast Alaska are small, isolated from each other, and accessed only by air or water. Only four communities in the region are accessible by land: Skagway, Haines, and Klukwan in the north, and Hyder in the south. Juneau, Alaska's capital with a population of nearly 24,000, is the largest community in Southeast Alaska. It is the only community with a population exceeding 20,000 and represents 40 percent of the region's total population. The mid-sized communities in Southeast Alaska are Sitka and Ketchikan, with approximately 8,200 and 15,080 residents, respectively. The combined population of Juneau, Sitka, and Ketchikan comprise approximately 70 percent of the total population of Southeast Alaska (U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census 1991).

Southeast Alaska communities exhibit varying degrees of economic development and diversity; while fishing, timber, tourism, mining, and government are the major economic sectors, the importance of these activities is characterized by considerable local variability.

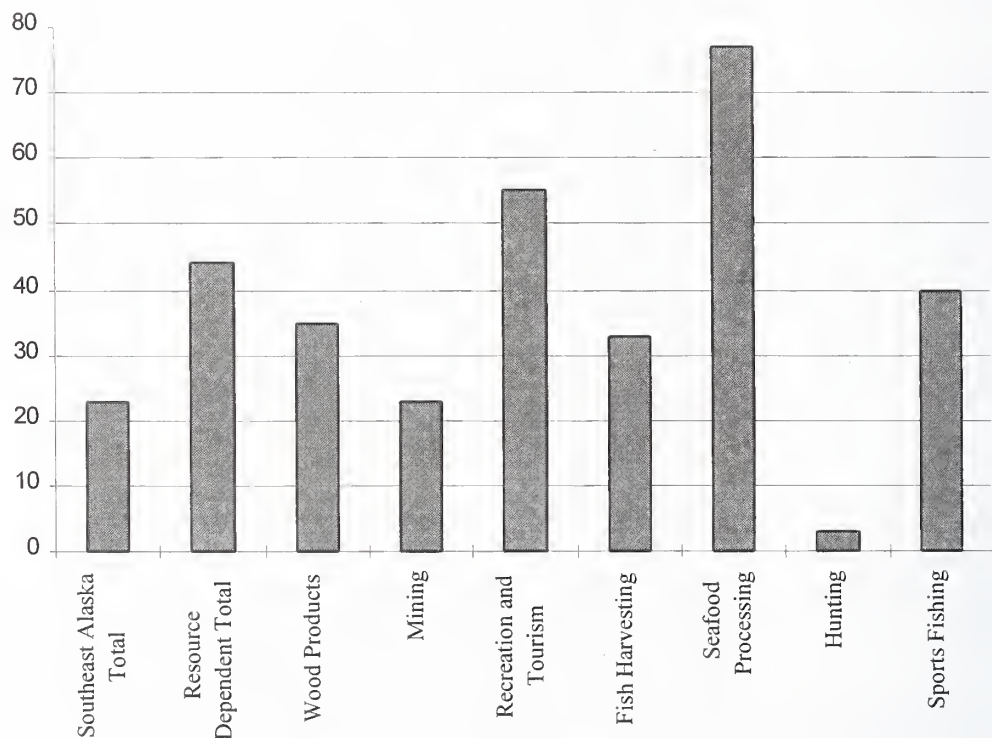
Some communities have little or no local economy in the conventional sense, and rely heavily on local fish and game resources. In some cases, sources outside the community play a major role in supplying goods and services that cannot be obtained from local subsistence. Some community-use activities depend upon a single economic activity that supports a viable local economy while others have a full range of economic variability. Although Southeast Alaska's relative economic condition is good, income and poverty levels throughout its communities



### 3 Environment and Effects

vary. The larger communities of Ketchikan, Juneau, Wrangell, Petersburg, and Sitka have income levels well above the national average, with a smaller percentage of the people living below poverty levels. In many of the smaller communities, where reliance on subsistence is more pervasive, the relative proportion of individuals and families living beneath the poverty level tends to be higher. However, as previously shown, the latter is a somewhat deceiving assertion because many people in these communities rely at least somewhat on hunting, fishing, gathering, and other forms of subsistence for their livelihood. This results in a reduced volume of actual financial transactions.

Figure SE-1  
1994 Nonresident Share of Direct Employment, Southeast Alaska Total and Resource Dependent Industries



SOURCE: Alaska Department of Labor and others.

Note: All employment figures are standardized to average annual employment.



Two other characteristics of employment are of specific relevance to Southeast Alaska. These are the nonresident share and the seasonal variation in industry employment, and they are highly correlated. Nonresident shares for Southeast Alaska total employment and direct employment in the resource dependent industries are shown in Figure SE-1. At 44 percent, the share of nonresidents in the resource sector is approximately twice that for all industries within the region. This is mostly the result of the high proportion of nonresidents working in the seafood processing and recreation and tourism sectors. It must be noted, however, that just because an employee is a nonresident, this does not mean that the job is somehow less valuable. Nonresident shares merely help to indicate how much of the benefits generated by an industry stay in the region. The seasonality of employment is another factor for Southeast Alaska, where the difference between peak levels of employment in the summer and lows in the winter are quite pronounced.

## Southeast Alaska Social Environment

Because of the overall commonality in the social and economic character of towns involved in similar economic activities in the region, a discussion of the social environment will focus on regional characteristics.

### Life-styles

Life-styles and the economic pursuits of residents of Southeast Alaska are varied. Many live in Southeast Alaska because of the opportunity to participate in resource-extraction occupations, primarily timber harvesting and commercial fishing. Some desire the life-styles afforded by remote, uncrowded living situations, while others prefer the region because of the hunting and fishing opportunities.

### Community Stability

Community stability is a very important consideration in planning any resource management activity in a National Forest, but it is also an evasive element to accurately describe. While income levels, employment rates, regional economic output, and so forth are useful indicators of socioeconomic trends, they do not portray the total picture, particularly the quality of life aspects.

The balance of a variety of natural human-related resource activities is important to communities in Southeast Alaska. Management of the Tongass National Forest has direct and indirect impacts throughout the region on the level of regional economic activity as well as the quality of life. Many of the residents of the communities in Southeast Alaska derive their livelihood directly and indirectly from the forest. These residents are also affected by changes in environmental quality, and benefit from the availability of free and abundant resources and products from the forest. The preservation of adequate available levels of firewood, wildlife, and fish are significant to the sustenance and growth of the local economics, as well as the quality of life of the area's residents. In light of their potential impact on community stability, forest management activities are of great public interest.

## Community Profile (Primary ROI)

Because of the number and variety of small communities within the Primary ROI, the four most populated towns, Craig, Hydaburg, Klawock, and Thorne Bay, have been selected for close review and subsequent impact analysis. These four towns differ in their population and economic profiles. Therefore, the level and significance of any economic impacts which they may sustain will differ. Understanding some of their basic differences allows for a more poignant and specific impact analysis. The examination of each of the following communities, coupled with the socioeconomic impact analysis, is designed to allow the reader a method by which to infer the level and significance of potential economic impacts on similar but smaller communities within the Primary ROI. Due to their proximity to the project area, the demographic and socioeconomic characteristics of the towns of Coffman Cove, Kasaan, Metlakatla, and Hollis will also be discussed. Demographic and communal characteristics of Prince of Wales Island and the individual towns are discussed below.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Prince of Wales Island

Located about 45 miles west of Ketchikan, with an approximate population of 5,154 (Boucher and Tromble 1996), Prince of Wales is the third largest island in the United States. The four major communities on the island are Craig, Klawock, Thorne Bay, and Hydaburg. The island has been the site of several lumber mills and mining camps since the 1800s. However, it was the salmon harvest that led to its permanent settlement. Klawock was the site of one of Alaska's first canneries, built in 1878. In the following years, 25 canneries were built on the island to process salmon, but none are in operation in recent years. Today, logging is prevalent on the island. Most of the island is National Forest System land, although there are several Native corporations which own and manage land, as well as private land holdings. In addition to timber harvesting and commercial and subsistence hunting and fishing, Prince of Wales Island offers opportunities and facilities to attract tourists.

## Craig

The community of Craig is located on the west side of Prince of Wales Island. The town can be accessed directly from outside the island through its boat harbor and seaplane float, or via ferry service on the east side of the island. Craig was once a temporary fishing camp for the Tlingit and Haida people, natives of the region. In 1907, with the help of local Haidas, Craig Millar established a saltery on Fish Egg Island. Between 1908 and 1911, a permanent saltery, cold storage facility, and about two dozen houses were built at the town's present location and the settlement was named for its founder. The town was incorporated in 1922 and continued to grow throughout the 1930s. Although the salmon industry has both prospered and floundered over the years, fishing still accounts for about half of the employment in Craig today. In recent years, increased timber harvesting on the island has contributed jobs in logging and timber processing.

As the most populated town in the Prince of Wales Island Outer Ketchikan Census Area, Craig serves as the primary retail trade center on the island. With an estimated 1,946 residents, Craig is home to approximately 38 percent of the island's population (Table SE-1). Overall, the demographic distribution of the town's population is similar to that of the state. However, the town's remote nature is such that its population base is younger and appears to be more transient than the state overall. Craig's economic welfare appears to be primarily dependent on the stability of direct employment, income, and subsistence afforded to its local population from timber harvesting, fishing, and hunting. To a lesser extent, Craig's economy depends on the welfare of residents of surrounding towns who comprise a significant portion of the customer base for Craig's merchants.

## City of Thorne Bay

The City of Thorne Bay began as a logging camp in 1962 and was incorporated in 1982, making it one of Alaska's newest cities. Currently, employment in the town largely depends on logging, with the municipal government and a few local trades and services providing some additional jobs. Although tourism is not a mainstay of the town's economy, Thorne Bay does offer recreation opportunities as well as accommodations for its few tourists.

Because of its heavy direct economic dependence on logging and timber production, the town's population differs in its demographic makeup from Craig and most other regional towns whose economies, although dependent on timber harvesting, are more diverse. KPC has a log sorting operation at Thorne Bay; logs from the project area would provide employment to Thorne Bay residents. The City of Thorne Bay's population was last reported as 650.

A detailed breakdown of some demographic and housing characteristics of the City of Thorne Bay is presented in Table SE-1.

**Table SE-1**  
**Selected 1995 Population and Housing Data**

	Alaska	Craig	City of Thorne Bay	Hydaburg	Klawock	Kasaan	Hollis CDP	City of Coffman Cove	Ketchikan
Total Population	550,043	1,946	650	406	759	41	106	254	8,263
Male (%)	52.7	53.1	53.8	57.0	54.9	48.2	55.0	64.0	51.8
Female (%)	47.3	46.9	46.2	43.0	45.1	51.8	45.0	36.0	48.2
Median Age	29.4	28.5	31.4	28.3	29.5	31.3	36.7	34.5	31.7
Percent of Total Population Under 18	31.3	34.1	34.4	35.4	32.0	33.3	29.7	25.8	27.5
Race and Hispanic Origin (%)									
White	75.5	76.1	97.2	10.4	44.9	46.3	95.5	92.5	78.3
Black	4.1	0.0	0.0	0.3	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Alaska Native	15.6	22.9	1.2	89.1	54.3	53.7	2.7	7.0	15.7
Hispanic	3.2	2.4	2.3	0.5	1.7	1.9	0.9	1.1	2.5
Median Housing Price	\$94,400	\$94,400	\$56,700	\$60,000	\$75,900	\$55,000	\$50,000	\$26,300	\$105,200
Median Rent Occupancy and Tenure	\$503	\$533	\$398	\$231	\$414	\$338	\$275	\$271	\$530
Owner Occupied (%)	56.1	63.1	53.1	61.0	55.2	63.2	81.4	49.3	46.3
Renter Occupied (%)	43.9	36.9	46.9	39.0	44.8	36.8	18.6	50.7	53.7
Seasonal or Occasional Use (%)	7.3	3.6	3.0	1.5	0.7	3.3	36.6	1.2	0.8
Mobile Houses, Trailers, Other (%)	10.6	58.1	10.6	11.1	45.9	20.0	11.3	81.5	7.1

SOURCE: Polk Inlet EIS, with 1995 population updates from Alaska Department of Labor, Research and Analysis Section 1996.

## Hydaburg

The town of Hydaburg was founded in 1911 from a combination of the populations of three Haida villages. Of its total population of 406 (Alaska Department of Labor 1996), nearly 90 percent are classified as Alaskan Natives. The town's residents are largely involved in commercial fishing, although there are some jobs in construction and the timber industry. Subsistence is also prevalent among many of the town's residents. While housing prices in Hydaburg are comparable with those of the City of Thorne Bay (approximately 10 percent higher on average), unlike Thorne Bay, its residents are generally not transient. This is reflected by the nearly 75 percent of 1-unit detached housing units comprising the housing market. A detailed breakdown of some demographic and housing characteristics of Hydaburg is presented in Table SE-1.



## 3 Environment and Effects

### **Klawock**

Klawock is located on the west side of Prince of Wales Island just north of Craig. Tlingit Natives have lived in the same area, near the Klawock River, for at least 600 years. Present-day growth and development of Klawock began with commercial fisheries and with the first salmon saltery in Southeast Alaska. Two additional canneries were built in 1920 and 1924, along with an associated sawmill. In 1971, a major sawmill was constructed that operated intermittently. With harvest of Native corporation lands in the vicinity of Klawock, the ANCSA village corporation of Klawock-Heenya constructed docking and log transfer facilities near the city. Klawock is now the center of the Tlingit population on west Prince of Wales Island (TLMP Draft Revision). Over the years, the population of Klawock, like other Southeast communities, grew and then declined with the salmon harvest. The local economy is still dependent on fishing and cannery operations, along with timber cutting and milling. Of its 759 residents, approximately 55 percent are Alaskan Natives. A detailed breakdown of some demographic and housing characteristics of Klawock is presented in Table SE-1.

### **Kasaan**

The city of Kasaan is a small Haida village at the head of Kasaan Bay. It has just recently been connected to the Prince of Wales road system by a tie road to Thorne Bay. Its population of 41 (Alaska Department of Labor 1996) is almost evenly divided between Alaskan Natives and whites. The town's residents lead a predominantly subsistence life-style. The Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS) (Kruse and Frazier 1988) lists the following economic sectors for Kasaan: fisheries, educational services, and local government. The average annual per capita income in 1990 was the third lowest in the project area and less than the State and Southeast Alaska averages (Kruse and Muth 1990). A detailed breakdown of some demographic and housing characteristics of the city of Kasaan is presented in Table SE-1.

### **Hollis**

Hollis was a mining town with a population of 1,000 from about 1900 to 1915. In the 1950s, Hollis became the site of a Ketchikan Pulp Company logging camp, and served as the base for timber operations on Prince of Wales Island until 1962, when the camp was moved to Thorne Bay. Recent State land sales have spurred the growth of a small community of approximately 100 people. A detailed breakdown of some demographic and housing characteristics of Hollis is presented in Table SE-1.

### **City of Coffman Cove**

Coffman Cove is a small logging community with a total population of 254 (Alaska Department of Labor 1996). It is one of the largest independent logging camps in Southeast Alaska.

The seasonal nature of the local economy of this town makes most of its residents transient by nature. This assertion is affirmed by examination of the town's housing market. As indicated in Table SE-1, over 80 percent of housing units in Coffman Cove are categorized as mobile home or trailer indicating a higher than average mobility by a majority of the town's residents. A detailed breakdown of some demographic and housing characteristics of Coffman Cove is presented in Table SE-1.

### **Metlakatla**

Metlakatla is located on Annette Island in southern Southeast Alaska, 15 miles south of Ketchikan. Its population of 1,600 includes 84 percent Alaska Native (Alaska Department of Community and Regional Affairs (ADCRA) 1995).

Although Metlakatla is believed to have been occupied at one time by Tlingit Indians, it was settled in 1887 by Church of England minister William Duncan and about 830 Tsimshian



followers from northern British Columbia. In 1891, an Act of Congress declared Annette Island an Indian Reservation (the Annette Island Reserve), the only one in Alaska.

Metlakatla is a traditional Tsimshian community with an active economy and subsistence life-style. The community was not part of ANCSA, rather, the 86,000 island reservation and surrounding 3,000 feet of coastal waters are not subject to State jurisdiction. It regulates commercial fishing in these waters, and operates its own tribal court system (ADCRA 1994).

The community of Metlakatla has prospered in part due to its successful involvement in commercial fishing and lumber industries. Metlakatla's economy is structured around fishing and wood products industries, and because it is an Indian Reservation, there can be no local tax base (ADCRA 1994). The first developments included a community retail outlet, sawmill, and salmon cannery. KPC owns the primary sawmill in Metlakatla. Subsequent developments included continuous upgrading of the cannery, fish traps, fishing fleet, sawmill, hydroelectric and diesel generation plants, and constructing a cold storage operation. In 1977, the Tamgass Creek Hatchery opened. The community-owned and operated salmon cannery, including an egg house, is the center of activity from mid-June through November each year. The Annette Island Packing Company contracted with a Japanese firm to sell salmon eggs and herring roe to Japan (ADF&G 1994).

Timber and fishing are key economic sectors, however the largest employer is the Metlakatla Indian Community. Its 1989 median household income was \$37,143 (ADCRA 1995). Unemployment in this census area is 12.5 percent, compared to 8.2 percent in all of Southeast (Alaska Economic Trends 4:1995).

## Summary

As indicated in Table SE-1, there appears to be a consistent trend in the transient nature of the population and its ethnic makeup. This is substantiated by an examination of the housing markets of the four largest communities on the island. The seasonal nature of employment in Southeast Alaska requires a flexible work force. This work force utilizes temporary housing during the primary operating period.

## Ketchikan

Ketchikan is located on Revillagigedo (Revilla) Island. The Ketchikan vicinity includes Saxman, Mountain Point, Clover Pass, Ward Cove, and Herring Cove which are located on the Ketchikan road system and Pennock Island. The Ketchikan area was a summer fishing camp for the Tlingit Indians. Development began with a saltery at the mouth of Ketchikan Creek. Ketchikan was a boom town in the late 1800s. Since the early 1900s, timber products have been an important economic influence. A world-scale pulp mill was built in Ward Cove in 1954. Due to its location as a transportation center, fishing center, and focus for the subregion's timber industry, Ketchikan grew rapidly in the 1950s. Recently, government, tourism, and services have grown in economic importance. Mining could become important with the pending development of the Quartz Hill mine.

Ketchikan is the fourth largest and the most visited city in the entire State of Alaska. Cruise line traffic alone is estimated to contribute almost \$12 million annually into the local economy (Alaska Department of Labor 1992). Along with tourism, Ketchikan's economy is largely dependent on timber and fishing. Therefore, economic welfare is dependent to a large extent on the state of the economy of the lower 48 states and that of Japan.

Ketchikan's labor force parallels the seasonal fluctuations of the local economy and its industries. Unemployment rates peak in the winter and fall, and is lowest in the summer as wood products, fishing, and tourism reach maximum output and labor demand. Poor weather limits access for industrial operations during the winter months. The seasonal nature of employment moderates in the potential increase in unemployment during the mid-winter

## Extended Primary ROI

### 3 Environment and Effects

months of December through March. When a downturn in the local economy creates excess labor, many people leave the area migrating to areas with favorable job opportunities.

Overall, Ketchikan's demographic makeup is similar to that of the State of Alaska. Ketchikan's larger economy and housing markets have resulted in a higher proportion of renter-occupied housing units than that of the State. The transient nature of some of Ketchikan's labor force does, however, support the previous assertion which claimed a positive correlation between the degree of transience in the labor force and the size of its white community.

Table SE-2 displays the level of employee compensation, total income, and jobs derived from the major industry groups in the Extended Primary ROI.

**Table SE-2**  
**Ketchikan Gateway Borough Employment and Wages by Industry for 1994**

<b>Industry</b>	<b>Yearly Earnings (MM\$)</b>	<b>Annual Employee Income (M\$)</b>	<b>Number of Jobs</b>
Agriculture, Forestry, & Fishing*	3.8	47.2	81
Construction	17.7	48.0	370
Manufacturing**	53.5	35.2	1,522
Transport, Comm. & Utilities	24.8	33.0	753
Wholesale & Retail Trade	32.0	20.6	1,554
Finance, Insurance & Real Estate	7.3	25.1	291
Services	30.1	22.6	1,333
Government	69.3	38.3	1,811
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$238.5</b>	<b>\$270</b>	<b>7,733</b>

SOURCE: Alaska Department of Labor, Research and Analysis

\* Does not include independent fishermen.

\*\* Includes logging, sawmills, and pulp mills.

#### Economic Use of the Forest

The proposed actions in the Chasina Project Area may affect the economic use of the forest by three major industries: timber, commercial fishing, and recreation including tourism. Table SE-3 displays 1990 employment information for these three major industries. For each industry, direct, indirect, and total employment is listed. In addition, for each industry, the percent of the total Southeast Alaska employment is shown.

Table SE-3

**Employment and Earnings, Resource Dependent Industries and Southeast Alaska Total**

Industry	Individuals Employed (Average Annual Jobs)				Employee Earnings			
	1994 Direct Employment	Change 1980-94	% of SE AK Total	1994 Total Employ- ment	1994 Direct Earnings (MM\$)	% of SE AK Total	1994 Average Annual Earnings	1994 Total Earnings (MM\$)
Wood Products	2,204	16%	6	3,439	96	9	43,453	129
Mining	163	-21%	0	284	10	0	59,481	17
Recreation and Tourism	2,771	100%	7	3,664	86	8	30,996	114
Salmon Harvesting	1,899	-0%	5	2,697	41	4	21,425	58
Seafood Processing	1,646	16%	4	3,160	42	4	25,437	80
<b>Resource Dependent Total</b>	<b>8,683</b>	<b>27%</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>--</b>	<b>274</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>31,546</b>	<b>--</b>
<b>Southeast Alaska Total</b>	<b>37,107</b>	<b>21%</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>37,107</b>	<b>1,119</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>30,158</b>	<b>1,119</b>

SOURCE : TLMP RSDEIS 1996a

Note: Recreation and tourism employment and income estimated from 1990 levels (derived from regional input/output model) using recreational use on the Tongass as an index. Total resource dependent employment and income is omitted because of inability to sum resident and non resident measures.

As shown in Table SE-3, salmon fishing, when combined with seafood processing, provides the most direct and total employment, followed by recreation and tourism and then by timber. Direct employment in the three industries results in a labor force that exceeds 8,600 and is more than 23 percent of the regional employment.

The wood products industry had the greatest total earning (\$129 million) mostly due to the fact that they are better paying jobs. Each of these industries interacts with other sectors of the economy. Therefore, implementation of a policy that affects one or more of these industries would affect other sectors of the economy. Additionally, each of the three industries includes a number of subcomponents. The timber industry directly affects several economic sectors including heavy construction, lumber and paper products, and water transportation. The commercial fishing industry includes the harvesting, processing, manufacturing, support, and transportation of fish or related products. The recreation and tourism industry directly affects several economic sectors including the retail trade, service, and transportation sectors. The industry includes guides and outfitters, tours and transportation services, and sport hunting and fishing support services.

## Timber Industry

### Industry's History and Overview

Before 1950, the timber industry was a small portion of Southeast Alaska's economy. Numerous sawmills were located at such places as Juneau, Petersburg, Wrangell, and Ketchikan. A plywood mill operated at Juneau and a pulp mill at Port Snettisham (south of Juneau). Since 1950, the timber industry has become a major economic and social factor in Southeast Alaska.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Today, the forest products industry in Southeast Alaska processes a wide spectrum of spruce and hemlock logs into cants and finished lumber products. The wood waste produced in sawmills is used for energy, slabs, edgings, and pulp fiber. In addition, a new market in Asia has developed for logs from lands conveyed to Alaska Native corporations through the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (ANCSA) (Public Law 92-203). The historic timber industry employment in Southeast Alaska has varied from a low in 1985 of about 2,000 to a high in 1990 of about 3,500 (TLMP RSDEIS 1996a).

Under the terms of the ANCSA, 13 Native corporations in Southeast Alaska were entitled to select 540,000 acres of land out of the Tongass National Forest. Approximately 95 percent of these lands have been conveyed. More than 3 billion board feet have been harvested from these lands and exported as unprocessed logs. It is estimated that between 1984 and 1989, the harvest on Native corporation lands increased almost 300 percent. Unprocessed log exports have displaced cants in the export markets. The export market for round logs has increased because of limited log availability from the Pacific Northwest.

#### **Timber Supply and Markets**

In Southeast Alaska, the main sources of timber are National Forest System and Native corporation lands. By regulation, timber harvested on federal land undergoes primary manufacture into products such as pulp, lumber, or chips unless otherwise authorized by the Regional Forester. There are exceptions to this rule. For example, Alaska cedar was determined to be in excess of domestic needs, and under permit, may be exported as unprocessed logs. Western redcedar logs may be exported by permit until such time as a competitive market exists. Timber harvested from private lands may be exported as unprocessed logs.

As indicated by the data presented in Table SE-4, the timber harvest in Southeast Alaska fluctuated in the 1980s and 1990s. One of the primary reasons for the fall in timber harvest in the early to mid-1980s was the precipitous increase in the value of the dollar. This resulted in reduced overseas demand for Alaskan timber, and therefore, reduced production. A clear correlation, presented in Table SE-4, can be drawn from the reduction and subsequent increase in timber harvest to timber industry employment data throughout the 1980s. Future timber harvest on Native corporation lands will decline substantially as timber inventories are depleted.



Table SE-4  
Timber Harvest in Southeast Alaska by Source (MMBF Log Scale)

Source	FY83	FY84	FY85	FY86	FY87	FY88	FY89	FY90	FY91
Tongass NF	220.0	226.7	162.5	251.4	282.0	331.5	377.0	399.0	299.6
Native Corp.	249.3	202.3	225.3	295.9	286.1	286.4	419.8	441.7	318.8
Other	24.9	18.0	4.3	12.2	19.5	16.8	14.9	11.1	11.5
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>494.2</b>	<b>447.0</b>	<b>392.1</b>	<b>559.5</b>	<b>587.6</b>	<b>634.7</b>	<b>811.7</b>	<b>851.8</b>	<b>629.9</b>
Imports	21.1	5.7	7.8	24.4	5.7	0.1	1.8	1.2	0.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>515.3</b>	<b>452.7</b>	<b>399.9</b>	<b>583.9</b>	<b>593.3</b>	<b>634.8</b>	<b>813.5</b>	<b>853.0</b>	<b>629.9</b>
Utility	84.4	122.5	131.0	98.1	179.3	186.0	177.6	140.4	197.1

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service 1992.

Alaska's timber industry is primarily dependent on export markets in Japan, and to a lesser extent, other Pacific Rim countries including Taiwan, Thailand, Indonesia, South Korea, and the People's Republic of China. For instance, within the past year, the value of pulp has increased to well over 50 percent, due to a boll worm epidemic in China. The epidemic virtually wiped out China's cotton crop, resulting in an increased demand for rayon which is made from wood pulp. Domestic markets are important as well; mills in Southeast Alaska ship timber to each coast and Midwestern states. Alaska's major competitors in the export market are British Columbia, Pacific Northwest states, Russia, and New Zealand. The fortunes of the timber industry of Southeast Alaska are closely tied to the yen and dollar exchange rate, a stable Japanese market, and housing starts in Japan. Thus, a constant supply of Tongass timber is not the only factor controlling timber employment.

### Timber Related Employment

The Tongass timber program is part of a long-term effort to provide greater economic diversity and more stable, year-round employment in Southeast Alaska. To achieve that goal, the Forest Service established requirements to process National Forest timber in Alaska, and entered into long-term contracts to encourage the development of an integrated timber manufacturing industry. These contracts were established under provisions of the Tongass Timber Act of 1947. Providing sufficient timber supply opportunities to maintain timber-related employment in Southeast Alaska was an objective of the TLMP and the 705(a) provision of ANILCA.

Resource industries in Southeast Alaska include wood products, seafood processing, mining, recreation and tourism, and fish harvesting. In Southeast Alaska, the wood products industry accounts for 25 percent of the resource industry employment (TLMP RSDEIS 1996a). From 1980 through 1991, timber harvest and forest products manufacturing supported an average of 4,481 jobs in Southeast Alaska (Table SE-5). During this period, approximately 46 percent of the timber harvested in Southeast Alaska came from land administered by the Forest Service (TLMP RSDEIS 1996a).

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SE-5

#### Employment in the Wood Products Industry of Southeast Alaska, Fiscal Years 1981-1991

Employment	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990	1991
Logging	1,049	991	1,010	946	1,004	1,239	1,545	1,981	2,113	2,144	1,554
Sawmills	605	540	429	395	363	331	375	468	478	500	604
Pulp Mills	1,081	975	854	700	580	772	861	892	925	899	911
<b>Total Direct Employment</b>	<b>2,733</b>	<b>2,506</b>	<b>2,293</b>	<b>2,041</b>	<b>1,947</b>	<b>2,342</b>	<b>2,781</b>	<b>3,341</b>	<b>3,516</b>	<b>3,543</b>	<b>3,069</b>
Indirect Employment	2,125	1,950	1,800	1,600	1,500	1,825	1,950	2,350	2,550	2,570	2,226
<b>Total Employment</b>	<b>4,858</b>	<b>4,456</b>	<b>4,093</b>	<b>3,641</b>	<b>3,447</b>	<b>4,167</b>	<b>4,731</b>	<b>5,691</b>	<b>6,066</b>	<b>6,113</b>	<b>5,295</b>

SOURCE: Alaska Department of Labor and USDA-Forest Service Region 10, Planning and Budget.

Two computer simulation models (PASS and IMPLAN) were used to estimate indirect and induced employment. The distinction between direct and indirect employment is a function of the Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) System underlying the collection and grouping of economic statistics. "Induced employment" refers to the additional number of jobs that are supported when employee wages and salaries are spent locally. Direct employment provides the best indication of the growth of an individual industry, while the sum of all three categories is a better indication of the significance of any one industry to the region's economy.

#### Economic Efficiency

The harvesting of timber involves large investments. The economic efficiency of these investments is relevant to the choice among environmentally different alternatives being considered and can be addressed in three ways. First, the economic efficiency of alternatives will be evaluated. Historic costs for managing, harvesting, and processing timber, and historic prices for various timber and wood products are identified and the present net value (PNV) of the alternatives estimated. Second, the timber sales below cost will be evaluated. Third, other non-market and non-priced issues are discussed. Many of these issues are non-quantifiable within the scope of this project and, therefore, are assessed in a qualitative way. For a comprehensive analysis, these factors must be considered along with the timber economics to determine the net benefit to the nation from timber harvest.

The National Forest Management Act of 1976 (NFMA) set requirements for economic efficiency of forest management proposals. Although the Forest Service has generally tried to achieve cost-effective management (lowest possible input cost per unit of output), systematic evaluation of all costs and benefits from practices and activities has been undertaken only in recent years.

The measure of economic efficiency applied in formulating and evaluating alternatives is Public Net Benefits (36 CFR 219.1(a) and 219.12(f)). Public Net Benefits (PNB) are the sum of PNV and non-priced commodity values (non-priced benefits (NPB)). Examples of non-priced benefits include scenic quality, wildlife habitat, and community stability. PNV is a method of adjusting revenues and costs to allow their comparison over time. Values of some non-priced commodities are inferred from observations such as the number of participants, tolerance of congestion, and expense of participation.

## Sales Below Cost

In response to concerns about the costs and revenues from timber sales on National Forest lands, especially sales where costs exceeded revenues, the General Accounting Office (GAO) and the Forest Service, at the direction of Congress, jointly developed the Timber Sale Program Information Reporting System (TSPIRS). TSPIRS reports are designed to describe financial and economic aspects of the forest-wide timber sale program. Managing timber is a long-term commitment of land and resources and a variety of activities occur each year on stands at various ages in their rotation. For this reason, many of the costs, such as roads and reforestation, are pooled and then redistributed over a series of years based on the amount of timber harvested. This is a different approach than is used in the calculation of PNV described above where costs are measured in the year they occur and discounted back to the present.

While the system was designed for forest-wide purposes, it can be adapted to provide some insight into the below-cost sales for areas smaller than the entire forest. It will be used in this context to evaluate the relationship of the alternatives to the sales below cost issue.

Large development costs usually accompany new timber sales. These costs in turn translate into revenue for local businesses, and employment and income for local people. The TSPIRS reports provide a description of the extent of investments in timber harvesting on the Tongass National Forest. The Tongass National Forest had revenues in excess of expenses of almost \$190,000 in 1988, \$2.5 million in 1989, and \$11.5 million in 1990. For this 3-year period, average revenues were slightly over \$200 per thousand board feet. Total controllable expenses averaged about \$74 per thousand board feet, payments to the State averaged almost \$43 per thousand board feet, for an average net gain of about \$85 per thousand board feet.

## Receipts and Payments

In all years, except 1987, 25 percent of all revenues received (including purchaser road credits) from the Tongass was paid to the State of Alaska. The 1980 to 1994 average payment to the State of Alaska was \$4,782,000, and in 1994 the amount was \$8,726,000 (TLMP RSDEIS 1996a). The funds are used to benefit public schools and public roads. The amount of funds contributed in the past have not comprised a significant portion of the total public schools and public road budgets for the cities and boroughs of Southeast Alaska. However, changes in these payments are of considerable interest to local residents.

## Commercial Fishing Industry

Although the commercial fisheries industry in Southeast Alaska continues to fluctuate, it remains a major component of Southeast Alaska's economy. Salmon stocks recovered from their low levels in the early 1970s. Alaska's commercial fisheries have become increasingly regulated. In the case of salmon, a permit system regulates the number of harvesters accessing the fishery. Harvest of halibut is regulated through Individual Fish Quotas (IFQs). Seafood processing, also a vital component of Southeast Alaska's economy, has undergone some changes since 1980. Of major significance were an increased use of floating fish processing facilities and a trend toward frozen rather than canned salmon.

Salmon continues to dominate the industry, both in volume and value of catch, and in harvest-related employment. The labor force and employment associated with fishing is highly seasonal. The TLMP RSDEIS (1996a) estimates suggest that 60 percent of the fish used by the fish-processing industry are salmon. National Forest habitats produce salmon harvested in Southeast Alaska fisheries. Assuming habitat is proportional to ownership of timberland in Southeast Alaska, it is estimated that the Tongass National Forest may contribute up to 80 percent of the regional salmon harvest. Consequently, 48 percent of the seafood processing employment was identified as being dependent upon the National Forest (see Table SE-3). Anadromous fish-rearing habitat on the National Forest Lands in Southeast Alaska likely supports 1,500 jobs in salmon harvesting and 790 in the fish processing sectors. It is estimated that 9 percent of the region's population depends on the harvest of salmon



### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Recreation and Tourism

spawned in the National Forest in Southeast Alaska. Individual communities may have a higher degree of dependence. Additionally, for some families, commercial fishing and processing work provides an income supplement rather than their principal source of earnings. For other families, income from fishing or cannery work is the only cash supplement to an otherwise subsistence lifestyle.

Alaska's recreation and tourism industries are driven by both visitors and residents. While visitors and residents demand different services, and spur different economic impacts, the foremost commonality of these groups is the increase in their size. The resident population of Southeast Alaska and the numbers of visitors to the state have been increasing (Alaska Department of Labor 1996, Alaska Department of Commerce and Economic Development 1994).

The Alaska Department of Commerce and Economic Development compiles statistics on arrivals into the state for residents and visitors during the summer months. From 1985 through 1994, they have documented a trend of steady growth. "Since 1985, total arrivals have increased by two-thirds." The summer of 1994 (June to September), brought 1,139,874 people to the state. Approximately three-quarters of all arrivals to Alaska during the summer months are visitors; this composition has been fairly consistent since 1985 (Alaska Department of Commerce and Economic Development 1994).

The Alaska Department of Natural Resources prepares a Statewide Comprehensive Outdoor Recreation Plan (SCORP) every 5 years. This report focuses more on the recreation needs of residents of the state. By nearly a 2:1 ratio, Alaskan's favorite activity is sport fishing, followed by hiking, hunting, camping, and winter sports.

*"Approximately 95 percent of Alaskans consider the availability of high quality outdoor recreation opportunities to be important to their lifestyle. They demonstrate this importance by their willingness to purchase outdoor recreation equipment."* (Alaska Department of Natural Resources 1993)

Between 1979 and 1991 (the last time a statewide recreation survey was conducted), participation rates for most activities increased (Alaska Department of Natural Resources 1993). The SCORP identifies the need for "basic facilities" in Southeast Alaska to meet the recreation needs of the resident population. "Trails were the most significant facility need in Southeast. . . by a 3:1 ratio over other facilities."

During the 1980s, the tourism industry became a major force in the economics of Southeast Alaska. Cruise ships traveled the Inside Passage, making regular stops at Southeast Alaska ports in record numbers. Newer and larger capacity ships, as well as smaller ships tapping special interests, are ushering a new era of tourism to Southeast communities.

While the economic impacts of this industry are likely to increase, they are not felt throughout the communities in the Chasina Project Area, but are currently confined to the immediate vicinity of Ketchikan. The visitor season currently runs from May through September. Cruise ship passenger numbers visiting Ketchikan have grown from 85,000 passengers in 1981, to 378,645 in 1995.

According to the State of Alaska, the Inside Passage was the most visited attraction by all visitors to the State in 1993. The second most visited attractions by pleasure visitors (as opposed to business visitors, etc.) were the totems located in Ketchikan (Department of Commerce and Economic Development 1993).

During the summer of 1993, visitors spent \$597.9 million in Alaska (Department of Commerce and Economic Development 1993). "Tourism is now the State's second largest private sector employer, directly employing an annual average of 10,300 workers who earn an



estimated \$186 million in annual payroll'' (Alaska Department of Natural Resources 1993). These jobs, however, are typically low paying and seasonal.

General recreational use and tourism within the Tongass has more than doubled in the last 10 years. This, in turn, reflects a rapid increase in recreational and tourism related activities (including sport fishing and hunting) and now accounts for an estimated 2,771 direct employment jobs (TLMP RSDEIS 1996a). This figure constitutes 7 percent of Southeast Alaska total 1994 employment.

## Sport Fishing

The *Southeast Alaska Sport Fishing Economic Study* (1991), a research report done for the State of Alaska, contains Ketchikan Area data:

*''In 1988, anglers spent \$83.1 million for sport fishing in Southeast Alaska. Resident anglers spent about \$40.7 million and nonresident anglers spent about \$42.4 million. Ketchikan area resident anglers spent about \$6.6 million on sport fishing. For nonresident anglers, sport fishing in the Ketchikan area generated the most spending, comprising about \$13.7 million, or 32 percent of all nonresident angler spending.''*

Of all species sought by residents and nonresidents, king salmon generated the most spending, accounting for \$13.3 million, or about 32 percent of all resident angler spending, and accounting for \$9.6 million, or 23 percent of all nonresident spending. This has important significance for the local charter fleet.

It was estimated that in 1988, angler spending contributed toward the generation of \$1.5 million in local sales tax revenue, \$105,000 in lodging tax, \$135,000 in state corporate income tax, and \$1.2 million in fishing license revenues. For nonresident anglers, fisheries in the Ketchikan area are the most valued throughout Southeast Alaska, with an annual ''willingness-to-pay'' value of \$7.5 million. The willingness-to-pay concept can be described as a value which approximates market price.

Clover Bay Floating Fish Lodge is located just north of the project area. They average 20-24 guests, who fish for halibut and salmon from June to mid September. Much of their fishing effort is in the ocean around the project area.

## Sport Hunting

The primary big game species in Southeast Alaska and the Ketchikan area, in terms of number harvested and hunter participation, is the Sitka black-tailed deer. Deer constitute over 90 percent of the total big game harvest in Southeast Alaska (Doerr & Sigman 1986). Estimating value using the willingness-to-pay concept (the amount hunters are willing to pay to harvest a deer) places deer hunting by resident Southeast Alaskans at \$332 (Swanson, Thomas & Donnelly 1989). Hunting expenditures are not available for the Ketchikan area.

An estimated 285 jobs in Southeast Alaska depend on the expenditures made by hunters. About 820 jobs in the region result from the purchases of sport anglers. Another 475 jobs result from the purchases made by businesses and their employees. In total, hunting- and fishing-related expenditures (excluding commercial fishing expenditures) produce approximately 6 percent of the region's wage and salary employment (Forest Service 1990b).

## Non-market/ Non-priced Values

A discussion of the relationship between an economic benefit to cost analysis and the analysis of unquantified environmental effects, values, and amenities is useful in considering project alternatives. In Forest Service terminology, three types of values are typically considered in economic evaluations: market values, non-market values, and non-priced values. Market values are those established through a market, such as timber. Non-market values are those that can be quantified using economic techniques that infer or deduce values which might prevail if a market were present, such as some types of recreation. These first two types are included directly in the benefit to cost analysis. Non-priced values refer to those for which it

# 3 Environment and Effects

is impossible to quantify a value, even with non-market economic techniques, such as the value of religious sites or genetic diversity.

## Non-market Values

Recreation, fish, and wildlife values are not typically established by a market but are important considerations in making resource management decisions. Wildlife viewing and photography are some of the most popular activities among forest visitors. A survey of businesses which provide products and services for wildlife viewing, wildlife photography, and other non-consumptive wildlife uses indicated that this use is rapidly increasing in Southeast Alaska (Shea 1990). It is estimated that over 200 businesses in Southeast Alaska provide wildlife viewing recreation services. This business activity is growing as much as 33 percent annually, with client expenditures contributing substantially to the economy (Shea 1990).

Non-market values can be applied to changes in the levels of some recreation, fishing, and hunting activities associated with the alternatives to estimate the economic value of these changes. These values can then be incorporated into a benefit to cost analysis and a below-cost sales analysis.

## Non-priced Values

There are many other values, called non-priced values, that people hold for which markets do not exist and to which market values cannot be attached. Among others, these include active use values (subsistence), the value of the forest as habitat for wildlife, and passive use values. Passive use values include existence, option, and other non-use values (Mitchell and Carson 1989).

Some important non-priced values are visual quality, diversity and quality of recreation opportunities, old-growth retention, suitable habitat for threatened and endangered species, and cultural resources. Another is the value of retaining old-growth forest and wilderness or semi-wilderness areas. This represents the value that people, who will never visit the project area, receive from the knowledge that the area exists and the condition (or perceived condition) in which it exists. This value can be inter-generational since timber cuts conducted in the 1990s will be visible for one human generation. Recent work in this field was conducted following the Exxon Valdez oil spill in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Quantitative studies were conducted to determine prices for values and were based on people's willingness-to-pay to avoid habitat degradation. Such surveys, which must be conducted on a national or international basis, are beyond the scope of this project and have not been conducted for the Tongass as a whole. It should be noted that contingent values can be quite high. Those arrived at for the oil spill study determined that the people of the United States were willing to pay about \$3 billion to avoid the oil spill (Carson et al. 1992). It is evident that similar values exist for the Tongass because of the concern expressed by some conservation and preservation organizations about logging on the Tongass and the reaction to these pressures by Congress.

Judgments are necessary in assessing whether benefits of maintaining non-priced values equal or exceed the trade-offs of producing priced values. While the quantitative dollar values of each cannot be determined, they generally can be examined by association with such quantitative indicators as acres, resource inventories, or timber production related activities and outputs.

## Effects of the Alternatives

### Timber Industry

When comparing the economic efficiency of alternative methods that produce similar results, economic analysis is useful. In the case of the Chasina Timber Sale environmental analysis, each alternative represents a specific management strategy or emphasis to produce 26 to 68 MMBF of timber harvest. The Forest Service is legally mandated to consider a reasonable range of alternatives for accomplishing a specific project and to analyze the costs and benefits. The rationale in the decision to utilize scarce public natural resources requires balanced and thoughtful deliberation among management actions that affect the quality of the environment. Central to the analysis process is the concept of value, which is represented by the monetary value of the costs and benefits derived from using natural resources. In essence, the Forest Service manages a portfolio of public assets. By selecting a specific course of action, the Forest Service uses capital in the form of stumpage value or the value per acre of logs to help defray forest development expenses.

People in Southeast Alaska rely on the availability of natural resources from the Tongass National Forest. Their economic well-being and livelihood are inextricably tied to these resources. The Forest Service is required by the National Forest Management Act (NFMA 1976), regulations implementing NFMA, and Forest Service policy and manual direction, to perform economic efficiency and economic equity or distributional analysis as part of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) process. Economic efficiency is concerned with getting the most output for each dollar spent. Economic equity is concerned with who benefits (jobs, tax base) and who pays because of economic transactions. Forest Service officials are not required to select the alternative that is the most economically efficient. However, they must carefully consider the level of investment required to implement each project and alternatives within projects to determine how to provide the outputs defined by the Forest Plan with the least expenditure of dollars. The purpose of this analysis is to provide the information needed to make informed economic decisions.

#### Economic Evaluation of Timber Harvest

The measure of economic efficiency applied in formulating and evaluating alternatives is Public Net Benefits (PNB) (36 CFR 219.1(a) and 219.12(f)). PNB is the sum of Present Net Value (PNV) and non-priced commodity values. PNV is the difference between the discounted value of all outputs to which monetary values or established prices are assigned and the total discounted costs of managing the area. Examples of non-priced benefits include scenic quality, wildlife habitat, and community stability.

#### Direct and Indirect Effects

The economic impacts of the Chasina Project Area alternatives can be evaluated in a number of ways. The value of the standing timber is equivalent to its "stumpage value", or the amount of compensation the Forest Service receives when the timber is harvested. In addition to returns to the U.S. Treasury, stumpage values indirectly affect fiscal conditions in local communities through payments to the State. The concept of PNV is useful in analyzing investments in timber harvest activities and capturing the benefits and costs that are realized over a period of time. The benefits of future harvest revenues are offset by their costs and combined with the costs and revenues of the initial harvest to calculate a PNV for each alternative. From a social welfare perspective, the volume of timber available for harvest under each alternative supports a different level of job opportunities in timber-related industries. A more detailed analysis of these important economic indicators is included in the following discussion.



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Mid-market Assessment

Determining the economic feasibility of each timber sale offering is an important step in the Forest Service planning process. Forest Service policy and handbook direction (FSH 2409.18) requires an economic efficiency assessment to compare benefits and costs of each proposed timber sale project (a mid-market assessment) and a determination if the sale would be a positive economic offering. This economic efficiency analysis is performed by comparing expected gross revenues to estimated costs and arriving at an estimate of future net revenues. To account for market fluctuations, weighted average timber values over the past 10 years are used in the analysis.

Logging costs vary by volume class (indices of the average quantity of timber per acre) mainly due to the size of the logs yarded. In general, the higher the volume per acre, the larger the logs; thus, the logging costs per thousand board feet (MBF) are lower. Species composition is an important variable to consider when estimating timber value. For example, Volume Class 4, which has the lowest average volume per acre, often contains a large proportion of yellowcedar that is exportable in log form and has high pond value. Pond value is the value of the logs at the mill, minus manufacturing costs. For the Chasina Project, this assessment was conducted by subtracting estimated logging and transportation costs (including road construction) from the pond log value for each action alternative. To account for market fluctuations, the weighted average of quarterly pond log values from 1985 through 1995 was used in the analysis. An allowance of 60 percent of normal profit and risk was also included as a cost and subtracted from pond log values per FSH 2409.18. This assessment, therefore, estimates the value of the timber that would accrue under average market conditions.

Table SE-6 displays the results of a mid-market assessment and the relative economic performance of each timber harvest alternative. It is important to recognize the limitations of the mid-market assessment approach; namely, the values represent very preliminary approximations of future timber sale revenues and costs. Prior to the time each geographic area within an alternative selected for implementation is offered, each unit and road will be cruised by the Forest Service to accurately determine the quantity, quality, and value of timber. A formal appraisal and timber sale report will be prepared incorporating current quarter selling values and cost information, plus a normal profit and risk margin using the assumption of and operation of average efficiency as required. Site-specific environmental investments, such as reforestation of yellowcedar by hand planting in clearcut units for example, will be included in K-V sale area improvement plans, timber sale appraisals, and contracts. The purpose of this appraisal is to determine the minimum acceptable selling value for the sale or offering. Current selling values have increased in response to market demand for Southeast Alaska logs; however, costs also have increased.



**Table SE-6**  
**Summary of Estimated Costs and Profits by Alternative—Mid-market Analysis**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Total Volume (MBF)	0	25,580	42,470	45,370	37,590	66,730
Roads, New and Reconstruction (Miles)	0	14.4	25.1	11.9	22.2	39.7
Specified Road Costs (\$/MBF)	0	36.95	65.64	12.39	61.76	78.33
Specified Road Reconst. Costs (\$/MBF)	0	3.24	1.90	1.86	2.23	1.28
Pond Log Value (\$/MBF)	0	332.22	332.22	332.22	332.22	332.22
Logging Costs (\$/MBF)	0	314.26	300.59	326.67	299.95	299.60
Haul Costs (\$/MBF)	0	22.23	22.12	17.01	47.54	25.88
Temporary Development Costs (\$/MBF)	0	4.96	6.69	2.31	5.60	5.02
Total Harvest Costs (\$/MBF)	0	341.45	329.40	345.99	353.09	330.50
60% Normal Profit and Risk (\$/MBF)	0	48.62	45.88	51.21	46.24	44.68
Net Stumpage Value (\$MBF)	0	-57.85	-43.06	-64.98	-67.11	-42.96

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service

Note: Volume does not include right-of-way.

Values are meant for comparative purposes only.

All transportation costs include all costs not associated with capital investments or costs normally connected to road construction, such as: fall, buck, yard, sort, load, haul, dump, raft, and tow.

All construction costs include costs associated with LTF development, road construction, and reconstruction, such as: pit development, clearing, grubbing, embankment, haul, excavation, and related material, such as bulkheads, bridges, and culverts.

Examination of Table SE-6 shows that net stumpage values are highest for Alternatives 3 and 6, with Alternative 2 slightly lower, and Alternatives 4 and 5 ranking substantially lower, although all are negative.

Logging costs include all cost centers used in the Region 10 appraisal process to harvest timber. Common to all alternatives are timber falling, bucking, yarding, sorting, and loading. Long-term values have quarterly adjustments to reflect market conditions. The Forest Service uses the assumption of an operator of average efficiency to appraise timber sales. A more efficient operator could perform the sale and avoid a negative net stumpage.

The Forest Service also recognizes that appraisals represent a photograph of a point in time and that changes in market demand can impact future sale offerings. Increased selling prices for forest products translate into improved pond values with the result that marginal stands, in terms of their economic operability, could be harvested at a profit. Comparing each alternative with the current log pond values indicates that all alternatives are projected to yield significantly higher positive net stumpage values (Table SE-7). Comparison of the mid-market analysis with the current-market analysis indicated that this particular sale area may not be saleable under depressed or falling market conditions, but would be saleable under rising or favorable market conditions.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SE-7  
Summary of Estimated Costs and Profits by Alternative—Current-market Analysis

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Total Volume (MBF)	0	25,580	42,470	45,370	37,590	66,730
Roads, New and Reconstruction (Miles)	0	14.4	25.1	11.9	22.2	39.7
Specified Road Costs (\$/MBF)	0	36.95	65.64	12.39	61.76	78.33
Specified Road Reconst. Costs (\$/MBF)	0	3.24	1.90	1.86	2.23	1.28
Pond Log Value (\$/MBF)	0	529.00	529.00	529.00	529.00	529.00
Logging Costs (\$/MBF)	0	314.26	300.59	326.67	299.95	299.60
Haul Costs (\$/MBF)	0	22.23	22.12	17.01	47.54	25.88
Temporary Development Costs (\$/MBF)	0	4.96	6.69	2.31	5.60	5.02
Total Harvest Costs (\$/MBF)	0	341.45	329.40	345.99	353.09	330.50
60% Normal Profit and Risk (\$/MBF)	0	48.62	45.88	51.21	46.24	44.68
Net Stumpage Value (\$/MBF)	0	138.93	153.72	131.80	129.67	153.82

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service.

Note: Volume does not include right-of-way.

Values are meant for comparative purposes only.

All haul costs include all costs not associated with capital investments or costs normally connected to road construction, such as: fall, buck, yard, sort, load, haul, dump, raft, and tow.

All construction costs include costs associated with LTF development, road construction, and reconstruction, such as: pit development, clearing, grubbing, embankment, haul, excavation, and related material, such as bulkheads, bridges, and culverts.

The market fluctuation between the mid-market analysis (NOI-November 1995) and the current-market analysis (December 1997) is an approximate increase of 37.2 percent in pond log value. This increase resulted in all alternatives showing a net gain indicating that all discounted direct costs associated with timber harvest were less than the discounted direct value of the benefits (pond log value).

Table SE-7 shows that Alternatives 3 and 6 have the most potential for profit. The calculated net stumpages are indicative of comparative profitability rather than the magnitude of potential profitability.

Variances in volume per acre, species mix, logging systems, log-haul distance, road construction and reconstruction costs, camp mobilization costs, and profit and risk allowances affect logging, transportation, and construction costs for each alternative. Costs and revenues used in the assessment represent averages for each alternative. Although individual units, or even entire sales, may not be economical to harvest by themselves, the management of less productive lands or lands containing a high percentage of defective timber will help to increase future timber yields. The harvest of units with higher returns will help compensate for those that are less economical.

The major factor affecting net stumpage values among the action alternatives are haul costs and the cost of specified roads. Alternatives with longer average haul distances and more

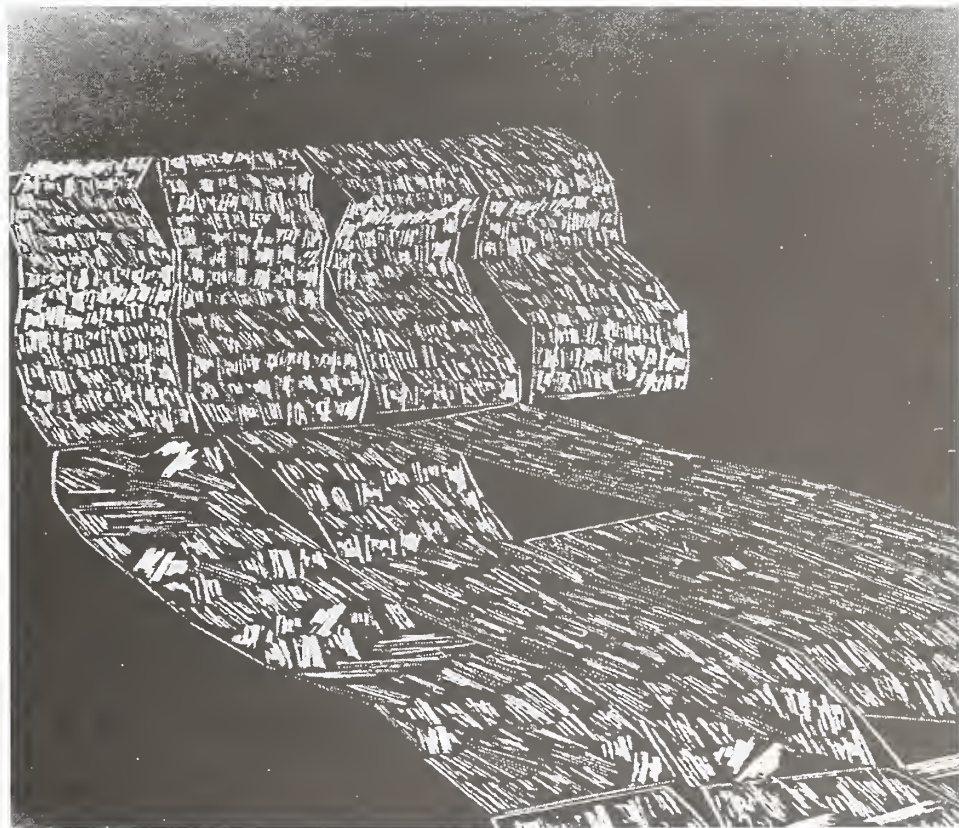
miles of road construction yield the lowest net stumpage values. Alternatives that concentrate harvest in VCUs with existing road systems proposed shorter haul distances and require less road construction as well as yield higher net stumpage values. There is a direct relationship between the extent of helicopter yarding proposed for an alternative and increases in stump-to-truck costs. The cost increases, however, may be offset by lower costs for hauling and road construction costs.

## **Timber Related Employment**

Each alternative will affect the number and composition of timber-related employment within the communities in the Primary ROI which is the Ketchikan and Prince of Wales Area.

In estimating employment impacts it is assumed that other supply and demand factors affecting markets for forest products and uses remain constant; however, assumptions lose validity as time frames are extended. For example, the amount of timber offered for sale within the project area is not the only factor that affects the number of wood products industry jobs. Other factors include the supply and demand for wood products and the subsequent number of employment opportunities, worker productivity, interest rates, import and export levels, production and shipping costs, competition, and other landowner harvest levels and policies.

Total timber-related employment is based on an estimated 5.71 total jobs per million board feet, as developed by the computer simulation model IPASS (developed for the Forest Service to analyze the effects of agency management initiatives and investments on employment and earnings in Southeast Alaska). Table SE-8 displays timber related jobs estimated to be made available per alternative.



### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SE-8  
Projected Timber-Related Employment and Yearly Incomes by Alternative\*

Proposed Harvest Year	Number of Jobs					
	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
1998	0	14	22	24	20	35
1999	0	40	65	70	58	102
2000	0	42	67	73	60	106
2001	0	59	95	102	85	149
Average Annual Number of Jobs	0	39	62	67	56	98

Proposed Harvest Year	Yearly Earning					
	Alt. 1 (M\$)	Alt. 2 (M\$)	Alt. 3 (M\$)	Alt. 4 (M\$)	Alt. 5 (M\$)	Alt. 6 (M\$)
1998	0	.84	1.32	1.44	1.20	2.10
1999	0	2.40	3.90	4.20	3.48	6.12
2000	0	2.52	4.02	4.38	3.60	6.36
2001	0	3.54	5.70	6.12	5.10	8.94
Average Annual Earnings	0	2.33	3.74	4.04	3.35	5.88
<b>Estimated Total Earnings</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>9.24</b>	<b>14.94</b>	<b>16.14</b>	<b>13.44</b>	<b>23.52</b>

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service

Note: M\$ = millions of dollars

\* Road right-of-way volume is not included in proposed harvest unit volume.

Alternative 1 proposes no timber harvest and could result in a decline in timber-related employment should the timber industry not be able to substitute volume from another source. The effects of Alternative 1 are not predictable and could range from elimination of shifts to a partial or even a full short-term shutdown in addition to the potential loss of revenue.

Possible long-term ramifications of Alternative 1 could be the destabilization of the wood products industry which will affect the Primary and Extended ROI. This assumes that no replacement timber harvest projects are cleared through the NEPA process for offer beyond 1998, although several are pending.

Long-term impacts on timber employment on the Ketchikan Administrative Area are a function of the Forest Plan, and the analysis in the TLMP 1997 is incorporated by reference.



The primary effect of any of the action alternatives would however be maintenance of current employment levels.

## Economic Efficiency

Historically, the timber market has been cyclic, with sharp peaks and valleys in pond log values. A modest change of a few dollars per thousand board feet can result in significant shifts in the economic supply of timber. The present net value yardstick reflects historical average conditions for both prices and costs, and may not represent the economic viability of the project area in any given year. Break even values, a pond log value that would be necessary for the discounted benefits to just equal the discounted costs, are shown in Table SE-9. These values would fall roughly into the top one-fourth to one-third of historical prices for Tongass National Forest timber.

Table SE-9  
**Estimated Break Even Pond Log Values for Mid-market Analysis**

	Alternatives				
	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Pond Log Values (\$/MBF)	390.07	375.28	397.20	399.33	375.18

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service.

## Sales Below Cost

All alternatives show a net loss to the federal government using a mid-market analysis. Market price fluctuations, costs of selling and harvesting timber, and changes in general administrative costs per volume harvested could have different results than these estimates.

## Returns to the Federal Treasury

A TSPIRS analysis depicting Federal returns for the Chasina Draft EIS was considered but not performed. TSPIRS was designed to be assessed on an annual basis at the National Forest level for the timber program as a whole, with expenses and costs amortized over the length of the entire rotation (100 years). Furthermore, TSPIRS sums all expenses associated with a timber sale including NEPA prep work, timber inventories, etc. These expenses are then put into a sale or growth activity pool and a percentage is subtracted each year based on how much volume is harvested versus how much remains under contract. Tracking annual project expenses from planning through implementation and final harvest spans several years and is difficult to track on a project-by-project basis. The estimated costs and profits analysis under Economic Efficiency within this section more accurately portrays actual returns to the Federal Treasury.

## Payments to State

When National Forest Receipt Act payments change, the borough must compensate with other sources of revenues to maintain the same quality and quantity of school and road programs. These monies are not always at a stable level and are not 100 percent predictable for use in a budgeting process. Fluctuations have occurred in the past.

Table SE-10 displays the estimated volume harvested, anticipated total timber receipts (including purchaser credits for road construction) to the United States government, as well as estimated returns to the State. These estimated returns could be spread out over a 3 to 7 year period depending on the rate of harvest.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SE-10  
Estimated Returns to State of Alaska

Alt.	Estimated Total Volume (MMBF)*	Estimated Total Receipts**	Estimated Returns to State***
1	0	0	0
2	26	3,612,218	903,045
3	43	6,609,960	1,652,490
4	45	5,931,000	1,482,750
5	38	4,927,460	1,231,865
6	68	10,459,760	2,614,940

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service

\* Rounded to the nearest million board feet including right-of-way.

\*\* Based on current market rates, timber receipts, and purchaser credits for road construction.

\*\*\* For this action only.

#### Commercial Fishing Industry

Current standards and guidelines and management area prescriptions are expected to limit measurable effects on fish during timber harvest and related activities. There are no substantive changes in commercial fish habitat capability predicted. The direct and indirect jobs attributable to National Forest System lands for the commercial salmon industry should also remain unchanged for all alternatives.

#### Recreation and Tourism

It is not possible to quantitatively compare priced and non-priced values. Non-priced or non-market values resulting from the proposed action could result in losses due to decreases in "nature" tourism and decreases in societal willingness-to-pay for post-logged landscapes. Due to the limited access of the project area and activities occurring on private ownership, this loss is expected to be proportional to the amount of access gained by implementing an action alternative. However, this loss is expected to be minimal. Benefits or gains would be realized from employment and profits, government revenues, increased access in the project area, and other factors discussed in this impact statement.

Projections for future employment for Southeast Alaska in the recreation and tourism industries, including employment related to sport hunting and fishing, are a 27 percent increase in use for recreation and tourism, 36 percent for sport fishing, and 53 percent for hunting related jobs during the 1990s (TLMP RSDEIS 1996a). The core community of Ketchikan should on the average reflect these increases but are lower for Prince of Wales Island. Differences between action alternatives should have little overall impact on these projections.

The action alternatives will have no measurable effects on sport fishing jobs. The action alternatives are expected to have no measurable effects on jobs generated by permits for kayak or air charter services due to set standards and guidelines for visual resources. There are no outfitter/guides with current permits or waivers operating within the Chasina Project Area.

Access to the area by plane will remain unchanged. However, access by foot travel and ATVs will increase with implementation of action alternatives. Past experience in adjacent project areas show an increase in sport fishing and hunting due to having a developed LTF

## Southeast Alaska Social Environment

and docking facility with a connecting road system. Even though roads are often closed to vehicle traffic, hunters will often boat to LTFs and gain access to a project area by utilizing the road system. ATVs are often used if main roads remain open.

### Community Stability and Life-styles

In addition to changes in employment and income, implementation of each of the alternatives will affect other elements of community and individual stability and life-styles. Elements associated with community and individual stability in this context, reflect the individual and recreational value of the project area and surrounding region, wildlife habitat, and subsistence resources. Detailed discussions of the respective impacts on these resources are presented in corresponding sections of this document.

Community stability is a very important consideration in planning for timber harvest activities on the Tongass National Forest. In addition to values described in preceding discussions (e.g., employment, income, tax receipts), a balance between natural and human resource activities is important to the communities of Southeast Alaska. Many of the residents of Southeast Alaska derive their livelihood from the timber industry or benefit from the economic development the timber industry has brought to their communities. Many residents also participate in a wide variety of activities dependent on the National Forest and/or reside in Southeast Alaska because of its natural setting. As a result, a balance between economic development and an emphasis on non-commodity resources is a desirable objective.

Implementation of Alternative 1 may result in substantial cutbacks in the timber industry's production. The corresponding decrease in timber harvesting and processing employment and income would negatively affect community stability.

Implementation of Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 would maintain a relatively high level of timber harvesting through the Chasina Project implementation period. In general, they would disperse management activities and tend to bring those areas that have not yet been developed under active timber management within the project area. This may have negative effect on use of the area by people who desire a more natural setting for recreation, subsistence, and other activities. In general, the action alternatives are similar in terms of the level of intensive timber management and their opportunities for non-commodity use. Therefore, differences among the alternatives in terms of projected impacts on life-styles and community stability would be minimal. However, because of the proximity and visibility of harvest activities to residents of Sunny Cove, Alternatives 2 through 6 could have an effect on these residents' life-styles. Similarly, Alternatives 3 through 6 could effect residents near the mouth of Cannery Creek due to the proximity and visibility of harvest activities.

## Cumulative Effects

The cumulative effects of each of the alternatives on the economic and social environment are quite difficult to estimate. There are a wide variety of factors affecting the employment, income, receipts, population, lifestyle, and community stability of Southeast Alaska. While it is not easy to project the incremental effects of the proposed actions on the project area, there are two facets of long-term timber harvest in the project area that can be addressed.

First, from the standpoint of employment, personal income, population, community services, and community stability, there is substantial benefit to maintaining a consistent level of timber harvest. The receipts generated, including revenue to the U.S. Treasury, payments to the State of Alaska, taxes, and dollars brought into the community, all represent an economic benefit of continued timber harvest activity. The TLMP 1997 schedules areas for long-term timber harvest activity. The Chasina Project Area is one of the areas scheduled to meet these economic and social needs.

The second facet of a long-term timber harvest that can be addressed is the alteration of the natural environment that takes place when roads are constructed and timber harvested. Some of the economic and social value of Southeast Alaska is dependent on its natural setting. The

### 3 Environment and Effects

recreation and tourism industry is based primarily on the natural conditions and scenic quality. As more and more acres of National Forest System Lands and other lands are converted from a natural condition to a managed forest, the activities dependent on and the values attributed to the natural state of the forested land will be affected.

The balance necessary to maintain a viable or even robust economic and social environment is set at a National Forest level, not at a project level. Based on regional standards and guidelines, the action alternatives have been constructed to minimize the negative cumulative effects on the economics and community values of the affected communities when considering the total resource. Cumulative effects on employment are best displayed in the TLMP 1997. This analysis indicates that for the Ketchikan area as a whole, National Forest System-based timber employment and commercial fishing employment will remain fairly constant, while recreation and tourism employment will increase in the future. Harvesting in the Chasina Project Area is included as part of the overall harvest level assumed as a basis for this projection.

The cumulative effects associated with the proposed timber harvesting alternatives in the Chasina Project Area on the reasonably foreseeable and longer term future of Prince of Wales Island and its surrounding area are expected to take place along three primary aspects.

The first aspect relates to the economic viability of the next entry into the Chasina Project Area. The economic feasibility of helicopter yarding is more greatly affected by market values than cable yarding. Alternative 3 proposes the largest proportion of area for helicopter yarding, 21 percent, while Alternative 3 proposes the least, 9 percent. Alternatives 2, 4, and 5 are intermediate with 14, 19, and 20 percent, respectively.

The ground-verified unit pool of 124 potential harvest units included 903 acres proposed for helicopter yarding out of a total of 4,225 acres or 21 percent. Most of the next entry into the project area would include the remainder of the ground-verified unit pool not harvested under the Chasina Project. This would occur because most of the other suitable-available CFL would still need to be deferred due to adjacency, cumulative visual and watershed effects, and other factors.

Table SE-11 shows the acreage remaining in the ground-verified unit pool after Chasina Project harvest by yarding method for the action alternatives. Helicopter yarding would be required for 23 percent of the remaining unit pool acreage under Alternative 5, and 25, 32, and 27 percent respectively for Alternatives 2, 3, and 4. Alternative 6 would harvest all available cable and helicopter yarding units with this project, leaving no other wood available until harvest units met adjacency requirements.

Table SE-11

#### Acreage Remaining After Chasina Project Harvest by Yarding Method for Each Alternative

Yarding Method	Alt. 1		Alt. 2		Alt. 3		Alt. 4		Alt. 5		Alt. 6	
	Acres	%	Acres	%	Acres	%	Acres	%	Acres	%	Acres	%
Cable Yarding	1,344	53	813	53	588	73	454	50	500	49	0	0
Helicopter Yarding	1,176	47	721	47	222	27	447	50	522	51	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>2,520</b>		<b>1,534</b>		<b>810</b>		<b>901</b>		<b>1,022</b>		<b>0</b>	



The second aspect relates to the economic and social benefits of continued harvesting of the proposed volume on Prince of Wales Island. From the standpoint of employment, personal income, population, community services, and some aspects of community stability, there is substantial benefit from maintaining long-term timber harvest in the contract area. The receipts generated, including revenue to the U.S. Treasury, payments to the State of Alaska, State and local taxes, and dollars brought into the community, all represent an economic benefit from continued timber activity.

Based on the timber supply analysis conducted for the Control Lake DEIS, it is unlikely that enough timber is available within the Chasina Project Area and on Prince of Wales Island to sustain the scheduled timber harvest through the end of the first rotation year in 2054 (when second growth would become widely available for harvest).

The Forest Plan currently contains new estimates of long-term timber supply from the Chasina Project Area and on Prince of Wales Island, and how this will affect communities. The new Forest Plan updates the 10 year sale schedule which reflects new standards and guidelines, new LUDs, and makes adjustments for falldown factors and alternatives to clearcutting.

Table ST-21 in the Silviculture and Timber section of this chapter indicates an estimated 49 percent of Chasina commercial forest lands would still have old-growth forests after decade six of Forest Plan implementation (year 2054). More restrictive land uses would add to this 49 percent old-growth acreage. Similar expectations could be realistic for other Prince of Wales Island geographic areas included in the analysis.

Under falldown scenarios as discussed above, resources that are more dependent on old-growth forest conditions would benefit. Similarly, amenity values related to more natural conditions could benefit. Harvesting that leaves more residual trees (in contrast to clearcutting) will also contribute to a more natural-appearing landscape to the casual forest visitor.

The balance necessary to maintain a viable, robust economic and social environment is established at a national or regional level, rather than at a project level. Cumulative economic and social effects of the proposed alternative actions in the Chasina Project Area must ultimately be assessed in context with coinciding local, regional, and national economic and social developments. Based on regional standards and guidelines, the action alternatives have been constructed to minimize the negative cumulative effects on the economics and community values of the core communities when considering the total resource.

## Mitigation

Mitigation measures could be undertaken to improve net national benefits from the project area. This project addresses only timber investment opportunities. All of the action alternatives have a negative PNV. Other natural resource investment opportunities may offer better investment choices and at the same time contribute to mitigating potential community stability goals.

## Monitoring

A monitoring plan has been developed for the Tongass National Forest by the Forest Planning Team and is described in the proposed Forest Plan (1991). The Forest Plan contains no specific monitoring goals for socioeconomic resources.

Project-specific monitoring that is unique to the Chasina Project Area has been identified for several resources. Project-specific monitoring is not identified for socioeconomic resources in the Chasina Project Area.

## Subsistence

### Key Terms

**Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA)**—requires evaluations of subsistence impacts before changing the use of certain Federal lands.

**Birds**—includes ducks (e.g., mallards, widgeons, teals, shovelers, oldsquaws, golden eyes, and buffleheads), seabirds and sea ducks (e.g., scooters, murrelets, puffins, seagulls, and cormorants), Canada geese, seabird eggs, and other birds.

**Invertebrates or shellfish**—includes king crab, dungeness crab, tanner crab, shrimp, sea cucumber, sea urchins, abalone, octopus, scallops, gumboot, clams and cockles, other invertebrates, and herring eggs.

**Land mammals**—includes deer, moose, mountain goat, black bear, wolf, small game, and furbearers (e.g., marten and land or river otter).

**Marine mammals**—harbor seal and other marine mammals.

**Nonrural**—a community determined by the Federal Subsistence Board to be nonrural. These communities tend to be larger (more than 7,000 people) and more urbanized than other Alaskan communities. Residents of such communities do not qualify for priority use of subsistence resources on Federal lands. Juneau and Ketchikan are the only two non-rural communities in Southeast Alaska.

**Finfish or fish**—includes cod, halibut, flounder, sole, flatfish, rock fish, herring, eulachon, hooligan, Dolly Varden, steelhead, trout, and other fish (excluding salmon).

**Plants**—includes beach greens, mushrooms, roots, seaweed/kelp, and berries.

**Rural**—a community determined by the Federal Subsistence Board to be rural. Residents of such communities qualify for priority use of subsistence resources on Federal lands. All Southeast Alaska communities other than Juneau and Ketchikan are classified as rural.

**Salmon**—includes king (chinook), red (sockeye), silver (coho), pink (humpback), and chum (dog).

**Subsistence**—customary and traditional uses by rural Alaskans of wild renewable resources.

**Wildlife Analysis Areas (WAA)**—divisions of land designated by the Alaska Department of Fish and Game and used by the Forest Service for wildlife analysis.

## Affected Environment

### Introduction

With the passage of the Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA) (Public Law 96-487, December 2, 1980), Congress recognized the importance of subsistence resource gathering to the rural communities of Alaska. ANILCA (Section 803) defines subsistence as:

*“...the customary and traditional uses by rural Alaska residents of wild, renewable resources for direct personal or family consumption as food, shelter, fuel, clothing, tools, or transportation; for the making and selling of handicraft articles out of non-edible by-products of fish and wildlife resources taken for personal or family consumption; for*

*barter, or sharing for personal or family consumption; and for customary trade”* (Section 803).

ANILCA provides for

*“the continuation of the opportunity for subsistence uses by rural residents of Alaska, including both Natives and nonnatives, on the public lands”* (Section 801(1)). It also legislates that *“non-wasteful subsistence uses of fish and wildlife and other renewable resources shall be the priority consumptive uses of all such resources on the public lands of Alaska”* (Section 802(2)).

Effective July 1, 1990, the Federal government accepted responsibility for the management of subsistence use of fish and wildlife resources on Federal public lands. This management is regulated by the Federal Subsistence Board. Alaska residents of rural areas or rural communities are given priority in the taking of fish and wildlife on public lands for subsistence uses. In Southeast Alaska, all communities except Juneau and Ketchikan have been determined to be rural by the Federal Subsistence Board.

Many Southeast Alaska residents use natural resources as a base or supplement to their livelihoods. Nearly a third of rural households in Southeast Alaska get at least fifty percent their meat and fish by hunting and fishing. Fish and game are widely preferred sources of food among all Southeast Alaska households. Examples of major subsistence resources include: deer, salmon, halibut, trout, harbor seals, crabs, clams, waterfowl, and berries (Kruse and Muth 1990).

Subsistence activities represent a major focus in the lives of all rural residents. These activities include: hunting for deer, bear, marine mammals, and birds; digging clams; catching fish and shellfish; harvesting marine invertebrates; trapping furbearers; obtaining firewood; and collecting herring and sea bird eggs, as well as edible berries, plants, and roots. Subsistence goods may be eaten, traded, given away, or made into an item of use or decoration.

Even for households that can afford to purchase all their own food, the act of gathering subsistence resources may be an important cultural aspect reflecting deeply held attitudes, values, and beliefs. Some traditional foods are not available through any means other than subsistence. The occasions for gathering wild foods and plants are often social events as much as out of necessity. Historical patterns of movement, such as the annual cycle of dispersal into small family groups at summer fishing camps and then to larger gatherings at protected winter villages, are linked to the tradition of subsistence gathering. The significance of subsistence activities often extends beyond the immediate harvest and is an embodiment and manifestation of cultural values.

Goldschmidt and Haas (1946) identified the land use patterns associated with Native communities that existed in the mid-20th century in Southeast Alaska. Comparing these maps with information from the 1988 *Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey* (TRUCS) maps and Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G) Subsistence Division maps, it appears that Native hunting and fishing land use patterns are still tied to some extent to historical traditions. Despite the introduction of technological innovations, such as large, modern boats, that allow residents of Native communities to range much greater distances than in earlier periods, their use appears to be concentrated in locations generally conforming to traditional clan land ownership boundaries. The distribution of harvest locations for nonnative communities, on the other hand, is often likely to range over greater areas.

The Chasina Timber Sale Project Area falls primarily within the traditional use area identified for the communities of Kasaan and the Tongass Village (Tongass Tribe) within Ketchikan. (Goldschmidt and Haas 1946, see Figure SUB-1). The traditional use area for Kasaan extends from Cape Chacon north to Tolstoi Bay on the east side of Prince of Wales Island while the



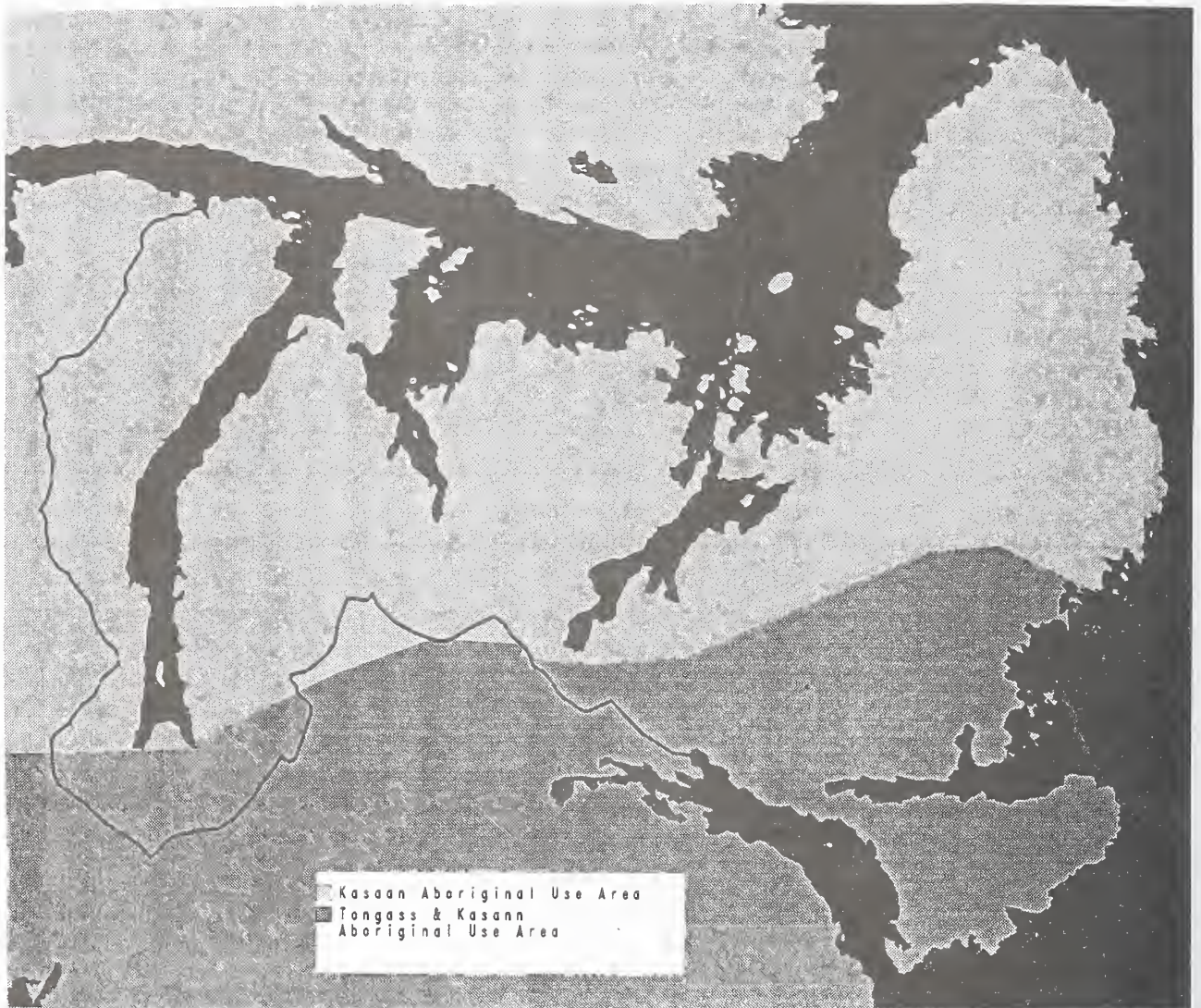
### 3 Environment and Effects

Tongass Tribe in this area concentrated their traditional use in Moria Sound, Port Johnson, and Kitkun Bay.

---

Figure SUB-1  
Tongass / Kasaan Village Aboriginal Use Area

---





The current use areas for these communities, as documented through TRUCS maps, are consistent, with some modifications, with the traditional use areas. Population consolidation and new settlement patterns are among the reasons for these changes; for example, the town of Saxman as a permanent settlement is outside of the traditional Saxman use area. These current community land use patterns are discussed later in this section. Besides Kasaan, the other communities with potential subsistence use within the Project Area are Hollis, Metlakatla, Craig, Klawock, and Hydaburg.

Average per capita income may or may not indicate the importance of subsistence to a community. While low-income individuals may have a greater dependence on subsistence gathering, individuals with a higher income may simply be in a position to have a more comfortable life-style because they combine their subsistence activities with their ability to purchase goods. Higher income does not deter an individual from gathering resources and sharing those with friends and family (Kruse and Muth 1990). Findings from the TRUCS (see below) indicate “members of the highest income group have the highest mean harvest and the lowest mean percent of meat derived from subsistence activities” (Kruse and Muth 1990).

Sharing of subsistence resources is important not only among households within communities, but also with extended families and friends in other areas. This includes sharing with those households that are unable to participate in the harvest of resources. Because some communities have access to resources not found in other communities, sharing of subsistence resources occurs between as well as within communities.

## Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS)

In late 1987 and early 1988, fieldwork for a detailed subsistence resource and use inventory of the Tongass National Forest was conducted as part of the TLMP Revision. The TRUCS was directed by the University of Alaska’s Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER), in conjunction with the Forest Service and the Division of Subsistence of the ADF&G (Kruse et al. 1988).

In the TRUCS, researchers went to 30 communities in Southeast Alaska and conducted interviews with randomly selected households about their 1987 subsistence uses. As part of the interview, household residents were also asked to indicate on a map those areas used for hunting and fishing. As with more current harvest information (ADF&G hunter surveys), all results are based upon information from samples of households and it is possible that actual amounts harvested by the “typical community household” were either higher or lower than reported by the “typical sampled community household.” Craig, Klawock, Kasaan, Hollis, Hydaburg, Saxman, and Metlakatla were included in the TRUCS. Ketchikan, as a non-rural community, was not included in the TRUCS survey because only residents of Alaskan rural communities qualify as subsistence users on Federal lands under ANILCA. The temporary floating logging camps communities also were not included in the TRUCS. A detailed description of the survey is found in the *TRUCS Technical Report Number One* (Kruse et al. 1988).

## Recent Project Area Research

There has been no recent research conducted in the Project Area as a supplement to existing information. ADF&G harvest statistics and other information indicate that the Project Area is not heavily used for subsistence harvest activities at the present time. Recent information gathering efforts for other projects suggest that subsistence use of the Project Area by Saxman residents is probably underreported in the ADF&G statistics.

## Resource Management Statistical Units Within the Project Area

Subsistence use is presented for the Project Area by community in terms of ADF&G Wildlife Analysis Units (WAAs) for deer and other species. These tables point out appropriate study communities, and provide an introduction to a discussion of community subsistence land use patterns. Deer harvest data are available from ADF&G only in terms of WAAs. The Project Area primarily consists of WAA 1211 with minor amounts in WAA 1210 and 1213.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SUB-1  
Wildlife Analysis Areas and VCUs Within the Chasina Project Area

WAA	VCUs
1210	682
1211	677, 678, 679, 680, 681
1213	674

SOURCE: USDA Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base.

#### Documented Subsistence Harvest Activity of Affected Resources Within the Project Area

This section reviews the documented harvest of subsistence resources within the Project Area. Subsistence use is presented by community in terms of ADF&G WAAs for deer and for other species.

##### Deer

Table SUB-2 displays the reported total number of deer harvested in each Project Area WAA by community, and then the “annual average” number of deer harvested in each Project Area WAA by community. The reported information for the Project Area WAAs is quite sporadic for all communities except Ketchikan; therefore, the “average” statistic should be used only with extreme caution. Table SUB-2 is derived from Table SUB-3 and indicates that reported deer harvest from Project Area WAAs for Ketchikan is 4 percent of that community’s reported harvest and 8 percent for Metlakatla. Ketchikan has historically taken the majority of deer harvested from Project Area WAAs (80 percent), with no other single community accounting for more than 8 percent. The “other rural Alaska” category includes a large number of communities, none of which has a consistent pattern of harvest over time. This table indicates that the Project Area is an important harvest area for deer for Ketchikan, and that Ketchikan hunters dominate the overall harvest for the Project Area.

Table SUB-2  
Community Deer Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, 1213: 1987 through 1994, Compared to All Areas

Community	1987	1988	1989	1990	1991	1992	1993	1994	Avg.	Community Avg.	%
Craig	-	-	-	-	-	16	-	-	2	594	<1
Hollis	-	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	32	3
Hydaburg	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	48	-
Kasaan	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	8	-
Ketchikan	70	72	146	63	31	50	62	18	64	1,627	4
Klawock	-	-	-	-	-	27	-	-	3	347	<1
Metlakatla	5	-	2	9	6	-	3	-	3	36	8
Saxman	-	-	-	-	2	-	-	-	0	5	0
Thorne Bay	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	8	1	344	<1
Logging Camps: Cholmondeley	2	-	-	5	-	-	-	-	1	7	14
Skowl Arm/ Polk Inlet	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2	0	18	0
Long Island	-	-	-	3	-	1	-	-	1	45	2
Other Alaska	-	-	-	18	-	-	-	-	2	-	-
Outside Alaska	-	-	-	3	2	-	2	-	1	-	-
<b>Total</b>	<b>77</b>	<b>80</b>	<b>148</b>	<b>101</b>	<b>41</b>	<b>94</b>	<b>67</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>80</b>		

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation.

Note: < = less than; > = greater than

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SUB-3  
Community Total Deer Harvest: 1987 through 1994

Community	1987	1988	1989	1990	1991	1992	1993	1994	Avg.
Craig	761	597	570	634	477	588	635	488	594
Hollis	88	25	6	35	17	25	23	35	32
Hydaburg	112	56	30	39	28	28	27	67	48
Kasaan	10	8	-	-	14	33	-	-	8
Ketchikan	2,005	1,640	1,544	1,738	1,189	1,504	1,465	1,929	1,627
Klawock	313	250	239	295	366	526	307	476	347
Metlakatla	19	43	38	32	35	43	63	14	36
Saxman	18	-	-	11	18	-	-	-	5
Thorne Bay	365	314	349	440	291	367	301	326	344
Logging Camps: Cholmondeley	10	13	2	18	15	-	-	-	7
Skowl Arm/ Polk Inlet	36	37	15	24	12	16	-	2	18
Long Island	24	20	34	43	42	163	33	-	45

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation.



Tables SUB-4 and -5 display the relative importance of the Project Area WAAs in relation to the overall deer harvest in Game Management Unit (GMU) 2 (Prince of Wales Island). Deer harvest in Project Area WAAs has ranged from 1 to 5 percent of the total harvest in GMU 2. These low numbers are most likely a result of the Project Area WAAs being less accessible than other WAAs. The Project Area is not accessible by the Prince of Wales main road system.

**Table SUB-4**  
**GMU 2 Deer Harvest: 1987 through 1994**

1987	1988	1989	1990	1991	1992	1993	1994
3,886	2,849	2,806	3,093	2,466	3,097	2,807	2,825

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation.

**Table SUB-5**  
**Percent of GMU 2 Deer Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213**

	1987	1988	1989	1990	1991	1992	1993	1994
Rural	<1%	<1%	<1%	<1%	<1%	<1.4%	<1%	<1%
Nonrural	1.8%	2.5%	5.2%	2.8%	1.5%	1.6%	2.3%	<1%
<b>Total</b>	<b>2.0%</b>	<b>2.8%</b>	<b>5.3%</b>	<b>3.3%</b>	<b>1.7%</b>	<b>3.0%</b>	<b>2.4%</b>	<b>1.0%</b>

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation.

Note: < = less than; > = greater than

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Black Bear

Reported harvest information for black bear is displayed in Table SUB-6. Overall reported harvest is low and is predominately attributable to sport hunters outside of Alaska and Ketchikan hunters. No subsistence community relies upon the Project Area for black bears. There has been only one black bear harvested in the Project Area, by a qualified local subsistence user as defined by ANILCA, from 1988 to 1993. This would be the bear reported taken by the hunter from Metlakatla in 1989.

Table SUB-6  
Black Bear Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1993

WAA/Community	1988	1989	1990	1991	1992	1993	Avg.
<b>1210</b>							
Ketchikan	1	3	1	1	-	1	1
Metlakatla	-	1	-	-	-	-	<1
Outside Alaska	11	9	10	8	4	-	7
<b>1211</b>							
Ketchikan	1	6	3	4	-	-	2
Other Alaska	-	-	2	-	-	-	<1
Outside Alaska	-	4	1	3	-	2	1
<b>1213</b>							
Ketchikan	-	2	2	3	-	3	1
Other Alaska	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Outside Alaska	4	2	-	3	-	4	2
<b>Total</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>16</b>

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation.

## Marten

The historical reported harvest for marten in Project Area WAAs is displayed in Table SUB-7. The overall harvest of marten has been low and the pattern over time sporadic. No one area is used on a consistent year-to-year basis and the average number of animals harvested is low. Sixty-eight percent of the annual average harvest of marten were taken by residents from Ketchikan (74 of 109).

**Table SUB-7**  
**Marten Trapped in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1993**

WAA/Community	Trapping Season					Avg.
	88/89	89/90	90/91	91/92	92/93	
<b>1210</b>						
Ketchikan	38	-	-	-	70	22
Craig	-	-	-	-	-	0
Meyers Chuck	-	31	-	-	-	6
Other Alaska	-	-	-	11	-	2
Outside Alaska	-	-	-	-	-	0
<b>1211</b>						
Ketchikan	-	48	24	-	63	27
Craig	11	-	-	-	-	2
Klawock	-	-	14	-	-	3
Thorne Bay	-	-	24	-	16	8
Outside Alaska	-	33	-	-	-	7
<b>1213</b>						
Ketchikan	64	40	23	-	-	25
Other Alaska	-	-	-	44	-	9
<b>Total</b>	<b>113</b>	<b>152</b>	<b>75</b>	<b>55</b>	<b>149</b>	<b>109</b>

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation.

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### River Otter

The reported river otter harvest from Project Area WAAs has been quite sporadic (Table SUB-8). Most harvest activity in any given area has occurred in a relatively few separate seasons. Eight of the 44 otter taken from the Project Area were by Ketchikan residents, 17 by other Alaskans and 19 by local subsistence communities.

Table SUB-8  
River Otter Trapped in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1994

WAA/Community	Trapping Season						Avg.
	88/89	89/90	90/91	91/92	92/93	93/94	
<b>1210</b>							
Other Alaska	-	2	-	-	-	-	<1
<b>1211</b>							
Ketchikan	-	-	-	8	-	-	1
Klawock	-	-	12	-	-	-	2
Other Alaska	2	9	-	-	-	-	1
Thorne Bay	-	-	1	5	-	-	<1
Craig	-	-	-	-	-	1	<1
<b>1213</b>							
Other Alaska	1	3	-	-	-	-	<1
<b>Total</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>7</b>

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation.



### Beaver

Table SUB-9 displays the number of beaver harvested in the Project Area by WAA and by harvest season. It shows that same sporadic harvest as marten and otter. There were a total of 30 beaver harvested by Ketchikan residents and 15 by other Alaskans and none by qualified local subsistence users.

**Table SUB-9**  
**Beaver Trapped in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1992**

WAA/Community	Trapping Season				Avg.
	88/89	89/90	90/91	91/92	
<b>1210</b>					
Other Alaska	-	-	-	-	-
<b>1211</b>					
Ketchikan	-	-	6	-	1
Other Alaska	1	7	-	-	2
<b>1213</b>					
Ketchikan	-	-	5	19	5
Other Alaska	-	7	-	-	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>11</b>

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Wolf

A majority of the wolf harvest in the Chasina Project Area WAAs has been by residents of Ketchikan. Only 2 of the 34 wolves harvested within the Project Area WAAs were taken by a qualified local subsistence community resident. The two wolves were taken by a resident of Klawock in 1990/91. It appears from Table SUB-10 that the Project Area WAAs are not important for subsistence use of wolves.

Table SUB-10  
Wolf Harvest in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 by Community, 1988 to 1994

WAA/Community	Season						Avg.
	88/89	89/90	90/91	91/92	92/93	93/94	
<b>1210</b>							
Ketchikan	-	-	-	1	1	2	<1
Other Alaska	1	2	-	-	-	-	<1
<b>1211</b>							
Ketchikan	-	-	3	5	2	-	1
Klawock	-	-	2	-	-	-	<1
Other Alaska	1	3	-	-	-	-	<1
<b>1213</b>							
Ketchikan	-	-	1	6	3	-	1
Other Alaska	1	-	-	-	-	-	<1
<b>Total</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>

SOURCE: Derived from data provided by ADF&G Division of Wildlife Conservation

Note: < = less than; > = greater than

#### Salmon

Examination of records kept by ADF&G, Division of Commercial Fisheries showed that during the period of 1985 through 1995, only one subsistence use permit was issued within the Project Area. It was issued to a residence of Saxman in 1991, and involved the harvest of about 1,000 chum salmon from Disappearance Creek which is at the south end of the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound.

#### Waterfowl

A variety of species of ducks, along with Canada geese, are hunted in the Project Area, primarily along bays and estuaries. Some parts of the Project Area were indicated as good waterfowl harvest locations, but little systematic information is available. There is some indication that areas near fishing sites are those that are best known and used for waterfowl subsistence hunting.

## Affected Communities

### Firewood and Lumber

Use of both live and dead timber occurs throughout the Project Area. The use of green timber, milled from free-use standing timber, as well as the use of dead material for firewood, may increase as the local population increases.

### Other Uses

There are many other subsistence uses of the natural resources besides hunting and fishing. Some examples of these other uses include, but are not limited to, berry picking, mushroom gathering, use of native plants for arts and crafts, collecting other edible plants and animals, and collecting peat and seaweed for gardens. Most of these activities are not associated with a particular site, but may occur throughout the Project Area.

The communities of Hollis, Metlakatla, Craig, Klawock, Hydaburg, Kasaan, Saxman, and Ketchikan were selected to be analyzed in this document because of their proximity to the Project Area and/or their identified subsistence resource use of the area. Although Ketchikan is not a “rural” community, it is included because of its importance in terms of documented harvest from the Project Area and the probable inclusion of Saxman residents with Ketchikan mailing addresses in Ketchikan statistics. The historical underreporting of subsistence harvest and land use activity for Saxman, the close proximity of Ketchikan and Saxman, and the large Native population of Ketchikan also suggest that Ketchikan statistics may, within carefully defined limits, be useful indicators of Saxman land use patterns. The two communities are clearly different in many ways, but it is likely that the near community land use patterns for the harvest of terrestrial mammals is fairly similar (while land use patterns for plant and fish resources are likely to be quite different). Table SUB-11 presents information taken from the 1988 TRUCS report, summarizing the importance of subsistence use for individual communities.

Logging camps and other industrial/commercial sites of a temporary or not primarily residential nature also contribute to the subsistence harvest pattern of activity within the Project Area. This has been treated primarily through the use of ADF&G harvest data and first hand knowledge of the nature of such subsistence activity. Much of the “other rural Alaska” harvest activity summarized in Tables SUB-2 through SUB-10 reflects past hunting from temporary logging camps at such locations as Cholmondeley Sound, Skowl Arm, and Polk Inlet.

Fish is the most important subsistence resource for all Southeast Alaska communities. Table SUB-11 displays the per capita harvest of subsistence resources for the study communities. Fish taken commercially for home use are included in these figures. For the study communities, salmon and other fish make up 44 to 67 percent of the total community harvest, in terms of edible weight. Shellfish contribute another 11 to 25 percent.

Deer is the most important terrestrial resource in terms of edible weight, and is used here as an indicator species for the complex of terrestrial animal and plant resources harvested as part of the subsistence activity pattern. Phrasing the discussion in terms of fish and deer has the advantage of using resources for which harvest statistics exist and for which models of the effects of timber harvest and some aspects of road construction exist.

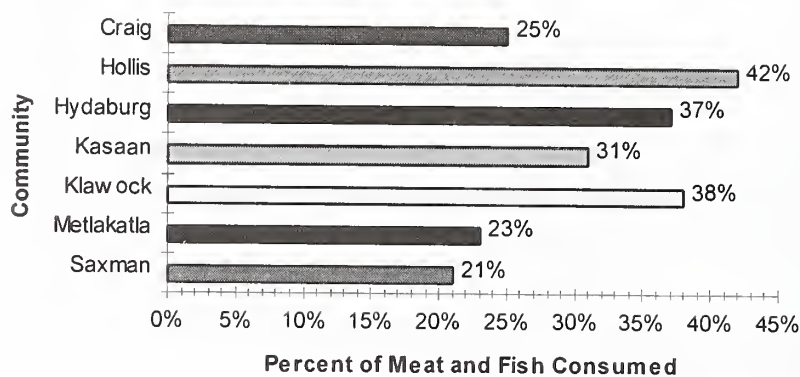
### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SUB-11  
Per Capita Subsistence Harvest (Edible Pounds for Rural Communities, 1987)

Community	Deer	Other Mammal	Salmon	Finfish/ Marine Invert.	Other	Total
Craig	40.6	3.2	40.4	88.6	12.1	184.9
Hollis	37.9	8.7	44.4	63.0	9.9	163.9
Hydaburg	42.8	0.6	137.4	135.8	20.4	337.0
Kasaan	40.0	2.3	32.0	105.7	5.6	185.6
Klawock	34.5	15.5	69.4	95.7	18.2	233.3
Metlakatla	10.6	0.2	20.3	32.5	7.2	70.8
Saxman	16.6	5.4	33.2	27.9	6.3	89.4

SOURCE: ADF&G Community Profile Database Catalog, Volume 1:Southeast Region.

Figure SUB-2  
Subsistence Harvest as Percent of Meat and Fish Consumed



SOURCE: Kruse and Muth 1990.



Five of seven communities included in the analysis harvested more than 150 pounds of subsistence resources per capita in 1987 (Table SUB-11). The greatest subsistence users were in Hydaburg with 337 pounds per capita. On average, households in most communities included in the analysis derived one quarter or more of the meat and fish they ate in 1987 from their own subsistence harvest (Figure SUB-2). Hollis residents reported that on average more than 40 percent of their meat and fish came from their own subsistence harvest. Klawock, Hydaburg, and Kasaan obtained 30 to 40 percent of their meat through subsistence harvesting. Craig residents obtained 20 to 30 percent of their meat through subsistence harvesting (Kruse and Muth 1990). The Affected Resources discussion later in this section describes the primary deer harvest use areas for each community, which is an overall indication of subsistence use areas.

## **Saxman**

The subsistence use of Saxman residents is probably underreported in ADF&G statistics. In general, Saxman hunters tend not to report their harvest. The TRUCS information itself confirms this. The best information on Saxman's harvest is from the 1987 face-to-face interviews conducted for TRUCS. ADF&G hunter survey information since then, which is sent in voluntarily by hunters who receive survey forms, has been quite sporadic.

The same is true for fish, where the information quite clearly indicate that people do harvest a significant amount of fish, it is also true that not all people can harvest as much fish as they would like. The recent program by which the hatchery makes surplus fish available to local Ketchikan and Saxman residents was cited as filling a definite need. The TRUCS maps for Saxman confirm these patterns. Within the Project Area, important identified fishing areas include the West Arm of Cholmondeley Sound and around Chasina Point. Saxman residents have harvested chum salmon in the vicinity of Disappearance Creek at least once during 1985-1995. It is almost certain that at least part of Saxman's reported harvest is included in statistics for Ketchikan.

## **Ketchikan**

Ketchikan is a non-rural community, and thus, under Federal law, its residents are not subsistence users. However, since it is highly probable that some Saxman residents are included in Ketchikan use statistics, and Ketchikan residents harvest the vast majority of wildlife and fish resources taken from the Project Area, Ketchikan's use pattern is discussed within the subsistence context. No information exists on whether subgroups of Ketchikan residents have differential patterns of wildlife and fish resource use. Given the indications that Saxman residents use mostly the area close to the community, whereas Ketchikan residents use a very large area, it is likely that there is a subcomponent of Ketchikan hunters/gatherers for whom the Project Area is more important than for the community user group as a whole.

Overall, the terrestrial resources harvested from the Project Area by residents of Ketchikan make up a very small part of the total community harvest. This reflects the large number of community hunters, the relative lack of terrestrial resources in the Project Area in relation to community demand, and Ketchikan residents' ability to access other areas where the resources do exist, more easily than the Project Area, especially on the Prince of Wales Island road system. For fish, the pattern is quite different. Abundant resources exist relatively close to the community. There are two areas which account for most of the Ketchikan Area subsistence fishing. Yes Bay accounts for 30 percent of Ketchikan personal use/subsistence permits, but provides 58 percent of that community's sockeye catch using such permits (as well as 40 percent of the coho, 59 percent of the pink, and 51 percent of the chum). The Karta River (on Prince of Wales Island) is the other major source of subsistence/personal use fish for Ketchikan. A very limited number of permits for Project

### 3 Environment and Effects

Area streams have been issued. Some Ketchikan residents who fish commercially within the Project Area may retain part of their catch for their personal use.

There is no TRUCS map for Ketchikan, since it is a non-rural community. If one were constructed, the Project Area would not be included in Ketchikan's "high-use" areas, primarily because the Project Area WAAs do not support a large enough deer population to contribute significantly to the amount of deer harvested by Ketchikan residents, as well as the lack of accessibility of the Project Area.

The overall pattern for Ketchikan hunters is to use roads and motor vehicles for hunting access, especially on the main road system of Prince of Wales Island. A limited number of interviews with Ketchikan hunters indicates that there are Ketchikan hunters who hunt more locally (do not use Prince of Wales Island) and who are not primarily road/motor vehicle oriented. They are more inclined to use water transportation and/or walk.

#### **Craig**

While there was traditional use of the Craig area for fish camps and settlement sites in the area (most notably at Klawock), the present permanent community of Craig dates from the salmon packing operation started in 1907 on Fish Egg Island, just northwest of the present location of Craig. While Natives comprise a significant portion of the population, Craig is a predominantly non-Native community. This is in sharp contrast with the community of Klawock; however, some residents of Craig are quite similar to those of Klawock in their patterns of subsistence resource use.

Hunters from Craig use WAAs comprising the Chasina Project Area very sporadically. The Project Area WAAs provide less than 1 percent of the community's overall deer harvest. Craig hunters report using both boats and road vehicles for access to deer hunting areas. There is some indication that boat-based hunters are willing to hike farther than road-based hunters. Overall, Craig hunters report using road corridors most heavily.

#### **Hollis**

Hollis reported a low incidence of subsistence use within the Project Area for all resources. Karta Bay was the area reported as an important subsistence fishery for the people of Hollis (Langdon et al. 1992). An average of 164 pounds per capita of edible meat and fish were harvested by Hollis households in 1987. Harvests included an average of eight different types of subsistence resources. Salmon accounted for 27 percent, deer for 23 percent, finfish other than salmon for 22 percent, and invertebrates for 16 percent of the harvest for Hollis households. Hollis households received an average of 3 types of subsistence resources from other households. Hollis hunters traveled an average of 20 miles to their most reliable deer hunting areas. They were less likely to hunt open beaches, areas that included clearcuts of any age, or areas above the tree line, and more likely to hunt in areas that included old-growth forest, muskeg, roads, or grassy meadows. Hollis residents' reasons for discontinuing deer hunting in an area included the area having been logged, absence of deer, inconvenience, or development (Kruse and Frazier 1988).

Hollis residents harvested an annual average of 32 deer from 1987 through 1994. An annual average of one deer was taken in the Project Area (Table SUB-2).

Hollis residents did not report taking any black bears, river otters, wolves, or marten from the Project Area WAAs during the 1988-89 through 1993-94 seasons (Tables SUB-6 through SUB-10).

Hollis deer hunters prefer to hunt their local area. Hollis residents hunt in the Chasina Project Area, but only at a relatively low level. The TRUCS map indicates that those areas that were used by Hollis hunters are located at least partially outside of the Project Area.

## Hydaburg

Hydaburg subsistence use is dispersed throughout the Project Area, according to TRUCS maps. The majority of the people interviewed for the Polk Inlet EIS indicated adherence to older subsistence practices oriented to river, oceanic, and island resources located to the west and south of Hydaburg. This type of resource use is done predominantly by skiff and fishing vessel. Some fishing occurs on streams in the area and some users travel to Karta Bay for sockeye harvesting. Hetta Inlet was identified as an important source of shellfish for residents (Langdon et al. 1992).

An average of 337 pounds per capita of edible meat and fish were harvested by Hydaburg residents in 1987 (Table SUB-11). An average of eight different types of resources were harvested by residents. Salmon accounted for 40 percent, invertebrates for 24 percent, finfish other than salmon for 16 percent, and deer for 13 percent of the harvest for Hydaburg households. Hydaburg residents received an average of more than nine different types of subsistence resources from other households. Hydaburg hunters traveled an average of 18 miles to their most reliable deer hunting areas. They were less likely to hunt in areas that included roads or clearcuts of any age and more likely to hunt in areas that included muskeg, old-growth forest, open beach, areas above the tree line, or grassy meadows. The most commonly cited reason by residents for no longer hunting deer in an area was that it had been logged (Kruse and Frazier 1988).

Hydaburg residents harvest an annual average of 48 deer, but none in the Project Area.

The TRUCS map for Hydaburg shows that all of Prince of Wales Island and much of other parts of Southeast Alaska are equally important for deer hunting. Project field interviews support the conclusion that Hydaburg hunters use the Project Area only in a very limited way.

No black bears, wolves, river otters, or marten were reported by Hydaburg residents as taken from Project Area WAAs.

To some degree, all Hydaburg households rely on subsistence resources for daily food. Hydaburg residents share substantial amounts of subsistence foods with friends and relatives in other communities. A portion of these resources may be taken from the Project Area. However, little information exists on the amount of such sharing and the area of origin of the resources shared.

## Kasaan

Subsistence use by Kasaan residents is concentrated on the Kasaan Peninsula with Karta Bay a major focus for salmon and shellfish subsistence harvests. Deer hunting takes place primarily along the Kasaan Peninsula. There are, however, some uses of the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound and along Clarence Strait in the vicinity of Windy Point that are located within the Chasina Project Area. These activities include: bottom fishing, trolling for salmon, crabbing, shrimping, and deer hunting.

An average of 186 pounds per capita of edible meat and fish were harvested by Kasaan residents in 1987. An average of eight different types of subsistence resources were harvested. Invertebrates accounted for 40 percent, deer for 22 percent, and salmon and finfish other than salmon for 17 percent of the harvest for Kasaan households. Kasaan residents received six types of subsistence resources from other households. Kasaan-hunters traveled an average of 7 miles to their most reliable deer hunting areas. They were less likely to hunt in areas that included roads, clearcuts of any age, grassy meadows, open beaches, or areas above the tree line, and were more likely to hunt in areas that included old-growth forest or muskeg. Kasaan residents were most likely to not hunt in an area because they had no means to get to that area (Kruse and Frazier 1988).



### 3 Environment and Effects

No deer, black bear, marten, river otter, or wolves were reported taken from Project Area WAAs by residents of Kasaan.

#### **Klawock**

Subsistence harvest methods within the community of Klawock have been changing since the road connection with Hollis was made in the 1960s. Prior to that time, subsistence harvest was mostly tied to boating activities. Since road access to the rest of the island has been available to the residents of Klawock, there has been a shift from using boats to harvest subsistence materials to using trucks and cars (Ellanna and Sherrod 1987).

Most of the Klawock residents interviewed indicated that their predominant subsistence activities occur in the west coast region of Prince of Wales. A trend, which seems to be increasing, are residents taking their boats to Hollis to utilize the Karta Bay fishery and the rich shellfish resources of the Hollis area. Some residents used to hunt on the road system north of Klawock, but declines in abundance have led them to turn to the Hydaburg Road area. Klawock residents also have returned to using boats to hunt the outer islands away from the road system to escape the pressure of hunting by nonlocals on the Prince of Wales road system (Langdon et al. 1992).

An average of 223 pounds per capita of edible meat and fish were harvested by Klawock residents in 1987 (Table SUB-11). An average of eight different types of subsistence resources were harvested by residents. Salmon accounted for 32 percent, finfish other than salmon for 29 percent, deer for 19 percent, and invertebrates for 14 percent of the harvest for Klawock households. Klawock residents received an average of almost five types of subsistence resources from other households. Klawock hunters traveled an average of 35 miles to their most reliable deer-hunting areas. They were less likely to hunt in areas that included open beach, areas above the tree line, or older clearcuts, and were more likely to hunt in areas that included muskeg, old-growth forest, roads, young or middle-aged clearcuts, or grassy meadows. The most commonly cited reason for no longer hunting deer in an area was that the area had been logged (Kruse and Frazier 1988).

An overall annual average of 347 deer were taken by Klawock residents from 1987 through 1994 (Table SUB-3) with an average of three deer a year taken from the Project Area. Within the Project Area, Klawock residents primarily used WAA 1211 with no hunting occurring in WAA 1213.

Klawock residents did not report any black bear harvest within Project Area WAAs. River otter harvest averaged two per year in Project Area WAAs (Table SUB-8) and marten harvest averaged three a year from the Project Area (Table SUB-7) by Klawock residents.

#### **Metlakatla**

Metlakatla is located on Annette Island in southern Southeast Alaska, 15 miles south of Ketchikan. Its population of 1,600 includes 84 percent Alaska Native (Alaska Department of Community and Regional Affairs (ADCRA)).

In 1987, the per capita household subsistence harvest in Metlakatla was 71 edible pounds. Seventy-seven percent of all households harvested some subsistence resource. Most commonly used (by over 50 percent of households) were coho and chinook salmon, halibut, deer, clams, dungeness crab, and berries (TRUCS 1989).

Salmon, halibut, and marine invertebrates accounted for 75 percent of Metlakatla's subsistence harvest; deer was 15 percent. Most of Metlakatla's subsistence activities center around Annette, Duke, and Gravina Islands. Metlakatla residents harvested 8 percent of their deer and only one bear in the Project Area.



## Project Area Camps

Several camps exist, or have existed, in or very near the Project Area. Residents of these camps harvest deer and other wildlife species during their free time.

### Polk Inlet Camp

Polk Inlet Camp, established in 1986, was a floating camp with a population of approximately 75 people. It was located at the mouth of Dog Salmon Creek on the west coast of Polk Inlet, but has since been moved. This camp contained a post office, school, and store and had daily plane service to and from Ketchikan. It is estimated that over 90 percent of subsistence activities of these residents were concentrated in the Polk Inlet area and consisted of deer and salmon harvesting (Langdon et al. 1992). Tables SUB-2 and 3 shows that the combined camps of Polk Inlet and Skowl Arm harvested an average of 18 deer a year with only 2 reportedly taken from the Chasina Project Area. No black bear, river otter, or marten were reported to have been taken from Project Area WAAs by Polk Inlet Camp residents during the 1988-89 through 1992-93 season. The Polk Inlet Float camp is no longer here, but has been replaced with the much smaller land camp of Pheonix Logging. South Coast Inc. also has a barge anchored in Polk Inlet.

### Smith Cove (Skowl Arm) Camp

Smith Cove Camp (referred to in ADF&G deer data as Skowl Arm Camp) is a small logging/construction camp of approximately 40 residents located on the northeastern shore of Skowl Arm. The camp is comprised of 15 to 20 mobile home trailers and has a floating store with a post office. It is likely that a substantial portion of subsistence activities of this camp occurs within the boundaries of the Polk Inlet Project Area (Langdon et al. 1992). There is no information available from this camp and it is not included in any of the subsistence tables.

### Cholmondeley Camps

#### Gildersleeves Logging Incorporated Floating Camp

The Gildersleeves camp consists of several families plus 50 or so people in a bunkhouse. Only a few of the families reside there year-round. Those year-round permanent residents are likely qualified subsistence users, while the others may or may not be qualified subsistence users. Whether or not they are qualified depends on where their permanent residence is located. It is likely that most residents of the camp do harvest fish and wildlife resources in the Cholmondeley Sound area. Tables SUB-2 and 3 show that of the 58 total deer harvested between 1987 and 1994 only 8 were taken from the Project Area.

#### Kootznoowoo Native Corporation Camp

Kootznoowoo Native Corporation maintains a permanent shore based camp in Dora Bay and operates their deep water port facility from this shore based camp. The camp caretaker is the only permanent resident. The other camp residents are longshoremen that are flown in when there is a ship to be loaded or unloaded. While loading or unloading ships, the longshoremen reside in a bunkhouse at the camp. When the job is finished they are flown back to their home community. As a result this camp will have little impact on the subsistence resources of the Chasina Project Area. The Kootznoowoo Dora Bay camp is not included on any of the subsistence tables.

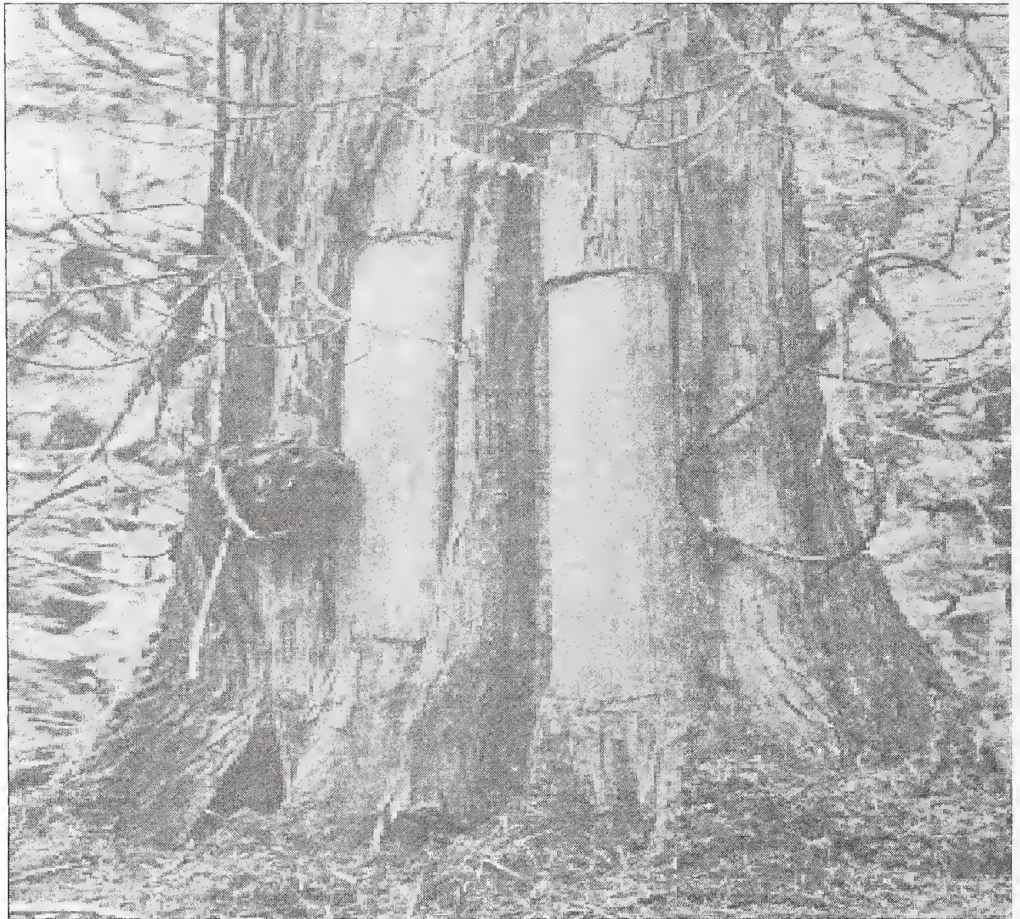
#### Divide Head Development

Kootznoowoo Native Corporation is developing their land at Divide Head. They have subdivided it and are currently selling lots. To date five residences have been built and more building is anticipated in the near future. It is not known whether any of the completed homes or cabins are occupied permanently. If they are occupied permanently, those residents would become or are qualified subsistence users. Since it is such a small community even if all residents become qualified subsistence users it will have very little impact on the Project Area.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Sunny Cove

Eight families are jointly operating an oyster farm in Sunny Cove. The operation is based from the privately owned land in the cove. It is not known whether all eight families reside at Sunny Cove or if they are there year round or not. Those that designate Sunny Cove as their permanent residence are qualified subsistence users. Like the residences of the Kootznوو shore camp and Divide Head even if everyone in Sunny Cove becomes a qualified subsistence user it will have little impact on the resources of the Project Area.





## 810 Evaluation - Effects of the Alternatives

### Introduction

Section 810 of ANILCA (Public Law 96487) requires a Federal agency having jurisdiction over lands in Alaska to evaluate the potential effects of proposed land use activities on subsistence uses and needs. Section 810(a) of ANILCA states:

*In determining whether to withdraw, reserve, lease, or otherwise permit the use, occupancy, or disposition of public lands under any provision of law authorizing such actions, the head of the Federal agency having primary jurisdiction over such lands or his designee shall evaluate the effects of such use, occupancy, or disposition on subsistence uses and needs, the availability of other lands for the purposes sought to be achieved, and other alternatives which would reduce or eliminate the use, occupancy, or disposition of public lands needed for subsistence purposes. No such withdrawal, reservation, lease, permit, or other use, occupancy or disposition of such lands which would significantly restrict subsistence uses shall be effected until the head of such Federal agency:*

- (1) gives notice to the appropriate State agency and the appropriate local committees and regional councils established pursuant to [ANILCA] Section 805;*
- (2) gives notice of, and holds, a hearing in the vicinity of the area involved; and;*
- (3) determines that (A) such a significant restriction of subsistence uses is necessary, consistent with sound management principles for the utilization of the public lands; (B) the proposed activity will involve the minimal amount of public lands necessary to accomplish the purposes of such use, occupancy, or other disposition; and (C) reasonable steps will be taken to minimize adverse impacts upon subsistence uses and resources resulting from such action.*

This section evaluates how the proposed action alternatives could affect subsistence resources used by the rural communities potentially using the Project Area and the non-rural community of Ketchikan. The subsistence resource categories evaluated are deer, black bear, furbearers, waterfowl, marine mammals, salmon, other finfish, shellfish, other food resources, and firewood.

### Evaluation Criteria

Criteria used to evaluate the effects of the proposed alternatives are: (1) changes in abundance or distribution of subsistence resources, (2) changes in access to subsistence resources, and (3) changes in competition from non-subsistence users for those resources. The evaluation determines whether subsistence opportunities in the Project Area or portions of the Project Area may be significantly restricted by any of the proposed action alternatives. To determine this, the evaluation: (1) considers the availability of subsistence resources in the surrounding areas; (2) considers the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future activities on subsistence users and resources; (3) looks at potential cultural and socioeconomic implications affecting subsistence users; and (4) focuses on the mapped subsistence use area in the Project Area.

This subsistence evaluation considers, with distinct findings by alternative and by resource category, whether or not there is a significant possibility of a significant restriction of subsistence use. The Alaska Land Use Council definition of "significant restriction of subsistence use" is one guideline used in the findings. By this definition:

*A proposed action shall be considered to significantly restrict subsistence uses, if after any modification warranted by consideration of alternatives, conditions, or stipulations, it can be expected to result in a substantial reduction in the opportunity to continue subsistence uses of renewable resources. Reductions in the opportunity to continue*

### 3 Environment and Effects

*subsistence uses generally are caused by: reductions in abundance of, or major redistribution of resources; substantial interference with access; or major increases in the use of those resources by non-rural residents. The responsible line officer must be sensitive to localized, individual restrictions created by any action and make his/her decision after a reasonable analysis of the information available.*

The U.S. District Court Decision of Record in *Kunaknana v. Watt* provided additional definitions of "significant restriction of subsistence uses" and are also used as guidelines in the findings. The definitions from *Kunaknana v. Watt* include:

*Significant restrictions are differentiated from insignificant restrictions by a process assessing whether the action undertaken shall have no or slight effect as opposed to large or substantial effects. In further explanation the Director (BLM) states that no significant restriction results when there would be "no or slight" reduction in the abundance of harvestable resources and no occasional redistribution of these resources. There would be no effect (slight inconvenience) on the ability of harvesters to reach and use active subsistence harvesting site; and there would be no substantial increase in competition for harvestable resources (that is, no substantial increase in hunting by non-rural residents).*

Conversely, restrictions for subsistence uses would be significant if there were large reductions in abundance or major redistribution of these resources, substantial interference with harvestable access to active subsistence-use sites or major increases in non-rural resident hunting. In light of this definition, the finding of significant restriction must be made on a reasonable basis, because it must be decided in light of the total subsistence lands and resources that are available to individuals in surrounding areas living a subsistence life-style. The EIS evaluates the availability of subsistence resources in surrounding areas that could be accessed without undue risk or economic hardship to subsistence users.

#### Direct, Indirect, and Cumulative Impacts on Subsistence Use of Deer

The areas of greatest documented deer harvest within the Chasina Project Area have been within WAA 1211. Access is primarily, if not totally, by water. Some hunters use ATVs (transported by boat) on these road networks, while others hunt the shore from boats or walk.

##### Abundance and Distribution

Determining what harvest levels are sustainable assumes that habitat capability projections from the deer harvest model reflect an approximation of deer population over the long term (short-term deviations from the modeled results are not unusual). It also assumes that the distribution of deer harvest across a WAA is approximately proportional to the available habitat. Furthermore, it is based on the determination that the sustainable harvest is 10 percent of the deer population (Flynn and Suring 1989). The analysis assumes that the 1987 to 1994 deer harvest reflects rural and non-rural community use of deer in Project Area WAAs. ADF&G has collected deer harvest data for individual WAAs since 1987.

Averaging the deer harvest makes allowance for factors that influence deer numbers and hunting activity from year to year, such as weather patterns, access, habitat capability, and hunting success.

Non-rural residents harvested an average of 64 deer or 80 percent of the deer taken from the Project Area WAAs, while rural residents harvested an average of 16 deer or 20 percent during 1987 to 1994 (Table SUB-2). Based on the assumptions described above, Table SUB-12 presents the estimated Project Area deer population needed to support these harvests and compares them to present and future habitat capabilities drawn from the TLMP Final EIS (1997). Fragmentation effects were assumed to be the same as the patch-size effectiveness percents developed for the Project Area alternatives. Patch-size effectiveness is shown in the Old Growth and Biodiversity Section of this document. This table, SUB-12, indicates that the



documented average deer harvest can be expected to be sustainable beyond 2040, even if all timber harvest anticipated in TLMP takes place.

In order to account for increases in demand over time, observed harvest levels are increased for harvest projections based on Alaska State population projections. An average increase of 1.8 percent per year is used through 2010 and 1.5 percent per year thereafter. Table SUB-12 incorporated a correction factor by supplying an estimate of future increased demand for deer because of increased population or other factors. When compared with the habitat capabilities for future dates in Table SUB-12, it is still clear that if the proposed action takes place, the estimated habitat capabilities in each WAA within the Chasina Project would still be well above that required to support the average documented harvest of deer. Habitat capability for WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 should be able to sustain the deer harvest by rural and non-rural communities.

**Table SUB-12**  
**Deer Populations Needed to Support Projected Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 Combined**

	1954	1996	2000*** (Alt. 6 Max Harvest)	2040
Habitat Capability * (Without Patch-size Effects)	5,224	5,118	5,023	4,457
Habitat Capability (With Patch-size Effects)	4,598	4,348	3,904	2,916
Deer Population Needed** to Meet Projected Demand	800	800	870	1,480

SOURCE: Deer harvest statistics are from ADF&G hunter survey data files. Habitat capability figures are from the TLMP (1997). These figures are for the entire WAA.

\* Habitat capabilities are for entire WAAs from Modified Panel Deer Model, (DeGayner et al. 1996) minus project effects.

\*\* Assumes that 10 percent of the deer population can be harvested on a sustained yield basis (ADF&G).

\*\*\* Alternative 6 was chosen for comparison because it is the maximum harvest alternative

The cumulative effects of the proposed action will still meet ADF&G deer population objectives for all of the Project Area WAAs. However, at some point beyond the foreseeable future (approximately 2040), timber harvest may reduce the habitat capability below ADF&G population objective.

## Access and Competition

Effects resulting from changes in access to the Project Area may be the most significant potential effects of the proposed action. Changes in access is the major differentiation between alternatives in terms of potential effects upon subsistence resources and patterns of use. Access to traditional subsistence use areas may be affected where logging activities take place near the beach fringe because traditional subsistence access includes use by boat on the beaches of the Project Area. However, this effect on access would probably be very minor under all alternatives because no beach fringe will be harvested in the Project Area under any alternative. Roads, whether temporary or

### 3 Environment and Effects

permanent, have the greatest potential to increase access. See the Roads and Facilities section of this document for more information on the proposed roads for the Project Area.

The biggest change is an increase in access to the Project Area due to the roads constructed on Hydaburg Native Corporation lands in the Big Creek and Sulzer Portage areas. These are now connected to the main Prince of Wales Island road system.

#### Findings for Deer

Table SUB-12 indicates that even after all likely future timber harvest within the Project Area occurs, habitat capability for deer would be adequate to support the projected demand for deer. Timber harvest beyond that envisioned by the TLMP Final EIS (1997) could produce significant effects.

Table SUB-13

#### Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Deer for each Alternative

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Abundance/Distribution						
All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Access All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Competition All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No

Note: "No" indicates an insignificant possibility of a substantial effect.  
"Yes" indicates a significant possibility of a substantial effect.

The most obvious mitigation measures for such effects would be road/access management to retard the potential increase in the demand for deer associated with new road access and/or the restriction of non-subsistence hunting since most of the documented harvest of deer in the Project Area is from Ketchikan.

#### Summary of Findings for Deer

None of the action alternatives will create a significant possibility of a significant restriction of subsistence use of Sitka black-tailed deer. Based on reported use of the Project Area, there should be adequate habitat to support projected demand into the future, so there should not be a restriction of subsistence use of deer because of abundance/distribution.

## Direct, Indirect, and Cumulative Subsistence Use of Other Resources

Other resources have a lower rate of documented use, and are less limiting in terms of use of the Project Area, with the possible exception of fish. Black bear, marten, river otter, and wolf are the species that are evaluated.

### Black Bear

Black bear generally are not used as a major food source and most documented harvest has been by non-subsistence hunters. Of the 98 bears noted on Table SUB-6 in the years 1988 through 1993, 65 black bears were taken by non-resident sport hunters and the rest, 33, by Ketchikan hunters. Some subsistence hunting of bear occurs, but subsistence interviews suggest that it is relatively infrequent. Only one bear was harvested during this time by an individual from a rural community (Metlakatla).

Table SUB-14

**Project Area Black Bear Populations Needed to Support Documented Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability in WAAs 1210, 1211, and 1213 Combined**

Avg. Yearly Harvest	Population Needed to Support Harvest	1954 Habitat Capability	Current Habitat Capability	Post Project Habitat Capability*	2040 Habitat Capability**
16	160	278	276	269	220

SOURCE: Bear harvest statistics are from ADF&G data files.

\* Alternative 6 was used for comparison, as it was the maximum harvest alternative.

\*\* Assumes 10 percent of the bear population can be harvested on a sustained yield basis (ADF&G).

Table SUB-14 displays the bear habitat capability required to support the annual documented black bear harvest. It appears that the habitat degradation is not a problem for bears and the habitat capability would not be a limiting factor for any of the alternatives, based on HCM information from the Preferred Alternative of the TLMP Final EIS (1997). Documented subsistence use of black bear in the Project Area is so low that there would be little adverse competitive effect of increased access if this were taken at face value. However, it is likely that the subsistence harvest of bear is higher than documented, and it is also likely that increased access could increase subsistence demand for bear from the Project Area.

All action alternatives with road construction could potentially increase both subsistence and non-subsistence demand for bear from the area. As noted above, increased access could attract increased effort from local subsistence and non-subsistence hunters.

These conclusions agree with the general conclusions of a healthy local population in the ADF&G's series of annual performance reports of survey-inventory activities for black bear (Abbott, various dates).

### Furbearers

Tables SUB-15 and 16 display the populations of marten and river otter required to support the average documented harvest of each by Project Area WAA, and projected habitat capability values for those WAAs. No attempt is made to estimate increased demand, because there is no clear relationship between furbearer harvest and human population (animal population and price appear to be much more important factors).

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Marten

Of the 544 marten reported as harvested from 1987 to 1993, 370 were taken by Ketchikan residents (Table SUB-7). Table SUB-7 indicates that the habitat capability for WAAs 1211 and 1213 does not support the current level of harvest at 1954 or 1998 habitat capability. The proposed action would not contribute significantly to this effect, which is primarily due to prior harvest, animal populations peaking above habitat capability model "limits" (when trappers would most logically target that area), or both. Due to the number of marten trapped by Ketchikan residents, there is a significant possibility of a significant restriction in subsistence use of marten as a result of any of the proposed alternatives, including the no-action alternative.

Table SUB-15

#### Project Area Marten Populations Needed to Support Documented Year Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability

WAA	Avg. Rural Harvest	Avg. Non-rural Harvest	1954 Habitat Capability	1998 Habitat Capability Pre-Project	Habitat Capability Post-Project Alt. 6*	Avg. Total Harvest	Population Needed to Support**
1210	6	24	150	150	150	30	75
1211	13	34	90	89	82	47	118
1213	0	34	58	57	56	34	85
<b>Total</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>92</b>	<b>298</b>	<b>296</b>	<b>288</b>	<b>111</b>	<b>278</b>

SOURCE: Marten harvest statistics are from ADF&G data files.

\* Alternative 6 was chosen for comparison because it represents the maximum harvest.

\*\* Assumes 40 percent of the marten population can be harvested on a sustained yield basis (ADF&G).

Note: Habitat capability numbers do not take into account road density effects.



## River Otter

Forty-four river otter are reported as harvested from 1988 to 1994, from Project Area WAAs.

The Project Area WAAs currently contain sufficient habitat capability to sustain the current level of documented harvest on an annual basis (Table SUB-16), even after the project is implemented. The actual pattern of trapping is for most of the take to occur in a few years of very high success, interspersed with longer periods of very low take. This corresponds to the cyclical nature of furbearer populations, as well as fluctuations in fur prices. While there does not appear to be a possibility of a significant restriction on subsistence use of river otter, there could be in the future as a result of better access created by the Hydaburg/Sulzer Portage road which would greatly increase the access of the Project Area.

Table SUB-16

### Project Area River Otter Populations Needed to Support Documented Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability

WAA	Avg. Rural Harvest	Avg. Non-rural Harvest	Total Average Harvest	1954 Habitat Capability	1998 Habitat Capability	Capability Post-Project Alt. 6*	Population Needed to Support**
1210	<1	0	<1	83	83	83	5
1211	5	1	6	53	52	52	30
1213	<1	0	<1	32	31	31	5
<b>Totals</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>108</b>	<b>166</b>	<b>166</b>	<b>40</b>

SOURCE: River otter harvest statistics are from ADF&G data files.

\* Based on Alternative 6—the maximum harvest alternative.

\*\* Assumes 20 percent of the river otter population can be harvested on a sustained yield basis (ADF&G).

### 3 Environment and Effects

#### Wolf

Wolf harvest within the Project Area WAAs appears to be sustainable in WAA 1210, but exceeds habitat capability in WAAs 1211 and 1213. This is similar to the situation with marten harvest; adequate habitat capability to meet subsistence demand, but because of competition from Ketchikan residents, there may be a significant possibility of a significant restriction in subsistence use of wolves.

Table SUB-17

#### Project Area Wolf Populations Needed to Support Documented Demand from Rural and Non-rural Communities Compared to Habitat Capability

WAA	Avg. Rural Harvest	Avg. Non-rural Harvest	Total Average Harvest	1954 Habitat Capability	1998 Habitat Capability	Capability Post-Project Alt. 6*	Population Needed to Support**
1210	<1	<1	1	10	10	10	4
1211	1	1	2	8	8	7	8
1213	0	2	2	5	5	5	8
<b>Total</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>22</b>	<b>20</b>

SOURCE: Wolf harvest statistics are from ADF&G data files.

\* Based on Alternative 6—the maximum harvest alternative.

\*\* Assumes 25 percent of the wolf population can be harvested on a sustained yield basis.

#### Waterfowl

Waterfowl are an important supplementary subsistence resource. There are no indications that the waterfowl harvest within the Project Area would be affected by the proposed action. Habitat capabilities should not be affected by road construction in that there would not be increased access to areas used for waterfowl harvest.

#### Marine Mammals

Federal law prohibits the taking of marine mammals by anyone other than Native hunters. Timber harvest activities are not expected to have any effect on marine mammals taken for subsistence or on marine mammal habitat.

#### Salmon

Salmon are a major subsistence food harvested in the Project Area. The Aquatic Resources section concludes that potential effects of the proposed timber harvest and road construction alternatives on salmon spawning and rearing habitat would be minimal or eliminated by applying the Forest Service standards, guidelines, and prescriptions described in detail in the Aquatic Habitat Management Handbook (FSH 2509.22) and Soil and Water Conservation Handbook (FSH 2609.24).

#### Other Finfish

The action alternatives for the proposed project would have no immediate or foreseeable effect on finfish habitat. Because there would be no effect on finfish habitat, the abundance and distribution of those finfish would not be affected. Access and competitive effects are also unlikely, although access to some areas may be increased somewhat by the proposed action.

## **Shellfish**

Anticipated effects on the abundance and distribution of local crabs, clams, and other shellfish would not be measurable for purposes of subsistence. Access and competition should also not be affected, although there may be some periodic conflicts between log rafts being stored or towed, and the crabbing or shrimping of some bays and inlets.

## **Other Food Resources**

Other foods include plants such as kelp, goose tongue, and a variety of berries. Most traditional gathering of these foods occurs near beach and estuarine areas. Timber harvest will be minimal for these areas. Some increased access to interior gathering sites may occur under all alternatives. Road construction activities may improve access to berry picking sites that are now not reasonably accessible.

Because beach fringe and estuaries would not be significantly affected by the proposed project, and because additional food gathering sites may be made available, the project's activities and foreseeable impacts are not expected to substantially affect the abundance and distribution of other foods.

## **Firewood/Personal Use Wood**

The Forest Service has a free-use policy (with limits) for firewood and timber. None of the proposed alternatives would have adverse effects on the availability of firewood, personal-use timber or traditional uses of wood, such as for totem poles.

## **Summary Findings for Other Resources**

Subsistence findings for resources for which there is some possibility of a significant restriction related to the project are summarized in Table SUB-19. Subsistence findings for resources for which there is not a significant possibility of a significant restriction are summarized in Tables SUB-18, 20, and 21. Positive findings relate to marten and wolf.

None of the project alternatives will have a significant possibility of having a significant restriction on subsistence resources in relation to the abundance or distribution of subsistence resources. As noted in the analysis, habitat capability for marten and wolf is already below that required to support the average documented level of harvest. Additional habitat degradation effects associated with this project would be minimal. Cumulative effects in this regard would also be minimal, with a positive finding only for marten and wolf, due primarily to the effects of current trapping pressure by non-rural residents primarily from Ketchikan and the effects of the prior harvests.

Those project alternatives that propose road construction do have a significant possibility of producing a significant restriction on subsistence uses due to competitive effects directly related to the cumulative effects of this and other nearby projects for marten and wolf. These effects would also be more long term than immediate, since they are related to increased access and the future (and presently unknown) behavior of non-rural trappers. These effects could also potentially be mitigated by access (road) management measures and/or the restriction of non-rural hunters and trappers by the Federal Subsistence Board.

None of the project alternatives would have a significant possibility of having a significant restriction on subsistence resources, besides marten and wolf, in relation to access to these resources. Cumulative effects findings are also negative in this regard.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table SUB-18

**Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Black Bear for Each Alternative and Community**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Abundance/Distribution						
All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Access All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
All Other Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No

Note: "No" indicates an insignificant possibility of a substantial effect.

"Yes" indicates a significant possibility of a substantial effect.

Table SUB-19

**Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Marten, River Otter, and Wolf for Each Alternative and Community**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Abundance/Distribution						
All Communities*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Access All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Competition						
All Communities**	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

\* Habitat Capability is below that required to sustain the average documented level of harvest of marten and wolf even for the no-action alternative.

\*\* Could be increased competition in the future based on improved access to the area as a result of the Hydaburg/Sulzer Portage road being constructed on Hydaburg Native Corporation lands.

Note: "No" indicates an insignificant possibility of a substantial effect.

"Yes" indicates a significant possibility of a substantial effect.



Table SUB-20

**Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Salmon for Each Alternative and Community**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Abundance/Distribution						
All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Access All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Competition All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No

Note: "No" indicates an insignificant possibility of a substantial effect.  
 "Yes" indicates a significant possibility of a substantial effect.

Table SUB-21

**Significant Possibility of a Significant Restriction of Subsistence Use of Other Resources for Each Alternative and Community**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Abundance/Distribution						
All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Access All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No
Competition All Communities	No	No	No	No	No	No

Note: "No" indicates an insignificant possibility of a substantial effect.  
 "Yes" indicates a significant possibility of a substantial effect.

## EIS Conclusions

Section 810(a)(3) of ANILCA (P.L. 96-487, 1980) requires that when a significant restriction may occur, determinations must be made in regard to whether:

- such a significant restriction of subsistence uses is necessary, consistent with sound management principles for the utilization of public lands;
- the proposed activity will involve the minimum amount of public lands necessary to accomplish the purposes of such use, occupancy, or other disposition; and
- reasonable steps will be taken to minimize adverse impacts upon subsistence uses and resources resulting from such actions.

The following section outlines the other subsistence conclusions.

### **Necessary and Consistent with Sound Management of Public Lands**

The alternatives have been examined to determine whether they are necessary and consistent with sound management of public lands. In this regard, the National Forest Management Act of 1976, ANILCA, the Alaska Regional Guide, the TLMP, the TLMP 1985-86 Amendments,

# 3 Environment and Effects

the 1997 TLMP Final EIS, the Alaska State Forest Practices Act, and the Alaska Coastal Zone Management Program have been considered.

The ANILCA emphasized the maintenance of subsistence resources and life-styles. However, the Act also required the Forest Service to manage the forest for multiple use. The alternatives presented here encompass four different approaches that would produce the resources that would best meet the purpose and need of this project. All of the action alternatives involve some potential to affect subsistence uses. There is no alternative that would avoid a significant possibility of subsistence restrictions somewhere in the National Forest.

## **Amount of Public Land Necessary to Accomplish the Purpose of the Proposed Action**

Much of the Tongass National Forest is used for deer hunting by one or more rural communities for subsistence purposes. The areas of most subsistence use are the areas adjacent to beaches or other water access, and areas in proximity to communities. Within the Project Area, the extent and location of the subsistence use areas precludes complete avoidance. Areas other than subsistence use areas that could be used for the project may be limited by other resource concerns such as soil and water protection, high value wildlife habitat, economics, visual resources, or road design. Effort was taken to protect the highest value subsistence areas. The greatest subsistence effect would be from road construction and the resulting increased access to and competition for subsistence resources.

## **Reasonable Steps to Minimize Adverse Impacts Upon Subsistence Uses and Resources**

Reasonable steps to minimize impacts on subsistence have been incorporated in development of the alternatives and project design criteria. Project design criteria called for locating units and roads outside of important subsistence use areas such as beach fringe, estuary fringe, and riparian areas adjacent to salmon streams, to the extent possible.

## **FEIS Conclusions**

The Record of Decision (ROD) for the Chasina Project will include a final determination about the significant restriction on subsistence use that may result from implementation of the Selected Alternative. In summary, the potential foreseeable effects from the action alternatives in the Project Area do not present a significant possibility of a significant restriction of subsistence uses of deer, black bear, river otter, marine mammals, waterfowl, other finfish, shellfish, and other foods. However, a significant possibility of a significant restriction does exist for marten and wolf for all alternatives including the no-action alternative because of existing competition from non-rural trappers and the effects of past timber harvest.

## **Hearings**

On the basis of findings of this analysis and under the provisions of ANILCA, subsistence hearings were conducted in Saxman and Hydaburg. Letters were sent to the Federal Subsistence Board, Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Regional Fish and Game Advisory Councils, local Fish and Game Advisory Committees, and to the Post Offices in Saxman and Hydaburg. Announcements were made in newspapers and on the radio. Additional mailings and public notices were made to communities outside of the immediate Project Area who use subsistence resources. These notifications were made based upon scoping comments received, TRUCS use data, and public and agency suggestions.

## Cultural Resources

### Key Terms

**Cultural Resources**—all evidence of past human-related activity. This evidence may be historic or prehistoric, architectural or archived in nature. Cultural resources are non-renewable aspects of our national heritage.

**Sensitivity Zone**—defined as ‘high’ or ‘low’ based on the probability that they might contain intact, observable cultural resources.

**SHPO**—Alaska State Historic Preservation Officer

## Affected Environment

### Introduction

Human occupation of the Pacific Northwest Coast spans more than 10,000 years. Information about the earliest people is sparse. It is contained in the oral histories of the Native people of Southeast Alaska, many of which were recorded by ethnographers of the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries (Emmons 1991; Swanton 1905, 1966, 1975). Archeological sites, natural areas that contain the material cultures of the daily lives of historic or prehistoric people, also provide information. Details of the traditional lives of the early people are becoming clearer with more archaeological sites being discovered, and more reliable analogies of Native societies from the 1700s to the present. For the historic period, postdating the 1770s for Prince of Wales Island, we have the observations of explorers, the accounts of Native people, the journals of a variety of individuals, and government and business records. And, although few archaeological sites in Southeast Alaska have been systematically investigated to date, the pace of study is increasing and the understanding of regional prehistory is increasing as well.

### Prehistory

Both Tlingit and Haida oral traditions suggest inland origins and migration to the coast down the Skeena (Tlingit and Haida) and Taku (Tlingit) Rivers at an unspecified time in the past. In both cases the traditions say the groups displaced earlier residents as they moved into their historic territories, the Tlingit expanding northward and the Haida moving to the Queen Charlottes.

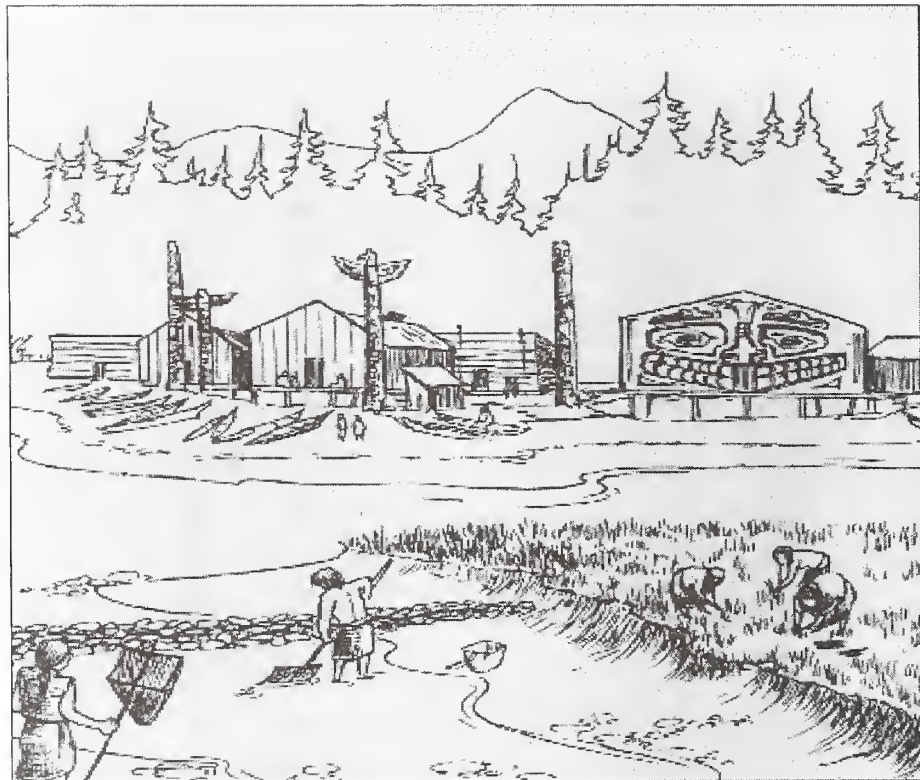
The question of when the human prehistory of Southeast Alaska begins is one that fascinates many scientists. Recent discoveries of fossil bear skeletons on Prince of Wales Island and Dall Island suggest that portions of the coast were free of ice 12,000 years ago or earlier. A good deal of speculation, driven by the spatial and temporal distribution of archaeological sites elsewhere in the western hemisphere, revolves around the theory that people may have occupied the now submerged continental shelf during periods of lower relative sea level, perhaps as early as 17,000 years ago. However, this theory remains unproven. The earliest solid evidence of human presence in Southeast Alaska dates to approximately 10,000 years before present (BP). Drawing on the few systematic excavations to date, several archaeologists have constructed cultural chronologies for the region (Davis 1990, Moss n.d., Fladmark 1982). The following discussion is derived from Davis' chronology and focuses on tool technology.

### 3 Environment and Effects

The Paleomarine Tradition (10,000 to 6,500 years BP) is the earliest recognized cultural tradition (Table CUL-1). Sites or components of sites assigned to this tradition contain micro blades, wedge-shaped micro blade cores, and few if any bifacially flaked stone tools. Animal remains at these sites include fish bone and marine shell, indicating a coastal, marine subsistence life-style (Davis 1990). The Thorne River site is the only site on Prince of Wales Island assigned to the Paleomarine Tradition (Holmes 1989). Two additional Paleomarine sites are located on Heceta Island, off the west coast of Prince of Wales Island (Ackerman et al. 1985).

As the name implies, the Transitional Stage (6,500 to 5,000 years BP) represents a transition between the technology of the Paleomarine Tradition and that of the later Developmental Northwest Coast Tradition. Faunal and floral remains and the inland location of some sites suggest adaptation to a changing environment (Davis 1990).

The Developmental Northwest Coast Tradition (5,000 years BP to contact) contains multiple phases and is distinguished from the Transitional Stage by the presence of shell midden deposits, ground stone and bone technology, human burials, larger settlements (winter villages), specialized subsistence camps, fortifications, and native metal (Davis 1990). The Coffman Cove and Sarkar Cove sites and Yatuk Creek Rockshelter, all north of the project area in the central portion of Prince of Wales Island, and Rosie's Rockshelter on Heceta Island, contain components representing this tradition (Ackerman et al. 1985; Ardnt et al. 1987; Clark 1979a and 1979b, Campbell 1984b). The beginning of this tradition possibly corresponds to the entry of the contemporary Native population, known as the Tlingit, into the area.





**Table CUL-1**  
**Cultural Chronology**

<b>Tradition</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Cultural Material</b>	<b>Selected Sites</b>
American Historic	A.D. 1867	Modern tools, structures, and social systems. Gold discovered in SE Alaska in 1869.	Numerous
Russian Historic	A.D. 1798	Historic fur trade goods; metal tools, glass, ceramics, beads. Trade as early as 1759.	Numerous
Developmental NW Coast Late Phase	1000-1750 B.P.	Native copper, stone vessels, increased use of obsidian, rise of fortified sites and villages.	Starrigavan, Russian Cove, Old Town, Yatuk Creek Rockshelter
Developmental NW Coast Middle phase	3000-1000 B.P.	Unilaterally barbed points, nephrite, ground burins, toggling harpoons, small end blades.	Hidden Falls, Sarkar Entrance, Young Bay, Yatuk Creek Rockshelter, Portage Arm
Developmental NW Coast Early Phase	5000-4000 B.P.	Ground stone, bone, woodworking tools.	Hidden Falls, Rosie's Rockshelter, Coffman Cove, Traders Island
Transitional State	6500-5000 B.P.	Ground stone, bifacial flaked stone	Lake Eva, Chuck Lake, Irish Creek
Paleomarine	10,000-6500 B.P.	Unifacial flaked stone, cores, blades, fish bones, marine shell.	Hidden Falls, Chuck Lake, Thorne River, Ground Hog Bay

SOURCE: Davis 1990.

Although the exact dates of occupation are not known, the Tlingit were well established in Southeast Alaska by the time of first Russian contact. The settlement and subsistence patterns of the Tlingit demonstrate a long-term adaptation to their environment. The Haida, who occupied the northern part of the Chasina Project Area at the time of European contact, are relative newcomers to the area. They moved north from the Queen Charlottes in the early seventeenth century displacing the Taant'akwaan of the southern Tlingit on the southern third of Prince of Wales Island.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Ethnohistory

Prince of Wales Island was formerly divided among several subgroups of Tlingits: the Stikine (Shtax'heen Kwaan) included the northeast coast in their territory; the Henya (Heinyaa Kwaan) inhabited the northern half of the western part of the island; the Klawock (Lawaak Kwaan), who may also have been part of the Henya, resided along the west-central coast; and the Tongass (Taant'akwaan) held the southern third of the island before the Kaigani Haida displaced them, in the early eighteenth century, to a small section along the coastline of southern Southeast Alaska and the islands to the east (Ardnt et al. 1987). Though no villages are known within the Chasina Project Area, both the Kaigani Haida and the Taant'akwaan used the area at the time of first European contact. The Taant'akwaan claimed Johnson Cove and Moira Sound while the Kaigani Haida claimed the area to the north as far as the Kasaan Peninsula.

## History

The Historic Period (Stone and Stone 1980) began with the explorations of Europeans to discover new lands and seek valuable furs. The discoveries of gold at Windham Bay in 1869 and later finds of large deposits of gold ore in Juneau by 1880 brought dramatic change to the previous maritime way of life of the Tlingit and Haida. Use of non-renewable extractive resources over the last century considerably affected aboriginal life-styles, especially in the northern panhandle where large gold mining operations operated. An Alaska Territory tax levied in 1937 on the gross production of precious metals discouraged further investment in state mining. This hiatus extended through World War II. There have been more recent attempts to start large scale mining with the advent of cyanide leach techniques, such as the A-J and Kennsington ventures.

Timber harvesting and fishing, renewable extractive resource activities, have also dramatically changed the life ways of aboriginal peoples. However, these ventures that began in the 1880s have become ongoing and integral parts of the lives of 20th century Natives in Southeast Alaska.

## Historic Land Use in the Chasina Project Area

### South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound

There were a number of mines established in the Cholmondeley area during the first decade of the 20th century. Mines on the west side of South Arm which fall within the project area are Friendship, Ruby Tuesday (originally the Ketchikan Copper Company prospect), Moonshine, and Hope-Cholmondeley. These mines were excavated and ore was produced during the early 1900s. Lead, zinc, copper, and silver are found in deposits associated with these mines (Maas et al. 1995).

The Ruby Tuesday Prospect was called the Ketchikan Copper Company prospect before the 1900s. By 1901 a 91 meter adit had been excavated. In 1947 the name was changed to Polymetal Lode and then changed again in 1978-1979 to Ruby Tuesday. In 1988, LAC Minerals USA, Inc. and Noranda Inc. owned the mine, adding the Kennecott Copper Company as a partner in 1993. Zinc, lead, and copper were being mined from the Ruby Tuesday deposits.

Claims to the Moonshine mine were staked in 1905 and 1906 at 55° 11' North, 132° 23' West. A 27 meter shaft and a 61 meter hand-drilled adit were among the first excavations at the site (Roppel 1991, Maas et al. 1995). Millnor Roberts, a former professor at the University of Washington, became the engineer for the mine in 1907 and established a camp on the beach in South Arm and constructed a road to the mine. The construction of the road employed 37 men, including a blacksmith with a forge. Facilities at the mine included crew quarters which burned down in September 1907, skids, and a dumping area (Roppel 1991). "Miners drilled by hand, and a hand windlass and bucket raised the ore and waste from the shaft. The only convenience in the drift resulted from installation of rails and a Truax ore car" (Roppel 1991:103).

In 1921, a 1.5 mile gas operated, single-wire, aerial tram was run from the Moonshine camp to the beach (Roppel 1991, Maas et al. 1995). The frames from a tram-car and a cable

extending up-hill from the beach were recorded at CRG-449 in 1995. A cave-in created a glory hole 135 x 50 feet at Moonshine mine which eventually led to the mine's closure in 1924. An engineer visiting in 1942 stated that the road from the beach was grown over and the bridges were rotten (Roppel 1991). Claims were restaked in 1948, although the tunnel and the shaft were in very poor condition. Photographs of the operation at Moonshine mine in 1907 are available at the University of Washington archives.

The Hope-Cholmondeley Prospect is 0.6 kilometers southeast of the Moonshine mine (Maas et al. 1995). Zinc, lead, and silver have been found in deposits at the mine. Work at this mine took place in the early 1900s when a six meter shaft, eight meter adit, and 10 meter trench and open cuts were excavated. Maas et al. (1995:107) reported that the last assessment work took place in 1915. The Hope-Cholmondeley prospect lies just within the Chasina Project Area.

The largest cannery within the project area was at Cholmondeley, west of South Arm. It began as a saltery in the 1890s, was rebuilt in 1904, and then sold in 1909. C.A. Burkhardt and Company with Alaska Pacific Fisheries built a cannery over the saltery and began production in 1911 (Roppel personal communication). The Cholmondeley cannery closed in 1930 and was not re-opened (Orth 1971). The U.S. Coast Pilot (1988) reported that there was a post office, general store, radio station, and wharf as well as an oil wharf and float. Today, the bay is privately owned and three cabins and associated out-buildings are built over the site of the cannery. Lines of pilings, a barge, and a large concrete structure lie within the intertidal zone.

South Arm was also an important fishing location. People from Kasaan would use South Arm when fishing commercially for dog or chum salmon (Goldschmidt and Haas 1946). There was also a village at the head of South Arm where fish were usually dried and smoked during the summer and fall.

## **Kitkun Bay**

Croesus and San Juan mines are at the southeast end of Kitkun Bay. Croesus is a silver mine which consists of three adits, measuring 98 meters, 6 meters, and 40 meters, as well as a caved in shaft. San Juan, another silver mine, includes a 59 meter adit, a shaft, and a caved in trench (Maas et al. 1995).

Kitkun Bay was also used for commercial fishing and trapping (Goldschmidt and Haas 1946). A man named Kitkun lived in this area and had a trapping cabin at the mouth of the bay near the rapids. He is also said to be responsible for finding deposits on the shore of Kitkun Bay, which led to the establishment of many of the mines discussed earlier.

## **Lancaster Cove**

Kael Pit, Gladstone, Equator, Saco and CRG-451 are all in the Lancaster Cove Area. Kael-7 Mile Trend consists of several pits and trenches and produces silver, gold, and copper. This mine was discovered in 1988 by a geologist working for Sealaska and was leased in 1990 to American Copper and Nickle Company (Maas et al. 1995). Gladstone also produced silver and copper and consists of an 11 meter adit. Saco and the neighboring Equator adits (12 meters and 19 meters respectively) were primarily copper producing mines. CRG-451 was a turn of the century mine with a 17.5 meter L-shaped adit. It is southeast of the Equator and Saco mines which have similar length adits.

## **Clarence Strait**

The only mine recorded on the eastern shore of the project area is the Windy Cove prospect west of Windy Point. There is a nine meter adit, pits, and cuts producing silver and copper (Maas et al. 1995). This mine is on or near Sealaska land. Because it is on or near Sealaska land and not directly affected by any harvest units, it was not visited by U.S. Forest Service archaeologists.



# 3 Environment and Effects

In the vicinity of Chasina Point there is reported to be a Haida village (Goldschmidt and Haas 1946; Orth 1971). Russian charts record a settlement at this location in the mid-1850's (Orth 1971). This village was apparently established during the movement of the Haida northward just before Old Kasaan was settled (Roppel, personal communication). At the turn of the century it was used by Kitkun and his family (Goldschmidt and Haas 1946). His family had a garden, dried and smoked fish, and collected seaweed here. Later the area was used for commercial fishing and trapping.

The whole coast from Chasina Point to Port Johnson was used for commercial fishing and occasional camps were set up in protected bays (Goldschmidt and Haas 1946). This area is still a popular location for commercial fishing, creating labyrinths of nets along the coastline in the summer and fall.

## Port Johnson and Paul Lake Area

This is the most active mining location within the project area, and was the focus of much of the mining history on Prince of Wales Island. In 1899, gold was found at the Valparaiso and Golden Fleece Mines. These are both owned by Sealaska now, as are Amazon and Moonshine (not to be confused with Moonshine Mine on South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound; Maas et al. 1995). Dolomi is a former mining camp, located at the head of Dolomi Bay, that was established in the 1890s. It had a post office which was open from 1906-1926 (AHRs Card 1986). Dolomi was a Haida summer village before the mining era (Goldschmidt and Haas 1946) and was used by Tlingit and Haida for commercial fishing historically.

## North Arm Moira Sound

The old town site of Baldwin is within the project area and is located on the north shore of the North Arm of Moira Sound in the vicinity of Nowiskay Cove. This was a marble quarry claimed in November 1901. In 1905 a wharf and buildings were constructed and an 80-horsepower boiler, engines, lathes, channelers, a Burleigh steamer, and drills were brought onto the site. The wharf was 60 x 60 feet with a tramway to the quarry 500 feet above sea level, where a 500 foot tunnel was mined into the hillside. By October 1905, a post office was established. Work was stopped the following year and in 1907 the equipment was shipped out and the post office closed (Roppel 1991).

In 1980, J. Jones and V. Slajer (1980) inspected the route that was proposed for the road system along the shore from the area north of Lancaster Cove down to Kitkun Bay. This is the 4680 road and associated spurs. They also surveyed the area for the log dump south of Lancaster Cove. The crew members walked 35 meters on each side of the survey center line. Test pits were excavated in areas of potentially high sensitivity, such as creeks. No cultural resources other than spring-board stumps and a culturally modified tree were found during this survey.

Campbell (1984a) surveyed the coastal fringe along the eastern shore of Kitkun Bay and in the bays north of Kitkun Bay to Lancaster Cove and south of Chasina Point. The coastline was surveyed by one person from the shoreline to 500 - 870 meters inland. Campbell states that there were frequent soil probes and the rootwads of trees were checked for evidence of buried cultural deposits.

A survey for the Kootznoowoo Native Corporation Land exchange was conducted in the same general area in 1993 by Forest Service archaeologists Ralph Lively and Allison Young (1993). The archaeologists walked in 15 meter wide transects and subsurface tests with soil probes were conducted every 25 meters.

Because of the intensive previous survey activity which took place in the Lancaster Cove area, surveys in 1995 concentrated in South Arm and the Clarence Strait coast of the Chasina Timber Sale Area. It appears that Port Johnson and North Arm have not been formally

## Previous Cultural Resource Surveys in the Chasina Project Area



## Chasina Cultural Resource Inventory

surveyed, although there has been the occasional visit by archaeologists (Fifield, personal communication).

The cultural resource study for the Chasina Project Area was designed to meet Federal and State resource management legislation as summarized in regulations prepared by the President's Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (36 CFR, Part 800). These regulations encompass the requirements of Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, and FSM 2300, among other laws and regulations. The inventory plan, consistent with the programmatic memorandum of agreement between the Alaska Region of the Forest Service and the Alaska State Historic Preservation Officer, includes intensive pedestrian survey of all areas of direct effects within high sensitivity areas for cultural resources and a judgmental sample of high sensitivity areas in areas of indirect effects. High sensitivity areas are all areas between mean low water and 100 feet in elevation. The high sensitivity areas also include mineralized areas; river and lake systems that provide passage to larger land masses; streams and lakes with anadromous fish runs; fossil marine, river, and lake terrace systems; karst landforms; areas associated with traditional cultural myths and legends; and raw material sources such as cedar stands and obsidian deposits. Everything not defined as high sensitivity is considered low sensitivity. Additionally, a small sample of unit and road locations in low sensitivity areas is surveyed. Survey methods include a field check of high sensitivity areas by boat to verify sensitivity determinations. Survey is conducted on foot by two or more archaeologists walking parallel transects. Subsurface data is collected using soil probes, test pits, and examination of stream and shoreline cutbanks and root wads.

Survey in 1995 resulted in inventory of sites in the northern portion of the project area and along Clarence Strait. Additional surveys were also conducted in 1996, focusing on Johnson Cove, North Arm Moira Sound, and proposed harvest units in high sensitivity areas. The results of that work have been incorporated into this Final EIS. A small sample of proposed harvest units in low sensitivity areas was surveyed to test the validity of the sensitivity model.

The objectives of this study include:

- Location and evaluation of previously recorded cultural resource sites as well as recording and documentation of sites in areas not previously surveyed.
- Evaluation of the significance of located cultural resource sites in terms of the National Register of Historic Sites criteria.
- Determination of potential effects for each project alternative on the significant sites and comparison of the alternatives.
- Recommendation of measures to mitigate potential adverse effects on significant resources and a discussion of the possible effectiveness of the measures.

## Project Area Cultural Resources

The project inventory identified a total of 16 cultural resource properties within the project area. In addition, 1995 survey identified locations of several mines which may have historic components, and which deserve further investigation. Ten of the properties were recorded prior to the 1995 field season. These sites were revisited and new observations made, site forms updated, and significance assessed. It should be noted that determinations of eligibility for the National Register of Historic Places are not made in this document. Two additional cultural resource properties were recorded in 1996. Completion of the Section 106 process of the National Historic Preservation Act including the presentation of eligibility determinations will be reserved until the complete assemblage of sites is known.

In general, the 16 sites recorded fall into three categories: historic, villages, and shell middens. Table CUL-2 lists these 16 sites. Ten sites represent "historic" activities in the project area

### 3 Environment and Effects

within the last century. These include a cannery, several mining sites (camps, diggings, and a tram), logging camps, and work areas. Two sites are labeled “villages” and appear to be Haida settlements (more likely seasonal) of the mid-to-late 19th century. Two rockshelter sites were found, both containing cultural deposits. KET-447, in particular, holds a lot of potential for understanding a facet of the seasonal life-style of the last three millennia. Radiocarbon samples from that site returned dates spanning the last 2,800 years. The second rockshelter (CRG-382) is located adjacent to a stone fish trap and was dated to 730 years before present. The last two sites are noted as “shell middens” and probably represent short-term occupations.

Table CUL-2  
**Known Cultural Resource Properties Within the Chasina Project Area**

Property Number			
Field #	AHRS #	Site Type	Cultural Affiliation
Chasina-1995-01	CRG-448	collapsed structure	Historic
Chasina-1995-02	CRG-449	tramway	Historic
Chasina-1995-03	CRG-450	logging camp/shipwreck	Historic
Chasina-1995-05	CRG-451	mine	Historic
Chasina-1995-04	KET-446	logging	Modern/Historic
Chasina-1995-06	KET-447	rockshelter	Aboriginal
	CRG-007	cannery	Historic
	CRG-008	village	Aboriginal
	CRG-013	quarry/town	Historic
	CRG-022	village	Aboriginal
	CRG-341	cabin/log cribbing	Modern/Historic
	CRG-382	fish trap/rockshelter	Aboriginal
	CRG-393	shell midden	Aboriginal
	CRG-394	cabin	Historic
	CRG-395	pilings	Historic
	CRG-396	shell midden	Aboriginal
Chasina-1996-01		check dam complex	Historic
Chasina-1996-02		mining town (Baldwin)	Historic

## Effects of the Alternatives

### Introduction

Documentation of cultural resources, and preservation and protection of National Register of Historic Places eligible properties, are Forest Service objectives in the current project. Avoidance and preservation in place is the preferred means of treating significant historic properties. When avoidance and preservation are not viable management options, measures are implemented to recover data as a way of mitigating effects to these properties.

### Direct and Indirect Effects

Direct impacts to cultural resources may result from such activities as road building, logging, or construction of log transfer facilities. While natural processes such as erosion and redeposition can also adversely affect cultural resources, such processes can be accelerated as a result of logging related activities. Indirect impacts to resources, such as increased access to the area or change in stream flow or sediment loads, may result from logging or road building. Additionally, increased access to an area containing significant cultural resources due to trail development can result in direct and indirect effects and will be addressed through additional compliance survey.

Intensive cultural resource inventory of areas that have high probability of containing cultural resources is an important means of protecting these resources. Surveys in 1995 focused on high sensitivity areas in the project area. Helicopter reconnaissance was used to identify these areas. Boat survey of the shoreline was conducted on approximately 60 miles of coastline. Sixteen miles of coastline was surveyed on foot. Survey in 1996 will complete coverage of a sample of the coastal high sensitivity zone, identified inland pockets of high sensitivity, and a small sample of areas of direct impact in the low sensitivity zone.

#### Effects on Known Significant Cultural Resources

The following statements summarize presumed effects on known significant cultural resources from logging and road construction being considered for the various alternatives.

##### Alternative 1

No action will result in no effect to cultural resources.

##### Alternative 2

There are no known direct or indirect impacts. Indirect impacts are possible in Johnson Cove. Indirect impacts result from increased visitation which can lead to destruction of significant cultural resources either inadvertently, such as through compaction and erosion, or intentionally, by vandalism and looting. Intentional vandalism may include defacing ancient rock art, application of modern graffiti to above ground historic structures, and intentional damage to or destruction of other cultural features. The difference between this type of vandalism and others is that the damage is generally irreversible. Valuable scientific information and pieces of our national heritage are lost forever. Site looting might include removal of items for personal and/or financial gain. Studies suggest that looting most often occurs in isolated areas, such as in Wilderness, where law enforcement presence is minimal and the likelihood of witnesses and discovery is low (Christensen et al. 1992). The 1996 survey results are needed for complete assessment.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Alternative 3

There is a potential for indirect effects in Unit 679-409 and indirect effects in Johnson Cove (see above).

## Alternative 4

There are potential indirect effects at the south end of South Arm Cholmondeley Sound, in Johnson Cove, and in North Arm Moira Sound.

## Alternative 5

There may be indirect effects in Unit 679-409 in addition to the potential indirect effects in Johnson Cove and North Arm Moira Sound, mentioned above.

## Alternative 6

All of the above apply to this alternative.

The preferred management approach for cultural resource properties by the Forest Service and other agencies is avoidance. Logging operators should be urged to avoid moving logs near shore areas to avoid additional impacts to shoreline properties. In addition, operators should be asked to discourage any increase in human activity in the coastal area. To address avoidance and preservation concerns, Forest Service personnel should monitor the area during logging activities. If disturbance occurs or is imminent, the Forest Archaeologist will develop a plan to protect properties or mitigate the effects of any impacts.

In the unlikely event that avoidance is not feasible or practicable during project implementation, mitigation of impacts to the properties through data recovery plans will be based on the qualities that make the properties eligible for the National Register of Historic Places.

In cases where development is planned in areas of high cultural resource sensitivity or in the vicinity of known cultural resource sites, the Forest Service should develop and implement a plan for monitoring known, significant resources and surveying for previously unknown properties. If the monitoring program documents effects to properties, then measures should be developed to mitigate those effects. And, if new properties are exposed, they should be recorded and evaluated for National Register of Historic Places eligibility.

## Cumulative Effects

Impacts from natural decay, landscape changes, private developments, and timber management activities collectively result in the loss of nonrenewable cultural resources in Southeast Alaska. Development activities of all kinds pose particular threats to cultural resources because such activities tend to be located in the same places that cultural resources are found, such as sheltered coastal settings.

It is impossible to determine the exact nature of resources that may have been previously disturbed in the Chasina Project Area. Intensive cultural resource investigations and mitigation measures have been implemented only since the 1980s. The implementation of updated research and survey designs, based upon the results of previous work and current methods and techniques, combined with various mitigation measures, will preserve significant properties and provide data that will guide future research and management activities. In addition, current management approaches for beach fringe/estuary and stream/lake protection should benefit cultural resources through decreased activity in high sensitivity areas and reduced indirect effects such as sedimentation of resources.



## Recreation, Wilderness, Wild and Scenic Rivers, and Roadless Areas

### Key Terms

**Developed recreation**—that type of recreation that occurs where modifications (improvements) enhance recreation opportunities and accommodate intensive recreation activities in a defined area.

**Dispersed recreation**—that type of recreation use that requires few, if any, improvements and may occur over a wide area. This type of recreation involves activities related to roads, trails, and undeveloped waterways and beaches. The activities do not necessarily take place on or adjacent to a road, trail, or waterway, only in conjunction with it. Activities are often day-use oriented and include hunting, fishing, boating, off-road vehicle use, and hiking, among others.

**Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS)**—a system for planning and managing recreation resources that categorizes recreation opportunities into seven classes. Each class is defined in terms of the degree to which it satisfies certain recreation experience needs based on the extent to which the natural environment has been modified, the type of facilities provided, the degree of outdoor skills needed to enjoy the area, and the relative density of recreation use. ROS settings referred to in this section are defined below; refer to the glossary in Chapter 4, under the term “Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS)” for a complete list of setting definitions.

**Primitive (P)**—an unmodified environment generally greater than 5,000 acres in size and located generally at least 3 miles from all roads and other motorized travel routes. A very low interaction between users (generally less than three group encounters per day) results in a very high probability of experiencing solitude, freedom, closeness to nature, tranquility, self-reliance, challenge, and risk. Evidence of other users is low. Restrictions and controls are not evident after entering the land unit. Motorized use is rare.

**Semi-primitive Non-motorized (SPNM)**—a natural or natural appearing environment generally greater than 2,500 acres in size and generally located at least one half mile but not further than three miles from all roads and other motorized travel routes. Concentrations of users is low (generally less than 10 group encounters per day), but there is often evidence of other users. There is a high probability of experiencing solitude, freedom, closeness of nature, tranquility, self-reliance, challenge, and risk. There is a minimum of subtle on-site controls. No roads are present in the area.

**Roaded Modified (RM)**—Vegetative and landform alterations typically dominate the landscape. There is little on-site control of users except for gated roads. There is moderate evidence of other users on roads (generally less than 20 group encounters per day), and little evidence of others or interactions at campsites. There is opportunity to get away from others but with easy access. Some self-reliance is required in building campsites and use of motorized equipment. A feeling of independence and freedom exists with little challenge and risk. Recreation users will likely encounter timber management activities.

**Recreation place**—a geographic area having one or more physical characteristics attractive to people engaging in outdoor activities. A variety of activities may occur in any recreation place.

## 3 Environment and Effects

**Recreation site**—a specific location where a particular activity is known to occur, or is well suited for an activity to occur in the future. (Sites are designated as existing or potential.) A recreation site is smaller than a recreation place.

**Roadless area**—an area of undeveloped public land within which there are no improved roads maintained for travel by means of motorized vehicles intended for highway use.

**Wild and Scenic River**—Rivers or sections of rivers designated by congressional action under the 1968 Wild and Scenic Rivers Act or by an act of the Legislature of the states through which they flow.

**Wilderness**—Areas designated by Congressional action under the 1964 Wilderness Act or by the Tongass Timber Reform Act and/or the Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act. These are areas of undeveloped Federal land retaining their primeval character and influence. These areas generally do not contain permanent improvements or human habitation, except as permitted by the acts.

### Affected Environment – Recreation

#### Introduction

Recreation use in the Chasina Project Area is predominately dispersed and saltwater-based. Some activity, such as hunting, occurs along the road corridors. Typical activities include boating, fishing, camping, hunting, off-road vehicle use, beach combing, and viewing scenery and wildlife.

There are several identified recreation sites located in the Chasina Project Area. Some of the recreation sites are located on lands now owned and managed by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation or the State of Alaska. Several additional recreation sites were located during a field review of the area.

There are no developed recreation facilities in the project area; the closest recreation developments are Kegan Creek and Kegan Cove cabins, located to the south in Moira Sound.

Timber harvest is evident throughout the project area. There is a small scattering of float houses, predominantly associated with logging camps.

#### Recreation Demand

Several factors influence recreation demand in an area, such as: population dynamics, life-style and interests of the population, and ease of access to recreation.

Statistics from the Alaska Department of Labor (1995) indicate a general trend of population growth in the Prince of Wales area during the past six years. In 1990, the Prince of Wales census subarea listed 4,652 residents; in 1995, the same area listed 5,154 residents. According to the State Demographer, the population statistics do not reflect the transitory population numbers. Thus, actual population is estimated to be higher in this area.

Boating, fishing, hunting, and beach combing are traditionally popular recreation activities on the Tongass National Forest (Analysis of the Management Situation 1990). In addition to these typical activities, viewing scenery, driving for pleasure, camping, and use of the recreation cabins are important activities on Craig Ranger District (USFS Recreation Information Management (RIM) Report 1995).

While the demand for dispersed undeveloped recreation opportunities is likely to continue, there is also an increasing interest in developed recreation. A public survey conducted in 1992 (Holman for USDA Forest Service), indicated a high level of support for developing campgrounds and additional trails on the island. There was also a high level of interest in development of additional information guides and brochures.

In addition to an increasing population, visitation and tourism is increasing on Prince of Wales Island. Travelers arrive by floatplane, boat, and ferry. Independent travelers often arrive by ferry, and bring passenger vehicles or recreation vehicles (RVs). Other independent travelers arrive by private, non-commercial boat (usually during the summer months). Some visitors come to the island on package vacations sponsored by resorts which typically include activities such as guided fishing trips. During summer months, the harbors support many non-commercial, leisure, and fishing vessels. The harbors also support a large, year-round, commercial fleet.

## Recreation Places and Recreation Sites

The recreation planning personnel on the Tongass National Forest use the following two terms to describe the areas where recreation activities occur.

- **recreation place**—is a geographic area having one or more physical characteristics attractive to people engaging in outdoor activities. A variety of activities may occur within any recreation place.
- **recreation site**—is a specific location where a particular activity is known to occur, or is well suited for an activity to occur in the future (the sites are designated as existing or potential). Examples of recreation sites include a campsite, an anchorage, a public use cabin, a vantage point with a good view, the site of a trap line, and known hunting areas. There may be several recreation sites within a recreation place.

## Description of Recreation Sites

Recreation sites recorded in the Ketchikan Area geographic information system (GIS) recreation layer were reviewed during the 1995 field season. Some of the sites are on lands no longer managed by the Forest Service. Sites that are located on lands managed by the State of Alaska will be considered available for public recreation and are included in this analysis. Sites located on private land, including land owned and managed by Native corporations, will not be considered available for public recreation.

In addition to verifying the previously recorded recreation sites, the GIS recreation layer was updated to include recreation sites and uses not previously inventoried. These sites are estimated to be representative of recreation sites and activities in and adjacent to the project area.

Existing and potential recreation sites in the Chasina Project Area are described below and displayed in Figure REC-1.

### Existing Sites

- **51131 Anchorage—Head of Dora Bay (RP 51166)**  
Boating is the primary activity in the area. There is a small parcel of National Forest System land at the head of the bay; the remainder of Dora Bay is owned and managed by Kootznوو Native Corporation. The majority of Dora Bay has had extensive timber harvest.
- **51133 Observation Site—Scenery—East of Babe Islands (RP 51169)**  
Viewing scenery and wildlife, boating, beachcombing, and other general day use activities occur at this site. The site is located on lands managed by the State of Alaska.
- **51134 Observation Site—Scenery—East of Babe Islands (RP 51169)**  
This area is suitable for a dispersed campsite, however no evidence of prior use as such was observed. Boating, beachcombing, wildlife observation, and viewing scenery occur at this site which is located on lands managed by the State of Alaska.



### 3 Environment and Effects

- **51135 Anchorage—South of Lancaster Cove (RP 51168)**  
Activities associated with the site include: viewing scenery, observing wildlife, boating, and hunting small game. The site is located adjacent to National Forest System lands.
- **51185 Observation Site—Scenery—South of Lancaster Cove (RP 51168)**  
Activities in the area include boating, viewing scenery and wildlife, and small game hunting. The site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51302 Anchorage—Lancaster Cove (RP 51168)**  
Boating, viewing wildlife and scenery, and small game hunting occur in the area. There are indications of an old trap line in the area. The site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51300 Dispersed Campsite—North of Lancaster Cove (RP 51250)**  
Beachcombing and dispersed camping are the primary activities for the area. The site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51136 Anchorage—French Harbor (RP 51170)**  
Boating, beachcombing and associated day use activities occur in the area. The site is located adjacent to National Forest System lands.
- **51137 Observation Site—Scenery—South of French Harbor (RP 51170)**  
Boating, beachcombing, viewing scenery, picnicking, and other general day use activities occur at this site. The site is adjacent to lands managed by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation. Recreation activities occur below mean high tide or on the water. This site will be retained in the data base.
- **51138 Observation Site—Scenery—South of French Harbor (RP 51170)**  
Boating, beachcombing, viewing scenery, picnicking, and other general day use activities occur at this site. The site is located adjacent to lands managed by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation. Recreation activities occur below mean high tide or on the water. This site will be retained in the data base.
- **51303 Boating Site—Dutch Harbor (RP 51170)**  
Activities associated with the site include: boating, beachcombing, viewing scenery, observing wildlife, dispersed camping, and big game hunting. The site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51139 Anchorage—Port Johnson (RP 51171)**  
Boating and big game hunting are inventoried activities for the area. This site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51140 Dispersed Campsite—Cannery Cove—Immediately outside planning boundary (RP 51172.03)**  
Boating, dispersed camping, viewing scenery and wildlife, beachcombing, and big game hunting are inventoried activities for the area. This site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51141 Anchorage—Northwest of Cannery Cove—Immediately outside planning boundary (RP 51172.03)**  
Boating, dispersed camping, viewing scenery, observing wildlife, beachcombing, and big game hunting are inventoried activities for the area. The site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51142 Observation Site—Scenery—Nowiskay Cove (RP 51172.01)**  
Inventoried activities include: dispersed camping, viewing wildlife and scenery,



beachcombing, big game hunting, and boating. The site may also be used as an anchorage because it has two gravel beaches with best use at low tide. This site is located on National Forest System lands.

- **51143 Anchorage—Aiken Cove—Immediately outside planning boundary (RP 51172.02)**  
Boating, dispersed camping, viewing scenery and wildlife, beachcombing, and big game hunting are inventoried activities for the area. There is an anadromous stream at the head of the cove and steep beaches near the mouth of the cove. The site is located adjacent to National Forest System lands.
- **51144 Observation Site—Scenery—Aiken Cove—Immediately outside planning boundary (RP 51172.02)**  
Boating, dispersed camping, viewing scenery and wildlife, beachcombing, and big game hunting are inventoried activities for the area. The site is located adjacent to National Forest System lands.
- **51301 Dispersed Campsite—East Side of Kitkun Bay (RP 51322)**  
Waterfowl hunting, boating, viewing scenery, and wildlife observation are the primary activities for the area. During the 1995 field season, shrimp pots were observed being set in the bay.
- **51304 Dispersed Campsite—South of Chasina Anchorage (RP 51309)**  
Dispersed camping, beachcombing, small game hunting, viewing scenery, and boating occur in the area. The site has a gravel beach with a campsite in the trees. The site is located on National Forest System lands.
- **51305 Anchorage—Adjacent to Chasina Island (RP 51323)**  
Beachcombing, dispersed camping, and picnicking occur in the area. The campsite is at low tide during calm weather. The anchorage is adjacent to National Forest System lands.
- **51307 Observation Site—Wildlife—Southeast of Chasina Point (RP 51310)**  
Activities at the site include: viewing scenery and wildlife (Dall porpoise are frequently in the area), boating, beachcombing, and small game hunting. The site is located adjacent to National Forest System Lands.
- **51308 Fishing Site—East tip of South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound (RP 51173.01)**  
Stream fishing, dispersed camping, viewing wildlife, and hiking occur in the area. Abandoned cabins are located at the site. The site is located on National Forest System Lands.

## Potential Sites

- **51130 Dispersed Campsite (RP 51166) and 51132 Recreation Shelter (RP 51166)**  
These sites are located on lands now owned and managed by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation. Extensive timber harvest has occurred in the area. The sites will probably not be used as recreation sites because they exist on private property. These sites will be removed from the data base.
- **51145 Dispersed Campsite—Aiken Cove—Immediately outside planning boundary (RP 51172.02)**  
Boating, dispersed camping, viewing scenery and wildlife, beachcombing, and big game hunting are inventoried activities for the area. The site is located on National Forest System lands.

### 3 Environment and Effects

- **51306 Dispersed Campsite—Southwest of Chasina Point (RP 51309)**  
Potential activities at the site include: viewing scenery, boating, dispersed camping, beachcombing, and small game hunting. This site is on an open second-growth stand. The site is located on National Forest System lands.



Figure REC-1  
Existing and Potential Recreation Sites



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

The process used to classify recreation opportunities on National Forest System lands is the Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS). The ROS process is a method used to inventory an area's existing and potential recreation opportunities. This system can be used to evaluate the changes that can occur in a given area as a result of different management prescriptions. The recreation report for this project will be presented using the ROS outline.

The ROS offers a framework for understanding the relationships and interactions among the setting indicators. The setting indicators are used to develop the opportunity spectrum classifications ranging from Primitive (P) to Urban (U), defined in the glossary in Chapter 4.

The ROS classifications currently identified for the Chasina Timber Sale area include Primitive (P), Semi-Primitive Non-Motorized (SPNM), and Roaded Modified (RM).

The Recreation Opportunity Spectrum is formulated by a variety of factors or "setting indicators" including:

1. access
2. remoteness
3. social encounters
4. visitor management
5. facilities and management
6. visitor impacts
7. naturalness

Each of the following setting indicators assists in describing the existing condition.

### Access

Access includes type and mode of travel.

Marine access via private boat is the primary mode of recreation travel to the Chasina Timber Sale area. Some travel occurs in the project area via float plane, helicopter, and commercial boat.

Minimal foot travel is expected to occur in the area. Beach combing and hunting are the primary pedestrian activities. There are no developed trails in the project area, nor are there any known inland recreation destinations or recreation sites on National Forest System Lands.

The road system, developed for timber harvest, is used as a travel corridor for some recreation activities such as hunting and driving off-road vehicles.

The existing modes of access are consistent with the ROS classifications for the area.

### Remoteness

Remoteness refers to the extent to which individuals perceive themselves removed from the sights and sounds of human activity.

Human activity in varying degrees is apparent throughout the project area. Boat traffic, roads, timber harvest, and human structures are the most common and apparent infringements upon remoteness.

- **Boat traffic**—the entire coastline is exposed to motorized boating. Sights and sounds associated with boating are most common along the larger bodies of water such as Clarence Strait, Cholmondeley Sound, and Dora Bay. Clarence Strait is a heavily traveled water route; the Alaska Marine Highway, cruise ships, and a myriad of other



boat traffic travels Clarence Strait daily. Rocky coves and the heads of bays typically receive less boat traffic.

- **Roads**—a small, isolated road network exists from the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound, Divide Head south to the east side of Dora Bay, and from the east side of Kitkun Bay to Lancaster Cove and Port Johnson. The roads and road corridors have a localized impact on remoteness. Because the roads are lightly traveled, traffic noise is negligible except in areas of concentrated activity, such as timber harvest (discussed below).
- **Timber Harvest**—the Chasina Timber Sale area is adjacent to several large land selections made by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation. The Kootznoowoo Native Corporation Lands are heavily harvested and additional harvest activity was underway during the 1995 field season. The sights and sounds associated with timber harvest are most apparent in the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound, on the south shores of Cholmondeley Sound, in Clarence Strait, Port Johnson, and in Dolomite Bay. Helicopters, log trucks, log transfer facilities (LTFs), and other vehicles and facilities are required for timber harvest.
- **Human Structures**—private homes and logging camps are dispersed in the project area; most are located on private land or on shores associated with private land. For example, structures are located in the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound, Dora Bay, and Dolomite Bay.

The existing ROS classifications for the area generally account for the impacts to remoteness. However, the classifications were revised to reflect impacts from adjacent land ownerships.

## Social Encounters

This factor refers to the number and type of recreationists met along travel ways or camped within sight or sound of each other. This setting indicator measures the extent to which an area provides experiences such as solitude or the opportunity for social interaction.

Social encounters are most typical on saltwater or in the tidal zone and are extremely low inland. Social encounters with other recreationists are more probable in the summer months and during the hunting seasons. Commercial traffic on saltwater continues year-round, but is most concentrated in the summer months. The social encounters are typically congruent with the ROS classification of the area.

## Visitor Management

Visitor management includes the degree to which visitors are regulated and controlled (via physical barriers or regulations—such as permits), as well as the level of information and services provided for visitor enjoyment.

General Forest regulations apply in this area. No information or visitor facilities are provided in the project area. The level of visitor management is consistent with the ROS classifications of the area.

## Facilities and Site Management

This indicator refers to the level of site development. There are no developed recreation facilities in the project area; the closest recreation developments are Kegan Creek and Kegan Cove cabins, located to the south in Moira Sound. The levels of facility development and site management are consistent with the ROS classifications of the area.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Visitor Impacts

This factor refers to the impacts of visitor use on the environment, how much change would be allowed, and which actions are appropriate for management.

Maintaining air, water, and noise quality standards due to visitor impacts is important in all ROS classes. Recreation impacts to air, water, or ambient sound qualities are negligible in the project area. Most sites show no sign of human impact. A few dispersed campsites display mild human impacts, such as litter, fire scars, and/or trampled or cut vegetation. The level of visitor impact is consistent with the ROS classifications of the area.

## Naturalness

Naturalness refers to the degree of naturalness of the setting as it relates to visual quality objectives (VQOs).

The setting in the project area, including National Forest, private, and State lands, varies from unaltered to drastically altered (refer to definitions in the Scenic Resources section of this chapter). Heavily altered and drastically altered conditions are considered inconsistent with roaded natural or any of the more primitive ROS classifications.

A large portion of the landscape has had extensive timber harvest activity, including Dora Bay, the east side of the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound, portions of Kitkun Bay, the west side of Lancaster Cove, portions of the peninsula along Clarence Strait, and in the Dolomi Bay area.

The North Arm of Moira Sound has had little recent timber harvest activity. There is evidence of historic timber harvest in the area; tree stumps notched for springboards are visible throughout the arm.

Eudora Mountain is a predominant scenic feature and may be viewed from many locations throughout the North Arm of Moira Sound. The landscape appears predominantly undisturbed.

## Effects of Alternatives – Recreation

### Introduction

Timber management activities can change recreation settings, and thus have an effect on types of recreation activities available, the use of recreation sites, and the quality of the recreation experience. Timber harvest activities generally affect the visual character of recreation settings, and open previously inaccessible non-roaded areas. The character of the landscape and the new accessibility usually results in changes in the ROS settings. This section discusses how the alternatives potentially would affect recreation resources in the project area.

### Effects Common to All Action Alternatives

Generally, if any of the action alternatives (Alternatives 2-6) were implemented, there would be a reduction in Primitive (P) and Semi-Primitive Non-Motorized (SPNM) settings, and a corresponding increase in the Roaded Modified (RM) setting. The increase in acreage of ROS settings theoretically available for roaded recreation would be accompanied by a decrease in acreage of ROS settings that could theoretically support non-roaded recreation. This shift in setting classifications acknowledges a change in the character of the area, as well as types of activities and patterns of use.

While there are differences in intensity and location of activities, there are some general effects applicable to all of the action alternatives. These are described below by ROS setting indicator. See individual alternatives later in this chapter for descriptions of effects specific to each proposal.

## Access

The mode of transportation to the area (floatplanes/boats) is not expected to change if any of the alternatives are implemented. New roads constructed will not connect to the mainline island road system.

The new roads constructed for the proposed timber harvest may create more potential travel routes for some recreation activities, such as hunting. Not all roads, however, will be available for motorized use during or after completion of harvest activities. Non-motorized access is typically permitted on Forest roads, except during active timber operations. Refer to the Roads and Facilities section in this chapter for a complete discussion of road management.

Some patterns of recreation access within the project area may change after the proposed timber sale activity; this will vary by alternative.

## Remoteness

The timber harvest activity would cause temporary increases in industrial boat traffic, industrial use of roads, and placement and use of camps, and other structures. This increased activity would cause a temporary decrease in the remoteness character of the area.

Longer term impacts to remoteness would include additional miles of roads constructed, additional permanent facility locations, additional landings and log transfer facilities (LTFs) constructed, and change in the character of the area as a result of timber harvest.

## Social Encounters and Visitor Management

The proposed timber harvest is not expected to change the level of social encounters in the sale area. Nor is it expected to change the levels or techniques of visitor management in the area. However, some recreation patterns may change after the proposed timber sale.

## Facilities and Site Management

A direct effect to recreation facilities and site management near the project area is not expected due to the proposed timber harvest activities. (The cabins in the Kegan Cove area of Moira Sound are the closest recreation developments to the area.)

## Visitor Impacts

Additional miles of roads proposed for construction in the action alternatives could change the levels and types of visitor impacts in the project area. Additional road corridors, even if closed to mechanized transportation, allow easier access into previously inaccessible areas.

## Naturalness

All action alternatives would effect the natural character of the project area; the location and intensity of the changes would vary with alternative. For a complete analysis, refer to the Scenic Resources section in this chapter.

In addition to the effects common to all action alternatives, effects specific to each alternative must be presented. Refer to Table REC-1 for a summary of the acres in each ROS class in the project area, the percentage of National Forest lands of that ROS class for the project area, and the percent change for each ROS class from the existing condition described in Alternative 1. Figures REC-2 through REC-7 display these changes for each alternative.

## Effects to Recreation by Alternative

### 3 Environment and Effects

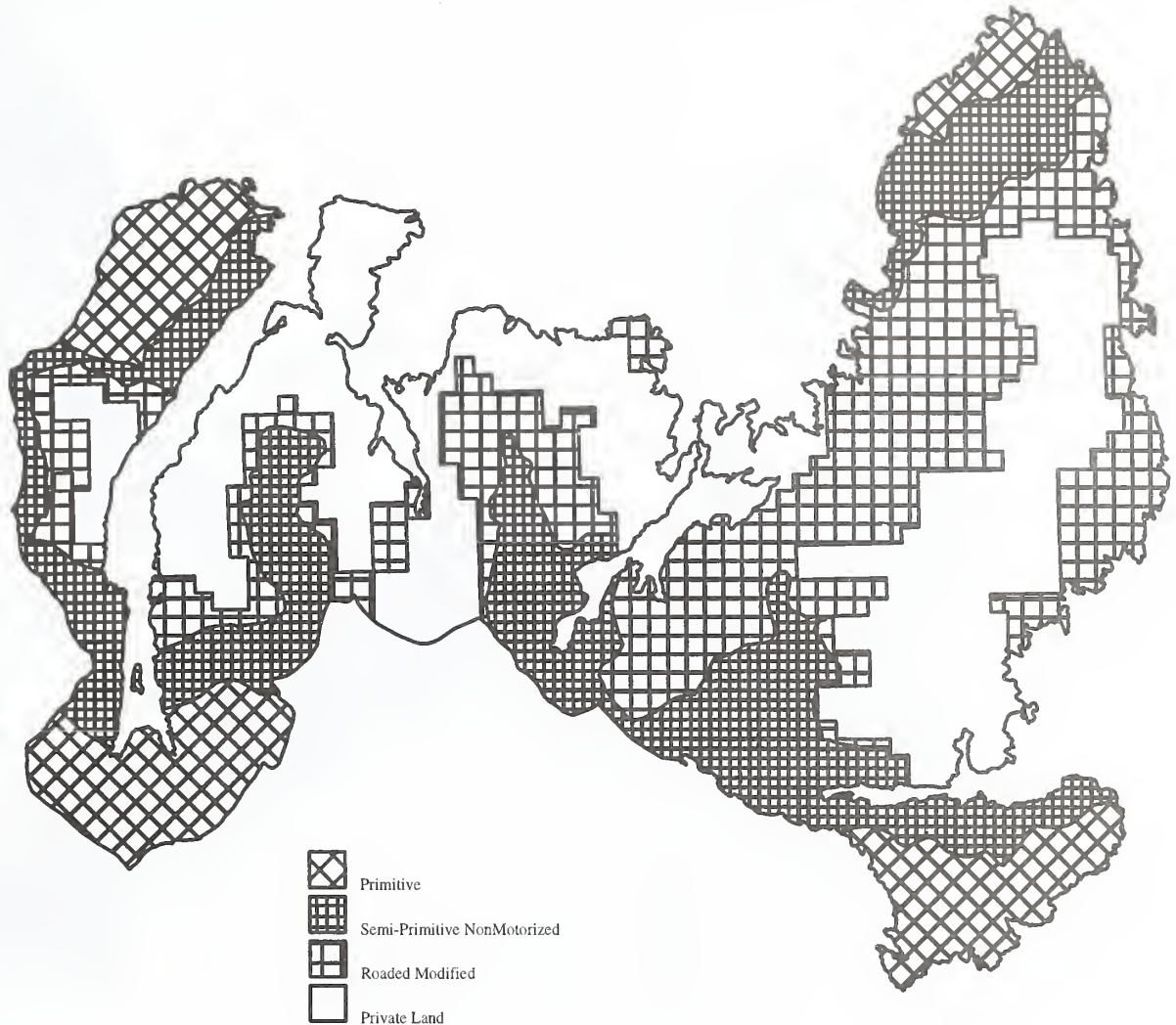
Table REC-1  
ROS Classes by Alternative

	P	SPNM	RM
Alt. 1 - Existing Condition			
Acres in project area	9,800	15,800	18,700
Percent of NF lands in the project Area	22	36	42
Percent change from existing condition	0	0	0
Alt. 2			
Acres in project area	6,900	16,600	20,800
Percent of NF lands in project area	16	37	47
Percent change from existing condition	-6	+1	+5
Alt. 3			
Acres in project area	3,500	11,300	29,500
Percent of NF lands in the project area	8	25	67
Percent change from existing condition	-14	-11	+25
Alt. 4			
Acres in project area	900	15,900	27,500
Percent of NF lands in the project area	2	36	62
Percent change from existing condition	-20	0	+20
Alt. 5			
Acres in project area	3,000	14,700	26,600
Percent of NF lands in the project area	7	33	60
Percent change from existing condition	-15	-3	+18
Alt. 6			
Acres in project area	0	8,900	35,400
Percent of NF lands in the project area	0	20	80
Percent change from existing condition	-22	-16	+38

SOURCE: USDA-Forest Service, Ketchikan Area GIS Data Base 1996.



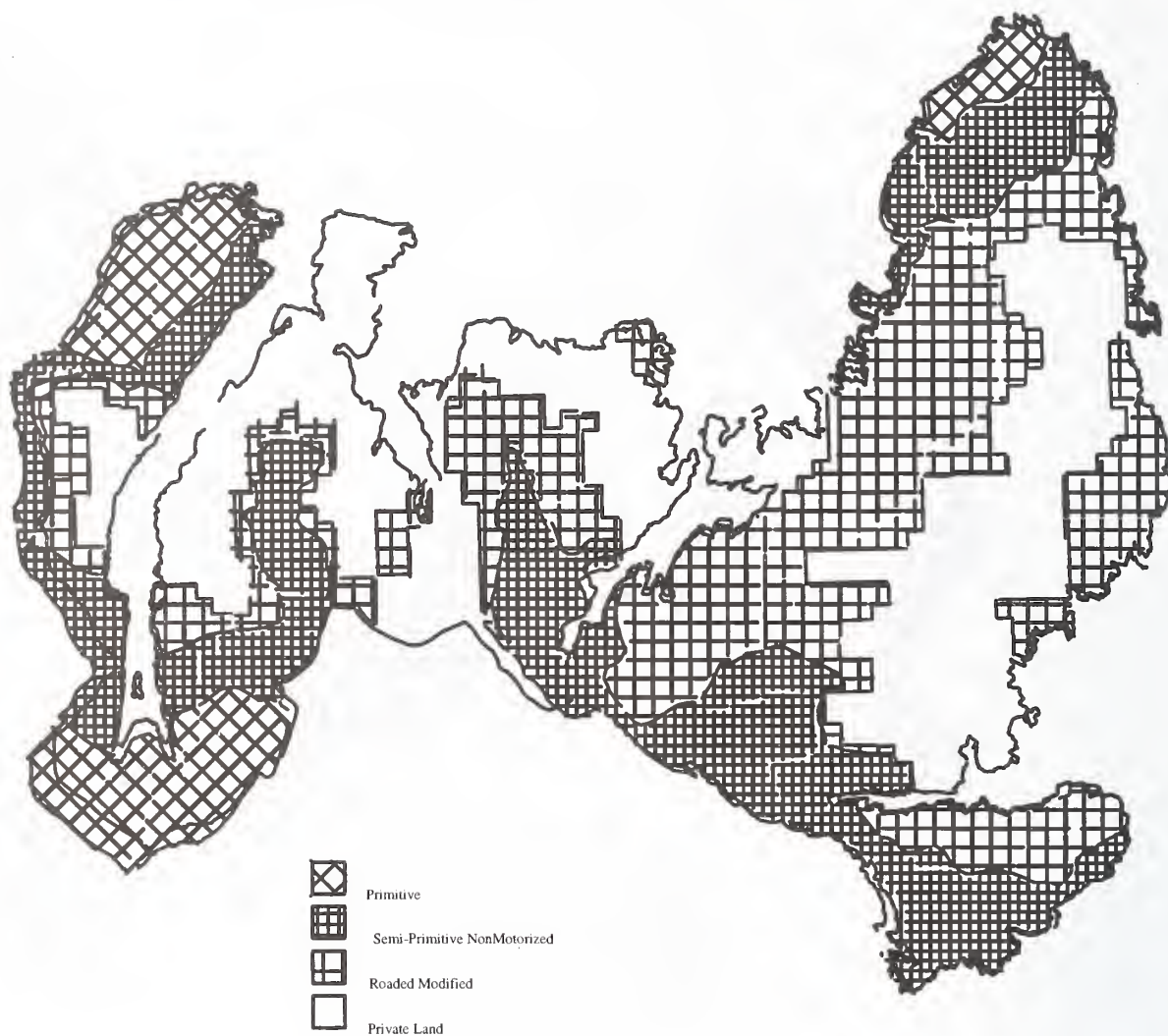
Figure REC-2  
Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 1



Created by Sally Merfeld on March 11, 1998

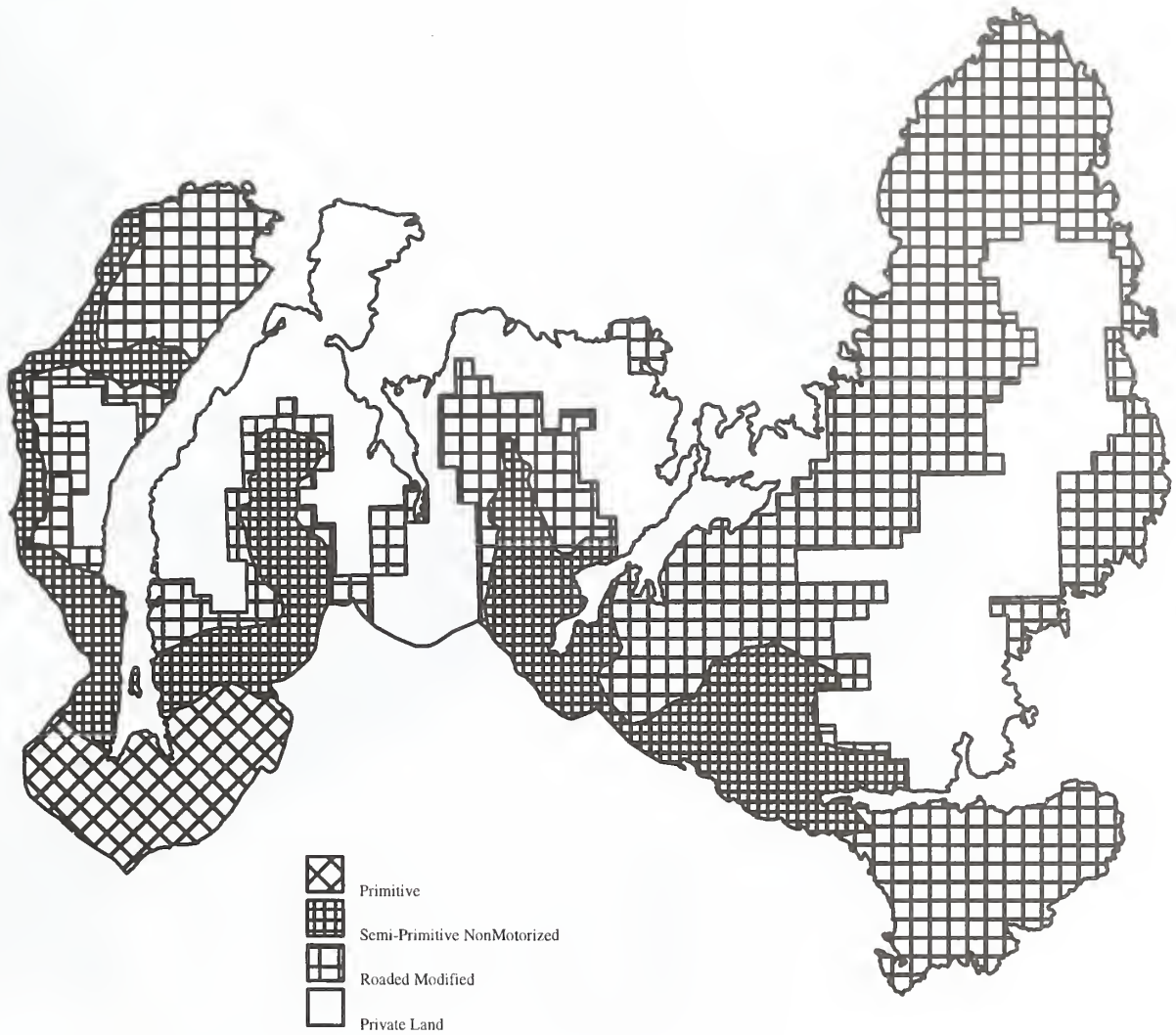
### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure REC-3  
Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 2



Created by Tally Northfield on March 11, 1993

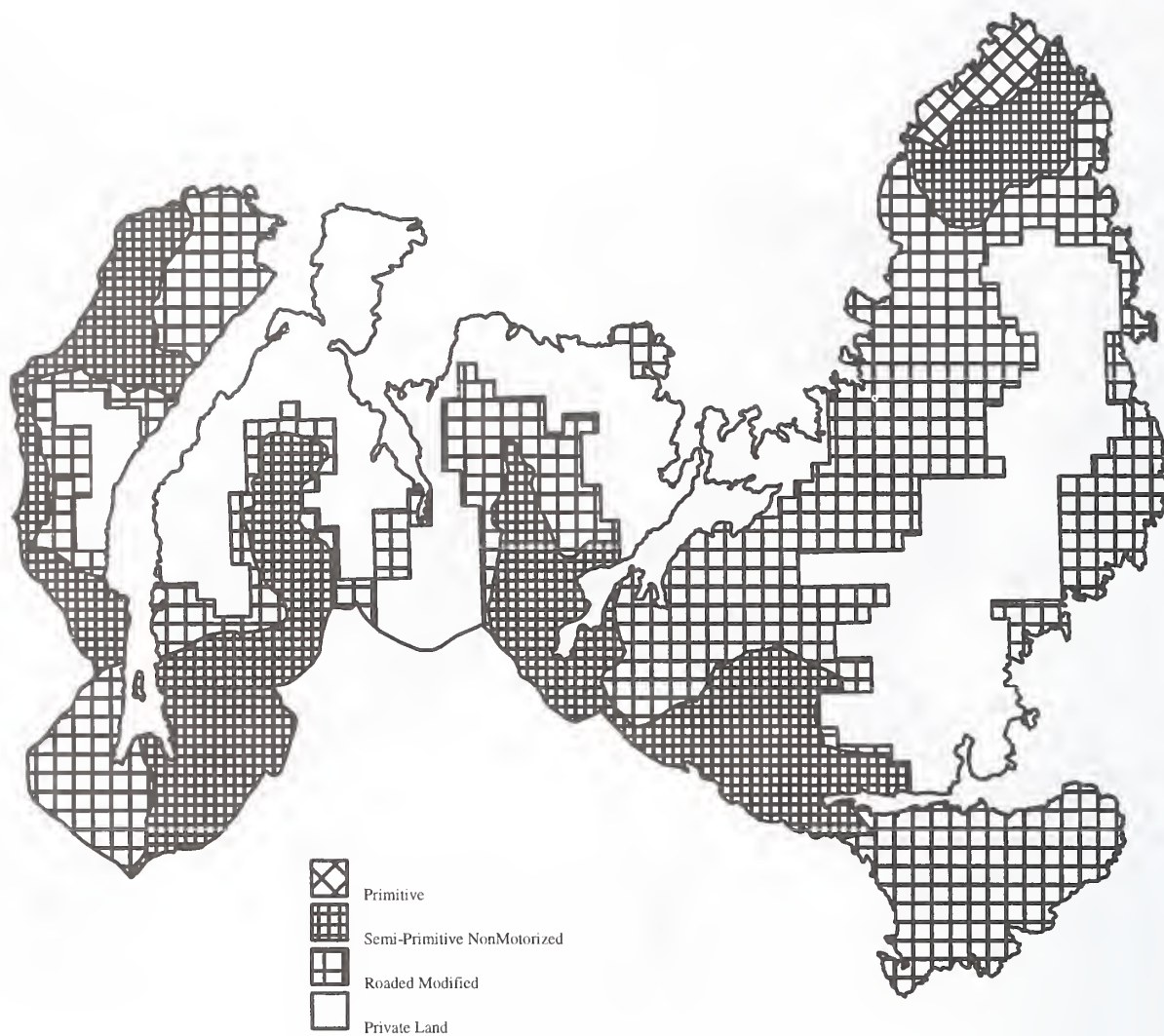
Figure REC-4  
Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 3



Created by Sally Morford on March 11, 1998

### 3 Environment and Effects

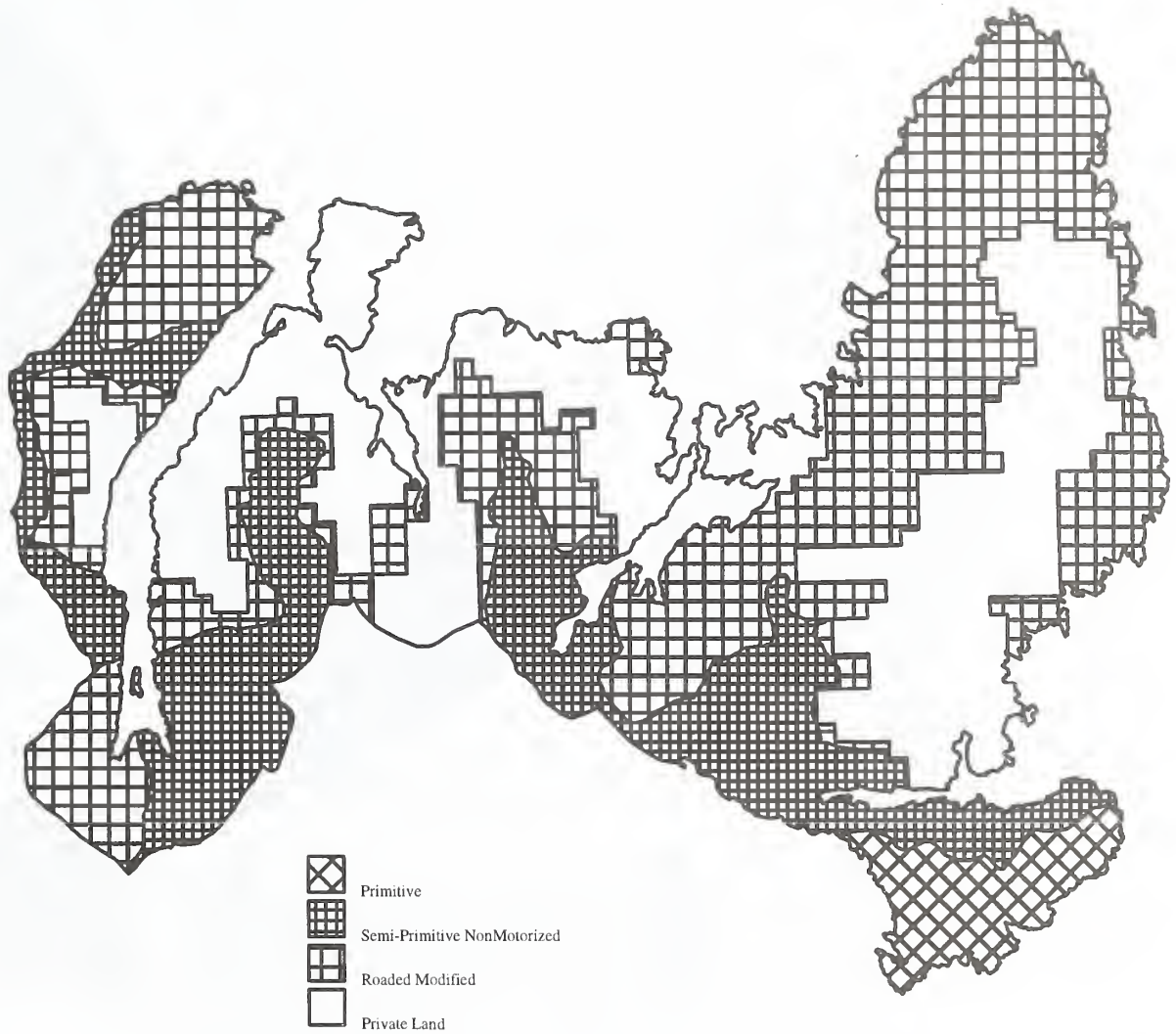
Figure REC-5  
Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 4



Created by Sally Matfield on March 11, 1993



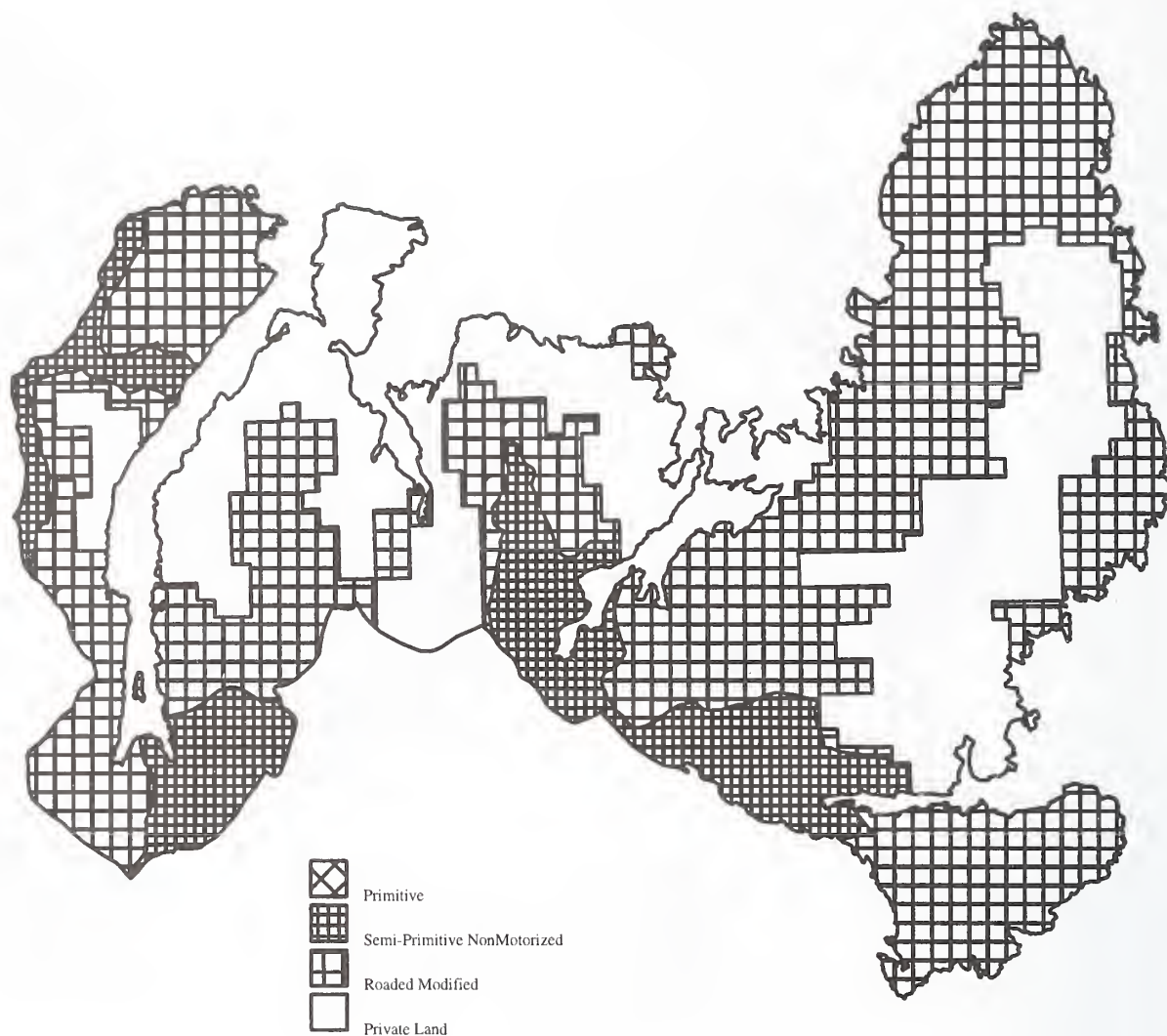
Figure REC-6  
Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 5



Created by Sally Medfield on March 11, 1999

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure REC-7  
Changes to ROS Classes for Alternative 6



Created by Sally Mordoff on March 11, 1998

**Table REC-2**  
**Recreation Sites with ROS Classes Affected by Alternatives**

<b>Alt.</b>	<b>Rec. Sites With Changed ROS Classes</b>	<b>Rec. Sites With Indirect ROS Impacts*</b>
<b>1</b>	none	none
<b>2</b>	51139	none
<b>3</b>	51300, 51302, 51304, 51305, 51306, 51307, 51139	51308, 51140
<b>4</b>	51300, 51302, 51139	51308, 51140
<b>5</b>	51300, 51302, 51304, 51305, 51306, 51307	51308
<b>6</b>	51300, 51302, 51304, 51305, 51306, 51307, 51139	51308, 51140

\* Indirect impacts include changes to the ROS class in the immediate vicinity of a recreation site. For example, harvest units at the head of the bay could change the setting of the recreation place, or an LTF located near a recreation site could be visually intrusive.

### **Alternative 1 — No Action**

The existing condition of the project area would not be intentionally changed if this alternative were selected. (Refer to description of the existing condition at the beginning of this chapter.) The existing ROS classes and setting indicators would not be changed, nor would existing recreation places and recreation sites. This alternative serves as the baseline for comparing the effects of the other alternatives on recreation.

There are approximately 44,000 acres of National Forest lands in the project area. Of this, approximately 22 percent of the area is classified as Primitive (P), 36 percent is classified as Semi-primitive Non-motorized (SPNM), and 42 percent is classified as Roaded Modified (RM).

### **Alternative 2**

This alternative would harvest timber only in the eastern half of the project area: on the east side of Kitkun Bay, in the Lancaster area, in the area north of Dutch Harbor, and in the Port Johnson area. There would be a 5 percent increase in RM classification, a 6 percent decrease in P, and a 1 percent increase in SPNM.

This alternative proposes timber harvest predominantly in areas which have had prior harvest. The recreation sites in the North Arm of Moira Sound would not be directly effected by this alternative. (Alternative 2 addresses the public comment to maintain the scenic and recreation qualities in this area.) The ROS class of one recreation site would change in this alternative.

### **Alternative 3**

This alternative would construct new roads, and harvest timber predominantly in the eastern half of the project area. Timber harvest and associated road construction is also proposed for the area on the northwest shore of the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound. In the eastern half of the project area, timber would be harvested on the east side of Kitkun Bay, in the Lancaster

# 3 Environment and Effects

area, on Chasina Point, in the area north of Dutch Harbor, in the Port Johnson area, and at the mouth of the North Arm of Moira Sound.

There would be a 25 percent increase in RM, a 14 percent decrease in P, and an 11 percent decrease in SPNM. The ROS class of seven recreation sites would change in this alternative. Two additional recreation sites (one is located just outside the project area) would be indirectly impacted by this alternative. This alternative would also have a minor visual impact on the marine travel route to additional recreation sites in Clarno and Aiken Coves and the Kegan cabins.

## Alternative 4

This alternative would harvest timber throughout the project area; timber would not be harvested on Chasina Point, or in the area north of Dutch Harbor. Harvest activities would be via helicopter on the northwest shore of the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound, and in the Port Johnson/Moira Sound area.

There would be a 20 percent increase in RM, and a 20 percent decrease in P. The ROS class of three recreation sites would change in this alternative. Two additional recreation sites (one is located just outside the project area) would be indirectly impacted by this alternative. This alternative would have a minor visual impact on the marine travel routes to additional recreation sites in Clarno and Aiken Coves and the Kegan cabins.

## Alternative 5

This alternative would construct new roads and harvest timber throughout the project area. Timber would not be harvested in the Port Johnson area, or in the North Arm of Moira Sound. There would be an 18 percent increase in RM, a 15 percent decrease in P, and a 3 percent decrease in SPNM.

This alternative proposes timber harvest predominantly in areas which have had prior harvest. The recreation sites in the North Arm of Moira Sound would not be directly affected by this alternative. (Alternative 5 addresses the public comment to maintain the scenic and recreation qualities in this area.) The ROS class of six recreation sites would change in this alternative. One additional recreation site would be indirectly impacted by this alternative.

## Alternative 6

This alternative would construct new roads and harvest all potential units in the project area. There would be a 38 percent increase in RM, a 22 percent decrease in P, and a 16 percent decrease in SPNM. The ROS class of seven recreation sites would change in this alternative. Two additional recreation sites (one is located just outside the project area) would be indirectly impacted by this alternative. The marine travel route to additional recreation sites in Clarno and Aiken Coves and the Kegan cabins would be visually impacted.

This alternative would have the greatest change to the recreation setting of the project area.

## Affected Environment – Wilderness

The National Wilderness Preservation Act of 1964 mandated that:

*“wilderness areas... shall be administered for the use and enjoyment of the American people in such a manner as will leave them unimpaired for future use and enjoyment as wilderness, and so as to provide for the protection of these areas, the preservation of their wilderness character, and for the gathering and dissemination of information regarding their use and enjoyment as wilderness.”*



The South Prince of Wales Wilderness (SPOW) was established by the Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA) of 1980. The 91,000 acre Wilderness is located southwest of the Chasina Project Area on the southern tip of Prince of Wales Island. A number of features contribute to the unique character of this Wilderness.

SPOW is remote and isolated, with the nearest community 25 miles away. Access is by boat or float plane, and is typically limited by inclement weather and the hazardous open waters of Dixon Entrance.

The Wilderness is composed of a diversity of landforms. The exposed windswept Barrier Islands are in the southern portion of the Wilderness; the more protected waters of Klakas Inlet are surrounded by scenic mountains in the heart of the Wilderness. Numerous bays and inlets provide protected anchorages to recreationists as well as the local fishing fleet.

## **Effects of Alternatives – Wilderness**

Alternatives 4, 5, and 6 propose harvesting units at the south end of the South Arm of Cholmondeley Sound. These are the closest units to the South Prince of Wales Wilderness; the units are located approximately one mile from the Wilderness Boundary, and are not expected to have an impact on the Wilderness resources.

## **Affected Environment – Wild and Scenic Rivers**

The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 provides a means for recognizing and protecting the free-flowing character and the outstandingly remarkable values of selected rivers. Values considered include: scenic, geologic, historic, cultural, ecological, recreation, and fish and wildlife.

There are no rivers in the Chasina Project Area classified as eligible or designated as a Federally designated Wild and Scenic River.

## **Effects of Alternatives – Wild and Scenic Rivers**

There are no rivers in the Chasina Project Area classified as eligible or designated as a Federally designated Wild and Scenic River.

## **Affected Environment – Roadless Areas**

Roadless areas are defined as areas in a National Forest or Grassland that meet minimum wilderness criteria, as defined by the 1964 Wilderness Act and its implementing regulations. The roadless areas discussed here have been identified in the TLMP planning process and not by the Roadless Area Review and Evaluation II process (RARE II).

### 3 Environment and Effects

The minimum criteria for considering a roadless area in the evaluation of Wilderness potential was established by the Wilderness Act of 1964 and in subsequent regulations and policies. To qualify, an area must contain at least 5,000 acres of undeveloped land which does not contain improved roads maintained for travel by passenger-type vehicles. However, areas less than 5,000 acres may qualify if they are a self-contained ecosystem, such as an island, are contiguous to existing Wilderness, or are ecologically isolated by topography and manageable in a natural condition.

Once an area is roaded, it is generally no longer available for Wilderness consideration. Roadless areas are described in Appendix C of the TLMP.

The Chasina Project Area includes the No. 507 Eudora Roadless Area, as identified in the TLMP. It contains rugged mountains in Cholmondeley Sound and a flat to moderate interior. Its western boundary coincides with the South Prince of Wales Wilderness, and its eastern boundary is saltwater. Eudora is typical of Southeast Alaska coastal temperate rain forests.

The east coast of Eudora Roadless Area has a rich history of prehistoric and historic use by Native cultures. Native corporations have made extensive land selections in the northern part of the Eudora area (see Chapter 3 - Land Adjustments, Uses, and Permits).

There is a wide variety of recreation use in the area, including cabins and trails. In addition, a number of mining claims are in the areas around Green Mountain, Bokan Mountain, Niblack Mountain, and all around Moira Sound.

The many sounds and bays provide bases for commercial fishing. The Big Creek drainage is considered an excellent example of old-growth wildlife habitat. The area remains a significant site for subsistence hunting and fishing.

The visual character of the Eudora area is mostly unaltered; however, past and future harvests throughout Cholmondeley sound have had and will have a significant impact on this highly scenic area.

## Effects of Alternatives – Roadless Areas

Each alternative proposes a different level of timber harvest and road construction. The total number of roadless acres for each alternative is listed below. All action alternatives will cause fragmentation of the roadless area. (The 3,600 acres shown for Alternative 6 is contiguous with roadless lands outside the project area.)

Alt.	Total Roadless Acres
1	25,650
2	23,500
3	12,100
4	11,300
5	15,200
6	3,600

## Scenic Resources

### Key Terms

**Cumulative Visual Disturbance (CVD)**—the sum of all scenic effects created by all landscape alterations that are visible at a given point in time.

**Distance Zones:**

**Foreground**—the detailed landscape found within 300 feet to one-half mile from the observer.

**Middleground**—the space between foreground and background in a picture or landscape. The area located from one-half to 4 miles from the viewer; often the most critical zone for scenery management; form, texture, and color remain dominant, and pattern is important.

**Background**—the distant part of a landscape; from 4 miles to the horizon from the viewer; line, form and pattern are the dominant visual characteristics.

**Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs) (Inventoried)**—define different acceptable degrees of alteration of the natural landscape based strictly on aesthetic factors of inherent scenic quality and public sensitivity.

**Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs) (Adopted)**—the set of visual objectives for specific land areas adopted by the Forest Plan after consideration of all multiple resource values and objectives. These provide the standards for the design of future development activities.

**Preservation VQO**—only ecological changes are allowed. Maintains the natural condition.

**Retention VQO**—management activities are not visually evident to the casual forest visitor.

**Partial Retention VQO**—management activities may be evident, but must be subordinate to the natural or natural appearing landscape.

**Modification VQO**—activities may dominate the natural landscape character, but their design must borrow from the naturally occurring visual elements so completely that the activity resembles to a great degree natural occurrences in the area.

**Maximum Modification VQO**—activities may clearly dominate the landscape character, but are designed so they appear as natural occurrences from background viewing positions.

# 3 Environment and Effects

**Visual condition**—a measure of the degree of human-caused alterations to the natural landscape character. It is usually used to describe existing or expected future conditions, defined in terms that closely correlate with VQOs listed below:

**Level I-Unaltered**—areas where only ecological changes have taken place. Corresponds to preservation VQO.

**Level II-Imperceptibly Altered**—areas where changes in landscape are not noticed unless pointed out. Corresponds to retention VQO.

**Level III-Slightly Altered**—areas in which changes in the landscape are noticed, but do not attract attention. Corresponds to partial retention VQO.

**Level IV-Moderately Altered**—areas in which changes in the landscape are easily noticed and may attract attention. Corresponds to modification VQO.

**Level V-Heavily Altered**—areas in which changes in the landscape are strong and obvious to the forest visitor and appear as major disturbances. Corresponds to maximum modification VQO.

**Level VI-Drastically Altered**—areas in which changes in the landscape are in glaring contrast to the natural forest appearance. This is an unacceptable visual condition. Does not meet minimum visual objective.

**Existing Visual Condition**—the degree of alterations to the natural landscape condition presently occurring on the ground.

**Future Visual Condition**—the degree of alterations to the natural landscape condition expected at the end of a proposed planning or harvest period.

## Affected Environment

### Introduction

An important aspect of Southeast Alaska's natural resource base is its attractive setting. The importance of the scenic splendor of the area is evident by increased tourism and a heightened awareness of and sensitivity to scenic values by Alaska's residents. The Visual Management System (VMS), developed by the Forest Service in 1974 and revised in 1996, inventories these visual resources and provides measurable standards for their management.

The VMS deals with the management of the visible aspects of the land and the design of human activities which occur upon it. The VMS provides an overall framework for the orderly inventory, analysis, and management of scenery (Landscape Aesthetics: A Handbook for Scenery Management 1996d). The system applies to every acre of National Forest System Lands and all activities administered by the Forest Service.

The VMS is a two-part analytic process. The first part assesses the scenic quality level (Landscape Character and Variety Class) of the project area as found in its natural state. The second part assesses viewer sensitivity levels based on the intensity and type of use of these landscapes.

Two factors, scenic quality (or Variety Class) and viewer sensitivity levels are combined to establish a set of inventoried Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs).

The following discussion applies the VMS to the Chasina Project Area.

### Scenic Quality

#### Landscape Character

Landscape character is an overall visual impression of landscape attributes—the physical appearance of a landscape that gives it an identity and “sense of place.” Landscape character gives a geographic area its image.



The Chasina Project Area is part of the Coastal Hills character type. Part of the sale area is characterized by steep-faced blocky ridges with rounded summits up to 2,500 feet (South Arm Cholmondeley Sound) or up to 1,000-1,500 feet (North Arm Moira Sound). Some areas are characterized by relatively rugged peaks with highly dissected slopes and distinctive rock forms (Dora Bay); much of the coast line is characterized by irregular shorelines, a variety of coves, and many island clusters (Lancaster-Kitkun Bay area and head of North Arm Moira Sound and Port Johnson). Other portions are characterized by lower rolling terrain (between Lancaster Cove and Clarence Strait).

## Variety Classes

One major part of the sale area is rated as a Variety Class A (i.e., possessing characteristics and diversity unique for the character type to which it belongs). This is the area around Dora Bay extending south to Dora Lake and Eudora Mountain. The area is characterized by dramatic rugged peaks, distinctive cliffs, a great deal of terrain diversity, and an intricate shoreline. This area actually extends south to the Aiken and Clarno Cove area, east of Eudora Mountain, which is just outside the edge of the project boundary. Most of the area though is rated as Variety Class B (i.e., possessing characteristics common to the overall character type).

The second part of the landscape analysis identifies recreation use areas, communities, travel routes (marine and land), anchorages and cabins, and their associated viewsheds. The visual sensitivity ratings for these areas are based on the type and frequency of use. The ratings range from Sensitivity Level I to Level III.

A Sensitivity Level I is assigned to viewsheds associated with heavily used recreation areas and major marine travel routes. Sensitivity Level II is assigned to areas such as less frequently used boat routes, roads, anchorages, saltwater fishing areas, and their viewsheds. Sensitivity Level III applies to all land areas not seen from any of the Level I or II travel routes or use areas.

Within the Chasina Project Area, most of Cholmondeley Sound is rated a Sensitivity Level II, reflecting the moderate level of boating use the area receives. However, the Sunny Cove area, off the northern edge of Cholmondeley Sound, is rated a Sensitivity Level I due to several summer residences that are located in this bay. This bay is actually outside the project area, but part of its associated viewshed is within the project area. The Kitkun Bay area and the North Arm of Moira sound are rated a Sensitivity Level III.

For the purposes of assisting in the design of harvest areas and providing a systematic way to analyze and display the impacts of different alternatives, several representative viewpoints within the different bays were identified. Computer perspectives were developed from these viewpoints using the PC New Perspectives software to help design and analyze the different alternatives. The land areas seen from these different viewpoints make up several discrete viewsheds. The alternative effects analysis is based on these viewsheds listed below:

1. Eastern end of West Arm of Cholmondeley
2. Mouth of Sunny Cove
3. Lancaster Cove/Babe Islands
4. Kitkun Bay
5. Port Johnson
6. Moira Sound, between the mouth of North Arm and the mouth of Port Johnson
7. North Arm Moira Sound

## Sensitivity Level Inventory

## Project Area Viewsheds

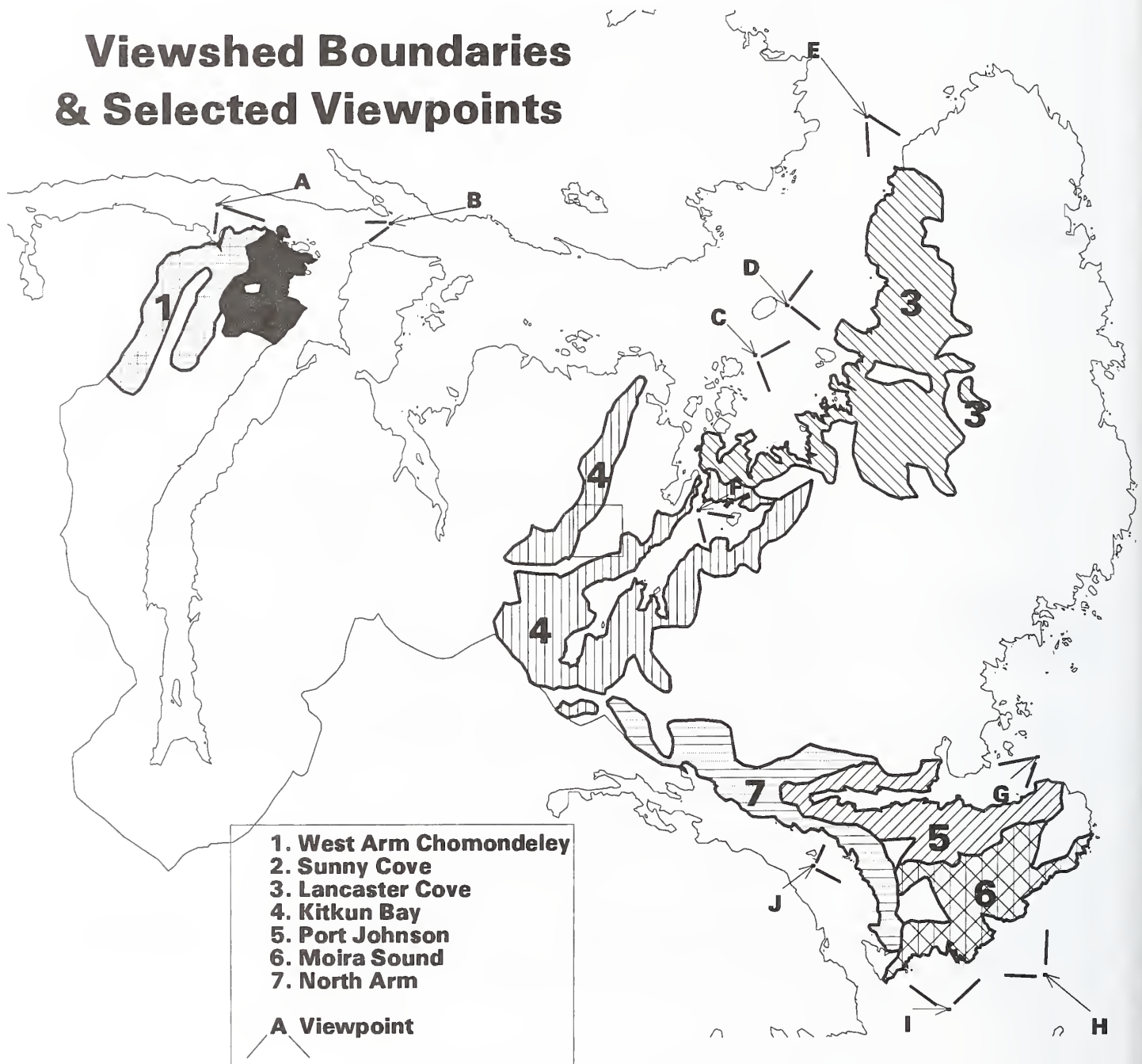
### 3 Environment and Effects

In the following sections, these viewsheds will be described in terms of the inventoried visual objectives for these areas, the existing visual condition of these areas, and the visual quality objectives adopted by the Forest Plan (1997). The environmental consequences section will then describe the visual impacts of each alternative on these viewsheds.

Figure SCE-1

Map Showing Location of Viewpoints Used in Analysis and Viewsheds Defined

## Viewshed Boundaries & Selected Viewpoints



## Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs)

Visual quality objectives are measurable standards for management of National Forest landscapes. Except for preservation, each describes a different degree of alteration of the natural landscape. The degree of alteration is measured in terms of visual contrast with the surrounding natural landscape. See Key Terms for definitions of the different VQOs.

### **Inventoried Visual Quality Objectives:**

Inventoried VQOs are a set of measurable goals for management of scenic resources on National Forest System Lands. They are benchmark guidelines for management direction and are based on the evaluation of landscape variety classes, viewer sensitivity levels, and distance zones (see Key Terms for definitions of foreground, middleground, and background).

Based on the scenery inventory factors described above, the inventoried VQOs for this project area are as follows:

1. All of Cholmondeley Sound (including the eastern end of the West Arm and the Lancaster Cove/Babe Island area)—Partial retention in the foreground and modification in the middleground.
2. Sunny Cove—Retention in the foreground and partial retention in the middleground.
3. Kitkun Bay—Maximum modification; except areas also seen from Cholmondeley Sound are modification.
4. Port Johnson—Maximum modification.
5. Moira Sound, between North Arm and Port Johnson—Partial retention in the foreground and modification in the middleground.
6. North Arm Moira Sound to Aiken Cove—Maximum modification.

### **Adopted Visual Quality Objectives From Forest Plan**

The VQOs for the project area adopted by the Forest Plan (1997) are significantly different from the above inventoried objectives. They represent management decisions which often involve trade offs when Forest-wide resource values and objectives and certain commodity needs are considered.

Of the travel routes and use areas listed above, four are identified in the Forest Plan (1997) as Priority Travel Routes and use areas to which the VQOs associated with the assigned LUDs are applied. They include the West Arm of Cholmondeley Sound, Sunny Cove, Moira Sound, and the North Arm of Moira Sound. The adopted VQOs for all the use areas and routes are described below.

1. West Arm Cholmondeley Sound—Partial retention in the foreground and modification in the middleground, except maximum modification where West Arm meets South Arm.
2. Sunny Cove—Partial retention in the foreground around the cove and modification in the middleground surrounding the cove. Rest of the middleground outside the cove is maximum modification. (Most of the viewshed outside the cove is private land.)
3. Lancaster Cove/Babe Islands—Maximum modification throughout the viewshed.
4. Kitkun Bay—Maximum modification in all areas seen from this bay.
5. Port Johnson—Maximum modification.

### 3 Environment and Effects

6. Moira Sound, between North Arm and Port Johnson—modification in the foreground and maximum modification in the middleground.
7. North Arm Moira Sound—Retention from the central portion of the bay into Clarno and Aiken Cove (due to old-growth allocation); modification and maximum modification in the outer portion of the bay.

#### Existing Visual Condition

The inventory of scenic resources of this area also includes an assessment of the existing condition of its landscapes. See Key Terms for an explanation of the terms associated with this inventory. This assessment is based on an aerial reconnaissance of the area, a survey of the landscapes from the water, and a review of photos and maps.

As explained in the Key Terms section, these visual condition ratings can be defined in terms that closely correlate with the VQO descriptions. Hence, the Existing Visual Condition inventory can be used to (1) compare a viewshed's actual condition (current degree of alteration) with the adopted VQOs, (2) assess cumulative visual impacts of alternatives, and (3) determine whether the proposed management activities or facilities will maintain or change the present conditions, lower the visual quality, or meet/not meet the adopted VQOs.

#### Existing Visual Condition of the Project Area

The following is a summary of the existing visual condition of the project area.

1. Eastern end of West Arm—The National Forest Land seen from this area is in a natural, unaltered condition. However, from some viewpoints the timber harvest on lands managed by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation, in the Divide Head area, clearly dominates the view.
2. Sunny Cove—The foreground and the middleground on either side of the bay are in natural unaltered conditions. However, the viewshed to the south, which is primarily managed by Kootznoowoo Native Corporation, has been drastically altered.
3. Lancaster Cove/Babe Islands—Existing scattered harvest units from a 1990 timber sale on National Forest Lands has created a slightly to moderately altered condition depending on the exact viewing position.
4. Kitkun Bay—Existing harvest from previous timber sales have resulted in a slightly to moderately altered visual condition depending on the viewpoint.
5. Port Johnson—Is predominantly in a natural, unaltered condition on the south side and at the head of the cove (National Forest Land), but is heavily altered on the north side (private land).
6. Moira Sound, between North Arm and Port Johnson—National Forest Lands comprise most of this area and are in a natural, unaltered condition. However, extensive harvest on private lands just to the north of Port Johnson impact the northern edge of this viewshed.
7. North Arm Moira Sound—Almost entirely in a natural, unaltered condition except for the visibility of small portions of one old existing unit near the head of Clarno Cove.



## Private Lands

A major factor affecting the visual condition in this project area is the extensive timber harvest on private lands concentrated between the east slopes of the South Arm of Cholmondeley and the east slopes of Dora Bay. The vast harvest areas in these areas result in a drastically altered visual condition. This harvest dominates the landscape from several viewing positions within the sound, most significantly from portions of Sunny Cove. Another concentrated area of harvest is located on the rolling terrain between Clarence Strait and Cholmondeley Sound. This harvest creates a drastically altered landscape as seen from Clarence Strait, however, it is not evident from the Cholmondeley Sound side.



Figure SCE-2  
Map Displaying Existing Visual Condition of Project Area

## Existing Visual Condition (EVC)

(See p. 3-7 for description of viewsheds and "Key Terms" for definition of EVC terminology).

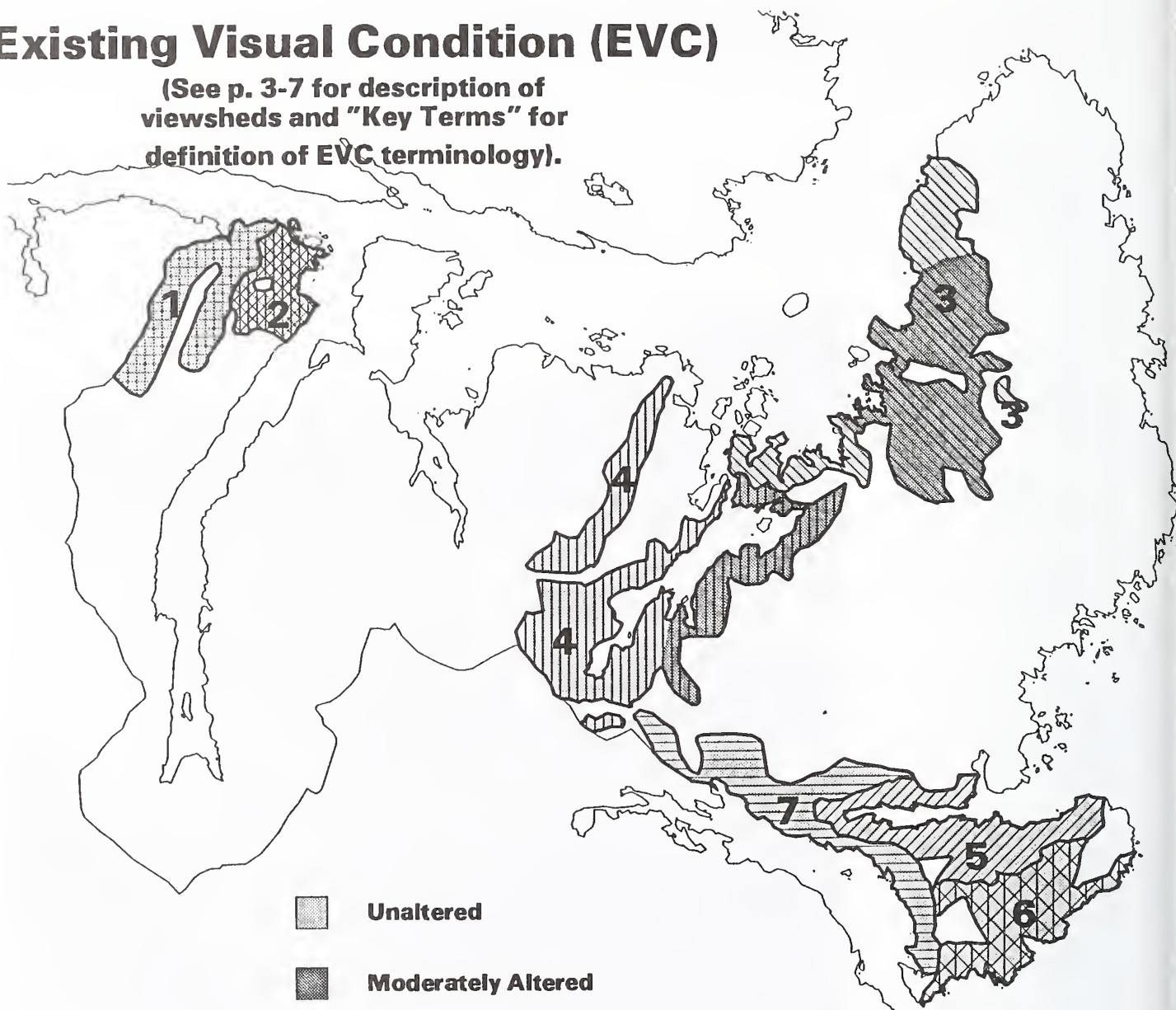
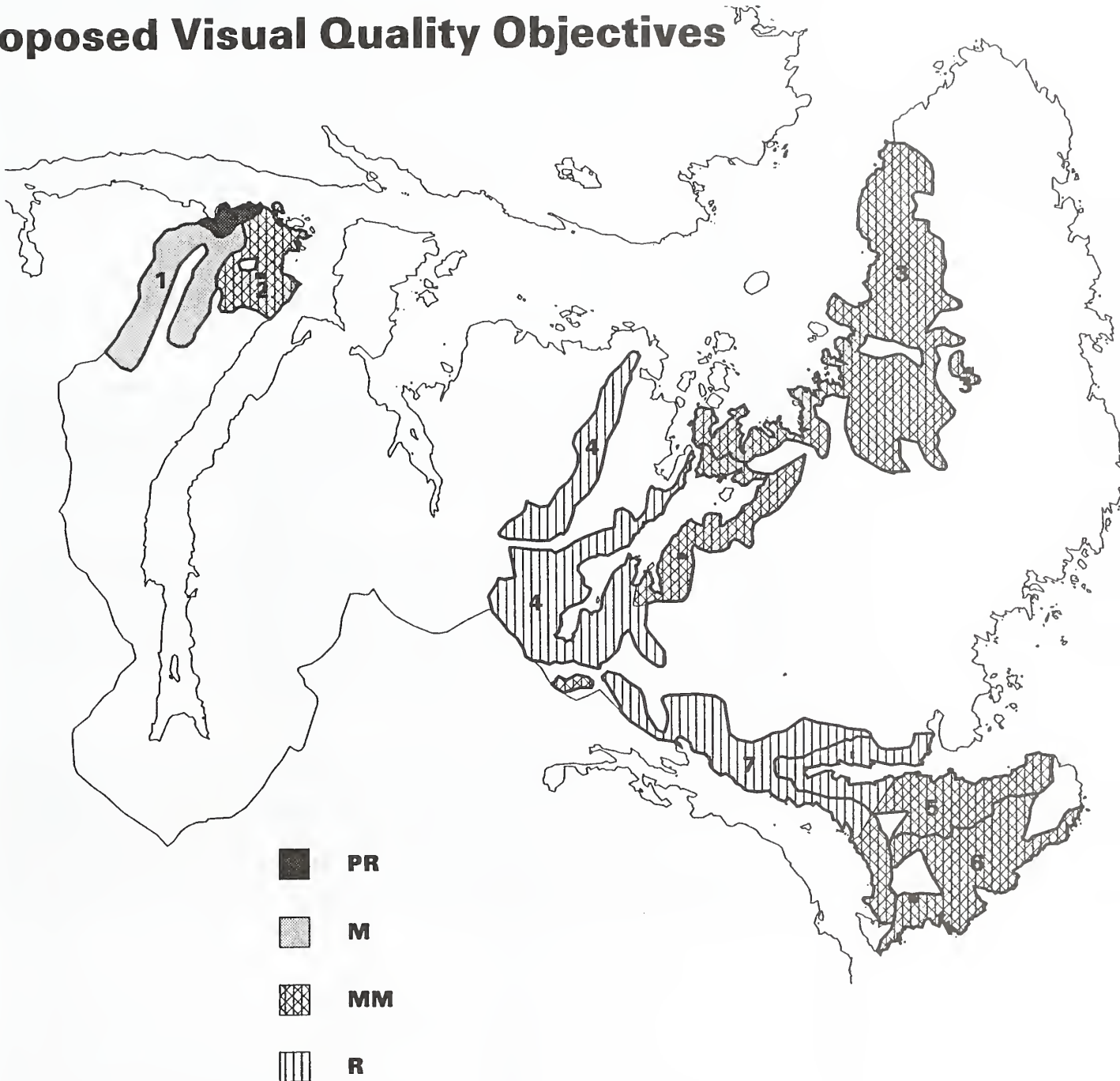


Figure SCE-3  
Map Displaying the Proposed or Adopted VQO of Identified Viewsheds

## Proposed Visual Quality Objectives





## Eastern End of West Arm Cholmondeley Sound

### Effects of the Alternatives

The following discussion will describe narratively and graphically the scenery impacts of each alternative on each of the viewsheds identified in the affected environment section. Where applicable, the narrative will describe the cumulative impacts of both past harvest and the planned harvest associated with each alternative. The perspective plots with each viewshed are from the optimum or critical viewing points.

The viewshed potentially impacted in this area is characterized by a 2,000 foot plus blocky ridge with 60 percent and greater slopes. Cannery Creek forms a very prominent, almost V-shaped valley, with very steep slopes that carve into this blocky landform. The harvest proposed in the various alternatives is all located on the east slopes of this valley and on the diverse broken terrain just north and east of Cannery Creek. From this end of the West Arm, the extensive Native harvest on the slopes of Divide Head start to come into view just beyond the Cannery Creek drainage.

#### Alternatives 1 and 2

No harvest would occur in this viewshed. The unaltered natural condition of the landscape would be maintained.

#### Alternative 4

This alternative does not include any units on the steep, uniform, highly visible slopes above Cannery Creek. All the units are on the more hummocky and diverse terrain just to the east of this drainage. Hence, much of these units are hidden from viewpoints along the West Arm of Cholmondeley Sound. This alternative will meet close to a partial retention VQO, a higher VQO than the modification that is adopted for this viewshed. See Figure SCE-4.

#### Alternatives 3, 5, and 6

These alternatives all incorporate the entire unit pool including three units on the steep slopes above Cannery Creek. Unit 678-301 blends well with the terrain and is relatively small. However, Units 674-265 and 674-213 lay on very steep slopes above the creek and directly face the viewer from a few viewpoints along the West Arm. See Figure SCE-5. In order for this complex of units to meet the modification VQO, Unit 674-265 should be designed to retain randomly scattered 1-2 acre islands of trees along the top edge of the unit. The same treatment should be applied to Unit 674-213. See Figure SCE-6.

#### Impacts of LTF East of Cannery Creek

In Alternative 3, the proposed A-frame LTF on the shore just east of the mouth of Cannery Creek will clearly dominate the view from the eastern end of the West Arm. The vegetative clearing, rockpit, the likelihood of at least a small exposed rock face, a bulkhead structure extending into the water, and an A-frame structure will combine to create an impact that will meet only a maximum modification VQO. After logging is completed in this area, a partial retention condition could be established in about 15-20 years by re-contouring and re-vegetating the area with conifer seedlings. Alternative 4 includes no LTF in this area since the units will be logged by helicopter.



Figure SCE-4  
West Arm Cholmondeley Toward Cannery Creek—Viewpoint A—Alternative 4

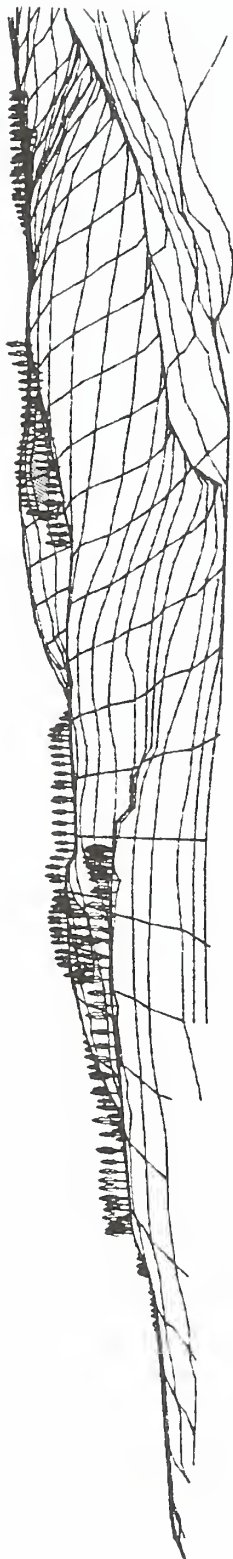
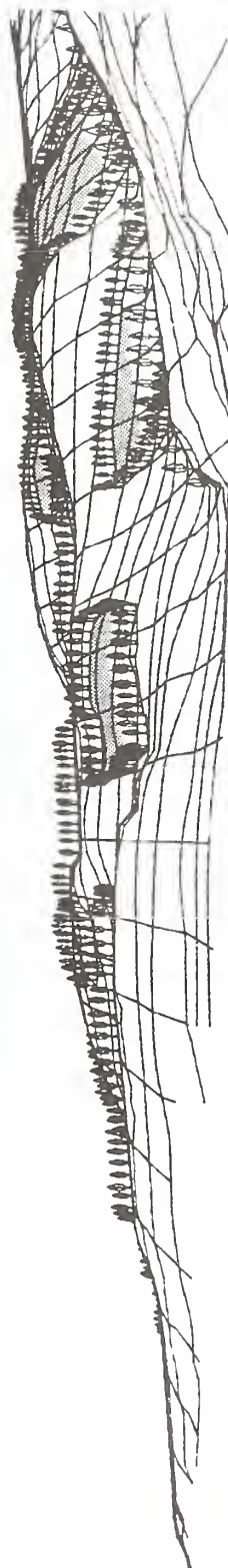
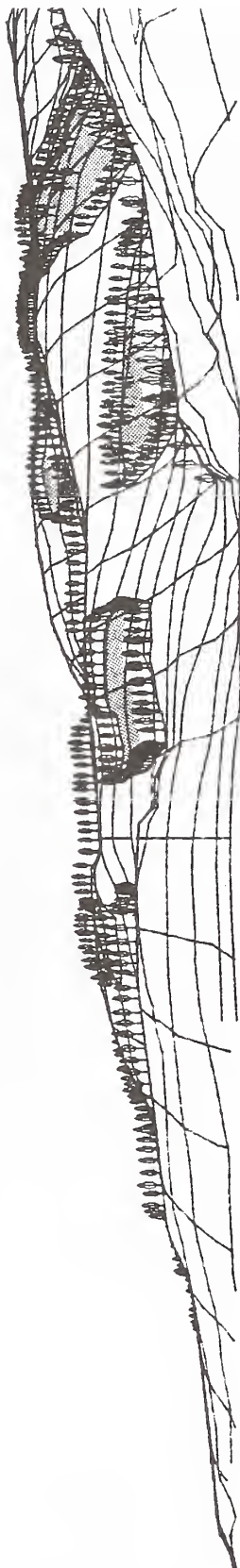


Figure SCE-5  
West Arm Cholmondeley Toward Cannery Creek—Viewpoint A—Alternatives 3, 5, and 6



### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure SCE-6  
West Arm Cholmondeley Toward Cannery Creek—Alternatives 3, 5 and 6—Mitigated



## **Mouth of Sunny Cove**

This viewshed includes some of the same steep and blocky terrain seen from the West Arm of Cholmondeley Sound. Much of the viewshed from the mouth of this cove includes Kootznoowoo Native Corporation land which has been extensively harvested. This viewshed is in a drastically altered visual condition due entirely to the Native harvest.

### **Alternatives 1 and 2**

No harvest is proposed on this ridge in these alternatives. Hence, the National Forest portion of this viewshed will remain in a natural unaltered condition.

### **Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6**

The major impact from these alternatives is from a combination of Units 678-316 and 678-312. From the viewpoints at the mouth of Sunny Cove, these units are in direct alignment with one another. See Figure SCE-7. The other units on this landform are visible only as small slivers. The over-all impact of this harvest will come close to meeting a modification VQO, and hence will result in a visual quality level higher than the adopted VQO of maximum modification.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure SCE-7  
Mouth of Sunny Cove Toward S.W.—Viewpoint B—Alternatives 3, 4, 5, and 6





## Lancaster Cove/ Babe Islands

This viewshed is comprised entirely of gentle, rolling, and hummocky terrain. South of Lancaster Cove, extensive harvest has occurred dating back to 1989-1990. From many viewing positions, this harvest has produced light-to-moderate impacts because of rolling and diverse terrain, and because most units are well back from the shoreline.

### Alternative 1

This alternative will result in the maintaining of the current visual condition. Over the next few decades the existing units will continue to green up and gradually attain some texture and begin to blend into the surrounding landscape.

### Alternative 2

This alternative will add some visible harvest to this viewshed. These visible units (portions of 679-413, 414, 420, 422, 437, and 447) lay on relatively gentle slopes and/or on slopes obliquely oriented to the viewpoints. However, the combined impact of the existing harvest and the new units will not quite meet a modification VQO. However, it will meet the adopted objective of maximum modification. See Figure SCE-8. North of Lancaster Cove, there is no proposed new harvest. Most of this landscape will remain in an unaltered condition.

### Alternative 3

This alternative will not include two of the more visible units in Alternative 2 (Units 679-420 and 679-422). An additional unit, 679-425, is included in this alternative. This unit, however, is part of the alternatives to clearcutting study. The prescription for this unit is individual tree selection, leaving 75 percent of the basal area. Hence, this unit is not expected to create much visual impact. See Figure SCE-9. Therefore, the total impact of this harvest will meet a modification VQO, thereby meeting a higher VQO than the adopted objective of maximum modification. North of Lancaster Cove, the impacts will be greater due to the combined impact of Units 679-361, 363, 367, 378, and 382. From viewpoints between Lancaster Cove and the entrance to Cholmondeley Sound, this harvest will only meet the adopted VQO of maximum modification. See Figures SCE-12, and SCE-14.

### Alternative 4

South of Lancaster Cove, this alternative will produce slightly more impacts than Alternative 2. Alternative to clearcutting Unit 679-425 is added. However, since the harvest prescriptions for this unit is individual tree selection, it will add very little to the overall visual impact from the other proposed units. See Figure SCE-10. North of Lancaster Cove this alternative will result in few impacts other than from Unit 679-382. See Figure SCE 13.

### Alternative 5

This alternative includes almost all of the units proposed in either Alternatives 2, 3, or 4. Hence, the overall impact of the proposed harvest north and south of Lancaster, in combination with the existing harvest, will not meet the modification VQO, but will meet the maximum modification objective adopted by the Forest Plan. See Figures SCE-11, SCE-12, and SCE-14.

### Alternative 6

This alternative includes all of the units in the unit pool. It will produce impacts similar to those in Alternative 5. See Figures SCE-10, SCE-12, and SCE-14.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure SCE-8  
Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove—Viewpoint C—Alternative 2

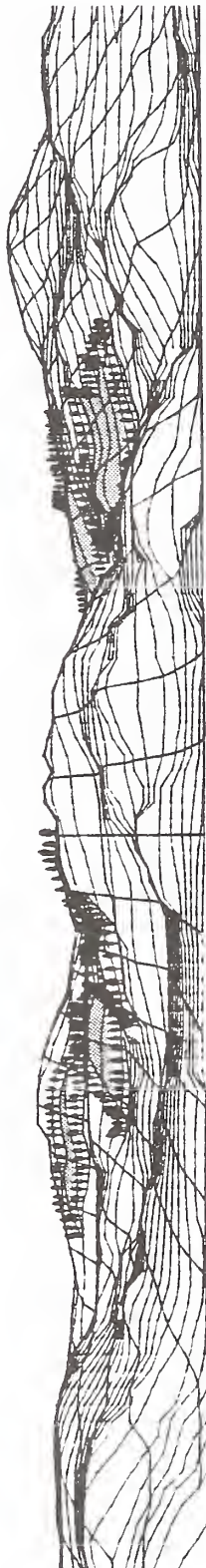


Figure SCE-9  
Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove—Viewpoint C—Alternative 6

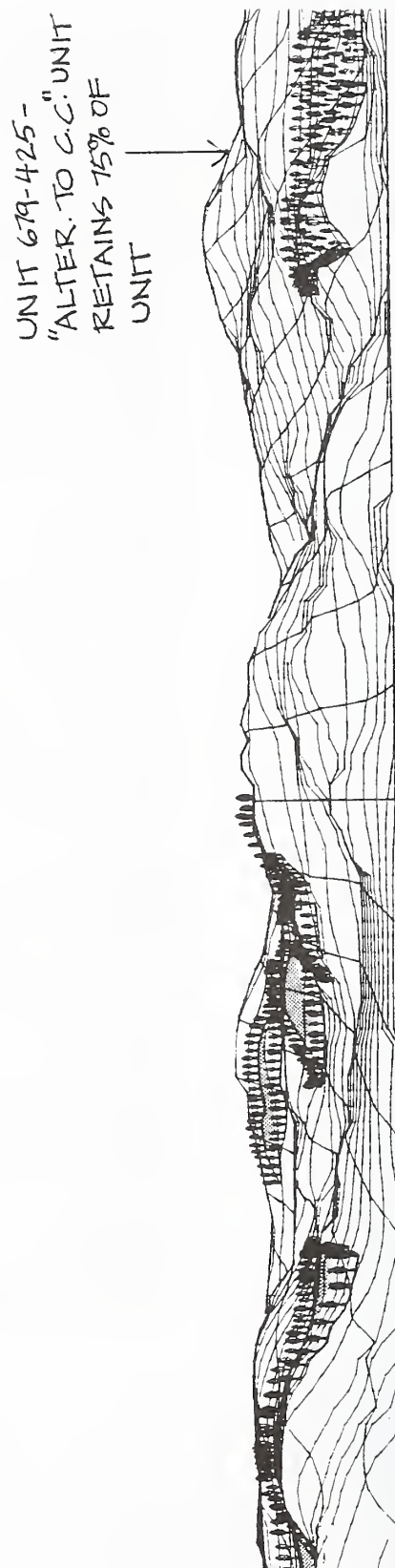


Figure SCE-10  
Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove—Viewpoint C—Alternative 4 and 6

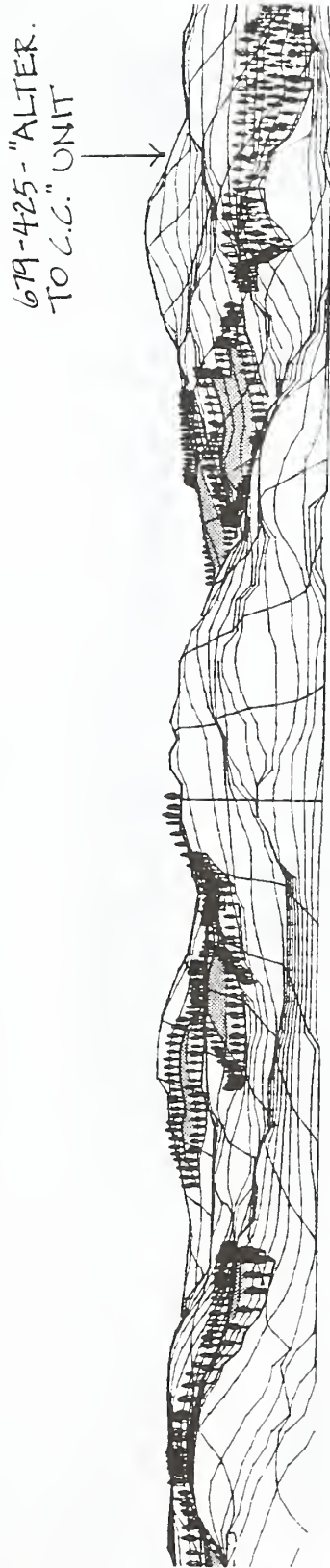


Figure SCE-11  
Lancaster Cove/Babe Island Toward Lancaster Cove—Viewpoint C—Alternative 5



Figure SCE-12  
Lancaster Cove/Hump Island Toward North of Lancaster Cove—Viewpoint D—Alternatives 3, 5, and 6



Figure SCE-13  
Lancaster Cove/Hump Island Toward North of Lancaster Cove—Viewpoint D—Alternative 4





Figure SCE-14  
Entrance to Chomondeley Sound Toward S. E.— Viewpoint E—Alternatives 3, 5, and 6



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Kitkun Bay

The viewshed affected by these alternatives is characterized by a series of blocky 1,500-2,000 foot ridges and knobs with uniform slopes on the east side of the bay, and a bit more rugged and diverse terrain on the west side of the bay. Past harvest units are scattered around the bay, some on slopes directly facing the water and others on oblique slopes in the valleys between these ridges.

### Alternative 1

No harvest is proposed in this alternative. The existing slightly to moderately altered visual condition will evolve to a more natural appearing condition as the existing harvest regenerates and establishes texture that will, over several decades, gradually take on the appearance of the adjacent old-growth stands.

### Alternative 2

This alternative adds visual impact to only a part of the east side of the bay with five units located along the side slopes of a drainage running into the northeast corner of the bay. Most of these slopes are either not seen from much of the bay or are obliquely oriented to a few viewpoints. This level of harvest will meet a VQO of modification. See Figure SCE-15.

### Alternative 3

This alternative eliminates two of the units at the head of the drainage discussed under Alternative 2, but adds two more - Units 679-467/506 and 479 - on slopes more directly facing the bay. These two units result in impacts to a few additional viewpoints at the north end of the bay. The overall impact will still meet the proposed VQO of maximum modification. See Figure SCE-16 which displays Unit 679-467/506.

### Alternatives 4, 5, and 6

These alternatives include, for the most part, all units in the entire unit pool on the east side of the bay, except that Alternatives 4 and 5 do not include the small unit (470) at the mouth of the above mentioned drainage. See Figure SCE-17. The overall results are impacts slightly greater than those in Alternative 3.

Figure SCE-15  
Outlet Kitkun Bay Looking East—Viewpoint F— Alternative 2

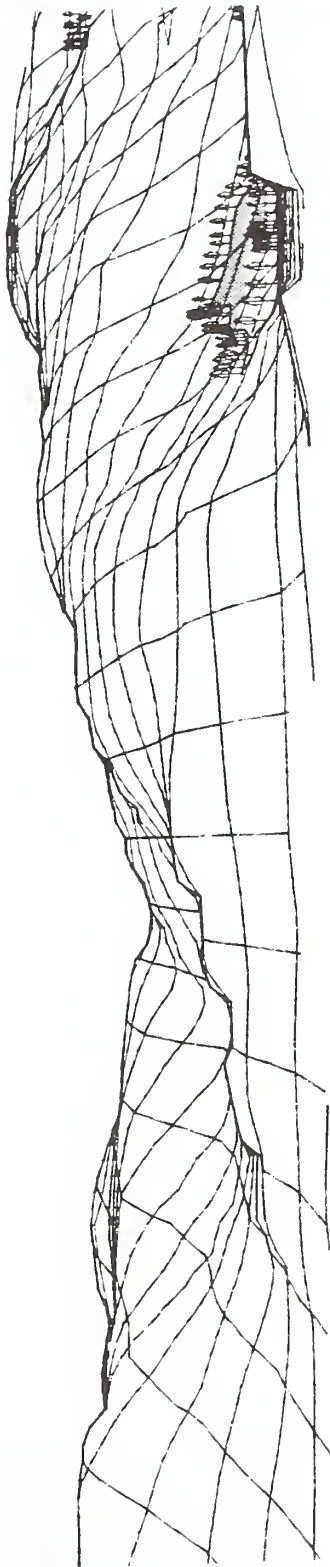
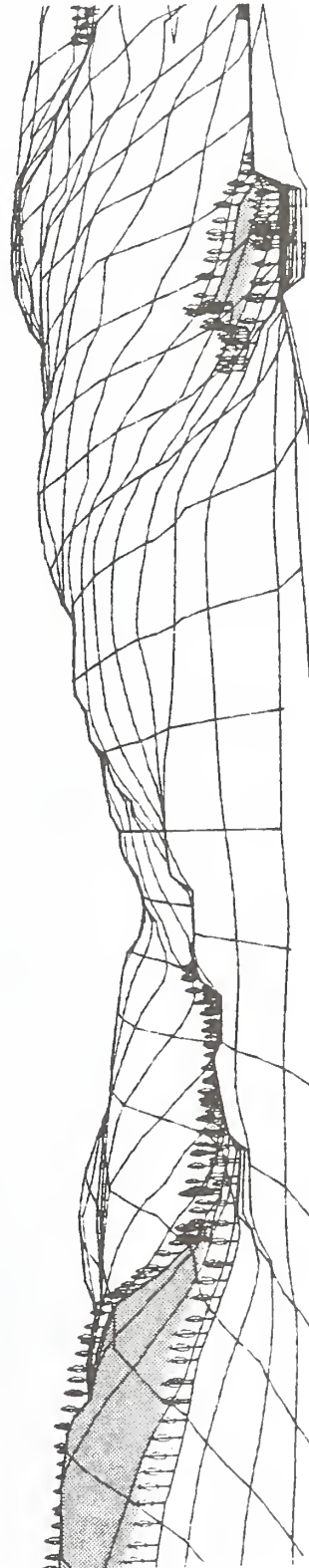
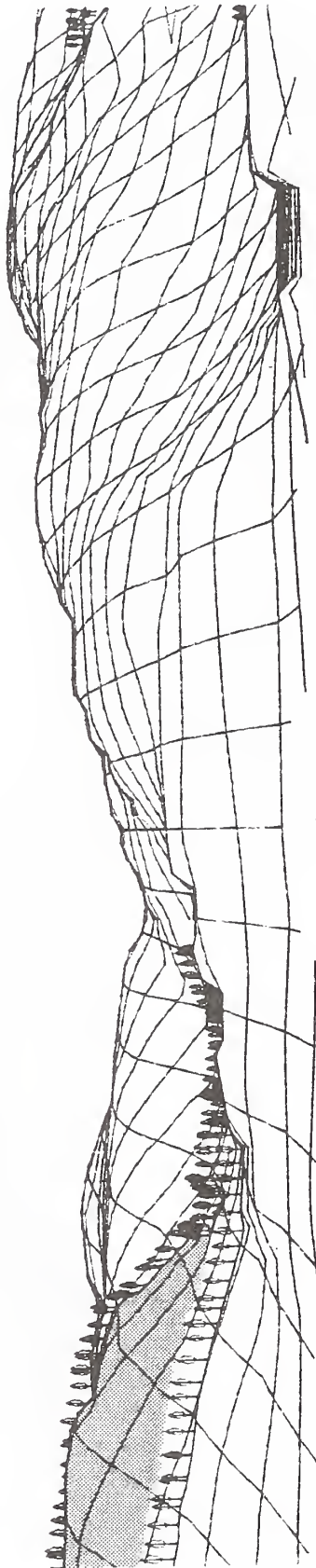


Figure SCE-16  
Outlet Kitkun Bay Looking East—Viewpoint F— Alternatives 3 and 6



### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure SCE-17  
Outlet Kitkun Bay Looking East—Viewpoint F— Alternatives 4 and 5





## Port Johnson

The viewshed affected by these alternatives is a moderately broken terrain of 1,000-1,500 foot ridges and knobs consisting of moderate and steep slopes and rounded summits. The head of this bay and the south shore are in a natural condition, while the north shore with its gentler slopes have been extensively altered by harvest on private lands.

### **Alternatives 1 and 5**

No harvest is proposed in this viewshed in these alternatives. A natural unaltered condition would remain on the south side of the bay.

### **Alternatives 2, 3, and 6**

These alternatives include several units of various sizes spread across the slopes above the south shore of this bay. The major impact is from Units 681-368, 372, and 363 which sit high on the slopes along the bay. Much smaller units, that lay on knolls or gentler slopes, surround this large unit. The overall impact of this harvest will meet the adopted VQO of maximum modification. See Figure SCE-18.

### **Alternative 4**

This alternative includes a smaller number of units on the slopes above the south shore. However, it still includes Unit 681-368. This alternative would meet a modification VQO from several points within the bay. From points in the bay directly opposite Unit 681-368, this harvest would only meet the adopted VQO of maximum modification. See Figure SCE-19.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure SCE-18  
Port Johnson—Viewpoint G— Alternatives 2, 3 and 6



Figure SCE-19  
Port Johnson—Viewpoint G— Alternative 4



## **Moira Sound Between Port Johnson and the Entrance to North Arm of Moira Sound**

The viewshed affected by these alternatives is characterized by broad, gently rolling landforms. Two broad, rounded knobs sit at either end of this viewshed. Lower, gently sloping to flat terrain connects these two knobs. This viewshed is presently in an unaltered condition.

### **Alternatives 1, 2, and 5**

No harvest is proposed in this area in these alternatives. The viewshed will remain in an unaltered condition.

### **Alternative 3**

Three units are located in this viewshed, all of which are relatively small, sited on gentle slopes, or located on slopes very oblique to all the viewing positions in this saltwater area. From most viewing positions, only one or two of the units are visible. From one of the two viewpoints displayed here, only one of the units are visible (682-302/307). See Figure SCE-20. From the other viewpoint, none of the three units are visible. See Figure SCE-22. Overall, this level of harvest will meet a partial retention VQO, two levels higher than the adopted VQO of maximum modification.

### **Alternatives 4 and 6**

These alternatives add two additional units, 682-306 and 682-304. Unit 682-304 sits on a steep slope that faces most viewing positions in this area, and creates the greatest impact of all the units in this viewshed. See Figures SCE-21, and SCE-23. Unit 682-306 is composed of two parts. They do not have major visual impacts because of the combination of gentle slopes, small size, and oblique orientation. Overall, these alternatives will not quite meet a modification VQO because of the scale of Unit 682-304, but will meet the adopted VQO of maximum modification.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Figure SCE-20  
Moira Sound—North— Viewpoint H— Alternative 3



Figure SCE-21  
Moira Sound— North— Viewpoint H— Alternatives 4 and 6





Figure SCE-22  
Moirá Sound—South—Viewpoint 1—Alternative 3

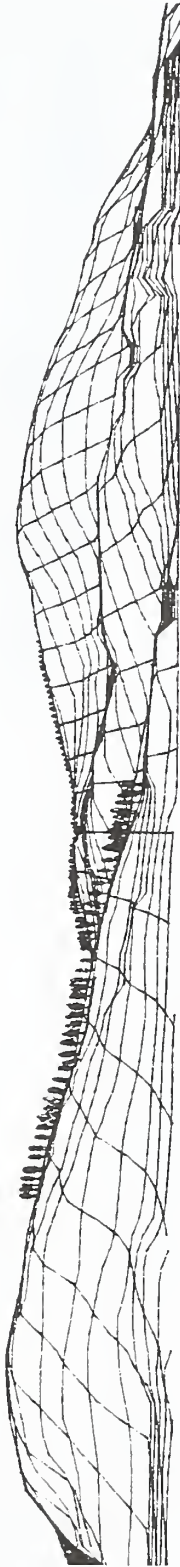
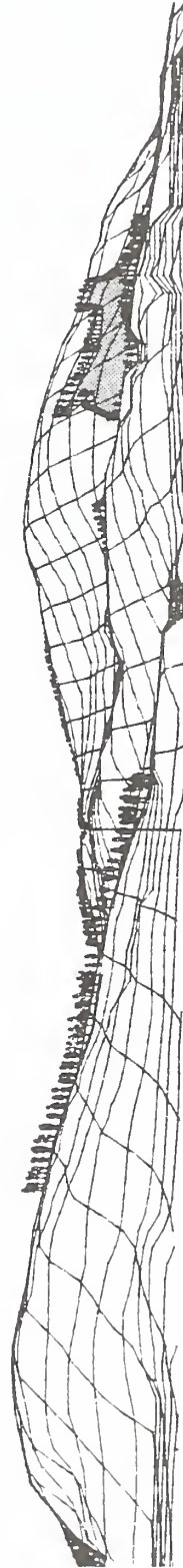


Figure SCE-23  
Moirá Sound—South—Viewpoint 1—Alternatives 4 and 6



# 3 Environment and Effects

## North Arm - Moira Sound

The viewshed affected by these alternatives is on the north side of this bay and is characterized by a broad, almost flat plateau above the outer half of the bay. Slopes from the top of the plateau to the shore are generally very steep and uniform. Above the inner half of the bay on the north side is a broadly rounded, large, 1,500 foot plus landform. Much of the foreground slopes just above the water are uniform and steep. Above these slopes are some minor benches and some moderately diverse terrain. No major timber harvest has occurred in this landscape except for a few very old, small A-frame units near the head of the bay.

### Alternatives 1, 2, and 5

No harvest is proposed in this viewshed in these alternatives. The landscape will remain in a natural, unaltered condition.

### Alternatives 3, 4, and 6

Only Unit 682-301 is visible in this viewshed in these alternatives. It sits high on slopes coming off the broad plateau above the outer part of the bay. It is a long unit that extends about half-way down the slope. The unit as planned now has somewhat straight sides and square corners. See Figure SCE-24. To fully meet the adopted VQO of maximum modification, the impact of this unit needs to be mitigated by rounding the upper corners and redirecting the side-boundaries inward toward the upper center of the unit so that they cross the contours at less than a perpendicular angle. An additional mitigation measure would be to leave some 1-2 acre leave islands in the middle of the unit. See Figure SCE-25.

Figure SCE-24  
North Arm—Center of Bay Looking East—Viewpoint J—Alternatives 3, 4 and 6

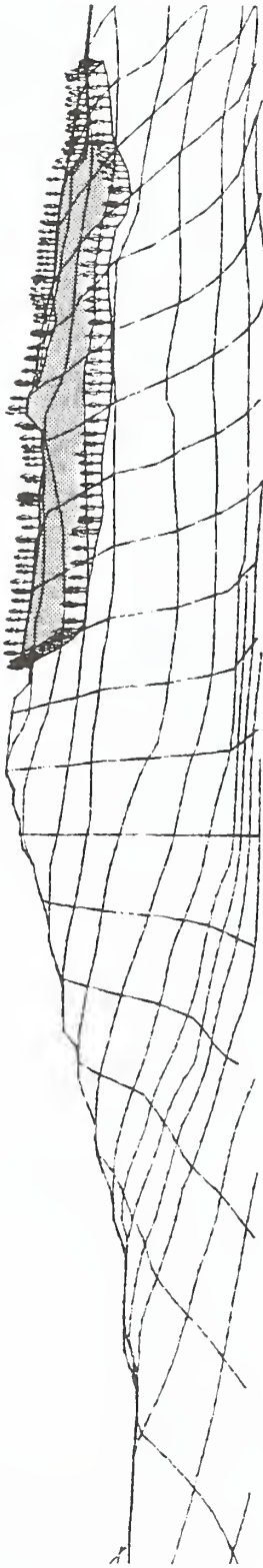
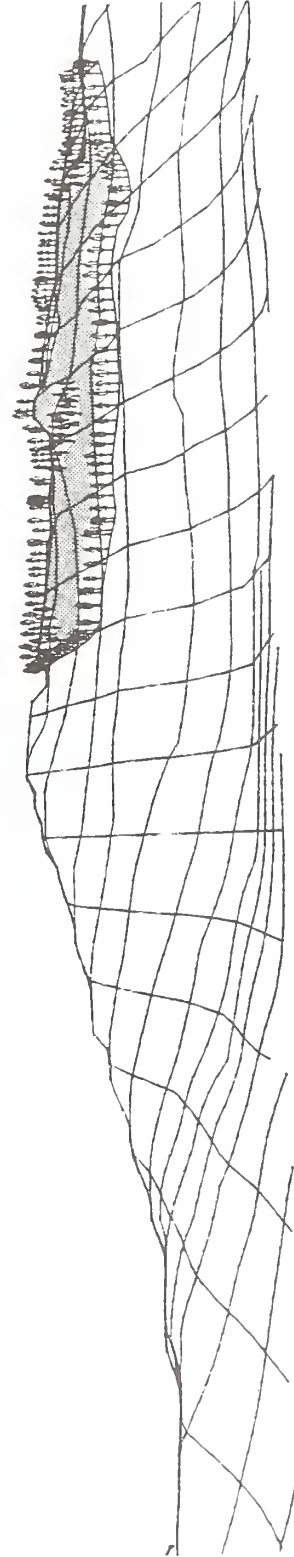


Figure SCE-25  
North Arm—Center of Bay Looking East—Viewpoint J—Alternatives 3, 4 and 6 (Mitigated)



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Summary of Impacts of Alternatives

Table SCE-1  
Summary of Impacts of Alternatives on Scenic Resources

Viewshed	VQO	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
W. Arm Chol. Sound	Par. Ret./Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets*	Exceeds	Meets*	Meets*
Sunny Cove	Par. Ret./Mod./Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Meets	Meets
Lancaster Cove	Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Meets	Exceeds*	Meets	Meets	Meets
Kitkun Bay	Ret./Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds*	Exceeds*	Exceeds*	Exceeds*
Port Johnson	Ret./Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Meets	Meets	Meets	Exceeds	Meets
Moir Sound	Mod./Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets	Exceeds	Meets*
North Arm	Ret./Max. Mod.	Exceeds	Exceeds	Meets*	Meets*	Exceeds*	Meets*

Exceeds Proposed harvest results in a visual condition that exceeds the VQO for the viewshed, i.e. meets a higher VQO.

Exceeds\* Though the proposed harvest will meet the VQO in a portion of the viewshed, in the vast majority of the viewshed, the proposed harvest exceeds the VQO.

Meets Harvest planned in the viewshed is consistent with standards for the VQO.

Meets\* Harvest meets adopted VQO assuming mitigation measures are followed.



## Land Adjustments, Uses, and Permits

### Key Terms

**Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (ANCSA)**—provides for the settlement of certain land claims of Alaska Natives.

**Encumbrance**—a claim, lien, charge, or liability attached to and binding real property.

**Native Selection**—application by Native corporations to the USDI Bureau of Land Management for conveyance of a portion of lands withdrawn under ANCSA in fulfillment of Native entitlements established under ANCSA.

**Special Use Permits**—permits and granting of easements (excluding road permits and highway easements) authorizing the occupancy and use of land.

**State Selection**—application by the Alaska Department of Natural Resources to the USDI Bureau of Land Management for conveyance of a portion of the 400,000-acre State entitlement from vacant and unappropriated National Forest System lands in Alaska, under the Alaska Statehood Act.

## Affected Environment

### Land Status

Prior to 1971, the Tongass National Forest, Ketchikan Area land ownership pattern had not changed significantly, with only minor changes taking place as National Forest System lands were transferred to private home sites, canneries, and town sites. Beginning in the early 1970s, land ownership changes were made as a result of legislation, including the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (ANCSA) and the Alaska National Interests Land Conservation Act (ANILCA).

#### State Selections

The State of Alaska, under the Statehood Act of 1959, is entitled to select up to 400,000 acres from the National Forests in Alaska. As of July, 1991, 57 percent of the entitlement had been conveyed. All of the remaining acres have been selected and are in the process of being conveyed by the Bureau of Land Management. Because the State of Alaska was granted the opportunity to select more lands than they were entitled to receive, some of these lands may become available for National Forest management in the future. The State of Alaska has obtained title to approximately 1,744 acres on Babe Island and in the Kitkun Bay area (VCU 679).

#### Native Selections

Native selections are authorized under 14(h)(8) of ANCSA. A large portion of the project area has been encumbered because of Kootznoowoo Native Corporation selection. Kootznoowoo Native Corporation has obtained title to approximately 20,199 acres within the Chasina Project Area. Additional acreage has been selected and may be conveyed after completion of surveys to determine actual acreage.

#### Private Land

In addition to Kootznoowoo Native Corporation lands, there is a 10 acre piece of private property at the old cannery site just west of South Arm.

# 3 Environment and Effects

**Special Use Permits** Table LAN-1 summarizes the special use permit that exist in the Chasina Project Area.

Table LAN-1  
**Summary of Special Use Permit Sites**

Name of Permittee	Special Use	Legal Description	Management Area
Kootznoowoo Native Corporation	Shore ties	T78S, R88E, S12	K24
Klukwan Forest Products, Inc.	Shore ties	T77S, R88E, S9	K24
Kootznoowoo Native Corporation	Road Use Permit	T77S, R89E, S19	K24

## Mining Claims

An examination of the Bureau of Land Management records revealed 11 private, patented mining claim groups within the Chasina Project Area. These are the Golden Fleece (Mineral Survey (MS) 540, 1581), Valparaiso (MS 766), James (MS 766), Paul Lake (MS 760), Moonshine (MS 789), Jumbo (MS 1058), Amazon (MS 790), Boston (MS 1056), Cape Horn (MS 1055), Stockton Quartz (MS 587), and North Arm Marble (MS 728) (Mass et al., 1995).

There are 40 known mining claims for locatable minerals within the Chasina Project Area that have been relinquished by Sealaska Corporation. However, Sealaska is about to be conveyed the subsurface mineral rights to 1,260 acres in T77S, R88E as part of the Sealaska Subsurface Land Exchange. An additional 1,075 subsurface acres in T77S, R88E and 1,610 acres in T77S, R87E may be conveyed in the future.

Currently the Bureau of Land Management (BLM) mining claim activity reports indicate that there is one mining claim group consisting of 110 claims within the project area. This is the Ruby Tuesday Prospect which is currently under claim by Abacus Minerals Corporation from Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada. These are centered around the Ruby Tuesday and Friendship prospects between South Arm and Cannery Creek.

## Effects of the Alternatives

Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 will not directly affect the status of existing special use permits or mining claims, although they may improve access. Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 may require the issuance of new special use permits for camp developments.

## Permits and Easements

Alternatives which proposed locating timber harvest units or constructing roads near Kootznoowoo Native Corporation and State ownership boundaries may require updated land line surveys. The Forest Service has an existing road easement to access National Forest System lands in the vicinity of harvest Units 680-330, 680-333, 680-335, 681-304, and 681-308.

## Roads and Facilities

### Key Terms

**Access management**—acquiring rights and developing and maintaining facilities needed by people to get to and move through public lands.

**Arterial roads**—roads usually developed and operated for long-term land and resource management purposes and constant service.

**Collector roads**—collect traffic from forest local roads; usually connect to a forest arterial road or public highway.

**Local roads**—provide access for a specific resource use activity such as a timber sale or recreational site; other minor uses may be served.

**Log transfer facility (LTF)**—a facility that is used for transferring commercially harvested logs to and from a vessel or log raft, or for the formation of a log raft.

**Main trunk roads**—primary roads that are used repeatedly for forest access over long periods of time.

**Modular bridge**—a portable bridge constructed of components that can be readily assembled and disassembled for movement from one site to another.

**Pre-haul maintenance**—work performed prior to use of a road for timber harvest activities; Includes blading, shaping, and brush removal.

**Temporary roads**—short-term roads built for limited resource activity or other project needs.

**Traffic service levels**—traffic characteristics and operating conditions that are used in setting road maintenance levels.

## Affected Environment

The transportation system in the Cholmondeley Sound/Port Johnson Area consists of small isolated road systems scattered around the areas and located close to the shoreline. These road systems are under the jurisdiction of the Federal government or private interests. Timber harvest and related Forest Service management activities are the primary purposes for transportation development. These roads are isolated and do not connect with the greater Prince of Wales road system, any public road system, or community.

The Chasina Project Area contains no public transportation facilities (state highways, ferry dock, or airports). Currently, the project area has approximately 10.1 miles of open National Forest System roads.

The Forest Transportation System includes three types of roads: arterials, collectors, and locals. Arterial and collector roads are usually maintained for use by passenger vehicles and are usually designed with more emphasis on mobility than local roads. Most local roads are not designed or maintained to accommodate passenger vehicles.

The transportation system on the project area can be broken into three categories: (1) private roads, (2) Forest Service roads, and (3) log transfer facilities (LTFs).

There are approximately 56 miles of roads in the project area. Nineteen and one half miles are National Forest System roads. Since the roads do not connect to other existing road systems on Prince of Wales Island, they are not maintained for high clearance passenger

### Forest Transportation System

### 3 Environment and Effects

vehicles unless timber harvest operations are active. These single-lane, rough-rock roads are primarily designed for heavy off-highway logging trucks.

Traffic service levels portray the expected traffic characteristics for forest roads in the project area (see Appendix J, Transportation).

Table RF-1 displays the amount of miles of road by traffic service level and by alternative.

**Table RF-1**  
**Miles of Road By Traffic Service Level**

Alt.	Traffic Service Level C		Traffic Service Level D	
	Existing	Planned	Existing	Planned
1	0	0	19.5	0
2	0	0	19.5	5.7
3	0	0	19.5	16.7
4	0	0	19.5	3.2
5	0	0	19.5	13.5
6	0	0	19.5	31.0

#### **Maintenance Levels**

Maintenance levels are based on the anticipated use of the roads. Because roads in the project area are isolated, predominantly intermittent resource management use, and off-road vehicular and foot traffic is expected.

Applicable maintenance levels for the project area are as follows:

Maintenance Level 1 (Traffic Service Level D)—Roads are blocked by bridge removal, or other closure methods, and are monitored for resource protection.

Maintenance Level 2 (Traffic Service Level C)—Roads are maintained for high clearance vehicles and monitored for resource protection.

During resource management activities, the roads will be maintained commensurate with that activity. After completion of the management activity, these roads will revert back to the above maintenance levels unless the road management objective determines that the road is to have all drainage structures removed.

#### **Road Development**

Road development patterns are similar from one alternative to another due to the location of the resource being used, terrain characteristics, and development costs. Roads are located to minimize disturbance on the land, yet provide access to resources. Thus, road locations generally follow routes of favorable terrain where practicable.

#### **Construction and Reconstruction of Roads**

Three classes of road would be constructed as part of the proposed project, each class having different projected uses and construction standards.



Arterial and collector roads are generally mainline roads requiring higher standards and heavier investment to provide prolonged use. These roads are built to lower standards initially and upgraded as use intensifies. Thus, the logging operator may construct arterial and collector roads to low or medium standards depending on use.

Forest roads are designed to varying standards depending on use.

Local roads are generally single purpose roads resulting in lower design standards and usually cost less than arterial and collector roads.

Road reconstruction consists of complete roadbed repairs, major culvert or bridge replacement, roadbed realignment, and/or resurfacing. Reconstruction work will upgrade the roads for current intended use. All haul maintenance consists of ditch cleaning, roadside brush removal, roadbed surface blading, and installation of minor pipes.

### **Construction and Reconstruction of Major Drainage Structures**

Since the late 1970s, timber harvest activities have occurred in the project area. On both new and existing roads, modular bridges and permanent culverts will be used.

In situations where temporary roads cross Class III streams, temporary log stringer bridges may be used and removed upon completion of use. Temporary log stringer bridges may also be used on specified roads during road construction, prior to installation of the permanent structure, to facilitate timing and scheduling concerns.

### **Rock Quarry Disposition Locations**

Generally, rock borrow quarries are located every 1 to 2 miles along roads. The quarry location is determined by quality rock sources, haul distances, development costs, frequency of entry, and visual resource considerations. An allowance for rock quarries is included in the acres shown for right-of-way (ROW) clearing.

Some rock quarries are small, one-time uses, while others are expanded during future road building operations if quality rock is available.

Rock quarries anticipated for use on this project are shown on the road cards

Rock quarries with expansion potential will be retained for expansion, particularly in situations where potential roads and timber harvest may be developed in the future, or where numerous roads radiate out from a point near a centralized quarry. Rock quarries near the ends of the road system will be closed and reclaimed by spreading stockpiled overburden on the floor of the quarry.

Each quarry will be evaluated for disposition during the construction stage. Each quarry will be evaluated for the following: (1) availability of additional quality rock, (2) feasibility of expansion, and (3) future rock resource needs in the area.

## **Log Transfer Facilities (LTFs)**

The transportation of harvested timber in the Cholmondeley Area requires that the log bundles be removed from the log trucks, placed in the water, and rafted to a sort yard. Due to the isolated nature of the project area, this transportation will require the use of log transfer facilities (LTFs). LTF consolidation, by connecting to existing sites, is to be considered where feasible to minimize impacts to beach and marine zones. Consolidation would avoid the need to build LTFs on encumbered or State selected lands. Further analysis of LTFs is discussed in the Marine Environment and Log Transfer Facilities section of this chapter.

## Effects of the Alternatives

The effects of the transportation system on other resources are considered in the sections relating to those resources (soil, water, visuals, fisheries, marine environment, etc.). This section focuses on the effects of each alternative on the transportation system, and will be grouped into the following categories: (1) construction costs, (2) road development, and (3) access management.

Table RF-2 displays the transportation development costs by alternative.

**Table RF-2**  
**Transportation Development Costs (in MM\$) by Alternative**

	Alternative					
	1	2	3	4	5	6
New Construction Miles	0	5.7	16.7	3.2	13.5	31.0
Total Construction \$	0	1.0	2.9	0.5	2.5	5.5
Reconstruction Miles	0	8.7	8.4	8.7	8.7	8.7
Total Reconstruction \$	0	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1
Bridge Const./Reconstruction	0	1	1	1	1	1
Total Bridge Cost \$	0	0.04	0.04	0.04	0.04	0.04
<b>LTF Construction/Reconstruction</b>						
North Arm Moira LTF	0	0	0	0	0	0
W. Arm Cholmondeley LTF	0	0	0.25	0	0.25	0.25
Total LTF Construction \$	0	0	0.25	0	0.25	0.25
<b>Existing LTF</b>						
Lancaster Cove	0	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.10
<b>Total Construction and Reconstruction Cost</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1.24</b>	<b>3.39</b>	<b>0.74</b>	<b>3.00</b>	<b>5.99</b>

## Road Development

The position and spatial arrangement of resource areas and the amount of harvesting that would occur in new undeveloped areas requires changes in the road system. Proposed new roads are needed to harvest the timber volume associated with each alternative. A total of 180 miles of road would eventually be needed to harvest all commercial forest lands in the project area. The total planned roads are the roads needed to harvest the remaining timber volume in the rotation. Road development includes expansion of the current road system in all action alternatives.

Table RF-3  
Total Transportation Systems (Miles)

Alternative	Total Existing Roads	Existing Roads Used	Proposed Roads
2	19.5	8.7	5.7
3	19.5	8.4	16.7
4	19.5	8.7	3.21
5	19.5	8.7	13.5
6	19.5	8.7	31.0

Discrepancies may be found between tables due to rounding.

Expansion of the road system requires: (1) construction of new proposed roads, (2) reconstruction of some existing roads, (3) construction and reconstruction of varying types of major drainage structures, and (4) construction coordination activities with other resource needs.

### Construction and Reconstruction of Roads

The development of roads occurs in all action alternatives. Alternatives 3 and 6 develop the most miles and highest costs, while Alternative 2 develops the least miles (12) and the lowest costs. The level of road development is not directly proportional to the level of harvest in each alternative, because of differing spatial arrangements of harvest units between alternatives.

Table RF-2 displays the miles of new road and major drainage structure costs.

### Reconstruction

Reconstruction of existing roads is associated with all action alternatives. Activities range from major realignment and bridge replacement to minor blading and shaping of the existing road from proposed harvest units to the existing and new LTFs.

Table RF-2 displays the miles and cost of heavy reconstruction for all alternatives. Pre-haul maintenance is not displayed as it is assumed all roads require some minor surface blading, ditch cleaning, and brushing prior to commencement of log hauling operations.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Construction Coordination with Fish and Wildlife

### Road Connections to Eliminate LTF Sites

If road connections between LTF tributary areas are feasible and practical, LTF sites can be eliminated. It is feasible to connect proposed Port Johnson to the existing LTF at Lancaster Cove.

Connection of the road from the Port Johnson area to the Lancaster Cove road system would eliminate the need for the North Arm Moira LTF. The road connection would construct a 2.8 mile section of road, providing access to additional resources for future management activities. The road connection and the construction of the LTF at North Arm Moira are considered in Alternatives 3 and 6. The cost difference between the two options is approximately \$140,000; the road connection costing more than construction of the LTF and associated roads. Construction of the tie road is recommended due to the relatively small difference in cost compared to the benefits of access to additional future resources, administrative access during management activities and post sale management, and a decrease in impacts on the marine environment by eliminating a LTF.

Road connections to LTFs on private lands were considered, but not analyzed in depth due to the high cost of road connections and/or the cost of upgrading the sites to current standards and obtaining permits.

Helicopter options to eliminate LTFs are discussed in the Silviculture and Timber section of this chapter.

### Construction Near Eagle Nest Trees

Road construction is not anticipated to be within 330 feet of any inventoried eagle nest trees in the project area.

In accordance with an agreement between the U.S. Forest Service and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, specific criteria concerning road construction within one-half mile of an active eagle's nest is implemented to mitigate disturbance to eagles. There are new roads and reconstruction planned within the one-half mile zone of known eagle nests on the project area. Nest locations are listed in the Wildlife Section of Chapter 2—Mitigation.

### Construction Near Streams

Road construction requires numerous stream crossings. Many of the streams are habitat for various fish species. It is necessary to minimize impacts on these streams to protect salmon fry and eggs. Maintaining fish passage characteristics and scheduling construction activities (fish timing) around fish movements are methods used in mitigating impacts of roads on streams.

Some stream crossings have been identified as needing fish timing restrictions for construction of structures, to minimize impacts on fish eggs and fry. Generally, these restrictions can be accommodated through planning and scheduling of the construction activities. In many cases, additional costs would be incurred to accommodate the timing restrictions. Such costs would include additional equipment mobilization and demobilization, increased construction actions for mitigation, and increased construction delays. The number of crossings, the acres of buffers affected by road crossings, and the number of crossings with fish timing and/or passage restrictions are displayed in Table RF-6 and RF-7. It is estimated that approximately 250 feet of road is involved in crossing a Class I or II stream and buffer with 200 feet for the buffer crossing and 50 feet for the stream channel crossing. Class III crossing miles and acres are not shown.



**Table RF-4**  
**Number of Proposed Stream Crossings**

Stream Crossing	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Class I	0	4	6	0	5	9
Class II	0	0	3	0	3	5
<b>Total Crossings</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>14</b>

**Table RF-5**  
**Stream Crossings by Number of Crossings, Miles, and Acres Affected\***

Alternative	No. of Crossings	Miles	Acres
2	4	.19	1.38
3	9	.52	3.79
4	0	0.10	0.6
5	8	.38	2.76
6	14	.66	4.82

\* Road clearing width is estimated to be an average of 60' wide .

The fish timing and passage crossings for the project area are displayed in Table RF-8.

**Table RF-6**  
**Number of Crossings with Fish Timing and/or Passage Restrictions\***

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Timing and Passage	0	4	11	2	8	14
Timing	0	4	11	6	10	17

\*Numbers in this table differ from previous tables due to timing restrictions on Class III streams.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Road Construction Within TTRA and Stream Zones

Roads will be located within stream zones where it is the environmentally preferred choice and where it is consistent with safety regulations. When these roads are designated on the ground, care will be taken to keep as much of the road as possible outside TTRA and stream zones. In most cases, the limiting factor will be the type of terrain adjacent to the various stream zones which will govern how much of a given road segment can be located outside these zones.

## Proposed Activities on State Land Selections

No road or LTF development will take place within State lands.

## Access Management

In all the proposed action alternatives, access to the road system is by boat or float plane. Due to these limits, vehicular use is expected to be negligible except for some use of off-highway vehicles. Administrative activities include salvage and other post sale silvicultural activities.

## Road Disposition

Roads are closed or blocked for numerous reasons including fish and wildlife protection, public safety, and inadequate maintenance funding. It may be necessary to close or block roads or portions of roads to use by specific vehicle types. Roads under Forest Service jurisdiction can be closed by authority of CFR 36, ch.11, parts 212.7 and 261. Road closure orders will be posted at the Craig Ranger District office.

Some main trunk roads will be kept open to meet long-term objectives. Most secondary roads will be blocked and seeded to retard alder growth. Maintenance of these will consist of monitoring road and drainage structures for functional and environmental conditions. Permanent drainage structures will be installed to meet long-term access objectives; however, maintenance levels fluctuate in response to changing uses. During periods of limited use, maintenance standards are sufficient to provide only for public safety and resource protection.

The remaining local roads, except those with bridges, will be left open. The bridges will be removed and used in other locations. The local roads being left open will not be maintained for vehicular traffic; however, drainage structures will be monitored for functional condition. In general, these roads will be blocked organically resulting in closure to vehicular traffic. Maintenance Level 1 will be applied to these roads. Active maintenance will still be performed after vegetative closure

Temporary roads will not be retained on the permanent transportation system. These roads will be closed by removing structures, restoring streambank grade, constructing water bars, and revegetating in accordance with NFMA. When structures are removed, stream banks shall be restored to the natural contours of the original stream banks. All disturbed areas and the entire road prism will be seeded with the appropriate grass seed mixture.

Figure RF-1 illustrates the roads in the project area to remain open with limited maintenance and the roads to be closed or blocked. The summary of road management objectives, containing the specific disposition of all existing and proposed roads, is in Appendix E. For new roads proposed for this project, road management objectives are also listed on the road data cards.

After construction of roads for harvesting timber, the Forest Service may close or block roads for protection of other resources and/or for economic reasons. The Forest Service does not harvest all available timber that the roads access, as other land owners usually opt to do, so road closure according to Alaska Forest Resources Protection Regulations (AFRPR) definition has an adverse effect on streams and other resources when multiple entries are required. Roads proposed to be closed or blocked, by the Forest Service definition, are to be considered "inactive" by AFRPR definition. All roads not meeting the AFRPR definition of closure will be monitored and maintained, if necessary, after completion of each sale.

Figure RF-1  
Roads Open and Scheduled for Closure



## Marine Environment, Log Transfer Sites, and Related Facilities

### Key Terms

**A-Frame LTF**—log transfer facility system which consists of a stationary mast with a falling boom for lifting logs from trucks to water. This system is generally located on a shot rock embankment with a vertical bulkhead to access deep water, accommodating operations at all tidal periods.

**Low-angle ramp LTF**—log transfer facility system which consists of a drive-down slide ramp with slide rails for pushing log bundles into the water.

**Log transfer facility (LTF)**—a facility that is used for transferring commercially harvested logs to and from a vessel or log raft, or the formation of a log raft.

**Marine benthic habitat**—the area occupied by the aggregate of organisms living at or on the bottom of a water body.

## Affected Environment

### Marine Environment

Southeast Alaska's coastline consists of approximately 30,000 miles of tidal shoreline, roughly 60 percent of the total Alaskan coast. Within this region occurs a great diversity of habitats that collectively account for the complexity of Southeast Alaska's estuary and tidal environments.

The marine environment encompasses a wide variety of ecosystems. The intertidal and subtidal marine environments are subject to effects from log transfer and storage facilities; these are points of concentrated activity associated with the marine transportation of logs. The preferred sites for log transfer facilities (LTFs), log storage areas, camp settlements, and anchorages are in deep bays or along straits or channels. These areas are preferred because the deeper water and stronger currents flush out bark and debris that may enter the water resulting in less effects on marine life. Other marine areas are not addressed here because they are not expected to be affected by activities associated with the timber harvest of this project. Activities outside the areas of concentration are widely dispersed. Any potential effects would be short term and/or diluted below detectable thresholds.

The shallow marine waters and associated mud flats and estuaries found in the protected coves and bays provide habitat for some important species such as Dungeness crab and juvenile salmon. They are part of a complex and dynamic ecosystem that includes shrimp, flatfish, marine worms, echinoderms, sponges, sea anemones, shellfish, plankton, marine algae, and other organisms.

### Log Transfer Facilities (LTFs)

The transportation of harvested timber on the project area requires that the logs must be trucked or flown to the ocean, transferred to the water or barges at a LTF and towed to a sort yard for sorting. They are then moved to processing sites like the sawmill at Ward Cove or the sawmill at Metlakatla.

There are existing LTF sites on private lands within the project area. These sites were considered for use, but not analyzed in detail due to the amount of new construction required



to tie the project road system to the private road system, and/or the cost of upgrading the private facilities to meet current environmental standards.

There is one existing Forest Service LTF permitted within the project area that was constructed in 1987. This LTF has been modified to meet the current State and Federal permit requirements.

Figure MAR-1 and Table MAR-1 display the locations of existing and proposed LTFs in the project area.

**Figure MAR-1**  
**Existing and Proposed LTFs for Each Alternative**



# 3 Environment and Effects

Table MAR-1  
Existing and Potential LTF Locations

Location	Site #	Latitude	Longitude
Lancaster Cove	1	55° 05' 45" N	132° 05' 45" W
W. Arm Cholmondeley	6	55° 14' 45" N	132° 18' 45" W

## Log Transfer Methods

Four log transfer methods are considered in this analysis. These are: (1) low-angle ramp with rafting facilities, (2) A-frame type entry device with rafting facilities, (3) a dry land to barge transfer facility, and (4) helicopter placement of logs directly into the ocean or onto a barge.

The low-angle ramp method consists of a shot-rock ramp sloped at 10 to 20 percent grade with wood or steel rails on the ramp surface. Log bundles are walked down the ramp into the water by use of a rubber-tired log loader.

The A-frame method generally consists of a stationary mast with a falling boom for lifting logs from trucks to water. This system is generally located on a shot rock embankment with a vertical bulkhead to access deep water, accommodating operations at all tidal periods.

A modified version of this method uses a stationary A-frame boom with sloping guide rails placed on the bulkhead to guide the logs to deep water at lower tidal levels. Both A-frame systems allow controlled entry of logs into the water.

The land-to-barge transfer system requires a deep water bulkhead for a barge mooring facility. Drafts of up to 25 feet are required for barge operations. Logs are loaded directly onto the barge by use of a loader. Barges can also be loaded with logs floating in the water by use of on-board cranes.

The helicopter transfer of logs to water transportation modes consists of moving logs from the harvest area directly to the water. The logs are placed in a containment area (bag boom), then moved by boom boat to the raft or sort yard. A modification of this system is to fly logs directly to a barge.

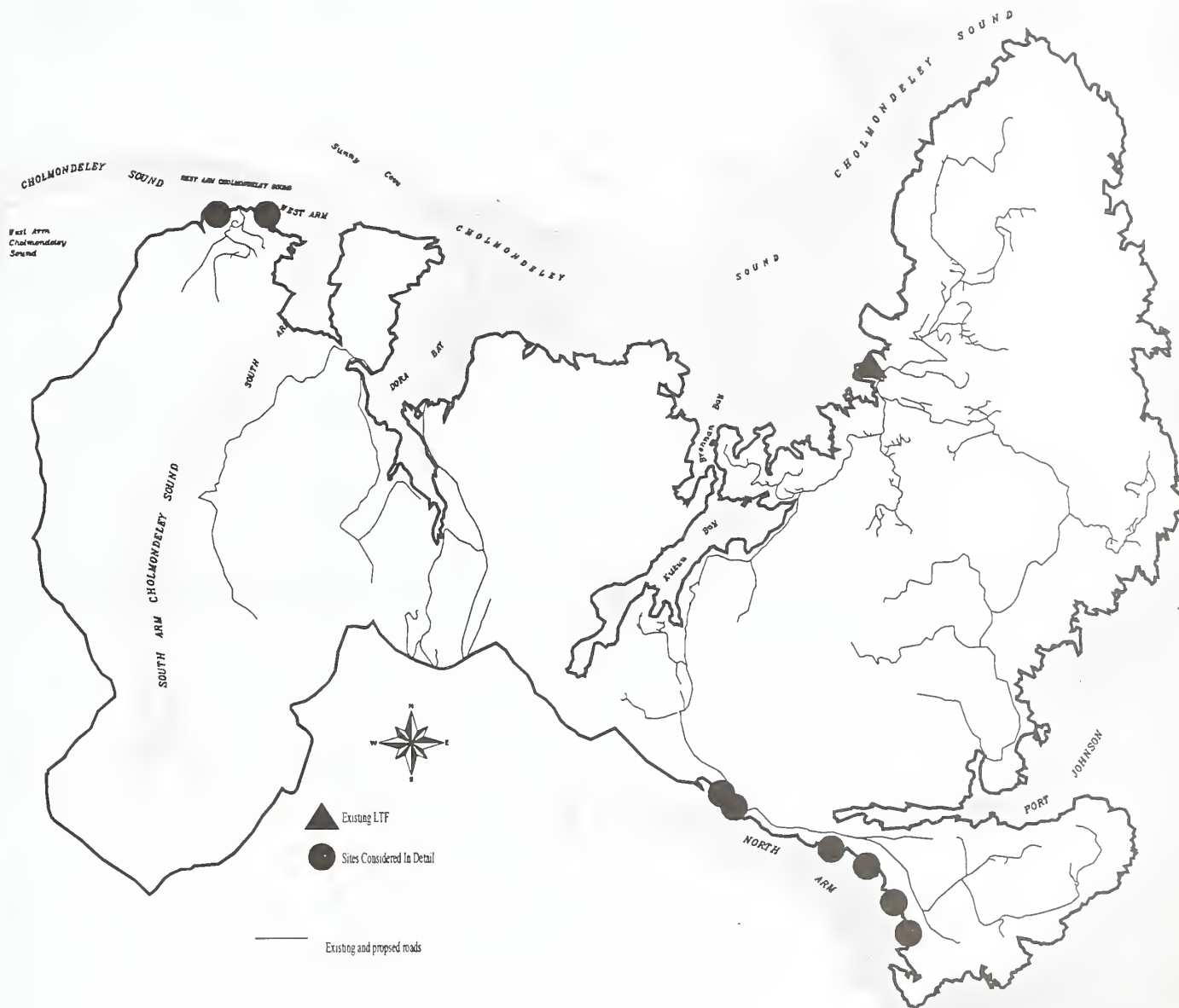
Each LTF requires a log transfer area, a small airplane and boat dock, an equipment off-loading ramp, and a log raft storage area. These facilities are generally located within close proximity of the LTF to reduce costs and retain impacts within a localized area.

## Sites Considered in Detail

There were nine sites considered in detail; others were eliminated for terrain or environmental reasons.

Lancaster Cove is an existing, permitted barge loading facility that would access timber from the Lancaster Cove-Chasina Point and Port Johnson areas. This site has been impacted by past timber harvest activities, both on the uplands and in the marine environment. This site was considered biologically acceptable by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Marine Fisheries Service as an A-frame lift-off system when originally considered for an LTF. Prior to construction of the LTF, the permit was changed to a barge loading facility. Use of the LTF as a barge loading facility is planned for this project. This site meets the Alaska Timber Task Force Siting Guidelines for LTFs.

Figure MAR-2  
Sites Considered in Detail



# 3 Environment and Effects

North Arm Moira (site no. 4N) was a proposed site, in the Draft EIS, that would access timber from the Port Johnson-North Arm Moira area. This site is not being considered in the preferred alternative for the Final EIS. The site was considered biologically acceptable by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Marine Fisheries Service. The North Arm Moira site would be developed as a low angle ramp. This site meets the Alaska Timber Task Force Guidelines and may be within a forested wetland.

West Arm, Cholmondeley Sound is a proposed site that would access timber from the east side of Cannery Creek in the West Arm of Cholmondeley. The site is considered biologically acceptable by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Marine Fisheries Service. This site would be developed as an A-frame lift-off system. The site meets the Alaska Timber Task Force Siting Guidelines for LTFs.

## Logging Camps

The Chasina Project Area has suitable upland areas for land camps, and includes several protected bays and coves suitable for float camps.

### Float Camps

Some historical and new float camp sites are expected to be used during implementation of this project. The number and locations of the sites will depend upon the number of logging and road construction contractors engaged in implementing the project. Additionally, camp configuration and type, such as barge or log floats will influence the location. The operator will be required to obtain required state permits for camps.

### Land Camps

Some previously used land-based camp sites, and potentially some new sites, are expected to be used in implementation of this project. As with float camps, camp configuration will influence the location.

The contractor/operator will be responsible for obtaining appropriate State and Federal permits for camps.

Solid waste disposal will not be allowed on National Forest land.

The contractor/operator will be required to submit plans to the Forest Service for handling of any hazardous wastes associated with the operations, including shop areas, land camps, landings, fueling areas, etc..



## Effects of the Alternatives

### Log Transfer Facilities

The number of LTFs needed to harvest the timber scheduled in all action alternatives varies. Table MAR-2 displays the LTFs required for each alternative.

Table MAR-2  
LTFs Required for the Alternatives

LTFs Required	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Existing Sites	1	1	1	1	1
Proposed Sites	0	1	0	1	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>

### Effects on Types of LTFs

LTFs can be either low-angle ramps or bulkhead type structures used for transferring logs from trucks to saltwater. Appendix E has a thorough evaluation of proposed LTFs in accordance with the Alaska Timber Task Force guidelines and in accordance with section 404(b)(1) of the Clean Water Act.

Two general types of facilities and their associated effects on the environment are analyzed. The first type of LTF is a low-angle ramp. This facility varies in direct impact to the intertidal area with rock riprap and fill from 0.05 acres to 0.5 acres.

The second type of facility considered in this analysis is a bulkhead facility with a lift-off system. The lift-off system may be either a single or double A-frame. The type of facility ranges in direct impact to the intertidal area with bulkhead construction and fill from 0.1 acres to 0.25 acres. Barge LTFs are considered a bulkhead type facility. Barge LTFs generally require a longer, slightly wider rock embankment area at the seaward end of the bulkhead, thus requiring filling in a larger intertidal area. Barge LTFs do not require a rafting area.

Of the two designs, the ramp design is approximately one-third the cost to construct, maintain, and operate. Maintenance of a timbered bulkhead facility would require replacement at 10-year intervals, thereby substantially increasing the costs of future harvests (Faris and Vaughan 1985). Concrete bulkheads can be substituted for timbered bulkhead structures, also at a higher cost. Table MAR-3 displays the construction and reconstruction costs associated with each LTF.

Another form of log transfer from land to water oriented transportation is aerial transport of logs from the harvest area directly to water or a barge. This method eliminates the need for truck haul and road development. However, this system is economically prohibitive except in specific situations.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Table MAR-3  
LTF Construction/Reconstruction Costs

	Transfer Method	Transfer Equipment Cost	Site Development Cost	Total Cost
<b>Site Construction:</b>				
West Arm Cholmondeley	A-frame	250,000*	250,000	<b>250,000</b>
<b>Reconstruction:</b>				
Lancaster Cove	Barge	0	100,000	<b>100,000</b>

\* Equipment costs not used in analysis.

#### Effects of LTFs on the Marine Benthic Habitat

During the transfer of logs from land to water, bark is sloughed off and may be deposited on the ocean bottom; bark also is sloughed off by agitation by wind and waves while the logs are in rafts. If the bark accumulates on the bottom, it can diminish habitat for bottom-dwelling crustaceans and molluscs, as well as hamper underwater vegetation used as food and rearing sites for marine fish and other organisms. All LTFs in the project area have been designed to maximize flushing suspended bark away from the LTF area to the open sea before it can accumulate on the bottom. In 1985, it was determined that discharge of bark into the water at an LTF required a National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit.

New LTFs are sited in accordance with the Alaska Timber Task Force Siting Guidelines and section 404(B)(1) of the Clean Water Act to mitigate the effects of LTFs on other resources and ecosystems. The existing LTFs generally meet the above State guidelines. LTFs will affect the marine benthic habitat (plants and animals that live in and on the bottom). Marine benthic habitat impacts are expected to be as follows:

Structural Embankment: estimated 0.23 acres affected per site  
 Site Bark Deposition: 1.0 acre zone of deposition per site  
 Raft Storage Bark Deposition: unknown

The marine benthic environment impacts are displayed in Table MAR-4.

**Table MAR-4**  
**Marine Benthic Impacts by Alternatives**

Category	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Existing Number of Sites	1	1	1	1	1	1
Proposed Number of Sites	0	0	1	0	1	1
<b>Acres Effected by Structural Embankment</b>						
<b>Total Number of Sites</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>
Existing	.23	.23	.23	.23	.23	.23
Proposed	0	0	.23	0	.23	.23
<b>Total</b>	<b>.23</b>	<b>.23</b>	<b>.46</b>	<b>.23</b>	<b>.46</b>	<b>.46</b>
<b>Estimated Acres Effected by Bark</b>						
Existing	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Proposed	0	0	1.0	0	1.0	1.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>2.0</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>2.0</b>	<b>2.0</b>

### Structural Embankment

All LTF types occupy approximately the same amount of bottom area. For instance, the low-angle ramp with a 10 percent grade, extends approximately 250 feet out into the water on a moderately sloped beach. This system is thus long and narrow. The A-frame and barge systems use more shoreline and do not protrude out into the water as much as the float off-push in system. All systems cover about the same bottom area but in different configurations.

### Site Bark Deposition

Two publications describe some of the general effects of LTFs and log storage on the marine benthic habitat. Sedell and Duval (1985) summarize the information available on the effects log transport and storage have on marine resources and fisheries. Faris and Vaughn (1985) examined log transportation and log storage in Southeast Alaska.

Shultz and Berg (1976) examined 32 existing LTF sites and found that 19 had bark accumulation, 8 had no bark accumulation, and 5 had traces of bark. The extent of bark accumulation ranged from 0 to 9.0 acres for 31 of the 32 sites. The 32nd site had accumulation of 182 acres that could not solely be attributed to log transfer activities. Faris and Vaughn (1985) reexamined the original data from Shultz and Berg (1976) and found that the average accumulation size was 1.96 acres for all sites excluding the 182-acre site. They speculate that bark and debris accumulation may be decreasing over time due to currents. No estimate was made on the length of time before bark accumulation was completely eliminated.

### 3 Environment and Effects

Faris and Vaughn (1985) also examined the extent of total damage to the marine benthic habitat in Southeast Alaska. Their results indicate that from the 90 currently permitted sites, a total of 176 acres would be affected (using the 1.96 acre average). This is .02 percent of the total estuarine area that is less than 60 feet deep. Moreover, when they examined all of the potential area of bark and debris accumulation from all permitted and proposed sites in Southeast Alaska, including all sites considered in the KPC Long-term Sale 1989-1994 EIS, they found that a total of 317 acres would be affected. This is 0.09 percent of the total estuarine area that is less than 60 feet deep in all of Southeast Alaska. This result corresponds with the conclusions of Sedell and Duval (1985) that the evidence of damage on important marine populations (bivalves, crabs and salmonids) was inconclusive because of the small area of impact due to log transfer facilities. This evidence resulted in development of the current siting guidelines (e.g., avoiding crab habitat, shallow areas at the heads of bay, etc.) and suggests that impacts would be minimal.

The major effect of bark and debris accumulation is that little neck clams and bay mussels have been shown to be eliminated when as little as 4 to 5 inches of bark accumulates (Freese and O'Clair 1987). Further, Colin and Ellis (1979) reported molluscs and several polychaetes were excluded by bark debris thicker than 2.5 cm, and that effects of bark may last several decades. From this evidence, it can be assumed that other plants and animals that live in and on the bottom would probably be at similar risk.

Concentrations of chemical leachates from bark have been shown to be toxic to salmon fry, crabs, and clams (O'Clair 1983). However, these toxic substances can settle in saltwater; therefore, these substances do not appear to be a major problem in open water where good circulation exists (Sedell and Duval 1985). The Alaska Timber Task Force Siting Guidelines for LTFs (Appendix E) attempts to mitigate the potential effects of bark dispersal and toxicity by: (1) locating LTFs in areas having the least productive inter-tidal and sub-tidal zones; (2) avoiding sensitive habitats; (3) avoiding shallow water; and (4) providing that LTFs should be located along or adjacent to straits, channels, or deep bays where currents are strong enough to disperse sunken or floating wood debris. Currently, all active LTFs receive a yearly underwater diving and sampling transect as required by the Environmental Protection Agency.

Certain dissolved substances (hydrogen sulfide and ammonia) recently have been shown to occur in open spaces between pieces of bark accumulated on the bottom (O'Clair and Freese 1988). O'Clair and Freese also note that it is not clear whether other toxic substances not measured in the study occur within bark accumulations. These substances do not enter the water above the bark. However, if Dungeness crabs burrow into the bark deposit, it has been demonstrated that their reproductive ability, eating habits, and overall survival can be affected. It should be noted that this type of effect has been demonstrated in only one bark accumulation field (Rowan Bay LTF) and that, in general, Dungeness crabs were not found in bark accumulations at a number of other LTF locations. It is not known whether these effects would occur for other burrowing crab species. Since king crabs do not burrow, it is not clear whether this species is affected by bark and debris accumulation at LTF sites.

#### Raft Storage Bark Deposition

The other potential effects associated with LTFs are from log rafts and log storage in saltwater. The area under a log raft may be affected by bark accumulations with effects similar to but not as concentrated as those discussed for LTFs. In addition, if the raft is stored in a bay or cove for a long period of time, marine algae may be affected by shading. Occasionally, rafts stored in shallow depths may ground on the bottom. This would cause mechanical disruption or compaction of inter- and subtidal bottom habitats. This would be a short-duration effect because recolonization would begin shortly after the raft refloated, unless the site was repeatedly used and log rafts frequently grounded. The Alaska Timber Task Force (ATTF) guidelines require a minimum of 40 feet of water at low tide in log rafting



areas. Proposed and existing log storage areas in the project area are deep enough to meet the ATTF Guidelines.

## Barge LTFs

Barge LTFs probably would have less effect on the marine environment than rafting LTFs, although no studies are available for comparison. The rock embankment associated with the facility would be longer and slightly wider at the seaward end. The additional length and width would eliminate a larger intertidal area than a rafting LTF breakwater. The longer length and wider seaward end in deeper water would require dredging and filling in the subtidal area. Bark and debris would accumulate only in a small area around the extreme seaward end of the facility.

## Helicopter to Log Boom or Barge LTF

Helicopter to log boom or barge LTF would probably have less effect on the marine environment. Helicopter to log boom would be more impacting than to a barge. However, the log boom can be located in deep water to avoid bark deposition and embankment in the higher value shallow areas. Helicopter to barge would eliminate bark deposition and embankment in the marine environment.

## Fisheries

The effects of LTFs on fisheries resources have not been quantified. It is unlikely that any effects on returning adult fish would occur unless a LTF to raft storage area was immediately adjacent to an anadromous fish stream and caused blockage of entry into the stream. Juvenile pink and chum salmon that spend several months, immediately after out-migration, in protected bays and coves would be more likely to be affected by activities in the marine environment. These small fish are highly mobile as they actively feed on marine invertebrates. Some of their preferred food items live on the surface of the bottom. Bark accumulation and the area under the embankment of a standard breakwater eliminates a small portion of the habitat of those food items but is unlikely to cause measurable adverse consequences.

It has been hypothesized that the breakwater usually associated with a LTF structure, regardless of whether a raft or barge, can cause greater mortality of pink and chum juveniles because they are forced to move into deeper water where more predators consume them. It is not known whether this is a major source of mortality in addition to the naturally low survival rate attributed to early marine life stage of juvenile pink and chum salmon. Because barge LTFs require longer breakwaters, the probability of this effect may be increased.

There is no formal documentation that LTF structures or activities associated with their use, conflict with commercial fishing near the facility. If a facility were located in a small bay or cove, it is possible that there could be some difficulty maneuvering around log rafts or moored barges to get to favored fishing sites. No adverse consequences on commercial fishing, subsistence uses, or marine resources are anticipated as the result of LTF location.

Camps associated with a LTF site can cause additional use of fisheries and marine sources. There is no data currently available on the amount of additional use occurring at various camp locations in the study area. The competition for resources at or near logging camp locations would probably increase. There is currently little or no information to indicate that resource allocation problems have occurred as the result of a logging camp. The Board of Fisheries and Game can control the amount of harvest by setting bag limits, shortening season lengths, or by instituting a complete closure of a fishery. If resource problems arise because of increased resource pressure due to a logging camp, the Forest Service would aid the Alaska Department of Fish and Game in attempting to resolve the problem.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Wildlife

From a wildlife perspective, there are two types of effects associated with a LTF and camp. First, there is the potential loss of wildlife habitat due to clearing for the camp, sort yard, and associated facilities. The second possible disturbance to wildlife is a result of increased human activity associated with the camp.

The amount of habitat lost is relatively minor. Whenever possible, camps and sort yard facilities are located away from the highest quality habitat. The differences between a slide facility and barge facility are inconsequential. The objectives are to avoid eagle nest sites and estuarine habitat.

The overall effects of disturbance of wildlife-use patterns are usually minor. Most wildlife species generally adapt to increased human use quickly.

Human activity associated with the camps and facilities may affect wildlife. This includes disturbance of wildlife-use patterns, increased harvest, and increased bear-human encounters.

An increase in the number of people in an area would generally increase the use of and competition for wildlife resources. However, actual harvest levels can be monitored and regulated. The influx of additional people into an area appears to have a greater potential to affect the existing users of the area than wildlife species. Wildlife populations may be affected by the LTFs or logging camps proposed in any of the alternatives. For additional information on the effects of the proposed alternatives on existing users, see the ANILCA, Section 810, Subsistence Evaluation and Finding in the Subsistence section of this chapter.

## Visual Resources

The large size, linear bold shape, and saltwater location of LTFs generally dominate the landscape when viewed within a foreground distance. Their relatively low profile, however, helps to mitigate the visual impacts when viewed from a distance. The existing LTFs used in the project share similar components that offer the same visual impacts. There may be need of a sort/storage area for logs at newly constructed sites that are designated as low-angle ramps. Clearings for sort yards and logging camps of approximately the same size and located on fairly level or gently sloping sites help to absorb much of the visual contrasts when viewed from saltwater. It is expected that most camps will consist of floating camps. Accordingly, upland development will consist of maintenance shops and fuel storage systems. These facilities will have less impact as they develop and will have less permanent disturbance. For more information, see the Scenic Resources section of this chapter.

## Long-term Productivity

This section compares the short-term effects of developing LTFs in the intertidal area to long-term accessibility (for timber management) and productivity in the area. Without a means to transfer logs into saltwater, the long-term opportunity to manage the uplands for commercial timber is lost. If LTFs were not approved by permitting agencies, the volume tributary to those facilities would not be available to meet commitments to the Ketchikan Area timber sale program.

It is assumed that other resources would have similar management opportunities with or without access to the uplands from saltwater (by an LTF). Table MAR-5 compares the number of acres potentially affected by each LTF to the number of acres of suitable timber tributary for each location.

Short-term use of 3 acres of estuarine habitat would provide access to approximately 13,300 acres of land suitable for timber production. This roughly equates to 372 MMBF to be available to meet commitments to the Ketchikan Area timber sale program.

Table MAR-5

**Comparison of Short-term Uses to Long-term Productivity for the Estuarine System**

LTF Name	VCUs Served by LTF	Acres Estimated Impact	Acres of Potential Harvest 1998-2004*	Acres of Future Harvest 2004-2140**
Lancaster Cove	677, 679, 680, 681, 682	1	3,651	5,200
W. Arm Cholmondeley	674 and 678	1	574	310

\* Based on Alternative 6.

\*\* Based on Logging System Transportation Analysis (LSTA) minus dropped units.





## Other Environmental Considerations

### Probable Adverse Environmental Effects that Cannot be Avoided

Implementation of any action alternative would result in some adverse environmental effects that cannot be effectively mitigated or avoided if the proposed action is to take place. The interdisciplinary procedure used to identify specific harvest units and roads was designed to eliminate or lessen the significant adverse consequences. In addition, the application of standards and guidelines, BMPs, mitigation measures, and a monitoring plan are intended to further limit the extent, severity, and duration of these effects. The specific environmental effects of the alternatives were discussed earlier in this chapter, and mitigation measures are described in Chapter 2. Although the formulation of alternatives included avoidance of potentially adverse environmental effects, some adverse impacts to the environment, which cannot be completely mitigated, may occur.

Although standards and guidelines, BMPs, and monitoring plans are designed to prevent significant adverse effects to soil and water, the potential for adverse impacts does exist. Sediment production would occur as long as roads are being built and timber is harvested. Sediment would be produced by surface erosion, channel erosion, and mass movement.

Disturbance, displacement, or loss of fish and wildlife may occur as a consequence of habitat loss and increased human activity in the project area. New road construction and the human activities associated with new access to areas previously unroaded would result in impacts to fish and wildlife. Improved access into areas that previously had limited roads would have similar effects. The proposed activities would increase competition for subsistence resources.

Ground-disturbing activities could temporarily increase sediment loads in some streams. This could displace fish, reduce anadromous and resident fish reproductive success, and alter aquatic invertebrate populations.

Both the amount and distribution of mature and old-growth stands would be reduced through implementation of any action alternative. The rate and severity of adverse impacts varies by alternative. Because some wildlife species rely on habitat conditions provided by old-growth stands, the reduction in the populations of some wildlife species could be expected. As old-growth and mature timber stands are converted to young even-aged stands, the capability of the project area to provide optimal habitat for old-growth dependent species would be reduced.

Timber harvest and road construction in areas that are currently unroaded would alter natural characteristics of these areas. This would modify the recreational experiences that are offered by these areas. Both Primitive and Semi-Primitive recreation opportunities will be lost by these actions. In addition, these development activities would result in a loss of opportunity to consider these areas in future revisions of the Forest Plan for designation as wilderness, roadless areas, research natural areas, or for other purposes requiring natural characteristics.

The natural landscape would appear visually altered by timber harvest, particularly where logging activity is highly visible from travel routes. These adverse effects would eventually be reduced by growth of vegetation. Other impacts on the natural appearance of the landscape include roads and structures which are highly visible despite efforts to blend them with landforms and mitigate the effect by landscaping.

The intensity and duration of these effects depends on the alternative and the mitigation measures applied to protect the resources. Most unavoidable effects are expected to be short term (usually less than 2 to 5 years). In all cases, the effects would be managed to comply with established legal limits, such as maximum time for regeneration. To reduce these effects, monitoring procedures and mitigation measures have been planned for those areas



## Relationship Between Short-term Uses and Long-term Productivity

which may be affected. Specific mitigation measures are documented in the unit and road cards.

Some adverse effects are of a transitory type. For example, air quality may diminish on a recurring, though temporary, basis due to road construction, timber harvest, timber hauling, and recreation traffic on untreated roads, and due to the operation of internal combustion engines. Where they occur, these activities may have localized temporary adverse effects on air quality.

All alternatives would come under the mandate of the Multiple Use and Sustained Yield Act of 1960, which requires the Forest Service to manage Forest System lands for multiple uses (including timber, recreation, fish and wildlife, range, and watershed). All renewable resources are to be managed in such a way that they are available for future generations. The harvesting and use of standing timber can be considered a short-term use of a renewable resource. As a renewable resource, trees can be reestablished and grown again if the productivity of the land is not impaired.

Maintaining the productivity of the land is a complex, long-term objective. All alternatives protect the long-term productivity of the project area through the use of specific standards and guidelines, mitigative measures, and BMPs. Long-term productivity could change as a result of various management activities proposed in the alternatives. Timber management activities would have direct, indirect, and cumulative effects on the economic, social, and biological environment.

Soil and water are two key factors in ecosystem productivity, and these resources would be protected in all alternatives to avoid damage that could take many decades to rectify. Sustained yield of timber, wildlife habitat, and other renewable resources all rely on maintaining long-term soil productivity. Quality and quantity of water from the project area may fluctuate as a result of short-term uses, but no long-term effects to the water resource are expected to occur as a result of timber management activities.

All alternatives would provide the fish and wildlife habitat necessary to contribute to the maintenance of viable, well-distributed populations of existing native and desired non-native vertebrate species. The abundance and diversity of wildlife species depends on the quality, quantity, and distribution of habitat, whether used for breeding, feeding, or resting. Management Indicator Species (MIS) are used to represent the habitat requirements of all fish and wildlife species found in the project area. By managing habitats and populations of indicator species, the other species associated with the same habitat would also benefit. The alternatives provide standards, guidelines, and mitigation measures for maintaining long-term habitat and species productivity. The alternatives vary in the risk presented to both wildlife habitat and habitat capability.

Timber rotations are normally over a 100-year or longer rotation, depending upon site quality. To ensure adequate production of timber, harvest has been scheduled to allow the earliest cut stands to mature into merchantable timber before the planned harvest of original stands is complete. When the first rotation is complete, mature timber stands would be harvested again on a new rotation. Management of the timber resource on these rotations could affect long-term productivity, depending on the intensity of silvicultural practices. Projected timber rotation lengths are not anticipated to affect long-term productivity. Mitigation measures are planned under all the alternatives to ensure future availability of other renewable resources as well.

Opportunities for dispersed recreation use, including hiking, camping, and fishing, would be maintained and increased for future generations. The setting in which these activities occur varies by alternative, but the long-term potential for the project area to provide a spectrum of recreation opportunities would be maintained in all alternatives.

# 3 Environment and Effects

## Irreversible Commitments of Resources

Irreversible commitments are decisions affecting non-renewable resources such as soils, wetlands, unroaded areas, and cultural resources. Such commitments are considered irreversible because the resource has deteriorated to the point that renewal can occur only over a long period of time or at a great expense or because the resource has been destroyed or removed.

The construction of arterial and collector roads, to provide access to the Forest, is an irreversible action because of the time it takes for a constructed road to revert to natural conditions. Irreversible actions also include the associated rock quarries which are developed in conjunction with these roads. Alternative 1 would have no new road construction, while Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 would construct roads and quarries to harvest units as described under the Roads and Facilities section of this chapter. This will require that up to 60 acres of ground be irreversibly committed to rock quarries and up to 900 thousand cubic yards of rock fill to be placed for road construction and reconstruction.

Old-growth habitat lost due to logging can be considered an irreversible effect since it is not expected to regain old-growth characteristics for at least 150 years. Alternative 1 would not harvest any old growth, while Alternatives 2 through 6 would harvest old-growth timber as described in the Silviculture, Timber, Wildlife, and Biodiversity sections of this chapter.

Loss of soil due to erosion and mass failures is an irreversible commitment of resources. However due to the incorporation of BMPs, Forest Plan standards and guidelines, and mitigation measures specified in this document, it is not anticipated that there would be any significant soil loss under any alternative.

Loss of cultural resource sites resulting from accidental damage or vandalism would be an irreversible commitment of resources. The standards and guidelines, survey methodology prior to activities, and mitigation measures specified in this document provide reasonable assurance that there would be no irreversible loss of cultural resources.

## Irretrievable Commitments

Irretrievable commitment of natural resources means loss of production or use of resources due to management decisions made in the alternative. This represents opportunities foregone for the period of time that the resource cannot be used.

Foregoing timber harvest opportunities at this time in certain areas due to resource concerns or economics may represent an irretrievable commitment of resources because that volume cannot be harvested. The commitment is irretrievable rather than irreversible, because future entries could harvest those areas if they are still classified as part of the suitable timber base.

The reduction in the visual quality of an area due to timber harvesting will be an irretrievable commitment of resources. The commitment is irretrievable since viewsheds will typically heal from a visual quality standpoint after about 40 years. After this time, the second-growth trees will have the color and height needed so as not to be evident to the casual observer. Alternative 1 would have no irretrievable commitment of visual quality. Alternatives 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 would irretrievably commit visual resources due to timber harvesting.

## Possible Conflicts with Plans and Policies of Other Jurisdictions

The regulations for implementing NEPA require a determination of possible conflicts between the proposed action and the objectives of Federal, State, and local land-use plans, policies, and controls for the area. The major land-use regulations of concern are the Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA), Section 810 of ANILCA, and the State of Alaska's Forest Practices Act. A discussion of each of these determinations is presented below.

### Coastal Zone Management Act of 1976 (CZMA)

The CZMA was passed by Congress in 1976 and amended in 1990. This law requires Federal agencies conducting activities or undertaking development affecting the coastal zone to ensure that the activities or developments are consistent with approved state coastal management programs to the maximum extent practicable. The State of Alaska passed the

Alaska Coastal Management Act in 1977, to establish a program that meets the requirements of the CZMA. It contains the standards and criteria for a determination of consistency for activities within the coastal zone.

The Forest Service has evaluated the alternatives to ensure that the activities and developments affecting the coastal zone are consistent with approved coastal management programs to the maximum extent practicable. The standards and guidelines for timber management activities in the Chasina Project Area meet or exceed those indicated in the Alaska Forest Practices Act and the Alaska Coastal Management Program (ACMP).

Evaluation of the proposed activities against standards and guidelines for activities within the coastal zone results in a finding that these activities are consistent with the ACMP to the greatest extent practicable. In accordance with the Memorandum of Understanding and Alaska statutes, the State of Alaska Office of Governmental Coordination is performing a consistency review of this Draft EIS.

## **Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act of 1980 (ANILCA)**

Under Section 810 of ANILCA, agencies are required to evaluate the effects of proposed actions on subsistence uses of Federal land and to determine if the proposed action may significantly restrict subsistence opportunities. Refer to the Subsistence section of this chapter for the evaluation of impacts to subsistence use as a result of the alternatives.

## **State of Alaska's Forest Practices Act of 1990**

On May 11, 1990, the governor approved the legislature's major revision of the State's Forest Practices Act (FPA). The revised act significantly increases the State's role in providing protection and management for important forest resources on State and private lands. The revised FPA will also affect National Forest management through its relationship to the ACMP and the Federal CZMA (see above discussion).

For National Forest timber operations, such as proposed for the Chasina Project, the effect of the revised FPA is essentially two-fold. First, it clarifies that the revised FPA regulations are the standard which must be used for evaluating timber harvest activities on Federal lands for purposes of determining consistency to the maximum extent practicable with the Alaska Coastal Zone Management Program. Secondly, it calls for minimum 100-foot buffers on all Class I streams and recognizes that consistency to the maximum extent possible for purposes of the ACMP is attainable in Federal timber harvest activities using specific methodologies which may differ from those required by the revised FPA or its implementing regulations.

The Forest Service has evaluated the alternatives to ensure that the activities and developments affecting the coastal zone are consistent with approved coastal management programs to the maximum extent practicable. The layout of all proposed harvest units comply with the TTRA requirements for stream buffers which exceed the stream buffer requirements in the Alaska FPA.

The Forest Service has evaluated the alternatives prior to completion of the Final EIS and the ROD to ensure that the activities and developments specifically covered by the FPA are consistent with its provisions to the maximum extent possible.



# 3 Environment and Effects

## Energy Requirements and Conservation Potential of Alternatives

The implementation of the proposed actions in the project area will require the expenditure of energy (e.g., fuel consumption). The amount of energy used varies by alternative based on timber volume harvested and miles of road constructed or reconstructed. The direct effect of the alternatives on energy requirements would be attributed to timber harvest, road construction and reconstruction, and travel necessary to administer the timber sale. Indirect energy requirements include processing wood products and the transport of the products to secondary processors and consumers.

### Fuel Consumption

Fuel consumption requirements were estimated as follows:

Timber Sale Preparation and Administration, 1.56 gallons/MBF  
Cable Logging, 2 gallons/MBF  
Helicopter Logging, 8 gallons/MBF  
Load, Haul, Dump, and Tow, 8 gallons/MBF  
Road Construction, 4,000 gallons/mile  
Road Maintenance, 20 gallons/mile

The estimated total fuel consumption required for each alternative is displayed in Table OTH-1

Table OTH-1  
**Estimated Fuel Consumption by Alternative**

	Alt. 1	Alt. 2	Alt. 3	Alt. 4	Alt. 5	Alt. 6
Thousands of gallons	0	447	805	1,110	1,007	1,700
Average gallons/MBF	0	13	15	13	15	14

### Conservation Potential

To conserve fuel and/or minimize harvesting costs, the Forest Service has undertaken studies and allowed experimentation with new harvesting equipment and techniques. Shovel yarding is estimated to use 2.7 gallons of fuel per MBF, which is almost a gallon more per MBF than for cable yarding; however, savings are realized in labor costs. Labor cost per MBF is based on a crew size of 1-2 people for shovel yarding compared to an average of 4 people for cable yarding.

The use of low tire pressure equipment (central tire inflation-CTI) during road construction and logging has also shown to decrease costs during studies nationwide and on the Stikine Area of the Tongass National Forest. Studies on Mitkof Island indicate that 10 to 14 percent less rock was needed during road construction, resulting in cost savings of approximately \$450,000. It is predicted that costs for rock replacement/road maintenance, log truck fuel, and tire repair and replacement will be decreased. Cost savings have proven to be substantial enough that the Forest Service provides a contract clause allowing a reduction in rock replacement deposits when low tire pressure equipment is used.

The use of cable yarding equipment fitted with mechanical or hydraulic interlocks, provides the ability to decrease yarding expense as the throttle and brake do not have to be ridden simultaneously to provide deflection for the turn of logs.



## **Natural or Depletable Resource Requirements and Conservation Potential**

All alternatives considered in detail are designed to conform to applicable laws and regulations pertaining to natural or depletable resources, including minerals and energy resources. Regulation of mineral and energy activities on the National Forest, under the U.S. Mining Laws Act of 1872, and the Mineral Leasing Act of 1920, is shared with the Bureau of Land Management (BLM). The demand for access to National Forest System lands for the purpose of mineral and energy exploration and development is expected to increase over time.

The action alternatives propose road construction that would increase opportunities for access to the National Forest within the project area. This increased access may result in increased activity with regard to both known and potential mineral or energy resource occurrences. The actual potential for increased mineral or energy resource activity in the project area is not known, nor can an accurate estimate be made.

## **Urban Quality, Historic and Cultural Resources**

The project area contains no urban areas. Therefore, the only applicable concern under this topic is with historic and cultural resources. The goal of the Forest Service's Cultural Resource Management Program is to preserve significant cultural resources in their field setting and ensure they remain available in the future for research, social/cultural purposes, recreation, and education. The direct, indirect, and cumulative effects of the alternatives on cultural resources have been evaluated. The result of this evaluation is the determination that there are adequate standards, guidelines, and procedures to protect cultural resources and to meet the goals of the Cultural Resource Management Program. Cultural resources are discussed further in the Cultural section of this chapter.

## **Consumers, Civil Rights, Minorities and Women**

All Forest Service actions have the potential to produce some form of impact, positive and/or negative, on the civil rights of individuals or groups, including minorities and women. The need to conduct an analysis of this potential impact is required by Forest Service Manual and Forest Service Handbook direction. The purpose of the impact analysis is to determine the scope, intensity, duration, and direction of impacts resulting from a proposed action. For environmental or natural resource actions, such as proposed for the project area, the civil rights impact analysis is an integral part of the procedures and variables associated with the social impact analysis. This analysis is discussed in the Socioeconomic section of this chapter.

The effect of the alternatives on consumers is reflected in the discussion of the various goods and services supplied as a result of the proposed actions. This analysis occurs throughout the chapter as an integral part of the analysis of the effects on other components of the environment.

## **Prime Farmland, Rangeland, and Forest Land**

All alternatives are in keeping with the intent of Secretary of Agriculture Memorandum 1827 for prime land. The project area does not contain any prime farmlands or rangelands. Prime forest land does not apply to lands within the National Forest system. In all alternatives, lands administered by the Forest Service would be managed with a sensitivity to the effects on adjacent lands.

## **Threatened and Endangered Species, and Critical Habitat**

There will be no adverse impacts to any Federally listed threatened or endangered species or critical habitat as a result of this project. No endangered or threatened wildlife species are known to occur in the project area, although humpback whales and Steller sea lions are occasionally found in waters bordering the project area. The discussion of the effects of the alternatives on threatened, endangered, or sensitive species is presented in the Threatened and Endangered Species section of this chapter.



# Chapter 4

## Lists

### Outline

List of Preparers .....	4-1
Glossary .....	4-5
Literature Cited .....	4-34
Distribution List .....	4-61
Index .....	4-69





# List of Preparers

The following is a list of contributors to this EIS. Other Forest Service employees contributed to the completion of this document through their assistance in support functions. Their help is greatly appreciated.

## Members of the Interdisciplinary Team (IDT)

### Norm Matson, Chasina EIS Team Leader

#### *Education*

B.S., Wildlife-Game Management, University of Wisconsin-Stevens Point, 1973

#### *Forest Service: 23 years*

Planning Biologist, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 4 years

Wildlife Biologist, Tongass NF, Craig RD, 2 years

Timber Sale Administrator/Wildlife Biologist, Chippewa NF, Blackduck RD, 12 years

Recreation/Forestry Technician, Chequamegon NF, Hayward RD, 5 years

### Gary Lawton, Forester-Assistant Team Leader

#### *Education*

B.S., Forest Science, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1975

#### *Forest Service: 19 years*

Silviculturist, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, Craig RD, 1 year

Silviculturist, Blackhills NF, Deadwood SD, 7 years

Silviculturist/Reforestation Forester, Tongass NF, Thorne Bay RD, 6 years

Forester, Tongass NF, Stikine Area, Kake, 2 years

Presale Forester, Stikine Area, Petersburg RD, 3 years

### Roger Johnson, Soil Scientist

#### *Education*

B.S., Forest Science, University of Minnesota

M.S., Forest Soils, University of Minnesota

#### *Forest Service: 5.5 years*

Soil Scientist, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 5.5 years

### Ron Gendreau, GIS Coordinator

#### *Forest Service: 23 years*

Systems Analyst, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 4 years

Transportation Planner, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 2 years

Project Engineer, Tongass NF, Stikine Area, 6 years

District Engineer, Tongass NF, Cordova RD, 1 year

Construction Inspector, Gifford Pinchot NF, 2 years

Road Maintenance Supervisor-Idaho Panhandle NF's, 8 years

### Deyna Kuntzsch, Fish Biologist

#### *Education*

B.S., Water Resources (Fisheries Emphasis) and Biology, University of Wisconsin-Stevens Point, 1991

#### *Forest Service: 7 years*

District Fisheries Biologist, Tongass NF, Craig RD, 2 years

Zone Fisheries Biologist, Manistee NF, Manistee, MI, 3 years

Fisheries Bio. Trainee, Huron-Manistee NF, Cadillac, MI, 2 years

#### *Other Relevant Experience*

Fish Project Crew Leader, Wisconsin DNR-YCC, Kettle Marine, WI, 3 years

## **Marla Dillman, Wildlife Biologist**

### *Education*

B.S., Wildlife Ecology, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1984.

### *Forest Service: 12 years*

Biological Technician-Wildlife, Tongass NF, Craig RD, 7 years

Biological Technician-Fisheries, Tongass NF, Ketchikan RD, 2 years

Biological Technician-Wildlife, Tongass NF, Forestry Sciences Lab., Juneau, AK, 2 years

Wildlife Volunteer, Tongass NF, Ketchikan, AK, 1 year

## **Jim Baichtal, Geologist**

### *Education*

Associate Science Degree, LCC, Longview, WA, 1977

B.S. in Geology, Washington State University, 1980

M.S. in Geology, Washington State University, 1982

### *Forest Service: 12 years*

Forest Geologist, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 6 years

Resource Geologist, Umpqua NF, Roseburg, OR, 2.5 years

Engineering Geologist, Ochoco NF, Prineville, OR, 3.5 years

### *Other Relevant Experience*

Engineering Geologist, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Ft. Worth, TX, 1.5 years

Instructor, Geology Field Camp for Paleontology Lab, Washington State University, 2 summers, 1978/79

Operated a Geologic consulting business, Roseburg, OR

## **Joan Kluwe, Recreation Forester**

### *Education*

B.S., Forestry-Outdoor Recreation Management, Southern Illinois University at Carbondale, 1985

M.S., Forestry, Southern Illinois University-Carbondale, 1987

### *Forest Service: 7 years*

Recreation Forester, Tongass NF, Craig RD, 1 year

Recreation Forester, Mt. Hood NF at Estacada, Zigzag, and Clackamas RD's, 6 years

### *Other Relevant Experience*

Forester/Real Estate appraiser, US Fish and Wildlife Service, McAllen, TX, 1 year

Forestry Technician/Wilderness, White River NF, Sopris RD, 3 seasons

Park Aid, US Army Corps of Engineers, Rend Lake, Benton, IL, 1 season

## **Terry Fifield, Archeologist**

### *Education*

B.S., Geology, Sunny College at Cortland, 1978

M.S., Anthropology, Eastern New Mexico University-Portales, 1987

### *Forest Service: 6 years*

Zone Archaeologist, Tongass NF, Craig/Thorne Bay RD's, 2 years

District Archaeologist, Ochoco NF, Burns, OR, 2 years

Archaeologist, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 2 years

### *Other Relevant Experience*

Archaeologist Crew Chief, USDI National Park Service, Anchorage, AK, 1 year

Archaeologist, Bureau of Indian Affairs, Anchorage, AK, 2 years

Archaeologist, Eastern New Mexico University, 5 years intern

Archaeologist Technician, BIA, Anchorage, AK, 2 years

Archaeologist, BLM, Albuquerque, NM, 1 year

**Jack Oien, Transportation Planner**

*Forest Service:* 20 years

Transportation Planner, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 2 years

Project Engineer, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 5 years

Transportation Planner, Mt. Baker Snoqualmie N.F., 2 years

Project Engineer, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area, 4 years

Construction Inspector, Lolo N.F., 7 years

**John Short, Landscape Architect**

*Education*

B.S., Journalism, minor in Landscape Architecture, Cornell University, 1967

M.L.A. Landscape Architecture, Cornell University, 1975

*Forest Service*

Forest Landscape Architect, Tongass NF, Ketchikan Area

*Other Relevant Experience*

Landscape Architect with City Planning Dept., Ithaca NY, 1975 for 6 months

**Kevin J. Buckley, Biological Technician**

*Education*

B.S., Watershed Management (Hydrology), Minor Land Use Planning, University of Wisconsin-Stevens Point, 1992

*Forest Service:* 8 years

Biological Technician, Tongass NF, Craig RD, 3 years

Biological Technician, Chugach NF, Cordova RD, 3 seasons

Hydrologic Technician, Wallowa Whitman NF, Wallowa Valley RD, 2 seasons

# 4 Lists

## Additional Support

Joyce Voight - Writer/Editor  
Diane Weisert - Writer/Editor  
Joyce Martin - Writer/Editor  
Julie Benson - Writer/Editor  
James Llanos - GIS, Wildlife Models  
Pete Klein - GIS, Harvest Units, Mid-market Analysis  
Sally Merfield - GIS, Streams  
Paul Zellmer - GIS, Fish Models  
Gerald Lemke - GIS  
Ted Geier - Watershed Analysis  
Jim Rhodes - Log Transfer Facilities  
Don Ranne - Lands/Permits  
Hank Newhouse - Subsistence  
Dennis Landwehr - Field Recon. Soils  
Glenn Pierce - LSTA  
Annette Anderson, Stand Exam Contract  
Erich Grebner - Unit Database, Helicopter Analysis  
Mike Sheets - Helicopter Analysis  
John Hannon - Field Recon., Streams  
Kevin Buckley - Field Recon., Streams  
John Frank - Field Recon., Streams  
Karen McCartney - Field Recon., Streams  
Martin Becker - Field Recon., Streams  
Doreen Parker - Field Recon., Wildlife  
Manual Pacheco - Field Recon., Wildlife  
Barb Johnston - Field Recon., Wildlife  
Jennifer Wrate - Field Recon., Wildlife  
Cathy Tighe - Field Recon., Wildlife  
Barney Freedman - Field Recon., Wildlife  
Bill Steel - Field Recon., Roads  
Rich Reeves - Field Recon., Roads  
Devin Kennemore - Field Recon., Botany  
Frank Broderick - Field Recon., Cultural Resources  
Diane Hanson - Field Recon., Cultural Resources  
Thomas Belfield - Field Recon., Botany



## Glossary

**Access**

The opportunity to approach, enter, and make use of public lands.

**Access Management**

Acquiring rights and developing and maintaining facilities needed by people to get to and move through public lands (physical attributes).

**Active Channel**

Unstable portion of a stream where stream channels are frequently changing course.

**Adfluvial Fish**

Species of populations of fish that do not go to sea, but live in lakes, and enter streams to spawn.

**Aelvin**

Young salmon that are still attached to the yolk sac, which provides nourishment.

**Aerial Harvest Systems**

Harvesting methods in which the cut logs are moved from the stump to the loading area or log deck without touching the ground, for example helicopter logging.

**Aggradation**

The process of building up a land surface by deposition.

**Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA)**

Passed by Congress in 1980, this legislation designated 14 National Forest wilderness areas in Southeast Alaska. The Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act of December 2, 1980. Public Law 96-487, 96th Congress, 94 Stat. 2371-2551. In Section 810 requires evaluations of subsistence impacts before changing the use of these lands.

**Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (ANCSA)**

Public Law 92-203, 92nd Congress, 85 Stat. 2371-2551. Approved December 18, 1971, ANCSA provides for the settlement of certain land claims of Alaska natives and for other purposes.

**Allowable Sale Quantity (ASQ)**

ASQ refers to the maximum quantity of timber that may be sold each decade from the Tongass National Forest. This quantity, expressed as a board foot measure, is calculated per timber utilization standards specified in the Alaska Regional Guide, the number and type of acres available for timber management, and the intensity of timber management. The ASQ was calculated at 4.5 billion board feet per decade for the Tongass National Forest.

**Alluvial Fan**

A cone-shaped deposit of organic and mineral material made by a stream where it runs out onto a level plain or meets a slower stream.

**Alluvium**

Material deposited by rivers or streams, including the sediment laid down in river beds, flood plains and at the foot of mountain slopes and estuaries.

## **Alpine**

Parts of mountains above tree growth and/or the organisms living there.

## **Alternative**

One of several policies, plans, or projects proposed for decision making.

## **Anadromous Fish**

Anadromous fish (such as salmon, steelhead, and sea run cutthroat trout) spend part of their lives in freshwater and part of their lives in saltwater.

## **Anadromous Species**

One whose individuals are born in freshwater but migrate to and feed in the sea before returning to freshwater to breed.

## **Background**

The distant part of a landscape. The seen or viewed area located from three or five miles to infinity from the viewer. (See "Foreground" and "Middleground".)

## **Beach Fringe Use Area**

Non-forested wildlife use areas that occur from the intertidal zone inland 500 feet and islands of less than 50 acres. Forested wildlife use areas that occur from the intertidal zone inland 600 feet and islands of less than 50 acres.

## **Bedload**

Sand, silt, and gravel, or soil and rock debris rolled along the bottom of a stream by the moving water.

## **Benthic**

Refers to the substrate and organisms in and on the bottom of a body of water.

## **Best Management Practice (BMP)**

Practices used for the protection of water quality. BMPs are designed to prevent or reduce the amount of pollution from nonpoint sources or other adverse water quality impacts while meeting other goals and objectives. BMPs are standards to be achieved, not detailed or site specific prescriptions or solutions. BMPs as defined in the USDA Forest Service Soil & Water Conservation Handbook are mandated for use in Region 10 under the Tongass Timber Reform Act.

## **Biological Diversity (Biodiversity)**

The variety of life in all its forms and at all levels. This includes the various kinds and combinations of: genes; species of plants, animals, and microorganisms; populations; communities; and ecosystems. It also includes the physical and ecological processes that allow all levels to interact and survive. The most familiar level of biological diversity is the species level, which is the number and abundance of plants, animals, and microorganisms.

## **Biological Potential**

The maximum possible output of a given resource limited only by its inherent physical and biological characteristics.

## **Biomass**

The total quantity, at a given time, of living organisms of one or more species per unit area or all of the species in a community.

**Biotic**

Refers to life, living. See also, abiotic.

**Blowdown**

See windthrow.

**Board Foot (BF)**

A unit of wood 12" X 12" X 1". One acre of commercial timber in Southeast Alaska on the average yields 28,000-34,000 board feet per acre (ranging from 8,000-90,000 board feet per acre). One million board feet (MMBF) would be the volume of wood covering one acre two feet thick. One million board feet yields approximately enough timber to build 120 houses or 75,555 pounds of dissolving pulp.

**Bole**

Trunk of the tree.

**Braided Streams or Channels**

A stream flowing in several dividing and reuniting channels resembling the strands of a braid, the cause of division being the obstruction by sediment deposited by the stream.

**Broadcast Burning**

Burning of an area that has been clearcut to remove logging slash from the site. Broadcast burning is done to prepare sites for regeneration or improve wildlife habitat.

**Brush Disposal**

Cleanup and disposal of slash and other hazardous fuels within the forest or project areas.

**Buffer**

Tongass Timber Reform Act (TTRA) requires that timber harvest be prohibited in an area no less than 100 feet on each side of all Class I streams and Class II streams which flow directly into Class I streams. This 100-foot area is known as a buffer.

**Cant**

A log partly or wholly cut and destined for further processing.

**Capability**

An evaluation of a resource's inherent potential for use.

**Carryover**

Timber volume designated for harvest in a five-year operating period but not harvested during that period. It is available, therefore, for subsequent five-year operating periods.

**Channel Migration**

Movement of a stream or river channel within a floodplain area usually over an extended period of time.

**Clearcut**

The harvesting in one cut of all trees on an area. The area harvested may be a patch, strip, or stand large enough to be mapped or recorded as a separate class in planning for sustained yield. Clearcut size on the Tongass National Forest is limited to 100 acres, except for specific conditions noted in the Alaska Regional Guide.

## **Climax**

A community of plants and animals which is relatively stable over time and which represents the late stages of succession under current climate and soil conditions.

## **Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)**

A codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government.

## **Commercial Forest Land (CFL)**

Productive Forest land that is producing or capable of producing crops of industrial wood and is not withdrawn from timber utilization by statute or administrative regulation. This includes areas suitable for management and generally capable of producing in excess of 20 cubic feet per acre of annual growth or in excess of 8,000 board feet net volume per acre. It includes accessible and inaccessible areas.

*Normal CFL:* Timber that can be economically harvested with locally available logging systems. Composed of two categories:

*Standard:* Timber that can be economically harvested with locally available logging systems, such as highlead or short-span skyline.

*Special:* Timber that is in areas where special consideration is needed to protect other resources but can be harvested with locally available logging systems.

*Non-standard CFL:* Timber that cannot be harvested with locally available logging systems and would require the use of other logging systems such as helicopter or long-span skyline.

## **Commercial Thinning**

Thinning a stand where the trees to be removed are large enough to sell.

## **Confluence**

The point where two streams meet.

## **Corridor**

Connective links of certain types of vegetation between patches of suitable habitat which are necessary for certain species to facilitate movement of individuals between patches of suitable habitat. Also refers to transportation or utility rights-of-way.

## **Cover**

Refers to trees, shrubs, or other landscape features that allow an animal to partly or fully conceal itself.

## **Critical Habitat**

Specific terrain within the geographical area occupied by threatened or endangered species. Physical and biological features that are essential to conservation of the species and which may require special management considerations or protection are found in these areas.

## **Crown**

The tree canopy. The upper part of a tree or woody plant that carries the main branch system and foliage.

## **Cruise**

Refers to the general activity of determining timber volumes and quality as opposed to a specific method.

## **Cull Logs**

Trees that do not meet certain quality specifications.



**Culmination Mean Annual Increment (CMAI)**

The point at which a tree (or stand) achieves its highest average growth, based on expected growth according to the management intensities and utilization standards assumed in the Forest Plan.

**Cultural Resources**

Historic or prehistoric objects, sites, buildings, structures, and their remains, resulting from past human activities.

**Cumulative Effects**

The impacts on the environment resulting from additional incremental impacts of past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions regardless of what agency (Federal or non-federal) or person undertakes such actions. Cumulative impacts can result from individually minor but collectively significant actions occurring over time.

**Cutover**

Areas harvested recently.

**dbh (DBH)**

Diameter Breast Height. The diameter of a tree measured 4 feet 6 inches from the ground.

**Debris Avalanche**

The sudden movement downslope of the soil mantle; it occurs on steep slopes and is caused by the complete saturation of the soil from prolonged heavy rains. Also known as a debris slide.

**Debris Flow**

A general term for all types of rapid movement of debris downslope.

**Debris Torrents**

Landslides that occur as a result of debris; avalanche materials which either dam a channel temporarily or accumulate behind temporary obstructions such as logs and forest debris.

**Deer Winter Range**

Locations that provide food and shelter for Sitka black-tail deer under moderately severe to severe winter conditions.

**Degradation**

The general lowering of the surface of the land by erosive processes, especially by the removal of material through erosion and transportation by flowing water.

**Demographic**

Pertaining to the study of the characteristics of human populations, such as size, growth, density, distribution, and vital statistics.

**Detritis**

Material, produced by the disintegration and weathering of rocks, that has been moved from its site of origin.

**Developed Recreation**

Recreation that requires facilities that, in turn, result in concentrated use of an area. Facilities in these areas might include roads, parking lots, picnic tables, toilets, drinking water, and buildings.

## **Direct Employment**

The jobs that are immediately associated with the Long-Term Contract Timber Sale, including, for example, logging, sawmills, and pulpmills.

## **Discount Rate**

The rate used to adjust future benefits or costs to their present value.

## **Dispersion**

To disperse the effects of timber harvest by distributing harvest units more or less uniformly throughout a drainage so that increased runoff and sediment from disturbed sites will be buffered by lower levels of runoff and sediment production from surrounding undisturbed lands.

## **Dissected Landforms**

A physical, recognizable form or feature of the earth's surface such as a mountain, hill, or valley having a characteristic shape, that in part is the result of several shallow or deeply incised drainage channels.

## **Dissolved Oxygen**

The amount of free (not chemically combined) oxygen in water.

## **Distance Zone**

Areas of landscapes denoted by specified distances from the observer (foreground, middleground, or background). Used as a frame of reference in which to discuss landscape characteristics of management activities.

## **Diversity**

The distribution and abundance of different plant and animal communities and species within the area controlled by the Forest Plan.

## **Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS)**

A statement of environmental effects for a major Federal action which is released to the public and other agencies for comment and review prior to a final management decision. Required by Section 102 of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA).

## **Eagle Nest Tree Buffer Zone**

A 330-foot radius around eagle nest trees established in an Agreement between the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the Forest Service.

## **Ecosystem**

A community of organisms and its physical setting. An ecosystem, whether a fallen log or an entire watershed, includes resident organisms, non-living components such as soil nutrients, inputs such as rainfall, and outputs such as organisms that disperse to other ecosystems.

## **Ecotone**

A transition or junction zone between two or more naturally occurring diverse plant communities (ecosystems).

## **Ecotype**

A species of plant or animal that displays different genetic or physiological adaptations. For example, the brown bear in Southeast Alaska is the same species as the grizzly bear in interior Alaska, but the brown bear is generally larger than the grizzly.

### **Effects**

Effects, impacts, and consequences as used in this environmental impact statement are synonymous. Effects may be ecological (such as the effects on natural resources and on the components, structures, and functioning of affected ecosystems), aesthetic, historical, cultural, economic, or social, and may be direct, indirect, or cumulative

*Direct Effects:* Results of an action occurring when and where the action takes place.

*Indirect Effects:* Results of an action occurring at a location other than where the action takes place and/or later in time, but in the reasonably foreseeable future.

*Cumulative Effects:* See Cumulative Effects.

### **Encumbrance**

A claim, lien, charge, or liability attached to and binding real property.

### **Endangered Species**

Any species of animal or plant that is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range. Plant or animal species identified by the Secretary of the Interior as endangered in accordance with the 1973 Endangered Species Act. See also, threatened species, sensitive species.

### **Environmental Analysis (EA)**

A comprehensive evaluation of alternative actions and their predictable short-term and long-term environmental effects, which include physical, biological, economic, social, and environmental design factors and their interactions. An EA is less comprehensive than an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS), and may result in a Finding of No Significant Impact; should the EA reveal significant impacts, a full EIS must then be conducted.

### **Erosion**

The wearing away of the land surface by running water, wind, ice, gravity, or other geological activities.

### **Escapement**

Adult anadromous fish that escape from all causes of mortality (natural or human-caused) to return to streams to spawn.

### **Estuarine Fringe Use Area**

A 1,000-foot timbered zone around an estuary.

### **Estuary**

For the purpose of this EIS process, estuary refers to the relatively flat, intertidal, and upland areas generally found at the heads of bays and mouths of streams. They are predominately mud and grass flats and are unforested except for scattered spruce or cottonwood.

### **Even-Aged Management**

The application of a combination of actions that result in the creation of stands in which trees of essentially the same age grow together. The difference in age between trees in forming the main canopy level of a stand usually does not exceed 20 percent of that age of the stand at harvest rotation age. Clearcut, shelterwood, or seed tree cutting methods produce even-aged stands.

### **Executive Order**

An order or regulation issued by the President or some administrative authority under his or her direction.

## Existing Visual Condition

The level of visual quality or condition presently occurring on the ground. The six existing visual condition categories are:

*Type I:* Natural Condition. Areas in which only ecological change has taken place.

Corresponds to the Preservation VQO.

*Type II:* Natural appearing. Areas in which changes in the landscape are not noticed by the average forest visitor unless pointed out. Corresponds to the Retention VQO.

*Type III:* Slightly altered. Areas in which changes in the landscape are noticed, but do not attract attention. Corresponds to the Partial Retention VQO.

*Type IV:* Moderately altered. Areas in which changes in the landscape are easily noticed and may attract attention. Corresponds to the Modification VQO.

*Type V:* Heavily altered. Areas in which changes in the landscape obviously appear to be major disturbances and stand out as a dominating impression of the landscape.

Corresponds to the Maximum Modification VQO.

*Type VI:* Drastically altered. Areas in which changes in the landscape are in glaring contrast to a natural appearance. Not a VQO.

## Falldown (Hard and Soft Falldown)

The difference between planned or scheduled harvest and that which is attained after implementation is defined as Falldown. Hard Falldown occurs during harvest unit planning/design, layout, and during timber harvest and results in changes to the suitable timber base. Examples include previously unidentified small areas of poor soil stability, rock outcrops, v-notches, and small noncommercial forest sites. Soft Falldown occurs during harvest unit planning/design, layout, and occasionally during timber harvest and results in generally short-term deferrals (5-10 years) and typically do not affect the Forest Plan ASQ database.

## Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS)

The final version of the statement of environmental effects required for major federal actions under Section 102 of the National Environmental Policy Act. It is a revision of the draft environmental impact statement (DEIS) to include public and agency responses to the draft. The decision maker chooses which alternative to select from the Final EIS, and subsequently issues a Record of Decision (ROD).

## Fiscal Year (FY)

October 1 through September 30, e.g. October 1, 1992 - September 30, 1993 = FY93.

## Floodplain

That portion of a river valley, adjacent to the river channel, which is covered with water when the river overflows its banks at flood stages.

## Fluvial

Of or pertaining to streams and rivers.

## Foreground

The stand of trees immediately adjacent to a scenic area, recreation facility, or forest highway; area located less than 1/4 mile from the viewer. See also, Background and Middleground.

## Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act of 1976 (RPA)

Amended in 1976 by the National Forest Management Act. See RPA Assessment and Program.



**Forest or Forest Land**

National Forest lands currently supporting or capable of supporting forests at a density of 10 percent crown closure or better. Includes all areas with forest cover, including old growth and second growth, and both commercial and non-commercial forest land.

**Forested Wetland**

A wetland whose vegetation is characterized by an overstory of trees that are 20 feet or taller.

**FORPLAN**

The forest planning model. A linear programming software package used to analyze planning decisions regarding land use patterns, capital investment, and timber harvest scheduling.

**FSH**

Forest Service Handbook.

**FSM**

Forest Service Manual.

**Geographic Information System (GIS)**

An information processing technology to input, store, manipulate, analyze, and display spatial and attribute data to support the decision-making process. It is a system of computer maps with corresponding site specific information that can be electronically combined to provide reports and maps.

**Geomorphology**

The study of the forms of the land surface and the processes producing them. Also the study of the underlying rocks or parent materials and the landforms present which were formed in geological time.

**Glide or Placid Streams**

Grouping of channel types (L1 and L2) that have fairly consistent physical characteristics occurring on lowland landforms and are mostly associated with bogs, marshes, or lakes.

**Groundwater**

Water within the earth that supplies wells and springs.

**Guideline**

A preferred or advisable course of action or level of attainment designed to promote achievement of goals and objectives.

**Habitat**

The sum total of environmental conditions of a specific place occupied by an organism, population, or community of plants and animals.

**Habitat Capability**

The number of healthy animals that a habitat can sustain. Used in wildlife models to calculate rough population estimates for Management Indicator Species.

**Habitat Improvement**

Management of wildlife and fish habitat to increase their capability.

## **Hard Snags/Soft Snags**

Hard snags are dead trees which have little decay and are generally still hard wood. Soft snags are dead trees which have a considerable amount of decay and are generally soft, broken wood.

## **Haul out**

An area of large, smooth rocks used by seals and sea lions for resting and pupping.

## **Humus**

Substance of organic origin that is fairly but not entirely resistant to further bacterial decay.

## **Hydrophyte**

Plants typically found in wet habitats.

## **IMPLAN**

A computer-based system used by the Forest Service for constructing nonsurvey input/output models to measure economic input. The system includes a data base for all counties in the United States and a set of computer programs to retrieve data and perform the computational tasks for input/output analysis.

## **Indirect Employment**

The jobs in service industries that are associated with the Long-Term Contract timber sale including, for example, suppliers of logging and milling equipment.

## **Inoperable Timber**

Timber that cannot be harvested by any proven method because of potential resource damage, extremely adverse economic considerations, or physical limitations.

## **Interdisciplinary Team (IDT)**

A group of people with different backgrounds assembled to research, analyze, and write a project Environmental Impact Statement. The team is assembled out of recognition that no one scientific discipline is sufficiently broad enough to adequately analyze a proposed action and its alternatives.

## **Invertebrates**

Animals without a backbone.

## **Irretrievable Commitments**

Losses of production or use of renewable natural resources for a period of time. For example, timber production from an area is irretrievably lost during the time an area is allocated to a no-harvest prescription; if the allocation is changed to allow timber harvest, timber production can be resumed. The production lost is irretrievable, but is not irreversible.

## **Irreversible Commitments**

Decisions causing changes which cannot be reversed. For example, if a roadless area is allocated to allow timber harvest and timber is actually harvested, that area cannot, at a later date, be allocated to wilderness. Once harvested, the ability of that area to meet wilderness criteria has been irreversibly lost. Often applies to nonrenewable resources such as minerals and cultural resources.

## **Issue**

A point, matter, or section of public discussion or interest to be addressed or decided.

### **Knutsen-Vandenburg Fund (KV)**

The portion of timber sale receipts collected and used for reforestation and other renewable resource projects on the sale area.

### **Land Allocation**

The decision to use land for various resource management objectives to best satisfy the issues, concerns and opportunities and meet assigned forest output targets.

### **Land Exchange**

The conveyance of non-Federal land or interests to the United States in exchange for National Forest System land or interests in land.

### **Land Use Designation (LUD)**

The method of classifying land uses presented in the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP). Land uses and activities are grouped to define, along with a set of coordinating policies, a compatible combination of management activities. The following is a description of the four classifications:

*LUD I:* Wilderness areas. Undeveloped areas managed for solitude and primitive types of recreation, and containing unaltered habitats for plant and animal species.

*LUD II:* Lands to be managed in a roadless state in order to retain their wildland character; permits wildlife and fish habitat improvement as well as primitive recreation facility and road development under special authorization.

*LUD III:* Lands to be managed for a variety of uses. The emphasis is on managing for uses and activities in a compatible and complimentary manner to provide the greatest combination of benefits.

*LUD IV:* Lands that provide opportunities for intensive resource use and development where the emphasis is primarily on commodity or market resources.

### **Land Use Prescriptions**

Specific management direction applied to a defined area of land to attain multiple use and other goals and objectives.

### **Landslides**

The moderately rapid to rapid down slope movement of soil and rock materials that may or may not be water-saturated.

### **Large Woody Debris (LWD)**

Any large piece of relatively stable woody material having a diameter of at least four inches and a length greater than three feet that intrudes into the stream channel. Also called Large Organic Debris (LOD).

### **Log Transfer Facility (LTF)**

A facility that is used for transferring commercially harvested logs to and from a vessel or log raft, or the formation of a log raft. It is wholly or partially constructed in waters of the United States and location and construction are regulated by the 1987 Amendments to the Clean Water Act. Formerly termed "terminal transfer facility" or "log dump".

## Logging Systems

*Highlead:* A cable yarding system, using a two-drum yarder, in which lead blocks are hung on a spar or tower to provide lift to the front end of the logs. Grabinski is a modified highlead cable system.

*Aerial Logging Systems:* Systems where the cut logs are moved from the stump to the loading area or log deck without touching the ground.

*Live skyline/gravity carriage return:* A two-drum, live skyline yarding system in which the carriage moves down the skyline by gravity; thus, is restricted to uphill yarding; the skyline is lowered to attach logs then raised and pulled to the landing by the mainline.

*Live skyline/haulback required:* A live skyline yarding system composed of skyline, mainline, and haulback; the carriage is pulled to the woods by the haulback; the skyline is lowered to permit the chokers to be attached to the carriage, and the turn is brought to the landing by the mainline.

*Running skyline:* A yarding system with three suspended moving lines, generally referred to as the main, haulback, and slack-pulling, that when properly tensioned will provide lift, travel, and control to the carriage; normally indicates a gantry type tower and a three-drum yarder.

*Standing skyline:* Used wherever yarding distances or span distances exceed the capability of live skyline equipment.

*Multispan skyline:* European equipment is commonly associated with this.

*Tractor:* Used to describe the full range of surface skidding equipment, designed to operate on level to downhill settings.

*Shovel:* A system of short-distance logging in which logs are moved from the stump to the landing by repeated swinging with a swing-boom log loader; the loader is walked off the haul road and out into the harvest unit; logs are moved and decked progressively closer to the haul road with each pass of the loader; when logs are finally decked at roadside, the same loader, or a different loader, loads out trucks. On gentle ground, logs are either heeled and swung or dragged by the boom as it rotates; larger log length and tree length logs are usually dragged to maintain machine stability. Soils should be moderate to well drained and side slopes must be less than 20 percent; passes or stripes should be kept to a maximum of four.

*Helicopter:* Flight path cannot exceed 40 percent downhill or 30 percent uphill; landings must be selected so there is adequate room for the operation and so that the helicopter can make an upwind approach to the drop zone.

*A-Frame:* Beach fringe timber which is logged with a float mounted yarder typically rigged in a highlead configuration for direct A-frame yarding.

*Cold-deck and swing:* Planned to access areas not suitable for skyline operations.

## MBF

A thousand board feet net sawlog and utility volume.

## MMBF

A million board feet net sawlog and utility volume.

## MMCF

A million cubic feet net sawlog and utility volume.

## Management Indicator Species (MIS)

Species selected in a planning process that are used to monitor the effects of planned management activities on viable populations of wildlife and fish, including those that are socially or economically important.

## Management Prescriptions

Method of classifying land uses presented in the Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP 1997). Replaces the Land Use Designations (LUDs) originally presented in TLMP.



**Management Requirement**

Standards for resource protection, vegetation manipulation, silvicultural practices, even-aged management, riparian areas, soil and water and diversity, to be met in accomplishing National Forest System goals and objectives. (see 36 CFR 219.17)

**Mass Failure**

The downslope movement of a block or mass of soil. This usually occurs under conditions of high-soil moisture and does not include individual soil particles displaced as surface erosion.

**Maritime Climate**

Weather conditions controlled by an oceanic environment characterized by small annual temperature ranges and high precipitation.

**McGilvery (Soil series)**

Soil series which represents the only well-drained organic soil found in the Ketchikan Area. It is composed of a thin surface layer (less than 8 inches deep) of organic material overlying bedrock. These soils are associated with cliffs and rock outcrops, and are sensitive to disturbance.

**Mean Annual Increment (MAI)**

The total volume of a stand divided by its age.

**Memorandum of Understanding (MOU)**

A legal agreement between the Forest Service and others agencies resulting from consultation between agencies that states specific measures the agencies will follow to accomplish a large or complex project. A memorandum of understanding is not a fund obligating document.

**Microclimate**

The temperature, moisture, wind, pressure, and evaporation (climate) of a very small area that differs from the general climate of the larger surrounding area.

**Middleground**

The visible terrain beyond the foreground where individual trees are still visible but do not stand out distinctly for the landscape; area located from 1/4 to 5 miles from the viewer. See also, Foreground and Background.

**Mineral Soils**

Soils consisting predominately of, and having its properties determined by, mineral material.

**Minimum Viable Population**

A population with the estimated numbers and distribution of reproductive individuals to maintain the population over time.

**Mining Claims**

A geographic area of the public lands held under the general mining laws in which the right of exclusive possession is vested in the locator of a valuable mineral deposit.

## **Mitigation**

Measures designed to counteract environmental impacts or to make impacts less severe. These may include: avoiding an impact by not taking a certain action or part of an action; minimizing an impact by limiting the degree or magnitude of an action and its implementation; rectifying the impact by repairing, rehabilitating, or restoring the affected environment; reducing or eliminating the impact over time by preservation and maintenance operations during the life of the action; or compensating for the impact by replacing or providing substitute resources or environments.

## **Mixed Conifer**

In Southeast Alaska, mixed conifer stands usually consist of western hemlock, mountain hemlock, Alaska yellowcedar, Western redcedar, and Sitka spruce species. Shorepine may occasionally be present depending on individual sites.

## **Model**

A representation of reality used to describe, analyze, or understand a particular concept. A model may be a relatively simple qualitative description of a system or organization, or a highly abstract set of mathematical equations. A model has limits to its effectiveness, and is used as one of several tools to analyze a problem.

## **Monitoring**

A process of collecting information to evaluate whether or not objectives of a project and its mitigation plan are being realized. Monitoring can occur at different levels: to confirm whether mitigation measures were carried out in the manner called for, to determine whether the mitigation measures were effective, or to validate whether overall goals and objectives were appropriate. Different levels call for different methods of monitoring.

## **Multi-entry Layout Process (MELP)**

Computerized data base located in each area supervisor's office containing information on timber, transportation, and TLMP management goals. It is used for planning and economic analyses for the Forest Service administrative area.

## **Multiple-aged Stands**

An intermediate form of stand structure between even and uneven-aged stands. These stands generally have two or three distinct tree canopy levels occurring within a single stand.

## **Multiple Use**

The management of all the various renewable resources of the National Forest System to be used in the combination that will best met the needs of the American people.

## **Muskeg**

In Southeast Alaska a type of bog that has developed over thousands of years in depressions or flat areas on gentle to steep slopes. Also called peatlands.

## **Mycorrhizae**

A mutualism between plant roots and certain kinds of fungi. The plants exude carbon compounds to the fungi and the fungi provide the plants with soil nutrients, such as phosphorus.

**National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1969**

An Act to declare a national policy which will encourage productive and enjoyable harmony between humankind and the environment, to promote efforts which will prevent or eliminate damage to the environment and biosphere and stimulate the health and welfare of humanity, to enrich the understanding of the ecological systems and natural resources important to the Nation, and to establish a Council on Environmental Quality (The Principal Laws Relating to Forest Service Activities, agric. Handb. 453. USDA Forest Service, 359 p.).

**National Forest Management Act (NFMA)**

A law passed in 1976 as an amendment to the Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act requiring the preparation of Regional Guides and Forest Plans and the preparation of regulations to guide that development.

**National Wild and Scenic River System**

Rivers with outstanding scenic, recreational, geological, fish and wildlife, historic, cultural, or other similar values designated by Congress under the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 and amended in 1986, for preservation of their free-flowing condition. May be classified and administered under one or more of the following categories: Wild, Scenic, and/or Recreational.

**Native Allotment**

A tract of non-mineral land, not to exceed 160 acres, on which an Alaska Native (who was 21 year of age or head of a household) established continuous use and occupancy prior to the creation of the National Forests (authorized under the Native Allotment Act of May 17, 1906).

**Native Selection**

Application by Native corporations and individuals to a portion of the USDI Bureau of Land Management for conveyance of lands withdrawn in fulfillment of Native entitlements established under ANSCA.

**Net Sawlog Volume**

Tree or log volume suitable in size and quality to be processed into lumber. In Southeast Alaska, depending on the market, the volume may be processed as pulp or lumber.

**No-action Alternative**

The most likely condition expected to exist in the future if current management direction were to continue unchanged.

**Non-commercial Forest Land**

Land with more than 10 percent cover of commercial tree species but not qualifying as Commercial Forest land.

**Noncommercial species**

Species that have no economic values at this time nor anticipated timber value within the near future.

**Nondeclining Even Flow**

A policy governing the volume of timber removed from a National Forest, which states that the volume planned for removal in each succeeding decade will equal or exceed that volume planned for removal in the previous decade.

**Non-Forest Land**

Land that has never supported forests and lands formerly forested but now developed for such nonforest uses as crops, improved pasture, etc.

**Notice of Intent (NOI)**

A notice printed in the Federal Register announcing that an Environmental Impact Statement will be prepared. The NOI must describe the proposed action and possible alternatives, describe the agency's proposed scoping process, and provide a contact person for further information.

**Objectives**

The precise steps to be taken and the resources to be used in achieving goals.

**Offering**

A Forest Service specification of timber harvest units, subdivisions, roads, and other facilities and operations to meet the requirements of a contract.

**Offering Area**

A geographic area identified by the Forest Service within which the offering specifications are outlined. One or more offering areas may be identified within all or a portion of an a project area.

**Old Growth**

Ecosystems distinguished by old trees and related structural attributes. Old-growth forests are characterized by larger tree size, higher accumulations of large dead woody material, multiple canopy layers, different species composition, and different ecosystem function. The structure and function of an old-growth ecosystem will be influenced by its stand size and landscape position and context. For the displays in this project, it is those areas typed as Volume Class 4, 5, 6, and 7.

**Organic Soils**

Soils that contain a high percentage (generally greater than 20 to 30 percent) of organic matter throughout the soil depth.

**Parent Material**

The unconsolidated and partially weathered material (or the C Horizon) from which upper layers of soil developed.

**Partial Cut**

Method of harvesting trees where any number of live stems are left standing in any of various spatial patterns. Not clearcutting. Can include seed tree, shelterwood, or other methods.

**Patch**

A non-linear surface area differing in appearance from its surroundings.

**Payments to States**

A fund consisting of approximately 25 percent of the gross annual timber receipts received by the National Forests in that state. This is returned to the State for use on roads and schools.

**Peak flow**

The highest discharge of water recorded over a specified period of time at a given stream location. Often thought of in terms of spring snowmelt, summer, fall, or winter rainy season flows. Also called maximum flow.



**pH**

The degree of soil acidity or alkalinity.

**Planning Area**

The area of the National Forest System controlled by a decision document.

**Planning Record**

A system that records decisions and activities that result from the process of developing a forest plan, revision, or significant amendment.

**Plant Association**

Climax plant community type.

**Plant Communities**

Aggregations of living plants having mutual relationships among themselves and to their environment. More than one individual plant community.

**Pole**

An immature tree between 5 and 9 inches diameter breast height.

**Population Viability**

Ability of a population to sustain itself.

**Potential Yield**

The maximum, perpetual, sustained-yield harvest attainable through intensive forestry on regulated areas considering the productivity of the land, conventional logging technology, standard cultural treatments, and interrelationships with other resource uses and the environment.

**Present Net Value (PNV)**

The difference between the benefits and costs associated with the alternatives.

**Prescribed Fire**

A wildland fire burning under planned conditions to accomplish specific land and resource objectives. It may result from either a management or natural ignition.

**Primary Stream Production**

Results from photosynthesis by green plants. In streams, includes production from algae and aquatic plants, and from non-stream sources such as leaf litter.

**Primary Succession**

Vegetation development is initiated on newly formed soils or upon surfaces exposed for the first time (as by landslides) which have, as consequence, never borne vegetation before.

**Process Group**

A combination of similar channel types based on major differences in landform, gradient, and channel shapes.

**Proportionality**

The Tongass Timber Reform Act (TTRA 1990) modification of Alaska's Long-Term Timber Sale Contracts to eliminate the practice of harvesting a disproportionate amount of old-growth timber.

## Public Participation

Meetings, conferences, seminars, workshops, tours, written comments, responses to survey questionnaires, and similar activities designed and held to obtain comments from the public about Forest Service activities.

## Receipts

Those priced benefits for which money will actually be paid to the Forest Service: recreation fees, timber harvest, mineral leases, and special use fees.

## Record of Decision

A document separate from but associated with an Environmental Impact Statement which states the decision, identifies all alternatives, specifying which were environmentally preferable, and states whether all practicable means to avoid environmental harm from the alternative have been adopted, and if not, why not.

## Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS)

A system for planning and managing recreation resources that categorizes recreation opportunities into seven classes. Each class is defined in terms of the degree to which it satisfies certain recreation experience needs based on the extent to which the natural environment has been modified, the type of facilities provided, the degree of outdoor skills needed to enjoy the area and the relative density of recreation use. The seven classes are:

*Primitive:* An unmodified environment generally greater than 5,000 acres in size and located generally at least 3 miles from all roads and other motorized travel routes. A very low interaction between users (generally less than three group encounters per day) results in a very high probability of experiencing solitude, freedom, closeness to nature, tranquillity, self-reliance, challenge, and risk. Evidence of other users is low. Restrictions and controls are not evident after entering the land unit. Motorized use is rare.

*Semi-Primitive Non-motorized:* A natural or natural-appearing environment generally greater than 2,500 acres and generally located at least 1/2 mile (greater or less depending on terrain and vegetation, but no less than 1/4 mile), but not further than 3 miles from all roads and other motorized travel routes. Concentration of users is low (generally less than 10 group encounters per day), but there is often evidence of other users. There is a high probability of experiencing solitude, freedom, closeness of nature, tranquility, self-reliance, challenge, and risk. There is a minimum of subtle on-site controls. No roads are present in the area.

*Semi-Primitive Motorized:* A natural or natural-appearing environment generally greater than 2,500 acres in size and generally located within 1/2 mile of primitive roads and other motorized travel routes used by motor vehicles; but not closer than 1/2 mile (greater or less, depending on terrain and vegetation, but no less than 1/4 mile) from better-than-primitive roads and other motored travel routes. Concentration of users is low (generally less than 10 group encounters per day), but here is often evidence of other users. There is a moderate probability of experiencing solitude, closeness to nature, and tranquility along with a high degree of self-reliance, challenge, and risk in using motorized equipment. Local roads may be present, or along saltwater shorelines there may be extensive boat traffic.

*Roaded Natural:* Resource modification and utilization are evident, in a predominantly naturally-appearing environment generally occurring within 1/2 mile (greater or less depending on terrain and vegetation, but no less than 1/4 mile) from better-than-primitive roads and other motorized travel routes. Interactions between users may be moderate to high (generally less than 20 group encounters per day), with evidence of other users prevalent. There is an opportunity to affiliate with other users in developed sites, but with some chance for privacy. Self-reliance on outdoor skills is only of moderate importance with little opportunity for challenge and risk. Motorized use is allowed.

*Roaded Modified:* Vegetative and landform alterations typically dominate the landscape. There is little on-site control of users except for fated roads. There is moderate evidence of other users on roads (generally less than 20 group encounters per day), and little evidence of others or interactions at campsites. There is opportunity to get away from others, but with easy access. Some self-reliance is required in building campsites and use of motorized equipment. A feeling of independence and freedom exists with little challenge and risk. Recreation users will likely encounter timber management activities.

*Rural:* The natural environment is substantially modified by land use activities. Opportunity to observe and affiliate with other users is important as is convenience of facilities. There is little opportunity for challenge and risk and self-reliance on outdoor skills is of little importance. Recreation facilities designed for group use are compatible. Users may have more than 20 group encounters per day.

*Urban:* Urbanized environment with dominant structures, traffic lights and paved streets. May have natural appearing backdrop. Recreation places may be city parks and large resorts. Opportunity to observe and affiliate with other users is very important as is convenience of facilities and recreation opportunities. Interaction between large numbers of users is high. Outdoor skills, risk, and challenge are unimportant except for competitive sports. Intensive on-site controls are numerous.

### **Reforestation**

The natural or artificial restocking of an area with trees.

### **Regeneration**

The process of establishing a new crop of trees on previously harvested land.

### **Regional Forester**

The Forest Service official responsible for administering a single region.

### **Regional Guide**

The guide developed to meet the requirements of the Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act of 1974 as amended. It guides all natural resource management activities and establishes management standards and guidelines for the National Forest System lands within a given region.

### **Rehabilitation**

Actions taken to protect or enhance site productivity, water quality, or other values for a short period of time.

### **Reserved Lands**

Lands reserved from the public domain for National Forest purposes and lands which are added to the National Forest System by exchange for reserved National Forest lands.

### **Resident Fish**

Fish that are not anadromous and that reside in freshwater on a permanent basis. Resident fish include non-anadromous Dolly Varden char and cutthroat trout.

### **Resource values**

The tangible and intangible worth of forest resources.

### **Responsible Official**

The Forest Service employee who has the delegated authority to make a specific decision.

**Restricted Harvest**

The action of apportioning the supply of a resource to specific uses or to particular persons or organizations.

**Restoration**

The long-term placement of land back into its natural condition or state of productivity.

**Revegetation**

The re-establishment and development of a plant cover. This may take place naturally through the reproductive processes of the existing flora or artificially through the direct action of reforestation or reseeding.

**Riparian Area**

Geographically delineable area with distinctive resource values and characteristics that contain elements of aquatic and riparian ecosystems.

**Riparian Ecosystem**

Land next to water where plants that are dependent on a perpetual source of water occur.

**Roads**

*Arterial:* Roads usually developed and operated for long-term land and resource management purposes to constant service.

*Collector:* Collects traffic from Forest local roads; usually connects to a Forest arterial or public highway.

*Local:* Provides access for a specific resource use activity such as a timber sale or recreational site, although other minor uses may be served.

*Preplanned:* Roads planned in a prior EIS.

*Temporary:* For National Forest timber sales, temporary roads are constructed to harvest timber on a one-time basis. These logging roads are not considered part of the permanent Forest transportation network and have stream crossing structures removed, erosion measures put into place, and the road closed to vehicular traffic after harvest is completed.

**Roadless Area**

An area of undeveloped public land within which there are no improved roads maintained for travel by means of motorized vehicles intended for highway use.

**Rotation**

The planned number of years (approximately 100 years in Alaska) between the time that a Forest stand is regenerated and its next cutting at a specified stage of maturity.

**Rotation Age**

The age of a stand when harvested at the end of a rotation.

**RPA Assessment and Program**

The RPA Assessment is prepared every ten years and describes the potential of the nation's forests and rangelands to provide a sustained flow of goods and services. The RPA Program is prepared every five years to chart the long-term course of Forest Service management of the National Forests, assistance to State and private landowners, and research. They are prepared in response to Sections 3 and 4 of the Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act of 1974 (RPA) (16 U.S.C. 1601).



### **Salvage Sale**

A timber sale to use dead and down timber and scattered poor-risk trees that would not be marketable if left in the stand until the next scheduled harvest.

### **Sawlog**

That portion of a tree that is suitable in size and quality for the production of dimension lumber collectively known as sawtimber.

### **Scheduled Lands**

Land suitable and scheduled for timber production and which are in the land base for the calculation of the allowable sale quantity and long-term sustained yield timber capacity.

### **Scheduled Timber Harvests**

Timber harvests done as part of meeting the allowable sale quality.

### **Scoping Process**

Early and open activities used to determine the scope and significance of a proposed action, what level of analysis is required, what data is needed, and what level of public participation is appropriate. Scoping focuses on the issues surrounding the proposed action, and the range of actions, alternatives, and impacts to considered in an EA or an EIS.

### **Scrub-Shrub Wetland**

Wetlands dominated by woody vegetation less than 20 feet tall. The species include true shrubs, young trees, and trees or shrubs that are small or stunted because of environmental conditions. In Southeast Alaska this includes forested lands where trees are stunted because of poor soil drainage.

### **Second Growth**

Forest growth that has become established following some disturbance such as cutting, serious fire, or insect attack; even-aged stands that will grow back on a site after removal of the previous timber stand.

### **Secondary Stream Production**

Results from consumption by animals of materials produced in primary production in streams; this includes production of macroinvertebrates and some fish species.

### **Secondary Succession**

The process of re-establishing vegetation after normal succession is disrupted by fire, cultivation, lumbering, windthrow, or any similar disturbance.

### **Sediment**

Solid material, both mineral and organic, that is in suspension, is being transported, or has been moved from its site of origin by air, water, gravity, or ice and has come to rest on the earth's surface.

### **Seed Tree**

Small number of seed-bearing trees left singly or in small groups after timber harvest to provide seed for regeneration of the site.

### **Selective Cutting**

The annual or periodic removal of trees (particularly the mature), individually or in small groups from an uneven-aged forest to achieve the balance among diameter classes needed for sustained yields, and in order to realize the yield, and establish a new crop of irregular constitution. Note: The improvement of the Forest is a primary consideration.

## **Sensitive Species**

Plant and animal species which are susceptible or vulnerable to activity impacts or habitat alterations. Those species that have appeared in the Federal Register as proposed for classification or are under consideration for official listing as endangered or threatened species, that are on a non-official State list, or that are recognized by the regional forester as needing special management to prevent placement on Federal or state lists.

## **Sensitivity Level**

A map inventory that measures peoples' concern for the scenic quality of the National Forests. In 1980, the Tongass National Forest assigned sensitivity levels to land areas viewed from anchorages, plane and boat routes, roads, trails, public-use areas, and recreation cabins.

*Level I:* Includes all seen areas from primary travel routes, use areas, and water bodies where at least three-fourths of the Forest visitors have a major concern for scenic quality.

*Level II:* Includes all seen areas from primary travel routes, use areas, and water bodies where at least one-fourth of the Forest visitors have a major concern for scenic quality.

*Level III:* Includes all seen areas from secondary travel routes, use areas, and water bodies where less than one-fourth of the Forest visitors have a major concern for scenic quality.

## **Seral**

Early stage of succession.

## **Shelterwood Cutting**

A harvest method in which most of the trees are removed in an initial entry and some trees are left to naturally reseed the area and provide protection to new seedlings that establish on the site. A second entry is conducted later to remove the remaining trees.

## **Silviculture**

The science of controlling the establishment, composition, and growth of forests.

## **Single-tree selection**

A cutting method to develop and maintain uneven-aged stands by removal of selected trees from specified age classes over the entire stand area in order to meet a predetermined goal of age distribution and species in the remaining stand.

## **Site Index**

A measure of the relative productive capacity of an area for growing wood. Measurement of site index is based on height of the dominant trees in a stand at a given age.

## **Site Preparation**

Manipulation of the vegetation or soil of an area prior to planting or seeding. The manipulation follows harvest, wildfire, or construction in order to encourage the growth of favored species. Site preparation may include the application of herbicides, burning, or cutting of living vegetation that competes with the favored species; tilling the soil; or burning of organic debris (usually logging slash) that makes planting or seeding difficult.

## **Site Productivity**

Production capability of specific areas of land.

## **Slope Distance**

Distance measured along the contour of the ground.

**Smolt**

Young silvery-colored salmon or trout which move from freshwater streams to saltwater.

**Snag**

A standing dead tree, usually greater than 5 feet tall and 6 inches in diameter at breast height.

**Soil Productivity**

The capacity of a soil, in its normal environment, to produce a specific plant or sequence of plants under a specific system of management.

**Soil Quality Standards**

Standards that are a combination of 1) "threshold" values for severity of soil property alteration, or significant change in soil properties conditions, and 2) areal extent of disturbance.

**Soil Resource Inventory (SRI)**

An inventory of the soil resource based on landform, vegetative characteristics, soil characteristics, and management potentials.

**Special Habitats**

Structural elements of ecosystems. These may include, but are not limited to: snags, spawning gravels, fallen trees, aquatic reefs, caves, seeps, and springs.

**Special Use Authorization**

A permit, term permit, temporary permit, lease, or easement that allows occupancy or use of, or rights and privileges on National Forest System lands.

**Special Use Permit**

Permits and granting of easements (excluding road permits and highway easements) authorizing the occupancy and use of land.

**Specify**

"Specify" means to approve an Offering in writing by issuance of an A Division for the Offering, for implementation in conformance with the other requirements of the contract.

**Split Yarding**

The process of separating the direction of timber harvest yarding into opposite directions.

**Stand (Tree Stand)**

An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and sufficiently uniform in composition, age arrangement, and condition as to be distinguishable from the forest in adjoining areas.

**Standard**

A course of action or level of attainment required by the forest plan to promote achievement of goals and objectives.

**State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO)**

State appointed official who administers Federal and State programs for cultural resources.

**State Selection**

Application by Alaska Department of Natural Resources to the USDI Bureau of Land Management for conveyance of a portion of the 400,000 acre State entitlement from vacant and unappropriated National Forest System lands in Alaska, under the Alaska Statehood Act of 1959 (Public Law 85-508, 72 Stat. 340).

**Stocking**

The degree of occupancy of land by trees as measured by basal area or number of trees and as compared to a stocking standard; that is, the basal area or number of trees required to fully use the growth potential of the land.

**Stream Classes**

See Aquatic Habitat Management Unit.

**Stream Order**

First order streams are the smallest unbranched tributaries; second order streams are initiated by the point where two first order streams meet; third order streams are initiated by the point where two second order streams meet, and so on.

**Structural Diversity**

The diversity of forest structure, both vertically and horizontally, which provides for a variety of forest habitats such as logs and multi-layered forest canopy for plants and animals.

**Stumpage**

The value of timber as it stands uncut in terms of dollar value per thousand board feet.

**Subsistence**

Section 803 of the Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act defines subsistence use as, "the customary and traditional uses by rural Alaska residents of wild renewable resources for direct, personal or family consumption as food, shelter, fuel, clothing, tools, or transportation; for the making and selling of handicraft articles out of nonedible byproducts of fish and wildlife resources taken for personal or family consumption; for barter, or sharing for personal or family consumption; and for customary trade."

**Subsistence Use Area**

Important Subsistence Use Areas include the "most reliable" and "most often hunted" categories from the Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS) and from subsistence survey data from ADF&G, the University of Alaska, and the Forest Service, Region 10. Important use areas include both intensive and extensive use areas for subsistence harvest of deer, furbearers, and salmon.

**Substantive Comment**

A comment that provides factual information, professional opinion, or informed judgement germane to the action being proposed.

**Substrate**

The type of material in the bed (bottom) of rivers and streams.

**Succession**

The ecological progression of community change over time, characterized by displacements of species leading towards a stable climax community.

**Suitable**

Commercial Forest land identified as having both the biological capability and availability to produce industrial wood products.



**Suitable Forest land**

Forest land for which technology is available that will ensure timber production without irreversible resource damage to soils, productivity, or watershed conditions, and for which there is reasonable assurance that such lands can be adequately restocked, and for which there is management direction that indicated that timber production is an appropriate use of that area.

**Suspended Sediment**

The very fine soil particles which remain in suspension in water for a considerable period of time without contact with the stream or river channel bottom.

**Sustained Yield**

The amount of renewable resources that can be produced continuously at a given intensity of management.

**Swale**

A slight, marshy depression in generally level land. A depression in glacial ground moraine.

**Tentatively Suitable Forest Land**

Forest land that is producing or is capable of producing crops of industrial wood and: (a) has not been withdrawn by Congress, the Secretary of Agriculture or the Chief of the Forest Service; (b) existing technology and knowledge is available to ensure timber production without irreversible damage to soils productivity, or watershed conditions; (c) existing technology and knowledge, as reflected in current research and experience, provides reasonable assurance that it is possible to restock adequately within 5 years after final harvest; and (d) adequate information is available to project responses to timber management activities.

**Terrestrial Ecosystems**

Plant communities that are not dependent on a perpetual source of water to grow.

**Thinning**

The practice of removing some of the trees in a stand so that the remaining trees will grow faster due to reduced competition for nutrients, water, and sunlight. Thinning may also be done to change the characteristics of a stand or wildlife or other purposes. Thinning may be done at two different stages.

**Threatened Species**

Plant or animal species which is likely to become endangered throughout all or a significant portion of its range within the foreseeable future, as defined in the Endangered Species Act of 1973, and which has been designated in the Federal Register by the Secretary of the Interior as a threatened species. (See also, endangered species, sensitive species.)

**Threshold**

The point or level of activity beyond which an undesirable set of responses begins to take place within a given resource system.

**Tiering**

Eliminating repetitive discussions of the same issue by incorporating by reference. The general discussion in an environmental impact statement of broader scope; e.g., this document is tiered to the Tongass Land Management Plan, as amended.

## **Timber Appraisal**

Establishing the fair market value of timber by taking the selling value minus manufacturing costs, the cost of getting logs from the stump to the manufacturer, and an allowance for profit and risk.

## **Timber Classification**

Forested land is classified under each of the land management alternatives according to how it relates to be management of the timber resource. The following are definitions of timber classifications used for this purpose.

*Nonforest:* Land that has never supported forests and land formerly forested where use for timber production is precluded by development or other uses.

*Forest:* Land at least 10-percent stocked (based on crown cover) by forest trees of any size, or formerly having had such tree cover and not currently developed for nonforest use.

*Suitable or suitable available:* Land to be managed for timber production on a regulated basis.

*Unsuitable:* Forest land withdrawn from timber utilization by statute or administrative regulation (for example, wilderness), or identified as inappropriate for timber production in the Forest planning process.

*Commercial forest:* Forest land tentatively suitable for the production of continuous crops of timber and that has not been withdrawn.

## **Timber Dispersion**

When an opening created from a final timber harvest is no longer considered an opening for the purpose of scheduling adjacent timber harvest. This is often expressed as the maximum amount of disturbance in a watershed at any given time.

## **Timber Harvest Unit**

A "Timber Harvest Unit" is a portion of an Offering Area within which Forest Service specifies for harvest all or part of the timber to meet the requirements of this contract [KPC] and designates as Included Timber under B2.3.

## **Timber Stand Improvement (TSI)**

All noncommercial intermediate cutting and other treatments to improve composition, condition, and volume growth of a timber stand.

## **Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP)**

The 10-year land allocation plan for the Tongass National Forest that directs and coordinates planning, the daily uses, and the activities carried out within the forest. Currently under revision.

## **Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS)**

A study on subsistence uses which was used for evaluating the effects of the proposed action in this EIS.

## **Turbidity**

An indicator of the amount of sediment suspended in water.

## **Understory**

The trees and shrubs in a forest growing under the canopy or overstory.

**Uneven-Aged Management**

Forest management techniques which simultaneously maintain continuous high-forest cover, recurring regeneration of desirable species, and the orderly growth and development of trees through a range of diameter or age classes. Cutting is usually regulated by specifying the number or proportion of trees of particular sizes to retain within each area, thereby maintaining a planned distribution of size classes.

**Unscheduled Lands**

Lands suitable but not scheduled for timber production and which are not in the land base for the calculation of the allowable sale quantity nor long-term sustained yield timber capacity.

**Unsuitable**

Forest land withdrawn from timber utilization by statute or administrative regulation; for example, wilderness, or identified as not appropriate for timber production in the forest planning process.

**Utility Logs**

Those logs that do not meet sawlog grade but are suitable for production of firm useable pulp chips.

**VAC**

See Visual Absorption Capability.

**Value Comparison Unit (VCU)**

Areas which generally encompass a drainage basin containing one or more large stream systems; boundaries usually follow easily recognizable watershed divides. Established to provide a common set of areas where resource inventories could be conducted and resource interpretations made.

**Viable Population**

The number of individuals of a species required to ensure the long-term existence of the species in natural, self-sustaining populations adequately distributed throughout their region.

**Viewshed**

An expansive landscape or panoramic vista seen from a road, marine water way, or specific viewpoint.

**Visual Quality Objectives (VQO)**

Measurable standards reflecting five different degrees of landscape alteration based upon a landscape's diversity of natural features and the public's concern for high scenic quality. The five categories of VQOs are:

*Preservation:* Permits ecological changes only. Applies to wilderness areas and other special classified areas. Management activities are generally not allowed in this setting.

*Retention:* Provides for management activities that are not visually evident to the casual Forest visitor.

*Partial Retention:* Management activities remain visually subordinate to the natural landscape.

*Modification:* Management activities may visually dominate the characteristics landscape. However, activities must borrow from naturally established form-line color and texture so that the visual characteristics resemble natural occurrences within the surrounding area when viewed in the middleground distance.

*Maximum Modification:* Management activities may dominate the landscape but should appear as a natural occurrence when viewed as background.

## **V-Notches**

A deeply incised valley along some waterways that would look like a "V" from a cross-section. These abrupt changes in terrain features are often used as harvest unit or yarding boundaries.

## **Volume**

Stand volume based on standing net board feet per acre by Scribner Rule.

## **Volume Class**

Used to describe the average volume of timber per acre in thousands of board feet (MBF).

The seven volume classes

include:

*Classes 1 to 3:* Less than 8 MBF/acre (cleared land, seedlings, or pole timber stands).

*Class 4:* 8 to 20 MBF/acre.

*Class 5:* 20 to 30 MBF/acre.

*Class 6:* 30 to 50 MBF/acre.

*Class 7:* 50+ MBF/acre.

## **Watershed**

The area that contributes water to a drainage or stream. Portion of the forest in which all surface water drains to a common point. Watersheds can range from a few tens of acres that drain a single small intermittent stream to many thousands of acres for a stream that drains hundreds of connected intermittent and perennial streams.

## **Wetland**

Areas that are inundated by surface or groundwater frequently enough to support vegetation that requires saturated or seasonally saturated soil conditions for growth and reproduction. Wetlands generally include: swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas such as sloughs, potholes, wet meadows, river overflows, mudflats, and natural ponds. See the TLMP (1997) pgs. 3-318 and 3-321 for detailed discussion on wetland type definitions.

## **Wilderness**

Areas designated by congressional action under the 1964 Wilderness Act. Wilderness is defined as undeveloped federal land retaining its primeval character and influence without permanent improvements or humans habitation. Wilderness areas are protected and managed to preserve their natural conditions, which generally appear to have been affected primarily by the forces of nature, with the imprint of human activity substantially unnoticeable; have outstanding opportunities for solitude or a primitive and unconfined type of recreation; areas of at least 5,000 acres are of sufficient size to make practical their preservation, enjoyment, and use in an unimpaired condition; and may contain features of scientific, educational, scenic, or historical value as well as ecologic and geologic interest. In Alaska, Wilderness has been designated by ANILCA and TTRA.

## **Wildlife Analysis Area (WAA)**

A division of land used by the Alaska Department of Fish and Game for wildlife analysis.

## **Wildlife Habitat**

The locality where a species may be found and where the essentials for its development and sustained existence are obtained.

## **Wildlife Habitat Management Unit (WHMU)**

An area of wildlife habitat identified during the IDT process as having values important to wildlife.



**Windfirm**

Trees that have been exposed to the wind throughout their life and have developed a strong root system or trees that are protected from the wind by terrain features.

**Windthrow**

The act of trees being uprooted by the wind. In Southeast Alaska, Sitka spruce and hemlock trees are shallow rooted and susceptible to windthrow. There generally are three types of windthrow:

*Endemic*: where individual trees are blown over;

*Catastrophic*: where a major windstorm can destroy hundreds of acres; and

*Management Related*: where the clearing of trees in an area make the adjacent standing trees vulnerable to windthrow.

**Winter Range**

An area, usually at lower elevation, used by big game during the winter months; usually smaller and better-defined than summer ranges.

**Withdrawal**

The withholding of an area of Federal land from settlement, sale, location, or entry under some or all of the general land laws for the purpose of limiting activities under those laws in order to maintain other public values in the area.

**Yarding**

Hauling timber from the stump to a collection point.

**Yield Tables**

Tables that estimate the level of outputs that would result from implementing a particular activity. Usually referred to in conjunction with FORPLAN input or output. Yield tables can be developed for timber volumes, range production, soil and water outputs, and other resources.

## Literature Cited

- Ackerman, R.A., K.C. Reid, J.D. Gallison, and M.E. Roe. 1985. Archaeology of Heceta Island: a survey of 16 Timber Harvest Units in the Tongass National Forest, Southeastern Alaska. Project Report number 3. Center for Northwest Anthropology, Washington State University, Pullman, WA.
- ADEC. See Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation.
- ADF&G. See Alaska Department of Fish and Game.
- Airola, D.A. and R.H. Barrett. 1985. Foraging and habitat relationships of insect-gleaning birds in a Sierra Nevada mixed-conifer forest. *Condor* 87:205-216.
- Alaback, P. 1988. Endless battles, verdant survivors. *Natural History* 97.
- Alaska Climate Center. 1986. Technical Note No.3.
- Alaska Department of Community and Regional Affairs. 1995. ADCRA Community Database. As cited in TLMP Revision 1996.
- Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation (ADEC). 1993. Air Quality Control Standards and Limitations 18 AAC 50, as amended through: April 7, 1993.
- Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation (ADEC). 1989. Water Quality Standards Regulations 18 AAC 70, 18-2052 (Revised November 1989).
- Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G). 1986. Deer hunter economic expenditure and use survey, Southeast Alaska. Habitat Technical Report 86-10.
- Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G). 1991. Population objectives -- strategic plan for management of deer in Southeast Alaska 1991-1995. Fed. Aid in Wildl. Res. Final Report. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Douglas, Alaska.
- Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Subsistence (ADF&G). 1991. Seven criteria worksheets for findings on customary and traditional uses of fish and shellfish in Southeast Alaska. For use by the Alaska Board of Fisheries, January 1991. ADF&G: Douglas.
- Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G). 1992. Southeast/Yakutat Chinook Salmon Enhancement Report for the Marine Sport fishery. Alaska Department of Fish and Game-Division of Sport Fishing, Douglas, Alaska.
- Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G). 1993. Deer harvest data for Southeast Alaska 1987-91. Compiled by Thomas Thornton, Division of Subsistence.
- Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G). 1993. Subsistence resource use patterns in Southeast Alaska: Summaries of 30 communities. Volume I & II, Division of Subsistence.
- Alaska Department of Labor. 1996. Research & Analysis. Ketchikan Gateway Borough-Employment by Industry. 1980-1994.
- Alaska Department of Labor. Research & Analysis, Alaska Industry/Occupation Outlook to 1995, Food Processing Profile, Juneau, Alaska.

- Alaska Department of Labor. 1995. Division of Research & Analysis. Updated community population numbers.
- Alaska Department of Labor. 1991. Alaska Population Projections 1990-2010.
- Alaska Heritage Resource Survey. Undated. Alaska Heritage Resource Survey records. On file, Alaska State Office of History and Archaeology, Anchorage, Alaska.
- Alaska Marine Highway System. 1993. Annual traffic volume report 1988-1993. Alaska Department of Transportation and Public Facilities. 67 p.
- Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA). 1980. Public Law 96-487, U.S. Congress, 96th Congress, 16 USC 3101, 94 Stat. 2371-2551.
- Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act (ANILCA). Section 706(a), Report No. 10. See USDA Forest Service 1990.
- Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (ANCSA). 1971. Public Law 92-203, U.S. Congress, 92nd Congress, 85 Stat. 688-716.
- Alaska Public Survey. See Alves 1980.
- Alaska Regional Guide. See USDA Forest Service 1983.
- Alaska Statehood Act of 1959. Public Law 85-508, 72 Stat. 340.
- Alaska State Historic Preservation Office. 1990.
- Aley, T. and C. Aley. 1993. Delineation and hazard area mapping of areas contributing water to significant caves. In: D.L. Foster (ed.): proc. Natl. Cave Mgmt. Symp., 1991. Amer. Cave Conserv. Assn. pp. 116-122.
- Aley, T., C. Aley, W. Elliot, and P. Huntoon. 1993. Karst and cave resource significance assessment, Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest, Alaska, Report, prepared for the Ketchikan Area of the Tongass National Forest. 76 pp. + appendix.
- Alves, W. 1980. Residents and resources: Findings of the Alaska public survey on the importance of natural resources to the quality of life in Southeast Alaska. A Report for the USDA Forest Service, Region 10. Institute of Social and Economic Research, University of Alaska, Anchorage.
- Amaral, J.J. 1985. The Aleutian Canada Goose. In: R.L. DiSilvestro (eds.) Audubon Wildlife Report. The National Audubon Society. New York, New York.
- Anderson, C.M., P.M. DeBruyn, T. Ulm, and B. Gassoin. 1980. Behavior and ecology and peregrine falcons wintering upon the Skagit Flats, Washington: a report on the 1980 Field Season. Washington Dept. of Fish and Game.
- Apfelbaum, S. and A. Haney. 1977. Nesting and foraging activity of the brown creeper in northeast Minnesota. Loon 49:78--80.
- Armstrong, R.H. 1991. Guide to the Birds of Alaska. Alaska Northwest Books. Bothell, Washington.
- Arndt, K.L., R.H. Sackett, and J.A. Ketz. 1987. A cultural resource overview of the Tongass National Forest, Alaska. On file at USDA FS Region 10 Office, Juneau, Alaska.

- Autrey, J.T. 1990. Analysis of the management situation: Tongass National Forest Land and Resource Management Plan Revision, Draft (Cultural Resource Section). Document on file, Tongass National Forest, Ketchikan Area, Ketchikan, AK.
- Baichtal, J.F. 1993a. Management of the karst areas within the Ketchikan Area of the Tongass National Forest, Southeastern Alaska. In: D.L. Foster (ed.): Proc. Natl. Cave Mgmt. symp., 1991. Amer. Cave Conserv. Assoc. pp. 198-208.
- Baichtal, J.F. 1993b. Karst and Cave Resources. In: Central Prince of Wales Final Environmental Impact Statement, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, R10-NM-229a, pp. 179-200.
- Baichtal, J.F. 1993c. Karst Management Seminar held in Alaska. In: American Caves, Spring 1993, American Cave Conservation Assoc. p. 10.
- Baichtal, J.F. 1994. Karst Lands of Southeastern Alaska: Recognition, Exploration, and Appreciation. American Caves 7(1):5-7.
- Baichtal, J.F. 1995. Evolution of Karst Management on the Ketchikan Area of the Tongass National Forest: Development of an Ecologically Sound Approach. In: D.L. Pate (ed.) Proceedings of the 1993 National Cave Management Symposium, Carlsbad, NM. pp. 190-202.
- Baichtal, J.F., D.N. Swanson, A.F. Archie. 1996. An Ecologically-based Approach to Karst and Cave Resource Management. In press. Proceedings of the 1995 National Cave Management Symposium, Mitchell, IN. 18 pp.
- Barker, John. 1985. Timber management opportunities in visually important areas. Pan Sylvan, Ketchikan, AK.
- Bartos, L.R. 1989. A new look at low flows after logging. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, Ketchikan Area, Ketchikan, AK.
- Beak. 1989. Fishery surveys of fifty-one stream sites in logged or unlogged drainages on Prince of Wales Island, Alaska: Initial Site/Survey Report. Beak Consultants Incorporated, Portland, OR.
- Beck, R.W. and Associates, Inc. in association with Dames and Moore Power Technologies, Inc. 1992. Lake Tyee to Swan Lake transmission intertie. A draft feasibility study submitted to the Alaska Energy Authority.
- Behler, J.L. and F.W. King. 1979. The Audubon Society Field Guide to North America Reptiles and Amphibians. Alfred A. Knopf, publisher, New York, New York.
- Bellrose, F.C. 1980. Ducks, geese and swans of North America. Wildlife Management Institute, Illinois Natural History Survey. Stackpole Books.
- Bent, A.C. 1942. Life Histories of North American flycatchers, larks, swallows, and their allies. U.S. Govt. Printing Office, Smithsonian Institution, U.S. National Museum Bulletin #179.
- Berg, H.C., R. Elliott, and R. Koch. 1988. Geologic map of the Ketchikan and Prince Rupert quadrangles, southeastern Alaska. U.S. Geological Survey, Miscellaneous Investigations Series, Map I-1807, 27 pp.



- Beschita, R.L. and W.S. Platts. 1986. Morphological features of small streams: Significance and function. *Water Resources Bulletin* 22(3):369-380.
- Bjornn, T., S. Kirking, and W. Meehan. 1991. Relation of cover alterations to the summer standing crop of young salmonids in small Southeast Alaska streams. In *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 120:562-570.
- Blackwell, B.A. and Assoc. 1995. Literature Review of Management of Cave/Karst Resources in Forest Environments. Report prepared for the British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Vancouver Forest Region. 19 pp.
- Bolda, K.S., and Meyers, W.J. 1997. Conducting a long-term water quality monitoring project: A case study on the McCloud River, California. *J. Soil and Water Cons.* 52(1) 49-54
- Bormann, F.H. and G.E. Likens. 1979. *Pattern and Process in a Forested Ecosystem*. New York, Springer-Verlag.
- Boucher, John and Kristen Tromble. 1996. A Trends Profile-Prince of Wales Island. In: *Alaska Economic Trends*, February 1996.
- Broderson, K. 1982. *The Frogs and Toads in Alaska*. Alaska Dept. of Fish and Game, Wildlife Notebook Series.
- Brooks, A.H. 1902. preliminary Report on the Ketchikan Mining District, Alaska, with an Introductory Sketch of the Geology of southeastern Alaska. U.S. Geol. Surv. Prof. Paper 1. 120 pp.
- Brooks, K.N., P.F. Folliott, H.M. Gregersen and J.L. Thames. 1992. *Hydrology and the Management of Watersheds*. Iowa State University Press. pp. 178-179.
- Brown, E.R., Ed. 1985. Management of wildlife and fish habitats in forests of western Oregon and Washington. Part 1—Chapter narratives. USDA Forest Service Pacific Northwest Region, in Cooperation with USDI Bureau of Land Management. Pub.No. R6-F&WL-192-1985.
- Brown, G.W., G.W. Swank, and J. Rothacher. 1971. Water temperature in the Steamboat drainage. Forest Service Research Paper PNW-119. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Exp. Sta., Portland, OR.
- Bryant, M.D. 1983. The role and management of wood debris in west coast salmonid nursery streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 3:322-330.
- Bryant, M.D. 1985. Changes 30 years after logging in large woody debris, and its use by salmonids. In, *North American Riparian Conference (1st:1985: Tucson, AZ), Riparian Ecosystems and Their Management:Reconciling Conflicting Issues*. R. Johnson et al., technical coordinators: USDA Forest Service Technical Report-RM 120.
- Bryant, M.D. and B. Frenette. 1992. Assessment of the resident cutthroat trout, Dolly Varden char, and introduced anadromous salmonids in Margaret Lake, Southeast Alaska, Progress Report 1992. USDA-PNW Research Station, Juneau, AK.
- Bufvers, J. 1967. History of Mines and Prospects, Ketchikan District, prior to 1952. AK Div. Geol. and Geophys. Surv. Spec. Rep. 1. 32 pp.

- Bugert, R., T. Bjornn, and W. Meehan. Summer habitat use by young salmonids and their response to cover and predators in small Southeast Alaska streams. In *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 120:474-485.
- Calkins, D.G. 1986. Marine Mammals. In: *The Gulf of Alaska Physical Environment and Biological Resources*. D.W. Hood and S.T. Zimmerman (eds.). Mineral Management Service, publication number OCS Study: MMS 86-0095. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C.
- Campbell, Chris R. 1984a. Preliminary report describing results of a test excavation at CRG-164, Sarkar Cove Entrance, Prince of Wales island, Southeast Alaska. Paper presented at the 11th Annual Alaska Anthropological Association Meeting, March 1984, Fairbanks, AK.
- Campbell, Chris R. 1984b. A Survey for cultural Resources at Lancaster Cove and Kitkum Bay, Cholmondeley Sound, East Coast of Prince of Wales Island, Southeast Alaska. USDA Forest Service Report, manuscript on file at Ketchikan Ranger District.
- CEQ. See Council on Environmental Quality.
- Chamberlin, T.W. 1982. Timber harvest. Part 3 of influence of forest and rangeland management on anadromous fish habitat in western North America. W.R. Meehan, technical ed. General Tech. Rep. PNW-136. Pacific Northwest Range and Experiment Sta., USDA Forest Service, Portland, OR.
- Chamberlin, T.W., R.D. Harr, and F.H. Everett. 1991. Timber harvesting, silviculture, and watershed processes. *American Fisheries Society Special Publication* 19:181-205.
- Christensen, H.H., D.R. Johnson, and M.H. Brookes. 1992. Vandalism, research, prevention and social policy. General Technical Report PNW-GTR-293. USDA Forest Service. Portland, Oregon.
- Christner, J. and R.D. Harr. 1982. Peak streams from the transient snow zone, western Cascades, Oregon. Presented at the Western Snow Conference, April 20, 1982. Reno, NV.
- Clark, Gerald H. 1979a. Archaeological Testing at the Coffman Cove Site, Southeast Alaska. Paper presented at the 32nd Annual Northwest Anthropological Conference, Eugene, Oregon and the 6th Annual Conference of the Alaska Anthropological Association, Fairbanks, AK.
- Clark, Gerald H. 1979b. A Brief Preliminary Comparison of the Polished Slate from Two Southeast Alaska Coastal Middens. Ms. on file, USDA Forest Service, Alaska Regional Office, Div. of Recreation Management, Juneau, AK.
- Clean Air Act, as amended (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq).
- Clean Water Amendments ("Federal Water Pollution Control Act Amendments of 1972"). 1972. Public Law 92-500, 86 Stat 816, as amended; 33U.S.C. 1251, et seq. 18 October.
- Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972. Public Law 94-370, 90 Stat. 1013; U.S.C. 1982 Title 16, Sec. 1451 et seq. 27 October.
- Cohen, K.A. 1989. Wrangell harvest study: A comprehensive study of wild resource harvest and use by Wrangell residents. Phoenix Associates, Juneau, Alaska, and Division of

- Subsistence, Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Juneau, Alaska. Technical Paper No. 165.
- Coldwell, J.R. 1989. An economic analysis Tongass Land Management Plan mineral resource inventory inferred reserves. Unpublished U.S. Bureau of Mines report, Alaska Field Operations Center, Juneau Branch, 154 p.
- Condon, W.H. 1962. Geology of the Craig Quadrangle, Alaska. U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1108-B. 43 pp.
- Conlan, K.E. and D.V. Ellis. 1979. Effects of wood waste on sand-bed benthos. *Mar. Pout. Bull.*, 10. p. 262-267.
- Corps of Engineers (COE). See U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
- Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ), Executive Office of the President. 1986. Regulations for implementing the procedural provisions of the National Environmental Policy Act. 40 CFR Parts 1500-1508.
- Cowardin, L.M., V. Carter, F.C. Golet, E.T. LaRoe. 1979. Classification of wetlands and deepwater habitats of the United States. FWS/OBS -79/31. Washington, D.C.; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Biological Services Program.
- Craig, G. 1986. The Peregrine Falcon. In: Audubon Wildlife Report 1986, R.L. DiSilvestro (ed.). national Audubon Society, New York, New York.
- Crocker-Bedford, D.C. 1990. Status of the Queen Charlotte goshawk. Unpublished report to the Viable Population Committee, August 7, 1990.
- Crocker-Bedford, D.C. 1991. Unpublished report to Forest Supervisor, D. Rittenhouse, Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest.
- Crocker-Bedford, D.C. 1992. A conservation strategy for the Queen Charlotte goshawk on the Tongass National Forest. Unpublished draft, March, 1992, Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest.
- Davis, S.D. 1979. Hidden falls: A stratified site in southeastern Alaska. Paper presented at the 32nd Annual Northwest Conference, Eugene, OR.
- Davis, S.D. 1990. A chronology of Southeast Alaska. In, Handbook of North American Indians, Vol. 7. Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC.
- Davis, S.D., J.M. Erlandson, R.G. Holloway, R.R. Lightfoot, M.L. Moss, and D.N. Swanston. 1989. The Hidden Falls Site, Baranof Island, Alaska. Alaska Anthropological Assn. Monograph Series, Brockport, NY.
- DeGraff, R.M., V. Scott, R.H. Hamre, L. Ernest, and S.H. Anderson. 1991. Forest and Rangeland Birds of the United States. USDA Forest Service Handbook #688.
- Della Sala, D.A., K. Engel, D.P. Volson, R.L. Fairbanks, W.B. McComb, J. Hagar, and K. Radeke. 1993. Final Report 1993: Evolution of young growth treatments for wildlife. USDA Forest Service, Region 10, Juneau, Alaska.
- DeMeo, T.D. 1992. Forest plant association management guide: Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest. USDA Forest Service, Ketchikan, AK.

- DeMeo, T.D. and W.D. Loggy. 1989. Development of wetlands mapping procedures for forest planning in Southeast Alaska. In, *Proceedings of Watershed '89: A Conference on the Stewardship of Soil, Air, and Water Resources*, March 1989. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region publication R10-MB-77.
- Doerr, J.G. and M.J. Sigman. 1986. Human use of Pacific herring, shellfish, and selected wildlife species in Southeast Alaska with an overview on access for noncommercial harvests of fish and wildlife. Technical Report 86-5, ADF&G, Division of Habitat. Juneau.
- Doyle, A.T., W. Bruce Dinneford, M.D. Kirchhoff, L.C. Shea, L.H. Suring, D.A. Williamson. 1988. Habitat capability model for Vancouver Canada goose in Southeast Alaska: Nesting and brooding habitats. USDA Forest Service. Draft.
- Dunne, T. and L.B. Leopold. 1978. *Water in Environmental Planning*. W.H. Freeman and Co.
- Eberhard, R. 1994. Inventory and management of the Junee River karst system, Tasmania. a report of Forestry Tasmania.
- Ecology Steering Committee. 1992. Ecological definitions for old-growth forest types in the Alaska Region. Juneau, AK: USDA Forest Service AK Region Rep. R10-TP-28, 56 pp.
- Ehilich, P.R., D.S. Dobkin, and D. Wheye. 1988. *The Birder's Handbook: A Field Guide to the Natural History of the North American Birds*. Simon and Schuster Inc., New York, NY.
- Ellanna, L.J. and G. Sherrod. Undated. Timber management and fish and wildlife utilization in selected Southeast Alaska communities: Klawock, Prince of Wales Island, Alaska. Draft Report. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Subsistence, Juneau, Alaska.
- Elliott, W.R. 1994. Alaska Forested Karst Lands, *American Caves*, 7(1):8-12.
- Emmons, George T. 1991. *The Tlingit Indians*. Edited and with additions by Frederica de Laguna. University of Washington Press.
- Endangered Species Act of 1973. Public Law 93-205 (87 stat. 884), as amended; 16 U.S.C. 1531-1536, 1538-1540. 28 December.
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). See U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
- Erickson, A.W., B.M. Hanson, and J.J. Brueggeman. 1982. Black bear denning study, Mitkof Island, Alaska. Seattle: University of Washington.
- Everest, F.H., R.L. Beschta, J.C. Scrivener, K.V. Koski, J.R. Sedell, and C.J. Cederholm. 1987. "Fine Sediment and Salmonid Production: A Paradox." In *Proceedings of the Symposium Streamside Management; Forestry and Fishery Interactions*, February 12-14, 1986, University of Washington, Institute of forest Resources, Seattle, WA.
- Fairbanks, R., J.A. Boyce, and R. Grotefendt. 1995. Evaluation of photo-point inventory methods for the estimation of timber volume and proportionality in Southeast Alaska. Foster Wheeler Corporation with Harza Northwest, Inc. Bellevue, WA.



- Faris, T.L. and K.D. Vaughan. 1985. Log transfer and storage facilities in Southeast Alaska: A review. General Technical Report PNW-174. USDA, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station.
- Fish and Wildlife Service. See U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service.
- Fladmark, Knut R. 1982. An Introduction to the Prehistory of British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Archaeology. 6:96-156.
- Flynn, R.W. and L.W. Suring. 1989. Harvest rates of Sitka black-tailed deer populations in Southeast Alaska for land-use planning. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Douglas, Alaska.
- Ford, E.W., W.A. Farr, and C. Lu-Ping. 1988. Preliminary analysis of four soil variables and their relation to site index of Sitka spruce in Southeast Alaska. In, Proceedings of the Alaska Forest Soil Productivity Workshop. C.W. Slaughter and T. Gasbarro, eds. Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-GTR-219. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Sta. and Univ. of Alaska Fairbanks, School of Agriculture and Land Rs. Mgmt.
- Foreman, T.T. and M. Gordon. 1981. Patches and Structural Components For a Landscape Ecology. BioScience. Vol. 31 no. 10.
- Forest Service. (See USDA, Forest Service).
- Forman, T.T. and M. Godron. 1986. Landscape Ecology. New York: John Wiley and Sons.
- Foster Wheeler Environmental Corporation. 1995. Control Lake Timber Sale, Draft Environmental Impact Statement. volume 1. R10-MB-307a.
- Fowells, H.A. 1965. Silvics of Forest Trees of the United. USDA Forest Service.
- Franklin, J.F. 1990. Old growth and the new forestry. In, Proceedings of the New Perspectives Workshop: Petersburg, Alaska, July 17-19, 1990, Copenhagen, M.J., ed. USDA Forest Service, Region 10, Juneau, AK.
- Franklin, J.F., and R.T.T. Forman. 1987. Creating landscape patterns by forest cutting: ecological consequences and principles. Landscape Ecology 1:5-18.
- Fredricksen, R.L. 1971. Comparative chemical quality—natural and disturbed streams following logging and slash burning. In, Symposium on Forest Land Use and the Stream Environment, J.T. Krygier and J.D. Hall, eds. Oregon State Univ., Corvallis, OR.
- Freese, J.L. 1987. Factors affecting benthic depositions of bark debris at 13 log transfer facilities in Southeast Alaska: A report. Juneau, AK:National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS).
- Fuller, T.K. 1989. Population dynamics of the wolves in North-Central Minnesota. Wildlife Monograph 105.
- FSH. See USDA Forest Service Handbooks.
- FSM. See USDA Forest Service Manuals.
- Furniss, M.J., T.D. Roelofs, and C.S. Yee. 1991. Road construction and maintenance. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 19:297-327.

- Gabreilson, I.N. and F.C. Lincoln. 1959. The Birds of Alaska. The Stackpole Co., Harrisburg, Penn., and the Wildlife Management Institute, Washington D.C.
- Gasaway, W.C., R.O. Stephenson, J.L. Davis, P.E.K. Shepard, and O.E. Burris. 1983. Interrelationships of Wolves, Prey, and Man in Interior Alaska. Wildlife Monograph 84.
- Gehrels, G.E. 1992. Geologic map of the Southern Prince of Wales Island, Southeastern Alaska. U.S. Geological Survey. Map 1-2169. 23 pp.
- Geier, T. W. and W. D. Loggy. 1995 A proposed geomorphic risk assessment of potential fish habitat impacts from forest management. In Proceedings: American Water Resources Association, Alaska Section. Publication #WRC-117, Water Research Center, Institute of Northern Engineering, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.
- Geppert, R.R., C.W. Lorenz, and A.G. Larson. 1984. Cumulative Effects of Forest Practices on the Environment. Prepared for the Washington Forest Practices Board, Olympia, WA.
- Gibbons, D.R. 1989. Adult salmon pre-spawning mortalities—A status report. Attachment to memo dated 12/27/89 to Rick Harris. (Status report of the Alaska Cooperative Forestry/Fisheries Working Group - draft.) USDA Forest Service. Alaska Region. 11 pp.
- Godfrey, W.E. 1979. The Birds of Canada. National Museum of Natural Sciences, Ottawa, Canada.
- Goldman, E.A. 1937. The Wolves of North America. Journal of Mammalogy.
- Goldschmidt, W.R. and T.H. Haas. 1946. Possessory rights of the Natives of southeastern Alaska. A report to the Commissioner of Indian Affairs.
- Gollop, J.B. 1988. The Eskimo Curlew. In: Audubon Wildlife Report 1988/89, W.J. Chandler (ed.). The national Audubon Society, New York, New York.
- Gregory, S.V., G.A. Lambati, D.C. Erman, K.V. Koski, M.C. Murphy, and J.R. Sedell. 1981. Influences of forest practices on aquatic production. In, Proceedings of Symposium on Streamside Management—Forestry and Fish Interaction, C. Salo and T. Cundy, eds. University of Washington, Seattle.
- Griffiths, P. 1991. A resource users perspective on cave management. British Columbia Caviar 5 (3). pp. 16-20.
- Grubb, T.C., Jr. 1975. Weather-dependent foraging behavior of some birds wintering in a deciduous woodland. Condor 77:175--182.
- Gustafson, J. 1994. The Franklin's Grouse of Southern Southeast Alaska. Unpublished report, Alaska Dept. of Fish and Game.
- Hanley, T.A., C.T. Robbins, and D.E. Spalinger. 1989. Forest habitats and the nutritional ecology of Sitka black-tailed deer: A research synthesis with implications for forest management. USDA Forest Service Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-GTR-230.
- Hanley, T.A. and C.L. Rose. 1987. Influence of overstory on snow depth and density in hemlock-spruce stands: Implications for management of deer habitat in southeastern Alaska. USDA Forest Service. Res. Note PNW-RN-459, 11pp.

- Hanlon v. Barton. 1988. Memorandum and Order in the case of Hanlon v. Barton, No. J88-025 (District of Alaska). Signed 14 November 1988 by J.A. von der Heydt.
- Hansen, A.J., T.A. Spies, F.J. Swanson, and J.L. Ohmann. 1991. Lessons from natural forests. *BioScience* 41:382--392.
- Hanson, H.A. 1962. Canada Geese of Coastal Alaska. Transactions North Wildlife and Natural Resources Conference, 27:301-320.
- Harding, K.A. and D.C. Ford. 1993. Impacts of primary deforestation upon limestone slopes in northern Vancouver Island, British Columbia. *Environmental Geology* 21:137-143.
- Harmon, M.E. 1986. Logs as sites of tree regeneration in *Picea sitchensis*-*Tsuga heterophylla* forests of coastal Washington and Oregon. PhD. thesis, Oregon State University, Corvallis.
- Harmon, M.E. and J.F. Franklin. 1989. Tree seedlings on logs in *Picea*-*Tsuga* forests of Oregon and Washington. *Ecology* 70(1):48-59.
- Harr, R.D. 1976. Forest practices and streamflow in western Oregon. Forest Service Pacific Northwest Range and Experiment Sta. General Tech. Rep. No. PNW-49.
- Harr, R.D. 1981. Some characteristics and consequences of snowmelt during rainfall in western Oregon. *Journal of Hydrology* 53:277-304.
- Harr, R.D. 1983. Potential for augmenting water yield through forest practices in western Washington and western Oregon. *Water Resources Bulletin* 19(3).
- Harris, A.S. 1989. Wind in the Forests of Southeast Alaska and Guides for Reducing Damage. USDA Forest Service GTR, Pacific Northwest Res. Sta., PNW-GTR-244.
- Harris, A.S. and W.A. Farr. 1974. Forest ecology and timber management. In, *The Forest Ecosystem of Southeast Alaska*. Technical Report PNW-25. Portland: USDA Forest Service. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station.
- Harris, L.D. 1984. *The fragmented forest: Island biogeography theory and the preservation of biotic diversity*. Univ. of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- Harris, L.D. 1985. Conservation corridors: A highway system for wildlife. *Environmental Info. Center, Florida Conserv. Found., Winter Park, Florida*. ENFO Rept. 855.
- Harza Northwest, Inc. 1995. Lab Bay project Area Draft Environmental Impact Statement, Volume I. R10-MB-296a.
- Hass, G.R., and J.D. McPhail. 1991. Systematics and distribution of Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*) and Bull Trout (*Salvelinus confluentis*) in North America. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. Vol. 48, No. 11. pp. 2191-2211.
- Hedderly-Smith, D.A. 1993. Report of the 1992 Field Season-Sealaska Minerals Reconnaissance Project. Sealaska Corporation, V. I. test. 114 pp. V. II. appendices and plates, 23 pp., 11 plates.
- Heifetz, J., M.L. Murphy, and K.V. Koski. 1986. Effects of logging on winter habitat of juvenile salmonids in Alaskan streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 6(1):52-58.

- Herried, G., T.K. Budzen, and D.L. Turner. 1978. Geology and Geochemistry of the Craig A-2 Quadrangle and Vicinity, Prince of Wales Island, Southeastern Alaska. AK Division of Geology and Geophysical Survey, Geol. Report 48. 49 pp.
- Herring, M. 1995. Karst lands: the world beneath our feet. Natural Areas Report, Vol. 7, No. 3. p. 1-2.
- Hodge, R.P. 1976. Amphibians and Reptiles in Alaska, the Yukon and Northwest Territories. Alaska Northwest Publishing Company, Anchorage, Alaska.
- Hodges, J.I., Jr. and F.C. Robards. 1982. Observations of 3,850 bald eagle nests in Southeast Alaska. In, Proceedings of a Symposium and Workshop on Raptor Management and Biology in Alaska and Western Canada, 17-20 February 1981, Anchorage, Alaska, W.N. Ladd and P.F. Schempf, eds., pp.37-54. USDI Fish and Wildlife Service, Alaska Reg. Rep. Proc-82. Anchorage.
- Hogan, D.L. and D.J. Wilford. 1989. A sediment transfer hazard classification system: Linking erosion to fish habitat. In, Proceedings of Watershed '89: A Conference on the Stewardship of Soil, Air, and Water Resources, March 1989. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, AK, R10-MB-77.
- Holleman, M. and J. Kruse. 1991. Hunting and fishing in Southeast Alaska. Alaska Review of Social and Economic Conditions, Institute of Social and Economic Research, University of Alaska Anchorage.
- Holman, William. 1992. Priority List of Recreation Development for Prince of Wales and Associated Islands, 1992-1997. Unpublished. Craig Ranger District, Tongass National Forest.
- Holmberg, N.D. 1992. Letter from U.S. fish & Wildlife Service concerning Section 7 consultation with Forest Service, March 5, 1992.
- Holmberg, N.D. 1993. Letter of concurrence from U.S. fish & Wildlife Service that North Revilla Project would not likely adversely affect currently listed threatened or endangered species, April 28, 1993.
- Holmes, Charles E., R.J. Dale, and J.D. McMahan. 1989. Archaeological mitigation of the Thorne River site (CRG-177) Prince of Wales Island, Alaska: forest Highway No. 42, (DT-FH70-86-A-00003). Office of History and Archaeology Report Number 15. Div. of Parks and Outdoor Rec., Alaska Dept. of Natural Resources, Anchorage, AK.
- Holtby, L.B. and J.C. Scrivener. 1989. Observed and simulated effects of climatic variability, clear-cut logging and fishing on the numbers of chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*) and coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kitsutch*) returning to Carnation Creek, British Columbia. In, Proceedings of the National Workshop on Effects of Habitat Alteration on Salmonid Stocks, C.D. Levings, L.B. Holtby, and M.A. Henderson, eds., pp. 62-81. Can.Spec.Publ.Fish.Aquat.Sci. 105.
- Hopwood, D. 1991. Principles and practices of new forestry: A guide for British Columbians. BC Ministry of For. Land Manage. Rep. 71.
- Hughes, J.H. 1985. Characteristics of standing dead trees in old-growth forests on Admiralty Island, Alaska. M.S. Thesis, Washington State University, Pullman. 103 pp.



- Hughes, R.M. and R.F. Noss. 1992. Biological diversity and biological integrity: Current concerns for lakes and streams. *Fisheries* 17 (3):11-19.
- Hunter, M.J. 1990. *Wildlife, forests, and forestry: Principles of managing forests for biological diversity*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.
- Huntoon, P.W. 1992a. Hydrogeologic characteristics and deforestation of the stone forest karst aquifers of south China. *Ground Water*, Vol. 30. pp. 167-176.
- Interagency Task Group Meeting Records, July 18, Sept. 1 and 18, 1988.
- Irland Group. 1991. Assessment of adequacy of timber supply and analysis of potential effects of eliminating the long-term timber sale contract areas, pursuant to Sec. 301(e), Tongass Timber Reform Act of 1990. The Irland Group, December, 1991.
- Irvine, J., and N. Johnston. 1992. Coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) use of lakes and streams in the Keogh River drainage, British Columbia. In *Northwest Science* 66(1):15-25, February 1992.
- Jensen, W.F., T.K. Fuller, and W.L. Robinson. 1986. Wolf, *Canis lupus*, distribution on the Ontario-Michigan border near Saulk St. Marie. *Canadian Field Naturalist*.
- Johnsgard, P.A. 1990. *Hawks, Eagles, and Falcons of North America, Biology and natural History*. Smithsonian Inst. Press, Washington D.C.
- Johnson, J.H. and A.A. Wolman. 1984. The Humpback Whale (*Megaptera noraergliae*), The Status of the Endangered Whales. *Marine Fisheries Review*, Vol. 46.
- Jones, J. and V. Slajer. 1980. The Lancaster Cove and Kitkun Bay road system and proposed log dump site. Report to USDA Forest Service. Manuscript on file at the Ketchikan Ranger District.
- Jones, S.H. and C.B. Fah. 1994. Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Alaska and Conterminous Basins of Canada. USGS Water-Resources Investigations Report 93-4179, US Geological Survey, Anchorage, AK.
- Keith, L.B. 1983. Population Dynamics of Wolves. Pages 66-77 in L.N. Carbyn (ed.), *Wolves of Canada and Alaska*. Canadian Wildlife Service, #45.
- Kessler, W.B. 1979. Bird population responses to clearcutting in the Tongass National Forest of Southeast Alaska. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Report 71.
- Ketchikan Pulp and Paper Co. (KPC). 1951, amended 1991. Contract No. A10fs-1042, 7/26/51, as amended.
- Ketchikan Visitors Bureau. Cruise Ship Calendar 1992, Ketchikan, Alaska.
- Kiernan, K. 1993. Karst research and management in the state forests of Tasmania. 10th Australian Conference on Cave and Karst Management: May 1993.
- Kirchhoff, M.D. and J.W. Schoen. 1987. Forest cover and snow: Implications for deer habitat in Southeast Alaska. *Journ.Wildl.Mgmt.* 51(1):28-33.
- Knutson-Vandenberg Act. 1930. Ch. 416, Stat 527, as amended; 16 U.S.C. 576-5766.

- Konopacky. 1991. Water temperature studies in streams on Prince of Wales Island, Alaska, during summer-fall 1990. Konopacky Environmental, Meridian, ID.
- Kruse, J. 1992. Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER), University of Alaska, Anchorage.
- Kruse, J. and R. Frazier. 1988. Report to the community of [ ]:Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS). A report series prepared for 31 communities in Southeast Alaska. Institute of Social and Economic Research, University of Alaska Anchorage in Cooperation with USDA Forest Service and Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Subsistence.
- Kruse, J. and R. Muth. 1990. Subsistence use of renewable resources by rural residents of Southeast Alaska. A final report prepared for the USDA Forest Service. Institute of Social and Economic Research, University of Alaska Anchorage.
- Landwehr, D. 1992. Landslide frequency occurrence in the 1989-94 Ketchikan Pulp Company Long-Term Timber Sale Area. Interim report. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, Ketchikan Area, Ketchikan, Alaska.
- Landwehr, D. 1992. Soil disturbance on the 89-94 KPC Long-term Sale Area. Unpublished interim monitoring report. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, Ketchikan Area, Ketchikan, Alaska.
- Langdon, S.J., J.E. Lobdell, G.A. Poremba, and C.W. Smythe. 1992. Subsistence Survey Baseline Report: Polk Inlet Environmental Impact Statement. Lobdell and Associates. Placitas, New Mexico.
- Larsen, D.N. 1983. Habitats, movements, and foods of river otter in coastal Southeastern Alaska. University of Alaska. MS Thesis.
- Lawrence, W. 1979. Pacific working group: Habitat management and land use Practices. In, *The Black Bear in Modern North America*, D. Burk, ed., pp. 196-201. Boon and Crockett Club. Amwell Press, Clinton, N.Y.
- Lebeda, C.S. and J.T. Ratti. 1983. Reproductive biology of Vancouver Canada geese on Admiralty Island, Alaska. *Journ. Wildlife Mgmt.* 47:297-306.
- Leopold, A. 1933. *Game management*. Scribner, New York. 481 pp.
- Lewis, S.W. 1995. Karst Ecosystem Protection in the Tongass National Forest. *NSS News*, Vol. 53, No. 2. pp. 32-39.
- Lichon, M. 1993. Human Impacts on Processes in Karst Terranes, with Special Reference to Tasmania: *Cave Science*, Vol. 20, No. 2, Transactions of the British Cave Research Association. pp. 55-60.
- Lindell, J. 1996. Letter from U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service concerning Section 7 consultation with Forest Service, April 9, 1996.
- Lindzey, C.S. and E.C. Meslow. 1977. Home range and habitat use by black bears in southwestern Washington. *Journ. Wildlife Mgmt.* 41:413-425.

- Lively, Ralph A. 1993. An Archaeological clearance report for the Kootznoowoo Land Exchange on Prince of Wales Island, Southeast Alaska. CRM Report 1993-50-43. USDA Forest Service Report. manuscript on file at the Ketchikan Ranger District.
- Loggy, W.D. 1974. Landslide inventory of the Harris River drainage. Unpublished report. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, Ketchikan Area, Ketchikan, Alaska.
- Longhurst, W.M. and W.L. Robinette. 1981. Effects of clearcutting and timber management on Sitka black-tailed deer. Wildlife and Fisheries Habitat Management Notes. USDA Forest Service. Alaska Region Admin. Doc. No. 103.
- Long-Term Contract. See Ketchikan Pulp and Paper Co.
- LTS EIS. 1989-94 Long-Term Sale Contract EIS. See USDA Forest Service 1989.
- Maas, Kenneth M., P.E. Bittenbender, J.C. Still. 1995. Mineral Investigations in the Ketchikan Mining District, Southeastern Alaska. Open File Report 11-95, Bureau of Mines, USDI, Washington D.C.
- Maas, K.M., J.C. Still, A.H. Clough, L.K. Oliver. 1991. Mineral Investigations in the Ketchikan Mining District, Alaska. 1990: Southern Prince of Wales Island and Vicinity. U.S. Bureau of Mines, OFR 33-91. 139 pp.
- Maas, K.M., P.E. Bittenbender, J.C. Still. 1995. Mineral Investigations in the Ketchikan Mining district Southeastern Alaska. U.S. Bureau of Mines, OFR 11-95. 606 pp.
- Madej, M.A. 1982. Sediment transport and channel changes in an aggrading stream in the Puget Lowland, Washington. In, Sediment Budgets and Routing in Forest Drainage Basins. General Technical Report PNW 141.
- Marshall, D.B. 1988. Status of the marbled murrelet in North America, with special emphasis on populations in California, Oregon, and Washington. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Biological Report 88(30).
- McAllister, K.R. and B. Leonard. 1991. Past Distribution and Current Status of the Spotted Frog in Western Washington. 1990 Progress Report. Washington Dept. of Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.
- McDowell, D.E. and S. Eppenbach. 1985. Alaska tourism handbook: A guide to community tourism development. State of Alaska Division of Tourism, Juneau, Alaska.
- McNeil, W. 1964. Redd superimposition and egg capacity of pink salmon spawning beds. In, Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada, 21(6), 1964.
- Mech, L.D. and P.H. Karns. 1977. Role of the wolf in a deer decline in the Superior National Forest. USDA Forest Service Research Paper NC-52, North Central Forest Experiment Station, St. Paul, Minnesota.
- Mech, L.D., S.H. Fritts, G.L. Radde, and W.J. Paul. 1988. Wolf distribution and road density in Minnesota. Wildlife Society Bulletin #16.
- Meehan, W.R., W.A. Farr, D.M. Bishop, and J.H. Patric. 1969. Some effects of clearcutting on salmon habitat of two Southeast Alaska streams. USDA Forest Service Res. Paper PNW-82. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Sta., Portland OR.

- Meehan, W.R. 1991. Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats.
- Melquist, W.E., and M.G. Hornocker. 1983. Ecology of river otters in west central Idaho. Wildl. Monograph #83.
- Merrian, H.E. 1970. Deer fluctuations in Alaska. Paper presented at the 1970 Ann. Meeting NW Sec. Wildl. Soc., Spokane WA.
- Mitchell, R.C. and R.T. Carson. 1989. Using Surveys to Value Public Goods: the Contingent Valuation Method. Resources for the Future, Washington, D.C.
- Mobley, C.M. 1989. An archaeological survey on the Cleveland Peninsula, Southeastern Alaska, including six timber harvest units. Report to USDA Forest Service, Ketchikan Area, Fairbanks, AK.
- Modafferi, R.D. 1982. Black bear movements and home range study. Alaska Dept. Fish and Game. Fed. Aid in Wildl. Rest., Final Rep. Proj. W-17-10, W-17-21, W-21-1, and W-21-2., Job 17.2R.
- Moore, K. 1977. Factors contributing to blowdown in streamside leave strips on Vancouver Island. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Forest, Information Division, Victoria, B.C.
- Morrison, M.L., K.A. With, I.C. Timossi, W.M. Block, and K.A. Milne. 1987. Foraging behavior of bark-foraging birds in the Sierra Nevada. Condor 89:201--204.
- Moss, Madonna. 1994. Northern Northwest Coast regional overview. In: The Origins, Development, and Spread of Prehistoric North Pacific-Bering Sea Maritime Cultures. Allen McCarney and William Workman, eds. Manuscript submitted in 1994.
- Murphy, M.L., J.M. Lorenz, J. Heifetz, J.F. Thedinga, K.V. Koski, and S.W. Johnson. 1987. The relationship between stream classification, fish, and habitat in Southeast Alaska. Wildlife and Fisheries Habitat Management Notes, TNF, R10-MB10. USDA Forest Service. 63pp.
- National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1969, as amended. Public Law 91-90, 42 USC 4321-4347, January 1, 1970, as amended by Public Law 94-52, July 3, 1975, and Public Law 94-83, August 9, 1975.
- National Forest Management Act (NFMA). 1976. Public Law 94-588, 90 Stat. 2949, as amended; 16 U.S.C. 36 CFR 219.
- National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA). 1966.
- Nelson, M.E. and L.D. Mech. 1981. Deer Social Organization and Wolf Predation in Northeastern Minnesota. Wildlife Monograph #77.
- Nickelson, T., J. Rodgers, S. Johnson, and M. Solazzi. 1992a. Seasonal changes in habitat use by juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) in Oregon coastal streams. In Canada Journal of Fishery and Aquatic Sciences, Vol. 49, 1992.



- Nickelson, T., J. Rodgers, S. Johnson, and M. Solazzi. 1992b. Effectiveness of selected stream improvement techniques to create suitable summer and winter rearing habitat for juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) in Oregon coastal streams. In *Canada Journal of Fishery and Aquatic Sciences*, Vol. 49, 1992.
- Noble, R.E., P. Harrington. 1977. Snag characteristics in old-growth forests on Prince of Wales Island in Alaska. *Wildlife and Fisheries Habitat Notes*. USDA Forest Service. Alaska Region Report number 125.
- Noss, R.F. 1983. A Regional Landscape Approach to Maintain Diversity. *BioScience* Vol. 33, pp. 700-702.
- Noss, R.F. and L.D. Harris. 1986. Nodes, Networks, and MUMS: Preserving Diversity at all Scales. *Environmental Management*.
- Nussbaum, R.A., E.D. Brodie, and r.M. Storm. 1983. *Amphibians and Reptiles of the Pacific Northwest*. University of idaho Press, Moscow, Idaho.
- O'Clair, C.E. and L.J. Freese. 1988. Reproduction condition of Dungeness crabs, *Cancer magister*, at or near log transfer facilities in Southeastern Alaska. *marine environment Research*, Vol. 26: p. 57-81.
- Office of the Federal Register. 1992. code of Federal Regulations, 36, part 200 to end. National Archives and Records Administration. Washington D.C.
- Orth, Donald J. 1971. *Dictionary of the Alaska Place Names*, rev. ed., Geological Survey Professional Paper 567. United States Government Printing Office, Washington D.C.
- Osgood, W.H. 1903. Unpublished data. Smithsonian Institute Archives, Rec. ut. 7176, Bx. 13, Fld. 17.
- Pacific Yew Act of 1992. Public Law 102-335, 106 Stat. 859; 16 U.S.C. pp. 4804-4807.
- Packard, J.P. and L.D. Mech. 1980. Population regulation in wolves. Pages 135-150 in M.N. Cohen, R.S. Malpass and H.G. Klein (eds.), *Biosocial Mechanisms of Population Regulation*. Yale Univ. Press, New Haven, Conn.
- Palmer, R. 1975. *Handbook of North American Birds*, Volume 3. Yale Univ. Press. London, England.
- Paradiso, J.L. and R.M. Nowak. 1982. Wolves. In: J.A. Chapman and G.A. Feldhamer (eds.), pp. 460-474; *Wild Mannals of North America*. The John Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, MD.
- Patric, J.H. 1966. Rainfall interception by mature coniferous forests of Southeast Alaska. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation* 21(6):229-231.
- Paustian, S.J. 1987. Monitoring non-point source discharge of sediment from timber harvesting activities in two Southeast Alaska watersheds. In, *Proceedings of Water Quality in the Great Land: Alaska's Challenge*, pp. 153-167. Water Research Center. Institute of Northern Engineering, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, AK.
- Pearson, T.G. 1923. Brown Creeper. *Bird-Lore* 23:60-63.

- Pedersen, S. 1982. Geographical variation in Alaskan wolves. Pages 345-361 in Harrington, F.H. and P.C. Paquet (eds.). *Wolves of the World: Perspectives of Behavior, Ecology, and Conservation*. Noyes Publications, Park Ridge, NJ.
- Pella, J.J. and R.T. Myren. 1974. Caveats concerning evaluation of effects of logging on salmon production in southeastern Alaska from biological information. *Northwest Science* 48 (2):132-144.
- Pennoyer, S. 1992. Letter concerning Section 7 consultation, National Marine Fisheries Service, Feb. 6. 1992.
- Pennoyer, S. 1993. Letter of concurrence that the North Revilla Project will not likely affect endangered or threatened species. national Marine Fisheries Service, April 14, 1993.
- Pentec Environmental, Inc. 1991. The cause of adult salmon pre-spawner mortality in Southeast Alaska. A report, submitted to Alaska Working Group in Cooperative Forestry/Fisheries Research. Project No. 009-002, dated May 20, 1991.
- Person, D. 1993. Ecology of the Alexander Archipelago Wolf and Response to Change. Progress Report No.2. November 22, 1993.
- Peterson, R.T. 1990. *A Field Guide to Western Birds*. Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, MA.
- Pierce, R.S., C.W. Martin, C.C. Reeves, C.F. Likens, and F.H. Bormann. 1972. Nutrient loss from clearcutting in New Hampshire. In, *Proceedings of a Symposium on Watersheds in Transition*. S.C. Csallany, T.G. McLaughlin, and W.D. Striffler, eds. American Water Resources Assn. and Colorado State Univ.
- Ralph, C.J. and S.K. Nelson. 1992. Methods of marbled Murrelets at Inland Forest Sites. Pacific Seabird Group, Marbled Murrelet Technical Committee. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest forest Experimental Station, Redwood Science Lab, Arcata, California.
- Ralph, C.J., G.L. Hunt Jr., M.G. Raphael and J.F. Piatt. 1995. Ecology and Conservation of the Marbled Murrelet in North America: An Overview. USDA Forest Service Pacific SW Research Station, General Technical Report PSW-GTR-152.
- Ratti, J.T. and D.E. Timm. 1979. Migratory behavior of Vancouver Canada geese: Recovery rate bias. In, *Biology and Management of Pacific Flyway geese*, R.L. Jarvis and J.T. Bartonek, eds., pp.208-212. Oregon State University Bookstores, Inc. Corvallis.
- Reid, L.M. and T. Dunne. 1984. Sediment production from forest road surfaces. *Water Resources Research* 20(11):1753-1761.
- Reilly, G.M., Jr. 1968. *The Audubon Illustrated Handbook of American Birds*. McGraw-Hill Co., New York, N.Y.
- Reiser, D.W. and T.C. Bjornn. 1979. Habitat Requirements of Anadromous Salmonids. Influence of Forest and Rangeland Management on Anadromous Fish Habitat in Western North America. General Technical Report PNW-96. Portland, OR: USDA, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station.
- Resources Planning Act (RPA). See USDA Forest Service 1974.

- Rice, R.M., F.B. Tilley, and P.A. Datzman. 1979. A watershed's response to logging and roads: South Fork of Casper Creek, California, 1967-1976. USDA Forest Service, Berkeley, CA, Research Paper PSW-146.
- Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899. 33 U.S.C. 403.
- Robbins, C.S., B. Brunn, and H.S. Zim. 1983. A Field Guide to Identification of Birds of North America. Golden Press, New York, NY.
- Rogers, G. 1960. Alaska in transition. Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore, MD.
- Roppell, Patricia. 1991. Fortunes from the Earth: An History of the Base and Industrial Minerals of Aoutheast Alaska. Sunflower University Press, Manhattan, Kansas.
- Roppel, Patricia. 1995. Personal communication. Telephone conversation with Diane Hanson (USDA Forest Service, Craig Ranger District).
- Rosenberg, K.V., and M.G. Raphael. 1986. Effects of forest fragmentation on vertebrates in Douglas-fir forests. In, Wildlife 2000: Modeling Habitat Relationships of Terrestrial Vertebrates, J. Verner, M.L. Morrison, and C.J. Ralph, eds., pp.263-272. Univ. Wisc. Press., Madison.
- Rosgen, D. 1994. A Classification of Natural Rivers. Catena 22; 169-199.
- Rothacher, J. 1965. Streamflow from small watersheds on the western slope of the Cascade Range of Oregon. Water Resource Research 1(1).
- Rothacher, J. 1970. Increases in water yield following clear-cut harvest in the Pacific Northwest. Water Resource Research 6(2):653-658.
- Rothacher, J., C.T. Dryness, and R.L. Fredricksen. 1967. Hydrologic and related characteristics of three small watersheds in the Oregon Cascades. Forest Service Pacific Northwest Range and Experiment Sta., Portland, OR.
- Ruth, R.H. and A.S. Harris. 1979. Management of western hemlock-Sitka spruce forests for timber production. General Technical Report PNW-88. USDA, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station.
- Salo, E. 1966. Study of the effects of logging on pink salmon in Alaska. In Proceedings, Society of American Foresters, Contribution No. 264.
- Salo, E. 1972. Effects of logging on salmon stream studies sponsored by the Alaska Loggers Association. Unpublished lecture.
- Schempf, P.F. 1981. Unpublished survey information. US Fish and Wildlife Service.
- Schempf, P.F. 1982. Unpublished survey information. US Fish and Wildlife Service.
- Schoen, J.W. and M.D. Kirchhoff. 1990. Seasonal habitat use by Sitka black-tailed deer on Admiralty Island, Alaska. Journ.Wildl.Mgmt. 54(3):371-378.
- Schoen, J.W., M.D. Kirchhoff, and J.H. Hughes. 1988. Wildlife and old-growth forests in Southeast Alaska. Natural Areas Journal 8:138-145.

- Schoen, J.W., M.D. Kirchhoff, and M.H. Thomas. 1985. Seasonal distribution and habitat use by Sitka black-tailed deer in Southeastern Alaska. Fed. Aid in Wildl. Res. Final Rep. Prog. W-17-11, W-21-2, W22-2, W22-3, and W22-4. Job 2.6R, Alaska Dept. of Fish and Game, Juneau.
- Sedell, J.R. and W.S. Duval. 1985. Water transportation and storage of logs. USDA Forest Service, Gen. Tech. Report PNW-186; p. 24-36.
- Shea, L. 1990. Impacts of development on the non-hunting, wildlife oriented businesses of Southeast Alaska. ADF&G, Habitat Division.
- Sheridan, W.L., J.E. Weisgerber, and C.N. Wilson. 1965. The effects of logging in twelve salmon streams in Southeast Alaska, USDA Forest Service, Region 10, Juneau, 59p.
- Sheridan, W.L. and W.J. McNeil. 1982. Pink salmon escapements in some logged and unlogged streams in Southeast Alaska, Juneau, AK: USDA, Forest Service, Alaska Region.
- Sheridan, W.L. et al. 1984. Sediment content of streambed gravels in some pink salmon spawning streams in Alaska in fish and wildlife relationships in old-growth forests. In, Proceedings of a Symposium, Juneau, Alaska, 12-15 April 1982, W.R. Meehan, T.R. Merrell, and T.A. Hanley, eds., pp.153-165.
- SHPO. (See Alaska State Historic Preservation Office.)
- Shultz and Berg. 1976. Some effects of log dumping on estuaries. U.S. Marine Fisheries Service, Alaska Region, Environmental Assessment Division, Juneau, Alaska.
- Side, W.D. and L.H. Suring. 1986. Wildlife and fisheries habitat management notes: Management indicator species for the National Forest lands in Alaska. USDA Forest Service. Alaska Region Tech. Pub. R10-TP-2.
- Side, W.D. 1985. Wildlife and fisheries habitat management notes: Habitat management for forest birds in Southeast Alaska. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Admin. Doc. No. 146. 21 p.
- Silviculture Instructors Sub-Group (D2) SAF. Silviculture Terminology with Appendix of Draft Ecosystem Management Terms. September 1994, Society of American Foresters.
- Simon, T.L. 1980. An ecological study of the marten in the Tahoe National Forest, California. M.S. Thesis. California State University, Sacramento.
- Simons, D.B., R.M. Li, N. Duong, N. Kouwen, V.M. Ponce, E.V. Richardson, K. Schneider, S.A. Schumn, and R.K. Simons. 1980. Watershed and Stream Mechanics. USDA Soil Conservation Service, Washington, D.C.
- Smith, C.A., R.E. Wood, L. Beier, and K.P. Bovee. 1986. Wolf-Deer-Habitat Relationships in Southeast Alaska. Progress Report. Federal Aid in Wildlife Restoration Project W-22-4, Job 14.13. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Juneau, Alaska.
- Smythe, C.W. 1988. Harvest and use of fish and wildlife resources by residents of Petersburg, Alaska. Chilkat Institute, Juneau, Alaska, and Division of Subsistence, Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Juneau, Alaska.
- Soil Survey Staff. 1993. Soil Survey Manual. USDA Hdbk No. 18.



- Soil Survey Staff. 1992. Keys to Soil Taxonomy, Sixth Edition, 1994.
- Stebbins, R.C. 1985. Western Amphibians and Reptiles. Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, MA.
- Stednick, J.D., T.W. Lewis, and D.J. Hoffman. 1978. Suspended sediment production from bridge/culvert placement and/or removal. Forest Service, Chatham Area, Sitka, AK. Unpublished report.
- Stednick, J.D., L.N. Tripp, and R.J. McDonald. 1982. Slash burning on soil and water chemistry in Southeast Alaska. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation, March-April, 1982.
- Stephens, F.R., C.R. Gass, R.F. Billings. 1968. Soils and site index in Southeast Alaska. Rep. No. 2 of the Soil-Site Index, Administrative Study. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region.
- Stone, D. and B. Stone. 1980. Hard Rock Gold. Vanguard Press, Seattle, Washington.
- Streveler, G. and J. Brakel. 1991. Cave lands of Southeast Alaska; an imperiled resource. A report to the Southeast Alaska Conservation Council by Icy Strait Environmental Services, Gustavus, AK. 39 p. + appendix material.
- Strickland, M.A., C.W. Douglas, M. Novak, and N.P. Hunziger. 1982. Marten (*Martes americana*). In, Wild Mammals of North America, J.A. Chapman and G.A. Feldhamer, eds., pp.599--612. The John Hopkins University Press. Baltimore, MD.
- Stringer, J.W., B.L. Slover, and T. Alley. 1991. Speleoforestry: Planning for an unseen resource, Journal of forestry.
- Suring, L.H., E.J. Degayner, R.W. Flynn, T.McCarthy, M.L. Orme, R.E. Wood, and E.L. Young. 1988a. Habitat capability model for black bear in Southeast Alaska. USDA Forest Service, Tongass national Forest. Draft.
- Suring, L.H., E.J. Degayner, and P.F. Schempf. 1988c. Habitat capability model for bald eagles in Southeast Alaska: Nesting habitat. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest. Draft.
- Suring, L.H., A.T. Doyle, R.W. Flynn, D.N. Larsen, M.L. Orme, and R.E. Wood. 1988d. Habitat capability model for river otter in Southeast Alaska: Spring habitat. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest. Draft.
- Suring, L.H., R.W. Flynn, J.H. Hughes, M.L. Orme, and D.A. Williamson. 1988e. Habitat capability model for hairy woodpeckers in Southeast Alaska: Winter habitat. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest. Draft.
- Suring, L.H., E.J. Degayner, R.W. Flynn, M.D. Kirchhoff, J.R. Martin, J.W. Schoen, L.C. Shea. 1992. Habitat capability model for Sitka black-tailed deer in Southeast Alaska: Winter habitat. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest.
- Suring, L.H., E.J. Degayner, and R.W. Flynn. 1992. Habitat capability model for marten in Southeast Alaska: Winter habitat. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest. Draft.

- Suring, L.H., D.C. Crocker-Bedford, R.W. Flynn, C.S. Hale, G.C. Iverson, M.D. Kirchhoff, T.E. Schenck, L.C. Shea, K. Titus. 1993. Report of an Interagency Committee: A proposed strategy for maintaining well-distributed, viable populations of wildlife associated with old-growth forests in Southeast Alaska. Review Draft. Juneau, AK. 96 p.
- Swanson, C.S., M. Thomas, and D. M. Donelly. 1989. Economic Value of Big Game Hunting in Southeast Alaska, USDA Forest Service Resource Bulletin. RM-16.
- Swanston, D.N. 1969. Mass wasting in coastal Alaska. USDA Forest Service Research Paper. PNW-83.
- Swanston, D.N. 1974. Soil mass movement. The Forest Ecosystem of Southeast Alaska. USDA Forest Service Research Paper. PNW-17.
- Swanston, D.N. 1989. A preliminary analysis of landslide response to timber management in Southeast Alaska: An extended abstract. Proceedings of Watershed '89: A Conference on the Stewardship of Soil, Air, and Water Resources. R10-MB-77. Juneau, AK, USDA, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Forest Sciences Laboratory.
- Swanston, D.N. and D.A. Marion. 1991. Landslide Response to timber harvest in Southeast Alaska. Proceeding of the Fifth Federal Interagency Sedimentation Conference. Eds. Drs. Shou-Shan Fan and Yung-Huang Kuo. Vol. 2.
- Swanston, D.N. 1993. Research Geologist, Forestry Sciences Lab., Juneau, AK. Preliminary report on current research into stream productivity of karst vs. non-karst dominated streams. Personal Communication.
- Swanston, F.J., L.E. Benda, S.H. Duncan, G.E. Grant, W.F. Megahan, L.M. Reid, and R.R. Ziemer. 1987. "Mass failures and other processes of sediment production in Pacific Northwest forest landscapes." In Proceedings of the symposium Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions, February 12-14, 1986, University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources, Seattle, WA.
- Swanton, John R. 1905. contributions to the Ethnology of the Haida. Publications of the Jesup North Pacific Expeditions; Memoirs of the American Museum of Natural History 8(1): 1-300. New York.
- Swanton, John R. 1966. Indian Tribes of Alaska and Canada. Reprinted. The Shorey Bookstore, Seattle, Washington.
- Swanton, John R. 1975. contributions to the Ethnology of the Haida. Reprinted. AM Press, Inc., New York. Originally published in 1910, American Museum of natural History Memoirs, 10: 31-42.
- Tasmania Forestry Commission. 1993. Forestry Practice Code for Karst Terrain. Tasmania Forestry Commission, Hobart. 7 pp.
- Taylor, R.F. 1934. Yield of second-growth western hemlock-Sitka spruce stands in Southeastern Alaska. Technical Bulletin No 412. USDA, Forest Service. Washington: GPO.
- Taylor, T.F. 1979. Species list of Alaskan birds, mammals, freshwater and anadromous fish, amphibians, reptiles, and commercially important invertebrates. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region Report No 82.

- Tenakee v. Courtright. 1987. Memorandum of Order in case of Tenakee v. Courtright, No. J86-024 (District of Alaska). Signed 26 June 1987 by J.A. von der Heydt.
- Theil, R.P. 1985. Relationship between road densities and wolf habitat suitability in Wisconsin. *American Wildlife Naturalist* #133.
- Thomas, J.W. 1979. Wildlife habitats in managed forests in the Blue Mountains of Oregon and Washington. USDA Forest Service, Agriculture Handbook No. 553. September 1979.
- TLMP. See USDA Forest Service 1979a and 1986a.
- TLMP Draft Revision. See USDA Forest Service 1991a.
- TLMP RSDEIS. See USDA Forest Service 1996a.
- Tongass Resource Cooperative Use Survey (TRUCS). (See Kruse and Frazier 1988; Kruse, Frazier and Fahlman 1988.)
- Tongass Timber Reform Act (TTRA). 1990. Public Law 101-626.23 October.
- Tyler, R., and D. Gibbons. 1973. Observations of the effects of logging on salmon producing tributaries of the Stanley Creek watershed and the Thorne River watershed and of logging on the Sitka District. Unpublished, Alaska Loggers Association, FRI-UW-7307.
- Uberuaga. 1984. Effectiveness of buffer zones in protecting fish habitat on small streams during clear-cut logging in southeastern Alaska. Unpublished, NMFS Northwest and Alaska Fisheries Center, Auke Bay Laboratory.
- University of Alaska-Fairbanks. 1986. Alaska climate summaries. Alaska Climate Center Technical Note Number 3. 59 pp.
- U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1987. Corps of Engineers wetlands delineation manual. Technical report Y-87-1, Vicksburg, MS: Department of the Army, Waterways Experiment Station. Washington, D.C. 100 pp.
- United States Coast Pilot. 1988. United States Coast Pilot: Pacific Coast Alaska, Dixon Entrance to Cape Spencer, 18th ed. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Washington D.C.
- USDA Forest Service. 1973. National Forest Landscape Management: Volume 1. Agriculture Handbook 434. U.S. Govt. Printing Office. Washington, D.C.
- USDA Forest Service. 1974a. Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act.
- USDA Forest Service. 1974b. Cable logging systems. Corvallis, Oregon.
- USDA Forest Service. 1974c. National Forest landscape management: Volume 2. Chapter 1 - The visual management system. Agriculture Handbook 462. U.S. Govt. Printing Office. Washington, D.C.
- USDA Forest Service. 1975. National Forest landscape management: Volume 2. Chapter 2 - Utilities. Agriculture Handbook 478. U.S. Govt. Printing Office. Washington, D.C.
- USDA Forest Service. 1977a. Southeast Alaska area guide. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, AK.

- USDA Forest Service. 1977b. National Forest Landscape Management: Volume 2. Ch.1-The visual management system. USDA Handbook No. 462.
- USDA Forest Service. 1979a. Tongass Land Management Plan and Final EIS. Series Number 10-57. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, AK.
- USDA Forest Service. 1979b. Visual character types. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region Series No. R-10-63. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, AK.
- USDA Forest Service. 1979c. The Recreation Opportunity Spectrum: A Framework for Planning, Management, and Research. General Technical Report, PNW-98. USDA Forest Service.
- USDA Forest Service. 1982. National Forest System land and resource management planning. USDA Forest Service. Federal Register 47:43026-43092.
- USDA Forest Service. 1983. Alaska regional guide. Alaska Region Rep. No. 126. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, AK.
- USDA Forest Service. 1984. Ketchikan Pulp Company Long-Term Sale Area, Final Environmental Impact Statement for the 1984-89 Operating Period. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, Alaska.
- USDA Forest Service. 1985. Management of wildlife and fish habitats in forests of western Oregon and Washington. Part 1-Chapter narratives. USDA Forest Service, Pacific NW Reg., Pub. R6-F&WL-192-1985.
- USDA Forest Service. 1986. Tongass Land Management Plan. Amended 1985-86. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region. Administrative Document No. 147.
- USDA Forest Service. 1986b. ROS Book. Forest Service.
- USDA Forest Service. 1989. Ketchikan Pulp Company Long-Term Sale Area, Final Environmental Impact Statement for the 1989-94 Operating Period. R10-MB-66a et al. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, Alaska.
- USDA Forest Service and USDI Fish and Wildlife Service. 1990. Interagency Agreement, FS Agreement #89-010/FWS Agreement #14-16-0000-90-8745, May 15, 1990.
- USDA Forest Service. 1990a. Tongass Land Management Plan Revision Draft Environmental Impact Statement. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, R10-MB-96 and R10-MB-97 (Appendices).
- USDA Forest Service. 1990b. Analysis of the management situation. Tongass National Forest Land and Resource Management Plan Revision. R10-MB-89. Tongass national Forest, January 1990.
- USDA Forest Service. 1990c. Timber supply and demand, Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act Section 706(A), Report No. 10. R10-MB-156 USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau Alaska.



- USDA Forest Service. 1991a. Tongass Land Management Plan Revision, Supplement to the Draft Environmental Impact Statement. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, R10-MB-149 (Supplement to the Draft EIS), R10-MB-146 (Supplement to DEIS, Proposed Revised Forest Plan), R10-MB-145 (Supplement to DEIS, Appendix Volume 1), and R10-MB-144 (Supplement to DEIS, Appendix Volume 2). Alaska Region, Juneau, Alaska.
- USDA Forest Service. 1991b. Shelter Cove Final Environmental Impact Statement. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, Ketchikan Area, Ketchikan, Alaska.
- USDA Forest Service. 1991c. Technical Report #91-01, USDA Forest Service R10 publication.
- USDA Forest Service. 1991d. Timber Supply and Demand, USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, R10-MB-156.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992. Channel Types Field Guide. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, R10-TP-26. Alaska Region, Juneau, Alaska.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992a. Soil quality standards. Forest Service Manual 2500, Watershed and air management. R10 Supplement No. 2500-92-1, pg. code 2554.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992b. Alaska Pulp Corporation Long-Term Timber Sale Contract, Kelp Bay Environmental Impact Statement. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, R10-MB-170 and R10-MB-171.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992c. Alaska Pulp Corporation Long-Term Timber Sale Contract, Southeast Chichagof Final Environmental Impact Statement. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, R10-MB-187a.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992d. Interim guidelines for goshawk habitat management. Letter from M. Barton, Regional Forester, to Tongass National Forest Forest Supervisors, August 18, 1992.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992e. Ketchikan Area summary of potential fisheries habitat improvement projects. Unpublished report.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992f. Evaluation of the Irland Group Report, Pertaining to Sec. 301(3), Tongass Timber Reform Act of 1990. US Forest Service Alaska Region.
- USDA Forest Service and Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation. 1992. Memorandum of Agreement between the USDA Forest Service and the Alaska Dept. of Environmental Conservation.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992g. Alaska Pulp Corporation Long-term Timber Sale Contract, Southeast Chichagof Project Area Final Environmental Impact Statement Volume I. USDA Forest Service, Tongass national Forest, R10-MB-187a.
- USDA Forest Service. 1992h. TSPIRS Report #2: Economic Account, Ketchikan Area Tongass National Forest, Fiscal Year 1991.
- USDA Forest Service 1992i. North Revilla Draft Environmental Impact Statement. Tongass national Forest, R10-MB-292a.

- USDA Forest Service. 1992j. Forest Plan Association Management Guide. Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest. R10-MB-210.
- USDA Forest Service. 1993. Reserve Tree Selection Guidelines. R10-MB-215. Alaska Region, Juneau, AK. 24 pages.
- USDA Forest Service. 1994. Karst Vulnerability Assessment Report-Lab Bay Environmental Impact Statement, Prince of Wales Island, Alaska. Prepared by Harza Northwest, Inc., Ozark Underground Laboratories, and J.F. Baichtal for: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest. 23 pp. and maps.
- USDA Forest Service. 1994a. Alternatives to using the Timber Type Map for determining proportionality under the Tongass Timber Reform Act. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region.
- USDA Forest Service. 1994b. A working guide to the sensitive plants of the Alaska Region. USDA Forest Service, Alaska Region, Juneau, AK.
- USDA Forest Service. 1994c. Classification and Correlation of the Soils of the Ketchikan Area, Alaska. SSSA-644.
- USDA Forest Service. 1995. Recreation Information Management Summary for Craig Ranger District. Unpublished. Craig Ranger District, Tongass National Forest.
- USDA Forest Service. 1995a. Karst Vulnerability Assessment Report, Phase II Site-specific Verification Study-Lab Bay Environmental Impact Statement, Prince of Wales Island, Alaska. Prepared by Harza Northwest, Inc. and Ozark Underground Laboratories for: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest. 29 pp. map and appendices.
- USDA Forest Service. 1995b. Karst Vulnerability Assessment Report, Tuxekan Island, Alaska. Prepared by Ozark Underground Laboratories and Harza Northwest, Inc. for U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Ketchikan Area, Tongass National Forest. 63 pp. plus maps.
- USDA Forest Service. 1996. Tongass Land Management Plan Revision, Supplement to the Draft Environmental Impact Statement. USDA Forest Service, Tongass National Forest, R10-MB-314a (Revised Supplement to the Draft EIS), R10-MB-314c (Revised Supplement to DEIS, Proposed Revised Forest Plan), R10-MB-314c. Alaska Region, Juneau, Alaska.
- USDA Forest Service. 1996a. Forest Service. 1996. Geology, Minerals, and Karst Resources. In: Lab Bay Project Area Draft Environmental Impact Statement, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, R10-MB-296a. pp. 3-8 to 3-30.
- USDA Forest Service. 1996b. Karst Vulnerability Assessment Final Report, Indian River Project area, Chichagof Island, Alaska. Prepared by Harza Northwest, Inc. for U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Chatham Area, Tongass National Forest. 26 pp. maps and appendices.
- USDA Forest Service. 1996c. Tongass Land Management Revision, Revised Supplement to the DEIS, Proposed Revised Plan, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, R10, Tongass National Forest, Karst Resources Section.

USDA Forest Service. 1996d. Landscape Aesthetics: A Handbook for Scenery Management. Agriculture Handbook 701. U.S. Govt. Printing Office. Washington D.C.

USDA Forest Service Manuals (FSM)

Title 2400, *Timber Management*

Title 2500, *Watershed and Air Management, Chapter 2554 "Soil Quality Monitoring"*

USDA Forest Service Handbooks

FSH 2409.18. *Timber Sale Preparation Handbook and R10 Supplement 6*

FSH 2409.18-92-5. *Region 10 Supplement to Timber Sale Preparation Handbook. Proportionality Analysis.*

FSH 2409.22. *Region 10 Timber Sale Appraisal Handbook (1994)*

FSH 2509.18. *Soil Management Handbook and R10 Supplement 7*

FSH 2509.22. *Soil and Water Conservation Handbook (1993)*

FSH 2609.24. *Aquatic Habitat Management Handbook (1986)*

U.S. Department of Commerce. Bureau of the Census. 1991. Alaska population by sex, race, and hispanic origin: 1990 Census. Prepared by Alaska Department of Labor.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service. 1982. Pacific Coast Recovery Plan for the American Peregrine Falcon (*Falco peregrinus anatum*).

U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service. 1983. Field investigations report for alternative proposed log transfer facilities on Chichagof Island, AK, 1982 and 1983.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service. 1989. Federal Register: Endangered and threatened wildlife and plants: Notice of review. USDI Fish and Wildlife Service. 50 CFR Part 17. Vol. 54, No. 4. Page 562.

U.S. Office of the President. 1977. Executive Order 11988. Floodplain Management.

U.S. Office of the President. Executive Order 11990. Wetlands. 42 USC 4321 et seq.

Vahle, J.R. and D.R. Patton. 1983. Red Squirrel Cover Requirements in Arizona Mixed Conifer Forests. *Journal of Forestry* (January):14-15.

Van Ballenberghe, V., A.W. Erickson, and D. Byman. 1975. Ecology of the Timber Wolf in Northeastern Minnesota. *Wildlife Monograph* #43.

Van Ballenberghe, V. and T.A. Hanley. 1984. Predation on deer in relation to old-growth forest management in southeastern Alaska. In, *Fish and Wildlife Relationships in Old-growth Forests: Proceedings of a Symposium*, W.R. Meehan, T.R. Merrell, and T.A. Hanley, eds., pps. 290-296. Am. Inst. Fish Res. Biol., Reintjes Publ., Morehead City, N.C.

Viereck, L.A., C.T. Dryness, A.R. Batten, and K.J. Wenzlick. 1992. The Alaska Vegetation Classification General Technical Report PNW-GTR286. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Portland, Oregon.

Walter, Rhoda A. 1982. A stream ecosystem in the old-growth forest in Southeastern Alaska, Part II: Structure and dynamics of the periphon community. In, *Symposium Proceedings of Fish and Wildlife Relationships in Old-Growth Forests*, W.R. Meehan, T.R. Merrell, and T.A. Hanley, eds., pps. 56-69. American Institute of Fish Resources Biology.

# 4Lists

- Waters, Dana L. 1992. Habitat associations, phenology, and biogeography of amphibians in the Stikine River Basin and Southeast Alaska. Report of the 1991 pilot project. US Fish and Wildlife Service and California Cooperative Fisheries Research Unit, Humboldt State University, Arcata, CA.
- Webber, D.F. 1986. Foraging site selection of the brown creeper (*Certhia americana*) in relation to temperature in Central Iowa. *Proc. Acad. Sci.* 93:22-23.
- White, W.B., D.C. Culver, J.S. Herman, T.C. Kane, J.E. Mylroie. 1995. Karst Lands, *American Scientist*, volume 83. pp. 450-459.
- Williams, Greg. 1996. Telephone conversation with Joan Kluwe, February 22, 1996.
- Wilson, M.F. 1970. Foraging behavior of some winter birds of deciduous woods. *Condor* 72:169--174.
- Wood, R. 1990. Annual survey and inventory report—wolf. Federal aid in wildlife restoration. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Juneau, AK.
- Wright, C.W. 1909. Mining in Southeastern Alaska, Ch. In *Mineral Resources of Alaska, Report on Progress of Investigations in 1909*. U.S. Geol. Surv. Bull. 379. pp. 67-86.
- Wright, F.E. and C.W. Wright. 1908. The Ketchikan and Wrangell Mining Districts, Alaska. U.S. Geol. Surv. Bull. 347. 210 pp.
- Yeo J.J. and J.M. Peck. 1992. Habitat selection by female Sitka black-tailed deer in logged forests of Southeast Alaska. *Journ. Wildlife Mgmt.* 56(2): 253-261.



## Distribution List

List of Agencies, Organizations, and Persons to Whom Copies of this Final Environmental Impact Statement Were Sent

### Agencies and Organizations Sent Complete Copy of Final EIS

A-K Tug & Barge Inc., Diana Amundson, Ketchikan, AK  
 ADF&G, Lana Shea Flanders, Regional Sup., Douglas, AK  
 AK Dept. of Environmental Conserv., Ketchikan, AK  
 AK Dept. of Environmental Conserv., Mike Menge, Director, Juneau, AK  
 AK Dept. of Environmental Conserv., Ira Winogard, Wetlands Coord., Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Board of Fisheries, Joe Demmert, Jr., Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Board of Fisheries, Debra Lyons, Petersburg, AK  
 Alaska Dept of Fish & Game, Lana Shea, Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Commerce, Director, Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Environmental Conservation, Kevin Hanley, Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Douglas, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Carol Denton, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Glenn Freeman, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Jack Gustafson, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Mike Haddix, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Mathew Kirchhoff, Douglas, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Doug Larsen, Wildlife Biologist, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Paul Novak, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. Of Fish & Game, Tom Paul, Douglas, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game, Robert E. Schroeder, Douglas, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Fish and Game, Jack Gustafson, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Natural Resources, Commissioner, Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Natural Resources, Bruce Johnson, Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Natural Resources, Andrew Pekovich, SE Reg. Mgr., Juneau, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Natural Resources, Chris Westwood, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Dept. of Transportation, Dale R. Kubik, Craig, AK  
 Alaska Families in Timber, Gerald, Cheri, & Kim Pitcher, Thorne Bay, AK  
 Alaska Forest Association, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Forest Association, Jack Phelps, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Lumberman's Assn., Cliff Skillings, General Mgr., Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Power & Telephone Co., Robert Grimm, Port Townsend, WA  
 Alaska Power & Telephone Co., Pat Smith, Craig, AK  
 Alaska Women in Timber, Jackie Durette, Director, Ketchikan, AK  
 Alaska Women in Timber, Sandra Meske, Ketchikan, AK  
 American Agri-Women, Sandra Meske, Ketchikan, AK  
 ANB Camp President, Joe Murray, Captain, Ketchikan, AK  
 ANB Grand Camp President, Ron Williams, Juneau, AK  
 Angoon Advisory Committee, Gabriel George, Angoon, AK  
 Angoon Community Association, Wally Frank, President, Angoon, AK  
 Annette Island School District, Superintendent, Metlakatla, AK  
 Annette Natural Resource Center, Rick Rogers, Forester, Metlakatla, AK  
 Associated Press - Juneau, Brian Akre, Juneau, AK  
 Bruce Hill School, Ketchikan, AK  
 Campbell Towing Company, Mike Cleman, Ketchikan, AK  
 Carslon Enterprises, Inc., Bill Carlson, Ketchikan, AK

Central Council Tlingit & Haida, Edward Thomas, President, Juneau, AK  
 Citizen's Advisory Committee, Ralph C. Gregory, Ketchikan, AK  
 City & Borough of Juneau, Librarian, Juneau, AK  
 City of Craig, Jim VanAltvorst, Administrator, Craig, AK  
 City of Hydaburg, Administrator, Hydaburg, AK  
 City of Hydaburg, Director, Hydaburg, AK  
 City of Hydaburg, Honorable Eugene Natkong, Mayor, Hydaburg, AK  
 City of Kake, Michael Jackson, Kake, AK  
 City of Kasaan, Honorable Kathie Wasserman, Mayor, Kasaan, AK  
 City of Ketchikan, City Planner, Ketchikan, AK  
 City of Ketchikan, Manager, Ketchikan, AK  
 City of Ketchikan, Fred D. Monrean, Ketchikan, AK  
 City of Ketchikan, John L. Pearson, Director, Ketchikan, AK  
 City of Klawock, Director, Klawock, AK  
 City of Klawock, Honorable Aaron T. Isaacs, Mayor, Klawock, AK  
 City of Klawock, Marvin Yoder, Klawock, AK  
 City of Metlakatla, Honorable Jim Scudero, Mayor, Metlakatla, AK  
 City of Metlakatla, Mayor, Metlakatla, AK  
 City of Petersburg, Dave Palmer, City Manager, Petersburg, AK  
 City of Petersburg, Planning Director, Petersburg, AK  
 City of Saxman, Honorable Forrest DeWitt, Mayor, Saxman, AK  
 City of Saxman, Guy Galloway, Ketchikan, AK  
 City of Thorne Bay, Honorable Randy Classen, Mayor, Thorne Bay, AK  
 City of Thorne Bay, Ginny L. Tierney, Administrator, Thorne Bay, AK  
 City of Wrangell, Director, Wrangell, AK  
 City of Wrangell, Honorable Ray McGurk, Mayor, Wrangell, AK  
 City of Wrangell, Fern Neimeyer, Wrangell, AK  
 Council Annette Island Reserve, Thomas E. Lang, Sr., Metlakatla, AK  
 Craig Advisory Committee, Jim Dennis, Craig, AK  
 Craig Advisory Committee, Cheryl Fecko, Craig, AK  
 Craig Advisory Committee, Pat Gardner, Craig, AK  
 Craig Advisory Committee, Greg Shapley, Craig, AK  
 Craig Community Association, Ralph Macki, President, Craig, AK  
 Craig Community Association, Jeff Sheakley, President, Craig, AK  
 Craig Public Library, Mary Lucille Born, Librarian, Craig, AK  
 Craig Tlingit & Haida Comm. Council, Millie Stevens, President, Craig, AK  
 Craik Logging School, Ketchikan, AK  
 Daily Sitka Sentinel, Editor, Sitka, AK  
 DEC, Jim Ferguson, Juneau, AK  
 Div. of Governmental Coordination, Diane Mayer, Juneau, AK  
 DOE, Director Office of Environment, Washington, DC  
 Durette Construction Co. Inc., Robert R. Durette Sr., Ward Cove, AK  
 Ecology and Conservation Office, Director, D. Weiting, Washington, DC  
 Edna Bay School, Edna Bay, AK  
 Elfin Cove ADF&G Advisory Committee, Paul Johnson, Elfin Cove, AK  
 EPA EIS Review Coordinator, Kathy Veit, Seattle, WA  
 EPA/NEPA Compliance Division, Washington, DC  
 Executive Director-KAA TL'ATK, Sharon Seierup, Ketchikan, AK  
 Federal Energy Reg. Comm. (FERC), Lois Cashell, Washington, DC  
 Forest Guardians, John Talberth, 1413 Second St., Suite One, Santa Fe, NM 87505  
 Forestry Library B50 NRAB U of M, St. Paul, MN  
 Foster Wheeler, Tom Stewart, Bellevue, WA  
 Geographic Implementation Unit, Richard Parkin, Manager, Seattle, WA  
 GSA Office of Planning & Analysis, Washington, DC  
 Haida Corporation, John Bruns, Hydaburg, AK

Haida Society, Charles Edwardsen, Vice Pres., Ketchikan, AK  
 Haida Tribe, Tom Morrison, Hydaburg, AK  
 Hollis Public School, Hollis, AK  
 Howard Valentine School, Coffman Cove, AK  
 Hydaburg Advisory Committee, Victor Burgess, Chairperson, Hydaburg, AK  
 Hydaburg Advisory Committee, Gerard Helgesen, Hydaburg, AK  
 Hydaburg Advisory Committee, Adrian LeCornu, Hydaburg, AK  
 Hydaburg Advisory Committee, Donald Natkong, Hydaburg, AK  
 Hydaburg Cooperative Association, Viola Burgess, Hydaburg, AK  
 Hydaburg Tlingit and Haida Com., Lisa Lang, Hydaburg, AK  
 Hyder Advisory Committee, Jim Bunn, Hyder, AK  
 Hyder Advisory Committee, Dave Doyle, Hyder, AK  
 Hyder Advisory Committee, Lawrence Marx, Hyder, AK  
 Hyder Advisory Committee, Dave Stevens, Hyder, AK  
 Hyder Advisory Committee, Ron Tschakert, Hyder, AK  
 Hyder Community Association, Administrator, Hyder, AK  
 Hyder Public Library, Librarian, Hyder, AK  
 Icy Straits ADFG Advisory Committee, Mary Rudolph, Hoonah, AK  
 Island News, Editor, Thorne Bay, AK  
 J.R. Gildersleeve School, Ketchikan, AK  
 Juneau Office, Senator Ted Stevens, Juneau, AK  
 Juneau Tlingit/Haida Central Cn., President, Juneau, AK  
 Kake Advisory Committee, Lonnie Anderson, Kake, AK  
 Kake Advisory Committee, Delbery Kadake, Kake, AK  
 Kake Advisory Committee, Henrich Kadake, Kake, AK  
 Kasaan School, Ketchikan, AK  
 KCAW FM, APR Sitka, Lisa Nurenberger, Sitka, AK  
 Ketchikan Advisory Committee, Fred, Cheryl Athorp, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Advisory Committee, Jim Green, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Advisory Committee, Larry Painter, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Advisory Committee, Charles Piercy, Ward Cove, AK  
 Ketchikan Advisory Committee, Lewis Stamm, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Chamber of Commerce, Ernesta Ballard, President, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Chamber of Commerce, John Petersen, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan City & Borough, Gail Herbert, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Daily News, Nikki Murray-Jones, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Daily News, Lew Williams III, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Fish/Game Advisory Comm., Terry Pyles, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Gateway Borough, Bob Bright, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Gateway Borough, Mayor Jim Carlton, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan High School, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Indian Corporation, George A. Carnes, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Indian Corporation, Corrine Garza, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Indian Corporation, Gerry Hope, President, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Indian Corporation, Richard Jacksyn, Chairman Subsis., Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Indian Corporation, Paul W. Young, Exec. Director, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Public Library, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Public Utilities, Sam Peterson, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Public Utilities, Thomas Stevenson, Manager, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Public Utilities, Rich Trimble, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Pulp Co., Tom Hicks Planning & Eng. Mngr., Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Pulp Co., Ralph Lewis, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Pulp Co., R. A. Madden, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Pulp Company, Owen J. Graham, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Pulp Company, Kent P. Nicholson, Ketchikan, AK

Ketchikan Pulp Company, Stewart Phil, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Pulp Company, Mr. Troy Reinhart, Ketchikan, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, Harlan Buoy, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, Mac Demmert, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, Skip Fabry, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, John Skan, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, Ernest Smith, Sr., Chairman, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, Rudolph Smith, Sr., Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, Larry Trumble, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Advisory Committee, Frank Woods, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Cooperative Assoc., Rosanne Demmert, President, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Public Library, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Tlingit and Haida, James Martinez, President, Klawock, AK  
 Klawock Tribal, Byron V. Skinna, Sr., Klawock, AK  
 Klukwan ADFG Advisory Committee, Joe Hotch, Haines, AK  
 Konkor Forest Products, Dr. Geoffrey McNaughton, Anchorage, AK  
 KPC Timber Division, Tom Twitchell, Thorne Bay, AK  
 KRBD Radio, Pete Figueroa, Ketchikan, AK  
 KTKN Radio, Robb D. Watson, Ketchikan, AK  
 Ketchikan Area State Parks Advisory Board, Craig Moore, Ketchikan, AK  
 KTOO TV, Claire Richardson, Juneau, AK  
 Legislative Information Office, June Robbins, Ketchikan, AK  
 Louisiana Pacific Corporation, Martin R. Pihl, Ketchikan, AK  
 Mayor of Metlakatla, Honorable Jim Scudero, Metlakatla, AK  
 Metlakatla Community School Library, Metlakatla, AK  
 Metlakatla Indian Community, Mayor Ted Littlefield, Metlakatla, AK  
 Metlakatla Tlingit & Haida Council, Burlington Wellington, President, Metlakatla, AK  
 Meyers Chuck Community Assn., Meyers Chuck, AK  
 Meyers Chuck School, Meyers Chuck, AK  
 Miller Inc., Kathy Miller, Ketchikan, AK  
 Mt. Baker Snoqualmie N.F., Walt Dortch, Mt Lake Terrace, WA  
 Municipality of Anchorage, Librarian, Anchorage, AK  
 National Agricultural Library, Patricia K. Wheeler, Beltsville, MD  
 National Marine Fisheries Service, Steven Pennoyer, Director, Juneau, AK  
 Native Village of Kasaan, Kasaan, AK  
 Native Village of Kasaan, Louis A. Thompson, President, Kasaan, AK  
 Natural Resources Planner, Borough Planner, Ketchikan, AK  
 Naukati School, Ketchikan, AK  
 Neets Bay Hatchery Manager, Sam Rabung, Neets Bay, AK  
 NOAA Ecology and Conservation, Washington, DC  
 NSWC/SEAFAC, William Harney, Ketchikan, AK  
 Organized Village of Kake, Allen Davis, President, Kake, AK  
 Organized Village of Saxman, Joyce Frank-Makua, President, Ketchikan, AK  
 Organized Village of Saxman, Joe Williams II, Ketchikan, AK  
 Pelican ADF&G Advisory Committee, Patricia Phillips, Pelican, AK  
 Petersburg Advisory Committee, Haftor Gjerde, Petersburg, AK  
 Petersburg Advisory Committee, Dan Hickman, Petersburg, AK  
 Petersburg Advisory Committee, April Mathisen, Petersburg, AK  
 Petersburg Advisory Committee, Gary McCullough, Petersburg, AK  
 Petersburg Advisory Committee, Pete Nilsen, Petersburg, AK  
 Petersburg Advisory Committee, Dale Ross, Petersburg, AK  
 Petersburg Pilot, Ron Loesch, Editor, Petersburg, AK  
 Petersburg Public Library, Joyce Jenkins, Librarian, Petersburg, AK  
 Point Baker Post Office, Point Baker, AK  
 Polk Inlet School, Ketchikan, AK



Port Alexander Advisory Committee, Jim Robinson, Port Alexander, AK  
 Port Alexander School, Port Alexander, AK  
 Port Protection School, Ketchikan, AK  
 Production Sonobuoys & Fleet Liaison, Cdr. Robert Wood Jr., Dept. Navy, Washington, DC  
 Representative, Bill Williams, Ketchikan, AK  
 Revilla High School, Janet Landis, Ketchikan, AK  
 Rowan Bay School, Rowan Bay, AK  
 Saxman Advisory Committee, Tom Abbott, Ketchikan, AK  
 Saxman Advisory Committee, Thomas Martinez Jr., Chairperson, Saxman, AK  
 Saxman IRA Council, Nora DeWitt, Ketchikan, AK  
 Saxman Tlingit and Haida Council, Sharon Seirup, President, Ketchikan, AK  
 Schoenbar Junior High School, Ketchikan, AK  
 SE AK Native Subsistence Commission, Edward Thomas, Exec. Director, Juneau, AK  
 SE AK Regional Subsistence Adv. Council, Vickie LeCornu, Hydaburg, AK  
 SE AK Regional Subsistence Adv. Council, Mim McConnell, Juneau, AK  
 SE AK Regional Subsistence Adv. Council, Dewey Skan, Klawock, AK  
 SE AK Regional Subsistence Adv. Council, William Thomas Sr., Chair, Ketchikan, AK  
 SE AK Regional Subsistence Adv. Council, Marilyn Wilson, Haines, AK  
 SEACC, Buck Lindekugel, Juneau, AK  
 Sealaska Heritage Foundation, Dennis Demmert, Executive Direct, Juneau, AK  
 Sealaska Timber, Ketchikan, AK  
 Seley Corporation, Tim Droke, Ketchikan, AK  
 Sierra Club Legal Defense Fund, Inc., Juneau, AK  
 Sitka Advisory Committee, Dolly Garza, Vice-Chair, Sitka, AK  
 Sitka Advisory Committee, Herman Kitka, Sr., Sitka, AK  
 Society of American Foresters, Chair S.A.F., Ketchikan, AK  
 Soil Conservation Service (SCS), Washington, DC  
 Southeast Conference, Jim Kohler, Executive Director, Juneau, AK  
 Southern Southeast Regional Aquaculture Association, Gary Freitag, Ketchikan, AK  
 Stand Up!, K. A. Swiger, Executive Director, Ketchikan, AK  
 State Historic Preservation Officer, Judy Bittner, Anchorage, AK  
 State of Alaska, Jackie Timothy, Juneau, AK  
 STRA, Jenifer Jones, Arlington, VA  
 Sumner Strait Advisory Committee, Don Hernandez, Point Baker, AK  
 TCS and SEACC, Tracy Smith, Ketchikan, AK  
 Tenakee Springs, Sam McBeen, Tenakee Spring, AK  
 Thorne Bay Community Library, Thorne Bay, AK  
 Thorne Bay School, Michael Walker, Principal, Thorne Bay, AK  
 Tongass Conservation Society, Board of Directors, Ketchikan, AK  
 Tongass Tribal Council, Bea Watson, President, Ketchikan, AK  
 Tsimpshian Tribal Association, Verna Hudson, President, Ketchikan, AK  
 Tsimpshian Tribal Council, John Reese, Ketchikan, AK  
 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, John Killoran, Public Affairs, Anchorage, AK  
 U.S. Army Engineer District, Richard J. Gutleber, Anchorage, AK  
 U.S. Army Engineer Division, Portland, OR  
 U.S. Bureau of Mines, Donald P. Blasko, Chief, Anchorage, AK  
 U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Paul Gates, Anchorage, AK  
 University of Alaska, Jack Kruse, Anchorage, AK  
 University of Alaska - Southeast, Robert Warner, Librarian, Ketchikan, AK  
 Upper Lynn Canal, Craig Loomis, Haines, AK  
 US Environmental Protection Agency, Susan Cantor, Asst. Reg. Admin., Anchorage, AK  
 USDA Forest Service, PNW Research Station, Brenda Wright, Juneau, AK  
 USDA Forest Service, Dir, Environmental Coord., Washington, DC  
 USDA Forest Service, Phil Janik, Regional Forester, Juneau, AK  
 USDA Forest Service - Chugach National Forest, Anchorage, AK

USDA Forest Service - Ketchikan Ranger District, Jimmy Deherrera, Ketchikan, AK  
 USDA Forest Service - Tongass National Forest, Petersburg, AK  
 USDA Forest Service - Tongass National Forest, Sitka, AK  
 USDA Forest Service - Tongass National Forest, District Ranger, Thorne Bay, AK  
 USDA Forest Service - Tongass National Forest, Dale Kanen, District Ranger, Craig, AK  
 USDI Bureau of Land Management, Edward F. Spang, State Director, Anchorage, AK  
 USDI Bureau of Mines, James R. Coldwell, Mining Engr., Juneau, AK  
 USDI Fish & Wildlife Service, Carol Hale, Juneau, AK  
 USDI Fish & Wildlife Service, Juneau, AK  
 USDI Fish & Wildlife Service, Ketchikan, AK  
 USDI Fish & Wildlife Service, Dave Allen, Regional Director, Anchorage, AK  
 USDI Office of Environmental Policy, Washington, DC  
 USDI Office of Environmental Affairs, Janathon P. Deason, Director, Washington, DC  
 Whale Pass School, Ketchikan, AK  
 Wrangell Advisory Committee, Levi Dow, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Advisory Committee, Carl Guggenbickler, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Advisory Committee, Tony Guggenbickler, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Advisory Committee, Mike Ottesen Sr., Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Advisory Committee, Leland Phillips, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Advisory Committee, Robert J. Rooney, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Advisory Committee, Tom Sims, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Chamber of Commerce, J.R. Daniels, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell City Mananager, Duane H. Gasaway, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Cooperative Association, John Feller, President, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Forest Products, Steve Seley, Ketchikan, AK  
 Wrangell Forest Products, Winston Smith, Ketchikan, AK  
 Wrangell Public Library, Irene Ingle, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Resource Council, Peter Branson, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Resource Council, Marlene Clarke, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Resource Council, Alice Hanson, Wrangell, AK  
 Wrangell Sentinel, Dr. Allen L. Bird, Editor, Wrangell, AK  
 Yakutat ADF&G Advisory Committee, John Vale, Yakutat, AK

List of Individuals to Whom Copies of this Final Environmental Impact Statement Were Sent

## Individuals Sent Complete Copy of Final EIS

David Abuhl	Robert Elliot	Richard A. Madden
Joe Ambrose	David Faast	Jacqueline R. Meck
Brian Anthony	Carrol Fader	Sandra Meske
Daniel Ball	Wilbur Fisher	Katie Montgomery
Ernesta Ballard	Barny Freedman	Larry Mott
Antone Baskett	Deborah Gravel	Michael Paul Moyer
Barney Belk	William J. Halloran	Senator Frank Murkowski
Jill L. Bennett	Bill and Joanna Hendricks	Richard Myren
John E. Blubaum	Richard Hinkle	Fred Norman
Jackie Canterbury	Eric Hummel	Terry C. Otness
Margaret Clabby	Al Jackson	John Pickering
Tom Coleman	Matilda Kushnick	Robin Reeser
Steve Connelly	William Kushnick	Troy Reinhart
H.R. Cook	Jack and Marilyn Lee	Julie Riffe
Harold and Ellen Cowan	Cecelia L. Lewis	Tracy Riffe
Raymond D. Cowan	Linda Lewis	Jeffrey L. & Kathleen I. Rodger
Tom Craig	Jennifer L. Lisac	Bill Rodgers
Vicky Davis	Representative Jerry Mackie	Bruce Romine

Mike Sallee  
Bill Shoaf  
Delmar L. Shull  
Cathy Starkweather  
Senator Ted Stevens  
Stuart & K. A. Swiger  
Roy Tanino

Senator Robin Taylor  
Robin Taylor  
Carol Thomas  
Len Tiemersma  
Henry Van Laar  
Curtis Wladyka  
Dennis Wolfe

Honorable Don Young  
Lauri L. Zadina  
Roger M. Ziesak

List of Agencies, Organizations, and Persons to Whom Summary Copies of the Final Environmental Impact Statement Were Sent

### Individuals Sent Summary of Final EIS

Eric, Kirk, and Leif Amundson  
Cliff Andersen Sr.  
Richard and Shellee Atwood  
Billie Baskett  
Carolyn & Gail Bennett  
Daniel Benson  
Joe Berglund  
Keith Blandov  
Michael Blandov  
Lynda M. Blubaum  
Jeff Boak  
Richard Bohrer  
Edward W. Booth  
William Brendible Jr.  
Henry Brendible  
Donald Brown  
Mike Brown  
Gary Bryan  
Bernardo Bueza  
Jhun Cadiente  
Chris Campbell  
Robert Cannon Jr.  
Joseph R. Carl  
Mark E. Carl  
Cheryl Cefstrom  
Cliff Claggett  
Thomas Coleman  
J.E. Collins  
Margie Cook  
Jeremy Cooper  
Charles C. Cress III  
Eric L. Daggett  
Ralph S. Dale  
Garrett R. Davis  
Norm Diggins  
Sharon Dillon  
Angie Dixon  
Dan Dundas Jr.  
Delbert Dundas  
Martin Dundas  
Vincent Dundas Sr.  
DuVal

David Dyakanoff  
Perry Faucett Jr.  
Bill Fennimore  
Dalton Fox  
Blain A. Garrett  
Kenneth Gazzaway  
Ronald A. Gelbrich  
Mr. & Mrs. Frank J. Griffin  
Charles and Shelley Guerra  
Chris E. Guthrie  
William Haag  
Hank Hays  
Jeffrey A. Hendrickson  
Wayne D. Hendrickson  
G.E. Hildebrandt  
Amelia Hildebrandt  
Steven Hofstedt  
William Hollywood IV  
Patrick Holm  
George Holmes  
Gary Howell  
Mark Huff  
Robert D. Hull  
Bill Hutchens  
Sharon Huxtable  
Elzie Isley  
Rob Izatt  
Jim Jakubek  
Bruce Jametski  
Jack Jarmoski  
Sammy Johnson  
Ronnie Kasinger  
Andy Kiander  
Larry Kile  
Kostrometinoff  
Dick Kraft  
Lynda Lancaster  
Charles Lawrence  
Larry Lemons  
Ronald E. Lindberg  
James F. Linton  
Ramona Linton

Robert Luhr  
Gregory Lynch  
Kenneth G. and Lana Malone  
Stan Marcil  
Elton L. Martin  
Marguerite Martinez  
Dennis McCollum  
Connie McConnell  
Phillip McElroy  
Hubert McFarland  
Harold McGilton Sr.  
Kathy McMahan  
Robert Meck  
Doug Miller  
Jackie Milligrock  
R. Mills  
Marvin Milton  
Wesley Mollenhauer  
Stan Moseley  
Hyrum Nelson  
Rod Neterer  
Dean Neumeyer  
Frank Newkirk  
George Ohashi  
J. Troy Olivadoti  
Roger D. Olsen  
Ronald Paden  
Martin & Darlene Pihl  
Carlyle Preston  
Ronald and Robin Preusser  
Scott Purdy  
Elaine and Ronald Quick  
Don Rhine  
Michael Rodriguez  
Phil Romero  
Pat Roppel  
Randy Ruaro  
Dixie Sanders  
Kirk Sathoff  
Tim L. Schleusner  
John R. Scoshie  
Herman F. Seludo

Peter R. Sixbey  
Alana Smith  
David Steinberg  
Rodney L. Stockli  
Charles W. Stout  
Stephen Strasburger  
Dennis Stulken  
Frank Talerico

Robert J. Taylor  
Don Thompson  
Tammy Trout  
Bryan Turner  
John Vandiver  
Bill Wallace  
Maria Wallace  
Paul Walters

Philip J. Walters  
Heidi Welk  
Sandra White  
Michael K. Yliniemi  
Marla Young



## Index

Access Management 2-3, 3-154, 3-201, 3-316  
 Alpine/Subalpine 3-6, 3-128, 3-132, 3-142, 3-149, 3-152, 3-166, 3-175, 3-198, 3-200, 3-204, 3-210-3-211, 3-213-3-214, 3-229  
 Alternative Development 2-4  
 Alternatives Considered 2-2, 2-13, 2-43, 3-415  
 Alternatives Eliminated 2-12

## B

Beach Fringe 1-8, 2-6, 2-39, 3-6, 3-57, 3-142-3-143, 3-146-3-148, 3-151-3-152, 3-154-3-155, 3-158, 3-169-3-170, 3-176-3-177, 3-210, 3-315, 3-321, 3-324, 3-334  
 Best Management Practices (BMPs) 2-1, 2-23, 2-38, 2-47, 3-2, 3-17, 3-20, 3-22, 3-25, 3-27, 3-29-3-30, 3-35, 3-37, 3-40, 3-43, 3-45, 3-47-3-48, 3-54-3-55, 3-62-3-64, 3-67, 3-69-3-71, 3-73, 3-75-3-76, 3-82, 3-93-3-95, 3-105, 3-119-3-120, 3-151, 3-411-3-412  
 Biodiversity 2-17, 2-32, 3-3, 3-143-3-144, 3-152, 3-160-3-162, 3-165, 3-168-3-170, 3-207, 3-238, 3-240, 3-314, 3-413  
 Blowdown 2-41, 3-4, 3-50, 3-58, 3-74, 3-138, 3-177, 3-201, 3-206, 3-217, 3-226, 3-229, 3-231-3-232

## C

Cable Yarding Systems 3-239, 3-255  
 Cave 1-14, 1-16, 2-7, 2-35, 2-43, 3-121, 3-123-3-124, 3-128-3-130, 3-132, 3-135, 3-138, 3-147, 3-253, 3-329  
 Commercial Forest Land 1-7, 2-6-2-7, 2-12, 3-138, 3-143, 3-152, 3-175, 3-208, 3-245, 3-291, 3-393  
 Connectivity 2-1, 2-4, 2-6, 2-33, 3-165, 3-167-3-168, 3-170, 3-172, 3-176, 3-187  
 Cultural Resources 3-2, 3-121, 3-280, 3-325, 3-330, 3-334-3-334, 3-412, 3-415

## E

Ecological Provinces 3-3, 3-169  
 Ecosystem Management 2-4, 3-210, 3-224, 3-240  
 Endangered Species 1-16, 2-42, 3-17, 3-174, 3-188, 3-190-3-191, 3-280, 3-415  
 Erosion 2-24, 3-17, 3-19, 3-29, 3-50-3-51, 3-58-3-59, 3-67, 3-96, 3-99, 3-101-3-102, 3-105, 3-109-3-111, 3-119, 3-129, 3-137, 3-217, 3-263  
 Estuary 1-8, 2-12, 2-40, 2-43, 3-10, 3-12, 3-14, 3-24, 3-47, 3-54, 3-57, 3-64, 3-70, 3-76, 3-79, 3-81, 3-96-3-97, 3-142-3-143, 3-147-3-148, 3-151-3-152, 3-154-3-155, 3-158, 3-168-3-169, 3-177, 3-179, 3-187, 3-213-3-214, 3-247, 3-334, 3-398  
 Estuary Fringe 2-43, 3-57, 3-81, 3-96, 3-142-3-143, 3-151-3-152, 3-154-3-155, 3-158, 3-177, 3-334, 3-398

## F

Floodplains 1-16, 2-18, 3-50, 3-64-3-65, 3-67-3-71, 3-97, 3-211, 3-213  
 Forest Health 3-8, 3-205, 3-225  
 Fragmentation 2-4, 2-13, 2-32-2-34, 3-50, 3-165-3-166, 3-168-3-169, 3-172, 3-175, 3-177, 3-193, 3-314, 3-356

## G

Group Selection 2-17, 3-32, 3-39, 3-42, 3-220-3-222, 3-227, 3-231, 3-234, 3-258

## H

Habitat Capability 2-17-2-18, 2-23, 2-32-2-35, 3-10, 3-13, 3-17, 3-50, 3-52-3-54, 3-58, 3-61, 3-139, 3-144-3-150, 3-152-3-165, 3-176, 3-178, 3-188, 3-191-3-192, 3-201, 3-288, 3-314-3-322, 3-411  
 Helicopter Yarding 2-3, 2-13-2-15, 2-22, 3-217, 3-221, 3-227, 3-257, 3-285, 3-290,

## I

Irretrievable Commitments 3-3, 3-412, 3-412  
Irreversible Commitments 3-2, 3-412, 3-412

## J

Jobs 2-17, 2-36, 3-268-3-269, 3-272-3-273, 3-275-3-277, 3-279, 3-281, 3-285-3-286, 3-288

## L

Land Use Designation (LUD) 1-1, 1-6, 1-8-1-10, 1-14, 2-2, 2-5-2-6, 2-12, 2-32, 3-3, 3-169-3-170, 3-172, 3-187, 3-227, 3-246, 3-291, 3-361,  
Landscape Management Zones 2-5-2-6  
Landslides 2-27, 3-4, 3-6, 3-18, 3-27, 3-29, 3-37, 3-47, 3-50, 3-58, 3-97, 3-99, 3-105, 3-109, 3-129, 3-143, 3-217  
Log Transfer Facilities (LTFs) 1-6, 1-14, 2-13-2-15, 2-17, 2-20-2-21, 2-36-2-38, 2-42-2-43, 3-179, 3-187, 3-190, 3-200, 3-260-3-261, 3-270, 3-289, 3-333, 3-343, 3-345, 3-389, 3-391, 3-393-3-394, 3-398-3-400, 3-402-3-408  
Logging Camps 1-14, 3-270, 3-295, 3-297-3-298, 3-305, 3-332, 3-336, 3-343, 3-402,

## M

Marine Benthic Habitat 2-37, 3-398, 3-404-3-406  
Marine Environment 2-3, 2-36, 2-38, 3-6, 3-11, 3-79, 3-202, 3-391-3-392, 3-394, 3-398, 3-400, 3-407  
Mass Movement Index (MMI) 2-27, 3-17-3-19, 3-22, 3-24, 3-27, 3-29, 3-32, 3-34, 3-37, 3-39, 3-42, 3-45, 3-47, 3-57, 3-95, 3-99-3-100, 3-102, 3-105-3-108, 3-247  
Mineral Soils 3-96-3-97, 3-132  
Mistletoe 3-193, 3-206-3-207, 3-216, 3-219-3-220, 3-225-3-226, 3-238  
Mitigation Measures 1-2, 1-17, 2-1-2-2, 2-7, 2-38, 2-40, 2-43-2-44, 2-46, 3-2, 3-51, 3-62-3-63, 3-69, 3-74, 3-93, 3-105, 3-119, 3-137, 3-158, 3-203, 3-291, 3-316, 3-334, 3-386, 3-410-3-412  
Monitoring 2-1, 2-36, 2-43-2-47, 3-8, 3-69, 3-74-3-75, 3-82, 3-94, 3-120, 3-138, 3-291, 3-334, 3-396, 3-410  
Muskeg 3-6, 3-59, 3-70, 3-76-3-89, 3-92-3-95, 3-97-3-98, 3-142, 3-144, 3-165, 3-168-3-169, 3-196-3-198, 3-202, 3-210-3-214, 3-232, 3-245, 3-249-3-250, 3-308-3-310

## N

Nonforested 3-152, 3-245

## O

Old Growth 1-1, 1-6-1-10, 1-13-1-14, 2-1-2-7, 2-12, 2-14, 2-17, 2-32-2-33, 2-40, 2-42, 3-6, 3-50, 3-57, 3-71-3-72, 3-96, 3-140, 3-142-3-143, 3-145-3-152, 3-154-3-157, 3-160-3-162, 3-165-3-170, 3-172, 3-175-3-177, 3-179, 3-187, 3-191-3-194, 3-198, 3-201-3-203, 3-206-3-207, 3-214, 3-217, 3-224, 3-228-3-230, 3-236, 3-240, 3-243-3-246, 3-248, 3-280, 3-291, 3-308-3-310, 3-314, 3-356, 3-362, 3-376, 3-410, 3-412  
Organic Soil 3-70, 3-76, 3-78-3-79, 3-81, 3-96-3-99, 3-105, 3-129, 3-132, 3-135, 3-229

## P

Preferred Alternative 1-12, 2-16, 2-24, 3-45, 3-47, 3-101, 3-106, 3-119, 3-171, 3-317, 3-402

## R

Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS) 2-18, 2-30, 3-335, 3-342-3-354  
Recreation Places 3-337, 3-353  
Riparian Areas 1-8, 3-17, 3-50, 3-54-3-55, 3-64, 3-67, 3-70, 3-73-3-74, 3-143, 3-190, 3-198, 3-210, 3-213, 3-239, 3-324  
Roadless Areas 2-18, 2-31, 3-162, 3-191, 3-335, 3-355-3-356, 3-410

## S

Scenic Quality 1-13, 2-29, 2-43, 3-263, 3-276, 3-281, 3-290, 3-357-3-358  
Second Growth 2-27, 2-33, 2-36, 3-17, 3-29, 3-71-3-72, 3-118, 3-143, 3-145, 3-161, 3-169, 3-175, 3-192, 3-198, 3-240, 3-247, 3-291, 3-340, 3-412

Sediment 2-3, 2-25, 2-27-2-28, 3-13, 3-17-3-20, 3-22, 3-24-3-25, 3-27, 3-29, 3-32, 3-34, 3-37, 3-39, 3-42, 3-45, 3-47, 3-50-3-51, 3-53-3-54, 3-58-3-62, 3-64, 3-67, 3-73, 3-81, 3-94, 3-96, 3-110-3-111, 3-119, 3-121-3-122, 3-125, 3-129, 3-135, 3-137-3-138, 3-333-3-334, 3-410

Sensitive Species 1-8, 2-43, 2-46, 3-17, 3-19, 3-188, 3-190-3-191, 3-202-3-204, 3-225, 3-415

Shovel Yarding 2-18, 2-22, 3-254

Slope 2-18, 2-20, 2-24, 2-27, 2-38-2-39, 3-6, 3-17, 3-19-3-20, 3-22, 3-24, 3-27, 3-29-3-30, 3-32, 3-34, 3-37, 3-39-3-40, 3-42, 3-45, 3-47-3-48, 3-57, 3-59-3-62, 3-95, 3-97, 3-99, 3-101-3-102, 3-105-3-106, 3-110-3-111, 3-119, 3-125, 3-129, 3-137, 3-147, 3-168, 3-177, 3-194, 3-199-3-200, 3-208, 3-210-3-212, 3-232, 3-238, 3-245, 3-248, 3-254, 3-257, 3-359, 3-363, 3-366, 3-371, 3-376, 3-379, 3-381, 3-384, 3-400, 3-405

Snags 2-4, 2-40, 3-54, 3-143, 3-146, 3-149, 3-155-3-157, 3-165-3-166, 3-168, 3-202, 3-209, 3-217, 3-224, 3-227, 3-240, 3-252

Stream Crossings 2-27, 3-17, 3-19, 3-58, 3-61-3-63, 3-67, 3-394-3-395

Subsistence 1-2, 1-7, 1-12-1-14, 2-1-2-5, 2-18, 2-33-2-35, 3-3, 3-11, 3-139-3-140, 3-142, 3-145, 3-190, 3-263, 3-265-3-266, 3-268-3-271, 3-278, 3-280, 3-289, 3-292-3-293, 3-295-3-296, 3-300, 3-303-3-313, 3-315-3-318, 3-320-3-324, 3-326-3-327, 3-356, 3-407-3-408, 3-410, 3-413

Suitable Forest Lands 3-246, 3-251

## T

Timber Economics 1-13, 1-15, 2-6-2-7, 2-14, 2-22, 3-276

Tongass Land Management Plan (TLMP) 1-1-1-2, 1-6-1-11, 1-14, 1-17, 2-1-2-4, 2-6, 2-11-2-14, 2-20, 2-24-2-25, 2-31-2-32, 2-36, 2-38, 2-40, 2-42, 2-46, 3-1-3-3, 3-7, 3-13, 3-17, 3-20, 3-24, 3-27, 3-29-3-30, 3-37, 3-40, 3-43, 3-48, 3-52, 3-54-3-55, 3-57, 3-59, 3-62-3-64, 3-69-3-71, 3-73-3-75, 3-77-3-78, 3-81-3-82, 3-92, 3-94, 3-96-3-97, 3-101, 3-111-3-112, 3-115, 3-118-3-120, 3-130, 3-139, 3-144, 3-146, 3-148, 3-160, 3-162, 3-164, 3-169-3-172, 3-177, 3-187-3-188, 3-190-3-191, 3-202, 3-206, 3-221, 3-246-3-247, 3-270, 3-273-3-275, 3-277, 3-279, 3-286, 3-288-3-290, 3-295, 3-314, 3-316, 3-323-3-324, 3-355-3-356

Tongass Resource Use Cooperative Survey (TRUCS) 2-18, 2-33, 3-270, 3-293, 3-295, 3-305, 3-307-3-310, 3-324

## U

Unit Pool 2-27, 3-17, 3-135, 3-222, 3-247, 3-252-3-253, 3-258, 3-290, 3-366, 3-371, 3-376

## V

Viewsheds 2-29, 2-43, 3-359-3-360, 3-365-3-366, 3-412

Visual Quality 1-8-1-9, 2-29, 3-280, 3-357, 3-362, 3-369, 3-412

Visual Quality Objectives (VQO) 3-344, 3-357-3-358, 3-360-3-362, 3-365-3-366, 3-369, 3-371, 3-376, 3-379, 3-381, 3-384, 3-386

Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs) 1-8, 2-18, 2-29, 2-43

Visual Resources 1-8, 3-288, 3-324, 3-358, 3-408, 3-412

Volume Strata 2-20, 3-167, 3-248, 3-250-3-251

## W

Watershed Analysis 2-3, 2-25, 3-14, 3-17, 3-61, 3-70-3-71, 3-73-3-74, 3-118

Watersheds 2-25-2-26, 2-28, 3-3, 3-10, 3-13-3-14, 3-16-3-19, 3-24, 3-27, 3-42, 3-47, 3-50-3-51, 3-57, 3-59-3-60, 3-99, 3-111-3-112, 3-117-3-118, 3-121, 3-231, 3-252

Wetlands 1-16, 2-18, 2-38, 3-6, 3-19, 3-67, 3-70, 3-76-3-95, 3-97-3-98, 3-119, 3-247, 3-251, 3-412

Wildlife Analysis Area (WAA) 2-34, 3-3, 3-139-3-142, 3-145-3-146, 3-148, 3-162, 3-191, 3-292, 3-295-3-297, 3-299-3-304, 3-308-3-311

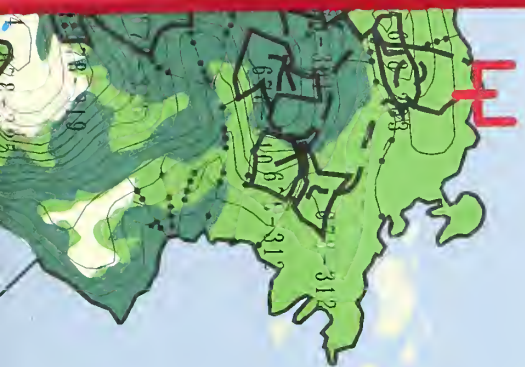
Windfirm 2-1, 2-38-2-39, 2-42-2-43, 3-71-3-74, 3-138, 3-193, 3-209, 3-216, 3-219, 3-225-3-226, 3-229-3-232

Windthrow 2-1, 3-4, 3-22, 3-50, 3-54, 3-73-3-74, 3-105, 3-143, 3-165, 3-206, 3-209, 3-219, 3-221, 3-224-3-226, 3-229, 3-231-3-232, 3-235, 3-240-3-241





# Chasina Project Area







# Chasina Project Area

Ketchikan

West Arm

Dora Bay






















Deception Bay

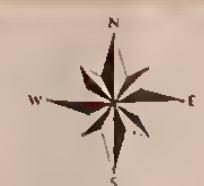
Alkum Bay

Mapscale 1:40917

0.65 0.0 0.65 1.29 1.94 2.58 Miles

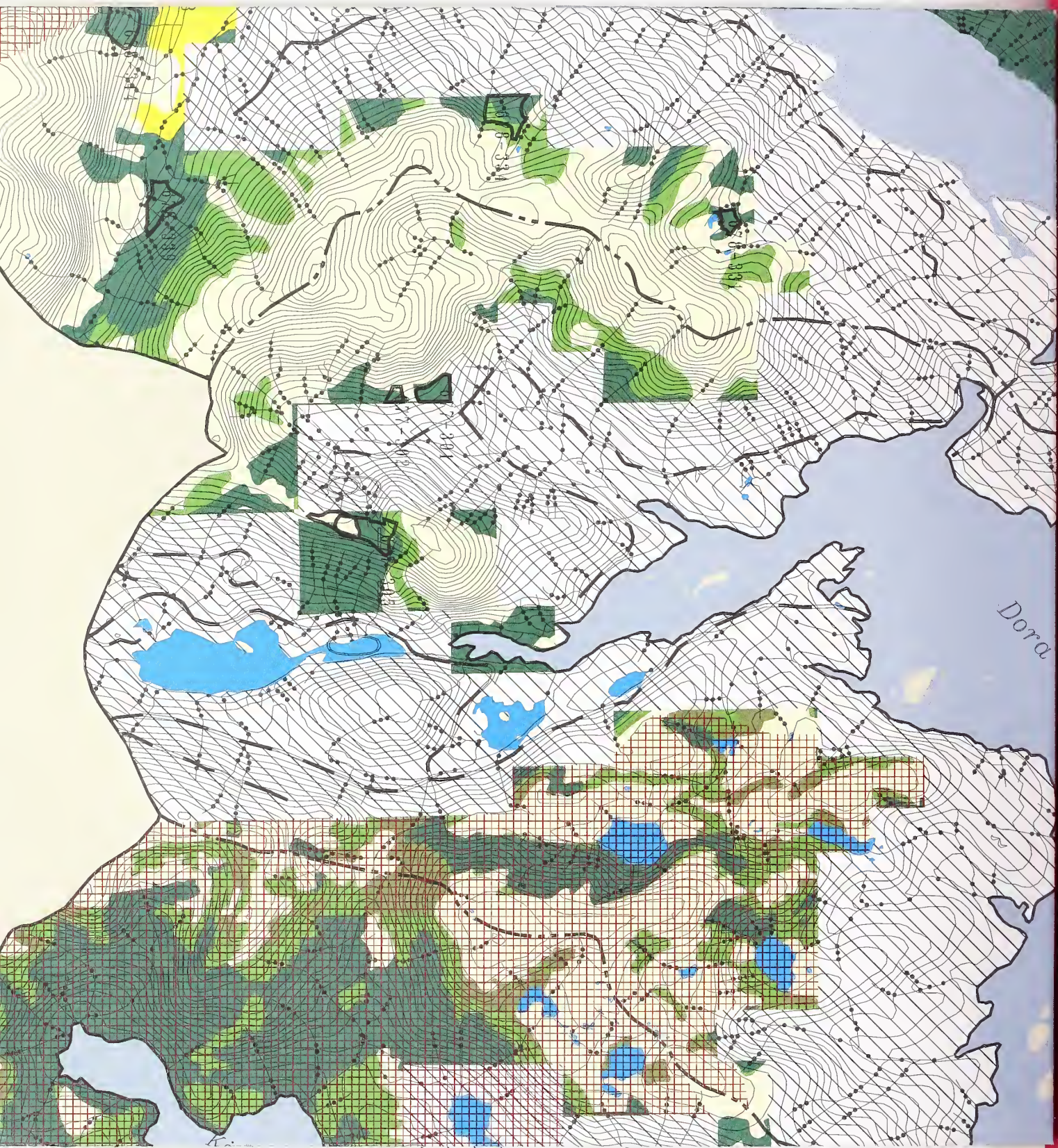
Scale is 1 Inch = 0.65 Miles

- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  Low Productive Forest Land  |  VCU Boundary         |
|  Previous Harvest            |  AHMU Class 1 Streams |
|  Volume Strata Low           |  AHMU Class 2 Streams |
|  Volume Strata Medium        |  AHMU Class 3 Streams |
|  Volume Strata High          |  AHMU Class 4 Streams |
|  Old Growth Habitat Reserves |  Contours             |
|  Private Lands               |  Existing Roads       |
|  State Lands                 |  Proposed Roads       |
|  Fresh Water                 |  Project Boundary     |
|  Salt Water                  |  |
|  Proposed LTF                |  |
|  Existing LTF                |  |



Existing Condition Plus Alt 6







United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means of communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact USDA's TARGET Center at 202-720-2600 (voice or TDD).

To complain, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC 20250, or call 1-800-245-6340 (voice) or 1-800-245-6340 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.



Federal Recycling Program  
Printed on Recycled Paper

